

# Language: English

## Book: Mark

---

### Introduction to the Gospel of Mark

#### Overview

Mark wrote about what Jesus did during his last three years on earth. Mark called Jesus “God’s servant” (see: Mark 10:45). In this book, Jesus always served God and other people. According to Mark, Jesus travelled to different places, taught people, and did many miracles. Jesus did these miracles to prove that he taught true things from God. Mark wrote about the miracles of Jesus more than any other gospel writer.

Mark wrote that Jesus was both God and man. The things Jesus said and did allowed people to know how to do things and say things that honor God.

See: [Miracle](#); [Gospel](#); [Jesus is God](#)

#### Who wrote this letter?

In the gospel, the author does not write who the author was. Also, the author did not say that he saw everything that he wrote about.

Two of the first Christian leaders, wrote letters writing the author was Mark. These letters are not in the Bible.

In the Bible, Mark was also called John (see: Acts 12:12, 25; 15:37). His mother was a woman named Mary and she lived in Jerusalem (see: Acts 12:12). Mark’s cousin was Barnabas (see: Colossians 4:10).

Mark traveled with Barnabas and Paul on the first missionary trip (see: Acts 13:5).

Mark was a friend to the apostle Peter, (see: 1 Peter 5:13). Mark learned most of the things he wrote about from Peter.

See: [Gospel](#); [Paul's Missionary Journeys](#); [Apostle](#)

#### To whom did Mark write?

In the gospel, the author did not speak about the people to whom he wrote. Mark wrote in the Greek language. He explained Aramaic words. So it is thought the readers did not know Aramaic (see: Mark 3:17, 5:41, 7:11, 7:34, 10:46, 14:36, 15:22, and 15:34).

Mark did not explain the different names for Jesus such as Messiah, Son of God, Son of David, Lord, and the “Son of Man.” He also did not explain the words gospel, King Herod, Pilate, and many of the towns in his book. Because he did not explain these words, the audience probably knew these words and believed in Jesus.

Mark wrote fourteen Latin words that were spoken by the people in Rome. One example was when he explained the value of the two coins the widow gave (see: Mark 12:42). He wrote the Latin name for the coin. Because of these Latin words, scholars think Mark wrote to people in Rome.

See: [Gospel](#); [Languages in the New Testament](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Son of God](#); [Son of Man](#)

See Map: Rome

#### What did Mark write about in this letter?

##### Messianic secret

In the first part of Mark’s gospel Jesus did not tell people that he was the messiah. In the second part of Mark’s gospel, he told his disciples that he was the messiah. However, Jesus told them not to tell anybody.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Gospel](#); [Messianic Secret](#); [Disciple](#)

#### **Suffering servant**

The “suffering servant” was a certain person who serves God and suffers for doing it. Isaiah prophesied about this person (see: Isaiah 53). This person is Jesus. Mark said, “For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many” (see: Mark 10:45)

Jesus not only came to serve God and man, he commanded Christians to do the same.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Son of Man](#)

#### **Son of Man**

Jesus often called himself the “Son of Man.” He did this because he was a man who served God and would die.

However, the “Son of Man” had a different meaning in the book of Daniel (see: Daniel 7:13-14). In those verses, the Son of Man was a specific person who would have all power and judge all people. When Jesus called himself the Son of Man, he wanted to say that he was not just a man who served God. He would also rule the world and judge everyone.

See: Ezekiel 2:1

See: [Son of Man](#)

#### Son of God

Jesus is sometimes called the “Son of God.” In Mark, other people often call Jesus the “Son of God.”

See: [Son of God](#)

#### **Kingdom of God**

Mark often wrote about the kingdom of God.

See: [Kingdom of God](#)

#### **Why did Mark write this letter?**

Mark wanted to tell people about the gospel of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God (see: Mark 1:1). Jesus was both the “Son of God” and the “Son of Man.” He was a humble man who served other people. He rescued people and got them to worship God. Jesus tells everyone to trust him and to follow him.

See: [Gospel](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Son of God](#); [Son of Man](#)

#### **Outline of the Gospel of Mark**

1. Jesus, the Son of God (1:1-13)
2. The baptism and teaching of John (1:1-8)
3. The baptism of Jesus (1:9-11)
4. The temptation of Jesus (1:12-13)
5. Jesus at work in Galilee (1:14-9:50)
6. He begins his work (1:14-45)
7. He teaches about his kingdom (2:1-5:43)
8. He meets people who want to stop him (6:1-8:26)
9. He prepares his disciples for the end (8:27-9:50)
10. Jesus prepares for death (10:1-14:31)
11. He goes to Jerusalem (10:1-11:11)
12. He stays in Jerusalem and vicinity (11:12-14:31)
13. Jesus suffers and dies at the hands of men (14:32-15:47)
14. His suffering in Gethsemane (14:32-42)
15. His arrest (14:43-52)
16. His trial before Jewish leaders and Peter denies knowing him (14:53-72)
17. His trial before Pilate (15:1-15)
18. His crucifixion (15:16-41)
19. His burial (15:42-47)
20. Jesus triumphs over death (16:1-20)

- 21. His resurrection (16:1-8)
  - 22. His appearances on earth (16:9-18)
  - 23. His ascension into heaven (16:19-20)
- 

## Mark

### Chapter 1

<sup>1</sup> This is the beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

<sup>2</sup> As it is written in Isaiah the prophet,

"Look, I am sending my messenger before your face,  
the one who will prepare your way.

<sup>3</sup> The voice of one crying out in the wilderness,  
'Make ready the way of the Lord;  
make his paths straight.'"

<sup>4</sup> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. <sup>5</sup> The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins. <sup>6</sup> John wore a coat of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist, and he ate locusts and wild honey.

<sup>7</sup> He was preaching, saying, "One will come after me who is more powerful than I; the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie. <sup>8</sup> I baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

<sup>9</sup> It happened in those days that Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee, and he was baptized by John in the Jordan River. <sup>10</sup> As Jesus came up out of the water, he saw the heavens split open and the Spirit coming down on him like a dove. <sup>11</sup> A voice came out of the heavens, "You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you."

<sup>12</sup> Then the Spirit compelled him to go out into the wilderness. <sup>13</sup> He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels served him.

<sup>14</sup> Now after John was arrested, Jesus came into Galilee proclaiming the gospel of God. <sup>15</sup> He said, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the gospel."

<sup>16</sup> When he was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew the brother of Simon casting a net in the sea, for they were fishermen. <sup>17</sup> Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men." <sup>18</sup> Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. <sup>19</sup> As Jesus was walking on a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and John his brother; they were in the boat mending the nets. <sup>20</sup> He called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and they followed him.

<sup>21</sup> Then they came into Capernaum, and on the Sabbath, Jesus went into the synagogue and taught. <sup>22</sup> They were astonished at his teaching, for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes. <sup>23</sup> Just then a man in their synagogue who had an unclean spirit cried out, <sup>24</sup> saying, "What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are. You are the Holy One of God!"

<sup>25</sup> Jesus rebuked the demon and said, "Be quiet and come out of him!" <sup>26</sup> The unclean spirit threw him down and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice. <sup>27</sup> All the people were amazed, so they asked each other, "What is this? A new teaching with authority! He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!" <sup>28</sup> The news about him went out everywhere into the whole region of Galilee.

<sup>29</sup> After coming out of the synagogue, they came into the house of Simon and Andrew, along with James and John. <sup>30</sup> Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever, and they told Jesus about her. <sup>31</sup> So he came, took her by the hand, and raised her up; the fever left her, and she started serving them.

<sup>32</sup> That evening after the sun had set, they brought to him all who were sick or possessed by demons. <sup>33</sup> The whole city gathered together at the door. <sup>34</sup> He healed many who were sick with various diseases and cast out many demons, but he did not allow the demons to speak because they knew him.

<sup>35</sup> He got up very early, while it was still dark; he left and went out into a solitary place and there he prayed. <sup>36</sup> Simon and those who were with him searched for him. <sup>37</sup> They found him and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you."

<sup>38</sup> He said, "Let us go elsewhere, out into the surrounding towns, so that I may preach there also. That is why I came out here." <sup>39</sup> He went throughout all of Galilee, preaching in their synagogues and casting out demons.

<sup>40</sup> A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him, "If you are willing, you can make me clean."

<sup>41</sup> Moved with compassion, Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying to him, "I am willing. Be clean." <sup>42</sup> Immediately the leprosy left him, and he was made clean. <sup>43</sup> Jesus strictly warned him and sent him away. <sup>44</sup> He said to him, "Be sure to say nothing to anyone, but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, as a testimony to them." <sup>45</sup> But he went out and began to declare it freely and spread the word, so much so that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly but he stayed out in remote places. Yet people were still coming to him from everywhere.

---

## Mark 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:2-3, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "You can make me clean"

Leprosy was a disease of the skin that made a person unclean and unable to properly worship God. Jesus is capable of making people physically "clean" or healthy as well as spiritually "clean" or right with God. (See: clean)

#### Prophecy

Mark begins this book about Jesus Christ with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long before that time. Then he tells how John the Baptist and Jesus Christ fulfilled that prophecy.

#### Repentance

Repent means stop sinning. John the Baptist taught people to repent so that God would forgive their sins. Jesus taught people to repent and to believe the good news about the kingdom of God.

#### The work of Jesus

Jesus went around preaching the good news of God, casting demons out of people, and healing people who were sick.

---

## Mark 1 Commentary

### 1:1-8

#### What is the gospel?

[1:1]

See: [Gospel](#)

## How is Jesus the “son of God”?

[1:1]

See: [Son of God](#)

## Who was John the Baptist?

[1:4]

Mark wrote about John the Baptist fulfilling a prophecy from the Old Testament. Three different prophets spoke about this prophecy (see: Exodus 23:20; Isaiah 40:3; Malachi 3:1). Mark wanted people to know that God promised to do something, and it happened. God promised that a prophet would come before the messiah to tell people that the messiah was coming. John the Baptist was this promised prophet.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Prophet](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## How did John the Baptist serve God?

[1:4, 1:5]

John the Baptist served God by telling people that they needed to repent. They needed to worship and obey God. They were unclean because they disobeyed God. They needed to be made clean. John also served God by baptizing people who believed in God and repented of their sins.

See: [Confess \(Confession\)](#); [Sin](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#); [Gentile](#); [Confess \(Confession\)](#)

## Why was John’s baptism different from all other baptisms?

[1:4, 1:5]

John’s baptism was not like other baptisms. John’s baptism helped people get ready for the messiah. People wanted to follow the messiah, so they confessed their sins. They were at peace with God for a time. This helped them to know the messiah when they heard him speak. In ancient Israel, other leaders might have baptized and preached repentance. However, only John prepared the people in Judea and in Jerusalem for Jesus.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

See Map: Jerusalem; Judea

## Where is Judea and Jerusalem?

[1:5]

See Map: Judea; Jerusalem

## Why did Mark write about the clothes John the Baptist wore and the things he ate?

[1:6]

The Jews thought the prophet Elijah would come back to earth before the messiah (see: Malachi 4:5). Elijah was a prophet who wore a coat made of hair and a leather belt around his waist (see: 2 Kings 1:8). John dressed in the same way as Elijah.

Both Elijah and John lived in the wilderness. People who lived in the wilderness ate locusts and honey.

Mark wrote these things so everyone would know that John was the prophet who God promised to send before the messiah came. John told people that the messiah would be there soon.

See: [Wilderness](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Locust](#); [Wilderness](#)

### **Why did John not want to untie Jesus' sandal?**

[1:7]

In ancient Israel, people thought that feet were very dirty. Because of this, only servants or slaves would touch someone's feet. It dishonored someone to touch dirty feet. However, John thought that even touching Jesus' feet was a greater honor than John deserved.

**Advice to translators:** A sandal is a certain type of shoe. It does not cover the entire foot.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **How was Jesus' baptism different from John's baptism?**

[1:8]

John's baptism was a way for people to show other people that they wanted to obey and honor God. They wanted to stop sinning. Jesus baptizes people with the Holy Spirit. That is, he did not just wash their body with water. They were baptized because they believed in Jesus.

See: Matthew 3:11; Luke 3:3-16; John 1:19-34; Acts 2

See: [Spirit \(Spiritual\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Spirit \(Spiritual\)](#)

## **1:9-11**

### **How were the heavens split open?**

[1:10]

Mark wrote that the heavens were "split open" or tore and opened when Jesus came out of the water. Mark wrote the same word to write about God tearing the curtain of the temple from top to bottom when Jesus died on the cross (see: Mark 15:38). This was at the beginning and the end of Mark's gospel. Mark wanted people to know that Jesus is the Son of God. Mark wrote about the heavens opening because he wanted to say that God was allowing people to know more about God.

See: [Heaven](#); [Cross](#); [Gospel](#); [Son of God](#); [God](#); [Heaven](#)

### **Why did the voice say "You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you"?**

[1:11]

The voice saying "You are my beloved Son" was saying that the messiah had come to earth. After this, Jesus began to do certain things to serve God and tell people that he was the messiah. God sent the Holy Spirit as a dove so people would know that God had anointed Jesus for ministry.

The words spoken by God the father made the readers think about Isaiah 42:1.

See: Psalms 2:7; Matthew 3:13-17; Luke 3:21-23

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#); [God the Father](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Minister \(Ministry\)](#); [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

## **1:12-13**

### **Why did Jesus go to the wilderness after he was baptized?**

[1:12]

Jesus went to the wilderness because the Holy Spirit wanted him to go there. Jesus completely obeyed the Holy Spirit and went to the wilderness.

See: [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#)

### **Why did God send Jesus into the wilderness?**

[1:13]

God sent Jesus into the wilderness. This is because Satan was going to tempt him. Jesus was given choices to follow God or not. Jesus obeyed God because he trusted God. Jesus did not sin when he was tempted. He did not follow Satan. After the temptations, angels served Jesus because his body was weak.

See: Matthew 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13

See: [Angel](#); [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#); [Angel](#)

### **1:14-15**

### **Why was John put into prison?**

[1:14]

John was put in prison because he told Herod that he could not marry his brother's wife, Herodias. John said that Herod broke the law by marrying Herodias.

### **Where is Galilee?**

[1:14]

See Map: Galilee

### **Why did Jesus say that the “kingdom of God” is near?**

[1:15]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God was near. Some scholars think Jesus' kingdom was on the earth. He was the king of the earthly kingdom.

Other scholars think Jesus wanted to say the “kingdom of God” has started so that people did not have to sin any more. God rules the things someone thinks and the things they do when they believe in Jesus and do the things he said to do. Before, people could only do evil before Jesus came to earth. Now people can return to God and do the things that honor him.

Other scholars think Jesus was coming to offer to his kingdom to Israel. His kingdom was going to begin if they believed in him. Because they rejected him, his kingdom did not begin.

See: Matthew 4:12-17; Luke

See: [Proclaim \(Proclamation\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Proclaim \(Proclamation\)](#)

### **1:16-20**

### **Why did Jesus say they would be “fishers of men”?**

[1:17]

Jesus used a metaphor when he said they would be “fishers of men.” Peter, Andrew, John and James were all fishermen. They fished to earn money. Jesus said this to say that they were no longer going to catch fish for money. Instead, they would bring men to God by telling them about the gospel. Jesus wanted to tell them they would serve God in a different way.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gospel](#)

### **Why did Peter and Andrew follow Jesus immediately?**

[1:18]

Andrew heard what John the Baptist said about Jesus (see: John 1:40). Andrew was ready to follow Jesus because of John. Andrew found his brother Peter. Peter was also ready to follow Jesus (see: John 1:41-42).

**Why did Mark write about the hired men?**

[1:20]

The disciples left their family, their work, and their homes to follow Jesus. They left everything that they had. Mark wrote that they did not leave their father to fish without help. He had hired men who would help him. They honored their father by making sure he was not alone.

See: Matthew 4:18-22; John 1:40-42

See: [Disciple](#)

See Map: Sea of Galilee

**1:21-28**

**Where was Capernaum?**

[1:21]

See Map: Capernaum

**What was the Sabbath?**

[1:21]

See: [Sabbath](#)

**What was a synagogue?**

[1:21]

See: [Synagogue](#)

**How were the things Jesus taught different from other teachers?**

[1:22]

In ancient Israel, teachers said what other teachers that came before them said. Jesus' teaching was different. He taught what God commanded. Jesus did not follow the things that other people taught because other people taught it. He only taught about what God said and the people were amazed.

**Why did the unclean spirits cry out?**

[1:23]

The unclean spirits cried out. That is, they were afraid. They knew that Jesus is God and will one day judge them and punish them.

See: [Demon](#); [Demon](#)

**Where was Nazareth?**

[1:24]

See Map: Nazareth

**Who is the "holy one" of God?**

[1:24]



Jesus is the holy one of God. That is, he is the messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

**Why did Jesus tell the demon to be quiet?**

[1:25]

Jesus made others know that he had power over the demons when he told them to be quiet. They needed Jesus' permission to speak.

See: [Demon](#)

**Why were the people amazed?**

[1:27]

The people were amazed because even the demons did what Jesus told them to do. He had power that they had never seen before.

See: Luke 4:31-37

**1:29-31**

**Why did Mark write that the woman served Jesus after she was healed?**

[1:31]

Mark wrote that Peter's mother-in-law served Jesus so everyone would know that Jesus had completely healed her.

See: Matthew 8:14-15; Luke 4:38-39

**1:32-39**

How was someone possessed by a demon?

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**Why did Mark write that the people came to Jesus after sunset?**

[1:32]

Mark wrote that people came to Jesus after sunset. The people wanted to follow the Law of Moses and not do any work on the Sabbath. The Jewish leaders taught that carrying a person who could not walk was work. Therefore, it was against the Law of Moses. The people waited until after the Sabbath was over at sunset to come to Jesus for healing.

See: [Sabbath](#); [Sabbath](#)

### Why did Mark write Jesus woke up early and prayed in a quiet place alone?

[1:35]

Mark wrote about Jesus getting up early in the morning and praying. For Jesus, prayer was the most significant part of his day. He was able to talk and listen to God the father. God the father told Jesus what he needed to do while he prayed. This is the beginning of Jesus' preaching and healing in Galilee.

See: [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#)

See Map: Galilee

## 1:40-45

### What is leprosy?

[1:40]

See: [Leprosy \(Leper\)](#)

### Why did Jesus touch the leper?

[1:41]

A person became unclean if they touched a leper. This is what is written in the Law of Moses. Mark wanted people to know that Jesus touched the leper. Jesus did not worry about being unclean because he leper was made clean and was healed of his leprosy when Jesus touched him.

See: [Leprosy \(Leper\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Leprosy \(Leper\)](#)

### Why did Jesus warn the leper not to speak about being healed?

[1:44]

The Law of Moses required a leper to show himself to the priest. The priest would pronounce that he was clean. In this way, Jesus was following the Law of Moses. Mark wrote that Jesus healed three different people. He told each of them not to tell anyone (see: 1:44; 5:43; and 7:36). The leper who was cured did not obey Jesus. He told everyone. Crowds then came to be healed by Jesus instead of coming to hear Jesus teach. Because of the crowds, Jesus could no longer teach in the synagogues. He began to teach outside of the towns where no one lived.

See: Matthew 8:1-4; Luke 5:12-16

See: [Synagogue](#); [Leprosy \(Leper\)](#); [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Synagogue](#)

---

## Mark 1:1

### General Information:

The author of this book is Mark, also called John Mark. He was the son of one of the women named Mary mentioned in the four Gospels. He was also the nephew of Barnabas. This whole book is about Jesus Christ.

### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

## Mark 1:2

### General Information:

Mark begins this book with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long ago about a messenger who would come and tell the people to get ready for the Lord's coming. Verses 4-15 show how this prophecy was fulfilled by John the Baptist and Jesus Christ.

### before your face

This is an idiom that means "ahead of you."

### your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

### the one

This refers to the messenger.

### will prepare your way

Doing this represents preparing the people for the Lord's arrival. Alternate translation: "will prepare the people for your arrival"

## Mark 1:3

### Connecting Statement:

This verse tells how the messenger in verse 2 would prepare the Lord's way.

### The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This phrase can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

### Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight

These two phrases mean the same thing.

### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation:

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Mark 1:4

##### General Information

The events in Mark 1:4-15 are a fulfillment of what Isaiah had prophesied. John was the "messenger" of verse 2 and "the one calling out in the wilderness" of verse 3.

##### John came

Translators can make it explicit that John's coming was a fulfillment of Isaiah's prophecy. Alternate translation: "So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

#### Mark 1:5

##### The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

The words "The whole country" are a metonym for the people who live in the country and a generalization that refers to a great number of people, not to every single person. Alternate translation: "Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

##### They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

They did these things at the same time. The people were baptized because they repented of their sins. Alternate translation: "When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

#### Mark 1:6

##### he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

#### Mark 1:7

##### He was preaching

"John was preaching"

##### the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

John was comparing himself to a servant to show how great the one to come would be. Alternate translation: "I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

##### the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

##### stoop down

"bend down"

#### Mark 1:8

##### but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

John was contrasting how he was purifying people with water with how the one to come would purify people with the Holy Spirit. To baptize with the Holy Spirit is a metaphor meaning that that person would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

#### Mark 1:9

##### It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### he was baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized him"

#### Mark 1:10

##### the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

#### Mark 1:11

##### A voice came out of the heavens

This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens"

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

#### Mark 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

After Jesus's baptism, he is in the wilderness for 40 days and then goes to Galilee to teach and call his disciples.

##### compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

#### Mark 1:13

##### He was in the wilderness

"He stayed in the wilderness"

##### forty days

"40 days"

**He was with**  
"He was among"

#### **Mark 1:14**

**after John was arrested**  
"after John was placed in prison." Mark is referring to when King Herod had John arrested. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

**proclaiming the gospel**  
"telling many people about the good news"

#### **Mark 1:15**

**The time is fulfilled**  
"It is now time"

**the kingdom of God is near**  
Possible meanings are 1) God was beginning to rule. Alternate translation: "God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all. Alternate translation: "God is about to rule over all"

#### **Mark 1:16**

**he saw Simon and Andrew**  
"Jesus saw Simon and Andrew"

**casting a net in the sea**  
The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### **Mark 1:17**

**Come, follow me**  
"Follow me" or "Come with me"

**I will make you fishers of men**  
This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

**men**  
human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

#### **Mark 1:18**

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Mark 1:19**

**in the boat**  
This was probably James and John's boat.

**mending the nets**  
"repairing the nets"

#### **Mark 1:20**

**called them**  
It may be helpful to state clearly why Jesus called to James and John. Alternate translation: "called them to come with him"

**hired servants**  
"servants who worked for them"

**they followed him**  
James and John went with Jesus.

#### **Mark 1:21**

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus teaches in the synagogue of the town of Capernaum on the Sabbath. By sending a demon out of a man he amazes the people in all the nearby area around Galilee.

**came into Capernaum**  
"arrived at Capernaum"

#### **Mark 1:22**

**for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes**  
The idea of "teach" can be stated clearly when talking about "someone who has authority" and "the scribes." Alternate translation: "for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

#### **Mark 1:23**

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Mark 1:24**

**What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?**  
The demon asked this rhetorical question meaning that there was no reason for Jesus to interfere with him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

**we ... us**  
These pronouns are exclusive. They refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

**Have you come to destroy us?**  
The demon asked this rhetorical question to urge Jesus not to harm him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Do not destroy us!"

## Mark 1:25

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 1:26

### threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

### and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice

"and cried out with a loud voice as it went out from him"

## Mark 1:27

### so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

The people used a question to show how amazed they were. It can be expressed as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

### A new teaching with authority!

The people used this exclamation to express their amazement at Jesus' teaching. It can also be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

### He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

## Mark 1:28

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 1:29

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 1:30

### Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

The word "Now" marks a pause in the story. In this sentence, Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives background information about her.

## Mark 1:31

### raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

### the fever left her

You may want to make explicit who healed her. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her of the fever"

### she started serving them

You may want to make explicit that she served food. Alternate translation: "she provided them with food and drinks"

## Mark 1:32

### they brought to him

"the people brought to Jesus"

### all who were sick or possessed by demons

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of people who came. Alternate translation: "many who were sick or possessed by demons"

## Mark 1:33

### The whole city gathered together at the door

The word "city" is a metonym for the people who lived in the city. Here the word "whole" is probably a generalization to emphasize that most people from the city gathered. Alternate translation: "Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

## Mark 1:34

### He healed

"Jesus healed"

## Mark 1:35

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus takes time to pray in the midst of his time of healing people. He then goes to towns throughout Galilee to preach, heal, and cast out demons.

### He got up

"Jesus got up"

### a solitary place

"a place where he could be alone"

## Mark 1:36

### Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Also, those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

## Mark 1:37

### Everyone is looking for you

The word "Everyone" is an exaggeration to emphasize that many people were looking for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Many people are looking for you"

### Mark 1:38

#### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "I" refer to Jesus.

#### Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place." Here Jesus uses the word "us" to refer to himself, along with Simon, Andrew, James, and John.

### Mark 1:39

#### He went throughout all of Galilee

The words "throughout all" are an exaggeration used to emphasize that Jesus went to many locations during his ministry. Alternate translation: "He went to many places in Galilee"

### Mark 1:40

#### A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him

"A leper came to Jesus. He knelt down and was begging Jesus and said"

#### If you are willing, you can make me clean

In the first phrase, the words "to make me clean" are understood because of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

#### are willing

"want" or "desire"

#### you can make me clean

In biblical times, a person who had any of certain skin diseases was considered unclean until his skin had healed enough that he was no longer contagious. Alternate translation: "you can heal me"

### Mark 1:41

#### Moved with compassion, Jesus

Here the word "moved" is an idiom meaning to feel emotion about another's need. Alternate translation: "Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man, so he"

#### I am willing

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is willing to do. Alternate translation: "I am willing to make you clean"

### Mark 1:42

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 1:43

#### General Information:

The word "him" used here refers to the leper whom Jesus healed.

### Mark 1:44

#### Be sure to say nothing to anyone

"Be sure to not say anything to anyone"

#### show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

#### show yourself

The word "yourself" here represents the skin of the leper. Alternate translation: "show your skin"

#### a testimony to them

It is best to use the pronoun "them," if possible, in your language. Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

### Mark 1:45

#### But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

#### began to declare it freely

Here "declare it freely" is a metaphor for telling people in many places about what had happened. Alternate translation: "began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

#### so much so that

The man spread the news so much that

#### that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

This was the result of the man spreading the news so much. Here "openly" is a metaphor for "publicly." Jesus could not enter the towns because many people would crowd around him. Alternate translation: "that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

#### remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

#### from everywhere

The word "everywhere" is a hyperbole used to emphasize how very many places the people came from. Alternate translation: "from all over the region"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 1:2

**What did the prophet Isaiah predict would happen before the Lord came?**

Isaiah predicted that God would send a messenger, a voice of someone calling out in the wilderness, to prepare the way of the Lord.

### Mark 1:3

**What did the prophet Isaiah predict would happen before the Lord came?**

Isaiah predicted that God would send a messenger, a voice of someone calling out in the wilderness, to prepare the way of the Lord.

### Mark 1:4

**What did John come preaching?**

John came preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.

### Mark 1:5

**What did the people do as they were baptized by John?**

The people confessed their sins as they were baptized by John.

### Mark 1:6

**What did John eat?**

John ate locusts and wild honey.

### Mark 1:8

**With what did John say the one coming after him would baptize?**

John said the one coming after him would baptize with the Holy Spirit.

### Mark 1:10

**What did Jesus see as he came up out of the water after being baptized by John?**

After being baptized, Jesus saw the heavens split open and the Spirit descend on him as a dove.

### Mark 1:11

**What did the voice from heaven say after Jesus was baptized?**

The voice from heaven said, "You are my beloved Son; I am very pleased with you".

### Mark 1:12

**Who drove Jesus out into the wilderness?**

The Spirit drove Jesus out into the wilderness.

### Mark 1:13

**How long was Jesus in the wilderness, and what happened to him there?**

Jesus was in the wilderness forty days, and he was tempted by Satan there.

### Mark 1:15

**What message did Jesus preach?**

Jesus preached that the kingdom of God was near, and that people must repent and believe in the gospel.

### Mark 1:16

**What was the occupation of Simon and Andrew?**

Simon and Andrew were fishermen.

### Mark 1:17

**What did Jesus say he would make Simon and Andrew?**

Jesus said he would make Simon and Andrew fishers of men.

### Mark 1:19

**What was the occupation of James and John?**

James and John were fishermen.

### Mark 1:22

**Why did Jesus' teaching astonish the people in the synagogue?**

Jesus' teaching astonished the people because Jesus taught as one with authority.

### Mark 1:24

**What title did the unclean spirit in the synagogue give Jesus?**

The unclean spirit in the synagogue gave Jesus the title of the Holy One of God.

### Mark 1:28

**What happened with the news about Jesus?**

The news about Jesus went out everywhere.

### Mark 1:30

**When they went into Simon's house, who did Jesus heal?**

When they went into Simon's house, Jesus healed Simon's mother-in-law.

**Mark 1:32**

**What happened when it was evening?**

When it was evening, the people brought all who were sick or possessed by demons, and Jesus healed them.

**Mark 1:33**

**What happened when it was evening?**

When it was evening, the people brought all who were sick or possessed by demons, and Jesus healed them.

**Mark 1:34**

**What happened when it was evening?**

When it was evening, the people brought all who were sick or possessed by demons, and Jesus healed them.

**Mark 1:35**

**What did Jesus do before the sun rose?**

Before the sun rose, Jesus went out to a solitary place and prayed there.

**Mark 1:38**

**What did Jesus tell Simon he had come to do?**

Jesus said that he had come to preach in the surrounding towns.

**Mark 1:39**

**What did Jesus tell Simon he had come to do?**

Jesus said that he had come to preach in the surrounding towns.

**Mark 1:40**

**What attitude did Jesus have toward the leper who begged Jesus to be healed?**

Jesus had pity on the leper and healed him.

**Mark 1:41**

**What attitude did Jesus have toward the leper who begged Jesus to be healed?**

Jesus had pity on the leper and healed him.

**Mark 1:42**

**What attitude did Jesus have toward the leper who begged Jesus to be healed?**

Jesus had pity on the leper and healed him.

**Mark 1:44**

**What did Jesus tell the leper to do, and why?**

Jesus told the leper to go offer the sacrifices according to what Moses commanded as a testimony.



## Chapter 2

<sup>1</sup> When Jesus came back to Capernaum after a few days, it was heard that he was at home. <sup>2</sup> So many gathered there that there was no more space, not even at the door, and he spoke the word to them. <sup>3</sup> Then some men came to him who were bringing a paralyzed man; four people were carrying him. <sup>4</sup> When they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on. <sup>5</sup> Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, your sins are forgiven."

<sup>6</sup> Now some of the scribes were sitting there, and they reasoned in their hearts, <sup>7</sup> "How can this man speak this way? He blasphemes! Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

<sup>8</sup> Immediately Jesus knew in his spirit what they were thinking within themselves. He said to them, "Why are you thinking this in your hearts? <sup>9</sup> Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, take up your mat and walk'? <sup>10</sup> But in order that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins," he said to the paralytic, <sup>11</sup> "I say to you, get up, take up your mat, and go to your house."

<sup>12</sup> He got up and immediately took up the mat, and went out of the house in front of everyone, so that they were all amazed and they gave glory to God, and they said, "We never saw anything like this."

<sup>13</sup> He went out again by the lake, and all the crowd came to him, and he taught them. <sup>14</sup> As he passed by, he saw Levi son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax collector's tent and he said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

<sup>15</sup> Jesus was having a meal in Levi's house and many tax collectors and sinners were dining with him and his disciples, for there were many and they followed him. <sup>16</sup> When the scribes, who were Pharisees, saw that Jesus was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

<sup>17</sup> When Jesus heard this he said to them, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners."

<sup>18</sup> Now John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting. Some people came and said to him, "Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

<sup>19</sup> Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast. <sup>20</sup> But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and in those days, they will fast. <sup>21</sup> No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment. Otherwise the patch tears away from it, the new from the old, and there is a worse tear. <sup>22</sup> No one puts new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise the wine will burst the skins and both the wine and the wineskins are lost. Instead, new wine is put into fresh wineskins."

<sup>23</sup> On the Sabbath day Jesus went through some grainfields, and his disciples began picking heads of grain as they made their way. <sup>24</sup> The Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?"

<sup>25</sup> He said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was in need and hungry—he and the men who were with him— <sup>26</sup> how he went into the house of God when Abiathar was high priest, and ate the bread of the presence, which is unlawful for anyone to eat except the priests, and he even gave some to those who were with him?" <sup>27</sup> Jesus said, "The Sabbath was made for mankind, not mankind for the Sabbath. <sup>28</sup> Therefore, the Son of Man is Lord, even of the Sabbath."

## Mark 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

#### Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

The Jewish leaders used rhetorical questions to show that they were angry because of what Jesus said and did and that they did not believe that he was God's Son

---

## Mark 2

### 2:1-12

#### Whose home did Jesus go to?

[2:1]

Mark wrote that Jesus was "at home." He did not return to the place where his family lived. He went to Capernaum. Jesus left and returned there many times. Scholars think this was Simon and Andrew's home (see: Mark 1:29).

See Map: Capernaum

#### How did Jesus speak the word?

[2:2]

Mark wrote that Jesus "spoke the word." This was a metaphor. He wanted to write that Jesus taught things about God. People needed to do the things he taught because they were the things God wanted them to do.

See: [Metaphor](#)

#### What did Mark want to write about the people who opened the roof?

[2:4]

Mark wanted people to know that these people were going to get their sick friend to Jesus no matter how hard it might be. In ancient Israel, homes usually had an outside stairway or ladder that went up to a flat roof. The roofs were made of slabs of burnt or dried clay. This was placed on supporting beams that stretched from one wall to another wall. The friends removed some of these slabs to make a hole in the roof. They then lowered the sick man into the room with Jesus.

**Advice to translators:** A slab is something that is large and flat. It may be 1 to 3 meters long and wide, but only a few centimeters thick. A beam is a long piece of wood that is very strong.

### **Whose trust in God did Jesus see and reward?**

Jesus saw these four friends trusted Jesus to heal the paralyzed man. These men worked very hard to bring the paralyzed man to Jesus so Jesus could heal him. Because they trusted Jesus, he rewarded them by healing the man and forgiving his sins.

**Advice to translators:** Someone who is paralyzed cannot walk.

See: [Sin](#)

### **Why were the teachers of the law angry that Jesus said: “your sins are forgiven”?**

[2:5]

The teachers of the Law of Moses thought Jesus had insulted God when he said, “your sins are forgiven.” This is because only God can forgive sins. They believed God alone could forgive sins.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **What did Jesus say to the teachers of the law?**

[2:8, 2:9]

Jesus knew what the teachers of the Law of Moses were thinking. He gave them something new to think about. Jesus asked them a question. He did not want them to answer. Anyone could say that a person’s sins were forgiven. This is because people would not know if this happened. However, if someone told someone to get up and walk but they did not get up and walk, then everyone could see this. People would know the person lied if they could not heal the other person. However, Jesus healed this man by telling him to “Get up and walk.” People saw that the man got up and walked. Therefore, Jesus healed him. So when Jesus said that, “Your sins are forgiven,” he showed them that he had the power to forgive sins by healing the man.

See: Matthew 9:1-8; Luke 5:17-26

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **Who is the “son of man”?**

[2:10]

See: [Son of Man](#)

## **2:13-17**

### **What was the lake about which Mark wrote?**

[2:13]

Mark wrote about the Sea of Galilee

See Map: Sea of Galilee

### **How did Mark talk about Levi?**

[2:14]

Mark called the tax collector Levi, son of Alphaeus. In the gospel of Matthew, Levi was named Matthew (see: Matthew 9:9-11).

Matthew was a tax collector. People in Israel hated the tax collectors. Tax collectors were Jews who worked for the Roman government. They paid the Romans so they could collect taxes from other people. If they collected more taxes than they paid the Roman government, then they were allowed to keep it. Because of this, many tax collectors became rich. The Jews thought a Jewish tax collector betrayed the Jewish people because they took money from the Jews and gave it to the Romans. They thought tax

collectors were evil because they took money from people who honored God and gave it to people who rejected God.

### **Who were the people who followed Jesus?**

[2:15]

The twelve disciples were certain people who believed in Jesus and followed him. In 2:15, Mark wrote about other people who followed Jesus. Some of them believed in Jesus and followed him. Others did not believe in Jesus, but they still followed him. They wanted to see the great miracles he did. However, they did not believe Jesus was the messiah.

See: [Disciple](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Disciple](#)

### **Why did the Pharisees ask Jesus' followers "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"**

[2:16]

Pharisees wanted to follow the Law of Moses. They thought that eating with unclean people would make them unclean. This is not what the Law of Moses said. It is what the Pharisees taught. Because of this, they did not know why Jesus wanted to be near people who sinned. They were saying that Jesus had broken the Law of Moses. However, he was not breaking the Law of Moses.

See: [Sin](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sin](#)

### **What did Jesus say to the Pharisees?**

[2:17]

Jesus told the Pharisees that he was a type of doctor. This was a metaphor. Doctors needed to be near sick people so that they could help them. Certain people knew they sinned and were not at peace with God. They knew they needed God to forgive them.

Jesus called the Pharisees "righteous." This is because they were the teachers of the Law of Moses. They thought they did not sin and were at peace with God. They did not think they needed God to forgive them. However, everyone needs to be forgiven by God because everyone has sinned.

See: Matthew 9:9-13; Luke 5:27-32

See: [Sin](#); [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#); [Sin](#)

## **2:18-22**

### **Why were people arguing about fasting?**

[2:18]

The people argued because they did not see the disciples of Jesus fasting. In ancient Israel, people fasted often. They fasted when bad things happened (see: Ezra 8:23). They fasted when people died (see: 1 Samuel 31:13; 2 Samuel 1:12). They fasted when people were sick (see: 2 Samuel 1:16). They fasted when they repented (see: 1 Kings 21:27). Many Jews fasted two days every week when Jesus was on the earth (see: Luke 18:9-14).

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Fasting](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **How did Jesus answer the question of fasting?**

[2:19]

The Pharisees asked Jesus a question about fasting. Jesus answered the question by asking a question. He asked if people needed to fast when good things happened. Jesus said that people did not fast when good things happened. People should have been very happy while Jesus was on earth. Therefore, they should not fast. Jesus prophesied that he would be killed. When this happens, people will be very sad. Then they will fast.

Jesus also used two metaphors. One metaphor was about clothes and the other was about wineskins. He wanted to say that people do things differently after something new happens. The disciples did something different because they were with Jesus, the messiah.

**Advice to translators:** A wineskin is a bag that holds wine. It was made of leather, that is, the skin of an animal.

See: Matthew 9:14-17; Luke 5:33-39

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Fasting](#); [Wedding](#); [Marriage](#); [Bride of Christ](#); [Lamb of God](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Metaphor](#); [Wine \(Winepress\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## 2:23-28

### Why did the Pharisees say Jesus' followers broke the rules about the Sabbath?

[2:24]

According to the Law of Moses, one could work on the Sabbath. However, it does not say what people needed to stop doing. The Pharisees made many rules about what someone could and could not do on the Sabbath. However, this was not in the Law of Moses. The disciples picked small pieces of grain and rubbed them together so they could eat them. In the Law of Moses, people were allowed to do this when they went from one place to another place (see: Deuteronomy 23:25). However, the Pharisees taught that this was wrong. Jesus knew it was not wrong to break the Pharisees' rule.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### How did Jesus answer the Pharisees?

[2:25, 2:26, 2:27, 2:28]

Jesus told the Pharisees that eating was not breaking the Law of Moses. The Law of Moses had certain rules about the Sabbath. Jesus told them a story about David (see: 1 Samuel 21:2-6). David broke the Law of Moses. However, this was not evil. It was not evil to help people or to eat if you needed to eat. Jesus created the Sabbath. Therefore, if Jesus said they were not doing something evil, then they were not doing something evil.

Jesus wanted people to know that God cared more about people than the rules about the Sabbath. God made the Sabbath for people and it was a gift he gave to people.

See: Matthew 12:1-8; Luke 6:1-5

See: [Sabbath](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#)

## Mark 2:1

### Connecting Statement:

After preaching and healing people throughout Galilee, Jesus returns to Capernaum, where he heals and forgives the sin of a paralyzed man.

### it was heard that he was at home

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

## Mark 2:2

### So many gathered there

The word "there" refers to the house that Jesus stayed at in Capernaum. Alternate translation: "So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

### there was no more space

This refers to there being no space inside the house. Alternate translation: "there was no more room for them inside"

### he spoke the word to them

"Jesus spoke his message to them"

## Mark 2:3

### four people were carrying him

"four of them were carrying him." It is likely that there were more than four people within the group that brought the man to Jesus.

### were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

## Mark 2:4

### could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

**they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on**

Houses where Jesus lived had flat roofs made of clay and covered with tiles. Alternate translation: "they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

## Mark 2:5

### Seeing their faith

"Seeing the men's faith." Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

### Son

The word "Son" here shows Jesus cared for the man as a father cares for a son. Alternate translation: "My son"

### your sins are forgiven

Jesus did not clearly say who was forgiving the man's sins. Alternate translation: "your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

## Mark 2:6

### reasoned in their hearts

Here "their hearts" is a metonym for the people's thoughts. Alternate translation: "were thinking to themselves"

## Mark 2:7

### How can this man speak this way?

The scribes used this question to show their anger that Jesus said "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "This man should not speak this way!"

### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The scribes used this question to say that since only God can forgive sins, then Jesus should not say "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "Only God can forgive sins!"

## Mark 2:8

### in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

### they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

### Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

Jesus uses this question to tell the scribes that what they are thinking is wrong. Alternate translation: "What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

### this in your hearts

The word "hearts" is a metonym for their inner thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: "this inside yourselves" or "these things"

## Mark 2:9

### Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

## Mark 2:10

### But in order that you may know

"But so that you may know." The word "you" refers to the scribes and the crowd.

### that the Son of Man has authority

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man." Alternate translation: "that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

## Mark 2:11

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 2:12

### in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

## Mark 2:13

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus is teaching the crowd beside the Sea of Galilee, and he calls Levi to follow him.

### the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

**the crowd came to him**  
"the people went where he was"

## Mark 2:14

**Levi son of Alphaeus**  
Alphaeus was Levi's father.

**the tax collector's tent**  
We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

## Mark 2:15

**Connecting Statement:**  
It is now later in the day, and Jesus is at Levi's house for a meal.

**Levi's house**  
"the home of Levi"

**sinners**  
In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

**for there were many and they followed him**  
Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

## Mark 2:16

**Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?**  
The scribes and Pharisees asked this question to show they disapproved of Jesus's hospitality. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

## Mark 2:17

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus responds to what the scribes had said to his disciples about his eating with tax collectors and sinful people.

**he said to them**  
"he said to the scribes"

**People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one**  
Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

**strong in body**  
"healthy"

**I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners**  
Jesus expects his hearers to understand he came for those who want help. Alternate translation: "I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

**but sinners**  
The words "I came to call" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "but I came to call sinners"

## Mark 2:18

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus tells parables to show why his disciples should not fast while he is with them.

**the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees**  
These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "the disciples of the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees"

**Some people**  
"Some men." It is best to translate this phrase without specifying exactly who these men are. If in your language you have to be more specific, the possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

**came and said to him**  
"came and said to Jesus"

## Mark 2:19

**Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?**  
Jesus uses this question to remind the people of something they already know and to encourage them to apply it to him and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

## Mark 2:20

**the bridegroom will be taken away**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will go away"

**away from them ... they will fast**  
The words "them" and "they" refer to the wedding attendants.

## Mark 2:21

### **No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment**

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

## Mark 2:22

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to tell another parable. This one is about putting new wine into old wineskins rather than into new wineskins.

### **new wine**

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

### **old wineskins**

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

### **wineskins**

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

### **the wine will burst the skins**

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open.

### **are lost**

"will be ruined"

### **fresh wineskins**

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

## Mark 2:23

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus gives the Pharisees an example from scripture to show why the disciples were not wrong to pick grain on the Sabbath.

### **began picking heads of grain**

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

### **heads of grain**

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

### **as they made their way**

"as they walked along"

## Mark 2:24

### **Connecting Statement:**

The Pharisees ask a question about what the disciples were doing (verse 23).

### **doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day**

Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it (verse 23) was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

### **Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?**

The Pharisees ask Jesus a question to condemn him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

### **Look**

"Look at this" or "Listen." This is a word used to get the attention of someone to show them something. If there is a word in your language that is used to draw a person's attention to something, you could use that here.

## Mark 2:25

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to scold the Pharisees by asking them a question.

### **He said to them**

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

### **Have you never read what David did**

This question ends in 2:26. Jesus is reminding the scribes and Pharisees of something David did on the Sabbath. If this rhetorical question is translated as a statement or a command, then the question mark in 2:26 should become a period. Alternate translation: "You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

### **read what David did**

Jesus refers to reading about David in the Old Testament. This can be translated showing the implicit information. Alternate translation: "read in the scriptures what David did"

## Mark 2:26

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 25.

### **how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?**

This question began in 2:25. If you translated the rhetorical question as a statement or command in verse 25, then the question mark here should



become a period. Alternate translation: "how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

**how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him**

This can be expressed as a statement separate from verse 25. If so, verse 25 should end with a period instead of a dash. Alternate translation: "He went into the house of God ... to those who were with him"

**how he went**

The word "he" refers to David.

**the bread of the presence**

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

**Mark 2:27**

**The Sabbath was made for mankind**

Jesus makes clear why God established the Sabbath. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "God made the Sabbath for mankind"

**mankind**

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

**not mankind for the Sabbath**

The words "was made" are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here.

Alternate translation: "mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

**Mark 2:28**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Mark 2:4**

**What did the four men do who were carrying the paralyzed man?**

The men removed the roof of the house and lowered the paralyzed man to Jesus.

**Mark 2:5**

**What did Jesus say to the paralyzed man?**

Jesus said, "Child, your sins are forgiven".

**Mark 2:6**

**Why did some of the scribes object to what Jesus had said?**

Some of the scribes reasoned that Jesus had blasphemed because only God can forgive sins.

**Mark 2:7**

**Why did some of the scribes object to what Jesus had said?**

Some of the scribes reasoned that Jesus had blasphemed because only God can forgive sins.

**Mark 2:10**

**How did Jesus demonstrate that he had authority on earth to forgive sins?**

Jesus told the paralyzed man to take up his bed and go to his house, and the man did.

**Mark 2:11**

**How did Jesus demonstrate that he had authority on earth to forgive sins?**

Jesus told the paralyzed man to take up his bed and go to his house, and the man did.

**Mark 2:12**

**How did Jesus demonstrate that he had authority on earth to forgive sins?**

Jesus told the paralyzed man to take up his bed and go to his house, and the man did.

**Mark 2:13**

**What was Levi doing when Jesus told Levi to follow him?**

Levi was sitting at the tax-collecting place when Jesus called him.

**Mark 2:14**

**What was Levi doing when Jesus told Levi to follow him?**

Levi was sitting at the tax-collecting place when Jesus called him.

**Mark 2:15**

**At Levi's house, what was Jesus doing that offended the Pharisees?**

Jesus was dining with the sinful people and tax collectors.

**Mark 2:16**

**At Levi's house, what was Jesus doing that offended the Pharisees?**

Jesus was dining with the sinful people and tax collectors.

**Mark 2:17**

**Who did Jesus say he had come to call?**

Jesus said he had come to call sinful people.

**Mark 2:18**

**What question did some people ask Jesus about fasting?**

They asked Jesus why his disciples did not fast when John's disciples and the Pharisees' disciples did fast.

**Mark 2:19**

**How did Jesus explain why his disciples were not fasting?**

Jesus said that while the bridegroom is still with the wedding attendants they cannot fast.

**Mark 2:23**

**What did Jesus' disciples do in some fields on the Sabbath which offended the Pharisees?**

Jesus' disciples picked heads of grain and ate them on the Sabbath.

**Mark 2:24**

**What did Jesus' disciples do in some fields on the Sabbath which offended the Pharisees?**

Jesus' disciples picked heads of grain and ate them on the Sabbath.

**Mark 2:25**

**What example did Jesus give of someone who needed and ate bread normally forbidden for them?**

Jesus gave the example of David who out of need ate the bread of the presence normally reserved for the priests.

**Mark 2:26**

**What example did Jesus give of someone who needed and ate bread normally forbidden for them?**

Jesus gave the example of David who out of need ate the bread of the presence normally reserved for the priests.

**Mark 2:27**

**For whom did Jesus say the Sabbath was made?**

Jesus said the Sabbath was made for people.

**Mark 2:28**

**What authority did Jesus claim for himself?**

Jesus said that he was Lord also of the Sabbath.

## Chapter 3

<sup>1</sup> Again Jesus walked into the synagogue, and there was a man with a withered hand. <sup>2</sup> Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath so that they could accuse him. <sup>3</sup> Jesus said to the man with the withered hand, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone." <sup>4</sup> Then he said to the people, "Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm; to save a life or to kill?" But they were silent. <sup>5</sup> He looked around at them with anger, and he was grieved by their hardness of heart, and he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored. <sup>6</sup> The Pharisees went out and immediately began to plot with the Herodians as to how they might put him to death.

<sup>7</sup> Then Jesus, with his disciples, went to the sea, and a great crowd of people followed from Galilee and from Judea <sup>8</sup> and from Jerusalem and from Idumea and beyond the Jordan and around Tyre and Sidon. When they heard about the things he was doing, a great crowd came to him. <sup>9</sup> He told his disciples to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not press against him. <sup>10</sup> For he healed many, so that everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him. <sup>11</sup> Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and cried out, and they said, "You are the Son of God." <sup>12</sup> He strictly ordered them not to make him known.

<sup>13</sup> He went up on the mountain, and he called for those he wanted, and they came to him. <sup>14</sup> He appointed the twelve (whom he named apostles) so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message, <sup>15</sup> and to have authority to cast out demons. <sup>16</sup> He appointed the twelve: Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter; <sup>17</sup> James son of Zebedee, and John the brother of James, to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder; <sup>18</sup> and Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, <sup>19</sup> and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

<sup>20</sup> Then he went home, and the crowd came together again, so that they could not even eat bread. <sup>21</sup> When his family heard about it, they went out to seize him, for they said, "He is out of his mind."

<sup>22</sup> The scribes who came down from Jerusalem said, "He is possessed by Beelzebul" and "By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons."

<sup>23</sup> Jesus called them to himself and said to them in parables, "How can Satan cast out Satan? <sup>24</sup> If a kingdom is divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand. <sup>25</sup> If a house is divided against itself, that house will not be able to stand. <sup>26</sup> If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he is not able to stand, but has come to an end. <sup>27</sup> But no one can enter into the house of a strong man and steal his belongings without tying up the strong man first, and then he will plunder his house. <sup>28</sup> Truly I say to you, all sins of the sons of men will be forgiven, even all the blasphemies which they utter, <sup>29</sup> but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never have forgiveness, but is guilty of an eternal sin."

<sup>30</sup> Jesus said this because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit."

<sup>31</sup> Then his mother and his brothers came and stood outside. They sent for him, summoning him. <sup>32</sup> A crowd was sitting around him and they said to him, "Your mother and your brothers and your sisters are outside, and they are looking for you."

<sup>33</sup> He answered them, "Who are my mother and my brothers?" <sup>34</sup> He looked around at those who were sitting in a circle around him and said, "See, here are my mother and my brothers! <sup>35</sup> For whoever does the will of God, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother."

## Mark 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sabbath

It was against the law of Moses to do work on the Sabbath. The Pharisees believed healing a sick person on the Sabbath was "work," so they said that Jesus did wrong when he healed a person on the Sabbath. (See: lawofmoses)

#### "Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

---

## Mark 3

### 3:1-6

#### To which Synagogue did Jesus return?

[3:1]

Jesus returned to a synagogue. Scholars think Jesus returned to the synagogue in Capernaum. (see: Mark 1:21).

See: [Synagogue](#)

See Map: Capernaum

#### What caused the man's hand to be withered?

[3:1]

Mark wrote about a man with a withered hand. That is, his hand was damaged or deformed. However, he was born with a normal hand. Scholars think the man got sick and the sickness damaged his hand.

### **Why did people watch to see if Jesus would heal this man on the Sabbath?**

[3:2]

The Pharisees taught that it was wrong to heal someone on the Sabbath unless the person could die. If they were not going to die, then the Pharisees said you must wait to heal them. They thought that healing was a kind of work. The Law of Moses taught that people are not to work on the Sabbath. Certain people wanted to say Jesus did something evil by healing this man. However, it was not wrong for Jesus to heal this man. It was wrong for them to want to say Jesus did something evil. This was why Jesus was angry.

See: Mark 2:24

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Who were the Herodians?**

[3:6]

The Herodians were Jewish teachers. They liked King Herod and the people that would rule after he did. The Roman government gave these men permission to rule Israel. They liked things and ideas that were from Greece and Rome. They did not think there was going to be a Jewish messiah and they did not like Jesus' teaching. The Pharisees needed help from these leaders so they could kill Jesus.

See: Matthew 12:9-14; Luke 6:6-11

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

See Map: Greece; Rome

### **3:7-12**

#### **Where is Galilee?**

[3:7]

See Map: Galilee

#### **Where is Idumea, Jordan, Tyre and Sidon?**

[3:8]

Idumea was an area south of Israel. It was also called Edom. Tyre and Sidon were Gentile cities north of Israel.

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

See Map: Jerusalem; Edom; Jordan; Tyre; Sidon; Israel

#### **What was an unclean spirit?**

[3:11]

See: [Demon](#)

#### **Why did Jesus tell the unclean spirits to be silent?**

[3:12]

The unclean spirits knew Jesus. They fell down to worship him. However, Jesus did not want them to tell people that he was the Son of God. Scholars think Jesus wanted people to tell other people that He was the Son of God and not the demons.

See: Mark 1:24-25, 34; Acts 16:17-18

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

### **3:13-19**

#### **What were apostles?**

[3:14]

See: Matthew 10:1-4; Luke 6:13-16

See: [Apostle](#)

#### **What was the message they told others?**

[3:14]

The apostles were going to tell other people a message. That message was the gospel.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gospel](#)

### **3:20-30**

#### **Why did Jesus' family think Jesus was "out of his mind"?**

[3:21]

Mark wrote that Jesus' family thought Jesus was "out of his mind." That is, they thought he was no longer able to think in a right way. Some scholars think that because Jesus was too busy to even eat, his family thought he was no longer thinking rightly. Other scholars think Mark wrote that the crowd thought Jesus was "out of his mind."

#### **Who was Beelzebul?**

[3:22]

Beelzebul was a name for Satan.

See: Matthew 12:24-32; Luke 11:17-23

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

#### **How did the scribes think Jesus was able to remove demons from people?**

[3:22]

The scribes said that Satan gave Jesus permission to remove demons from people.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

#### **What was a parable?**

[3:23]

See: [Parable](#)

#### **What did Jesus say to the scribes?**

[3:23, 3:24]

Jesus spoke against what the Scribes said. Jesus said that he fought against Satan by casting out demons. If Jesus wanted to help Satan, then he would not fight against Satan. Jesus also fought against the things Satan ruled on earth. God allowed Satan to rule these things for a period of time. Jesus proved that he was stronger than Satan and could defeat Satan by casting out demons.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### What was the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit?

[3:29]

Jesus said that every sin could be forgiven except one. That was blasphemy of the Holy Spirit. Scholars disagree about how someone blasphemes the Holy Spirit.

1. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about rejecting him. If someone does not believe in Jesus, then they will not be forgiven of their sins.
2. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about someone seeing Jesus do miracles and saying that Satan gave him the power to do this. Therefore, people today cannot blaspheme the Holy Spirit.
3. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people who said that the Holy Spirit did not do the things that he did.

See: [Miracle](#); [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Miracle](#)

### What was an unclean spirit?

[3:30]

An unclean spirit was a demon.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### 3:31-34

#### Who were Jesus' family?

[3:32]

Mary was Jesus' mother. The names of four of Jesus' brothers were James, Joseph, Simon and Judas. Although Jesus had sisters, their names are not in the Bible.

See: Matthew 12:46-50; 13:55-56; Mark 6:3; Luke 8:19-21

See: [Family of Jesus](#)

#### Who else is Jesus' family?

[3:35]

Jesus talked about his family. But this was not his mother and brothers. He spoke about how Christians are children of God. Because of this, they are part of Jesus' family.

See: [Children of God](#)

#### What was the will of God?

[3:35]

See: [Will of God](#)

---

### Mark 3:1

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath in the synagogue and shows how he feels about what the Pharisees had done with the Sabbath rules. The Pharisees and Herodians begin planning to put Jesus to death.

**a man with a withered hand**  
"a man with a crippled hand"

### Mark 3:2

**Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him**

"Some people watched Jesus closely to see if he would heal the man with the withered hand"

#### **Some people**

"Some of the Pharisees." Later, in Mark 3:6, these people are identified as Pharisees.

**so that they could accuse him**

If Jesus were to heal the man that day, the Pharisees would accuse him of breaking the law by working on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

**Mark 3:3**

**in the middle of everyone**

"in the middle of this crowd"

**Mark 3:4**

**Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?**

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

**to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm ... to save a life or to kill**

These two phrases are similar in meaning, except that the second is more extreme.

**to save a life or to kill**

It may be helpful to repeat "is it lawful," as that is the question Jesus is asking again in another way. Alternate translation: "is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

**to save a life**

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

**But they were silent**

"But they refused to answer him"

**Mark 3:5**

**He looked around**

"Jesus looked around"

**was grieved**

"was deeply saddened"

**by their hardness of heart**

This metaphor describes how the Pharisees were unwilling to have compassion on the man with the withered hand. Alternate translation: "because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

**Stretch out your hand**

"Reach out with your hand"

**his hand was restored**

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

**Mark 3:6**

**began to plot**

"began to make a plan"

**the Herodians**

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

**how they might put him to death**

"how they might kill Jesus"

**Mark 3:7**

**Connecting Statement:**

A great crowd of people follows Jesus, and he heals many people.

**the sea**

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

**Mark 3:8**

**Idumea**

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

**the things he was doing**

This refers to the miracles Jesus was performing. Alternate translation: "the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

**came to him**

"came to where Jesus was"

**Mark 3:9**

**General Information:**

Verse 9 tells what Jesus asked his disciples to do because of the large crowd of people around him. Verse 10 tells why such a large crowd was around Jesus. The information in these verses can be reordered to present the events in the order they happened, as in the UDB.

**He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him**

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

**Mark 3:10**

**For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him**

This tells why so many people were crowding around Jesus that he thought they might crush him. Alternate translation: "For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

**For he healed many**

The word "many" refers to the large number of people Jesus had already healed. Alternate translation: "For he healed many people"



**everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him**

They did this because they believed that touching Jesus would make them well. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

### Mark 3:11

**saw him**  
"saw Jesus"

**they fell down ... cried out, and they said**

Here "they" refers to the unclean spirits. It is they who are causing the people they possess to do things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

**they fell down before him**

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

**You are the Son of God**

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

### Mark 3:12

**He strictly ordered them**

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

**not to make him known**

"not to reveal who he was"

### Mark 3:13

**General Information:**

Jesus chooses the men he wants to be his apostles.

### Mark 3:14

**so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message**

"so that they would be with him and he could send them to proclaim the message"

### Mark 3:15

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 3:16

**Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter**

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

### Mark 3:17

**to whom he gave**

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

**the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder**

Jesus called them this because they were like thunder. Alternate translation: "the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means thunder men"

### Mark 3:18

**Thaddaeus**

This is the name of a man.

### Mark 3:19

**who would betray him**

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

### Mark 3:20

**Then he went home**

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

**they could not even eat bread**

The word "bread" represents food. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything"

### Mark 3:21

**they went out to seize him**

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

**for they said**

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

**out of his mind**

This idiom describes how they thought he was acting. Alternate translation: "crazy" or "insane"

### Mark 3:22

**By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons**

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

### Mark 3:23

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains with a parable why it is foolish for people to think that Jesus is controlled by Satan.

#### Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

#### How can Satan cast out Satan?

Jesus asked this rhetorical question in response to the scribes saying that he cast out demons by Beelzebul. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

### Mark 3:24

#### If a kingdom is divided against itself

The word "kingdom" is a metonym for the people who live in the kingdom. Alternate translation: "If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other"

#### cannot stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or continue to exist. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "will end"

### Mark 3:25

#### house

This is a metonym for the people who live in a house. Alternate translation: "family" or "household"

### Mark 3:26

#### If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to Satan, and it is also a metonym for his evil spirits. Alternate translation: "If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

#### is not able to stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or stay strong. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

### Mark 3:27

#### plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

### Mark 3:28

#### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

#### the sons of men

"those who have been born of man." This expression is used to emphasize peoples' humanity. Alternate translation: "people"

#### utter

speak

### Mark 3:29

#### will never have forgiveness

The idea in the noun forgiveness can be expressed with a phrase. Alternate translation: "will never be forgiven"

#### is guilty of an eternal sin

"Eternal sin" is a metonym for "a sin that will be eternally punished." Alternate translation: "is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

### Mark 3:30

#### they were saying

"the people were saying"

#### has an unclean spirit

This is an idiom that means to be possessed by an unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "is possessed by an unclean spirit"

### Mark 3:31

#### Then his mother and his brothers came

"Then Jesus's mother and brothers came"

#### They sent for him, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell him that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

### Mark 3:32

#### are looking for you

"are asking for you"

### Mark 3:33

#### Who are my mother and my brothers?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

### Mark 3:34

#### here are my mother and my brothers

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

### Mark 3:35

#### whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

**that person is my brother, and sister, and mother**  
This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more

important than belonging to his physical family.  
Alternate translation: "that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 3:1

**Why were they watching Jesus on the Sabbath in the synagogue?**  
They were watching Jesus to see if he would heal on the Sabbath, so they could accuse him.

### Mark 3:2

**Why were they watching Jesus on the Sabbath in the synagogue?**  
They were watching Jesus to see if he would heal on the Sabbath, so they could accuse him.

### Mark 3:4

**What question did Jesus ask the people about the Sabbath?**  
Jesus asked the people if it was lawful to do good or to do harm on the Sabbath.

**How did the people respond to Jesus' question?**  
The people were silent.

### Mark 3:5

**What then was Jesus' attitude toward them?**  
Jesus became angry with them.

### Mark 3:6

**What did the Pharisees do when Jesus healed the man?**  
The Pharisees went out and plotted to put Jesus to death.

### Mark 3:7

**How many people followed Jesus as he went to the sea?**  
A great crowd followed Jesus.

### Mark 3:8

**How many people followed Jesus as he went to the sea?**  
A great crowd followed Jesus.

### Mark 3:11

**What did the demons cry out when they saw Jesus?**  
The demons cried out that Jesus was the Son of God.

### Mark 3:14

**How many men did Jesus appoint as apostles, and what were they to do?**  
Jesus appointed twelve apostles who were to be with him, preach, and have authority to cast out demons.

### Mark 3:15

**How many men did Jesus appoint as apostles, and what were they to do?**  
Jesus appointed twelve apostles who were to be with him, preach, and have authority to cast out demons.

### Mark 3:19

**Who was the apostle that would betray Jesus?**  
The apostle that would betray Jesus was Judas Iscariot.

### Mark 3:21

**What did Jesus' family think about the crowds and the events surrounding Jesus?**  
Jesus' family thought that he was out of his mind.

### Mark 3:22

**What accusation did the scribes make against Jesus?**  
The scribes accused Jesus of driving out demons by the ruler of demons.

### Mark 3:23

**What was Jesus' response to the scribes' accusation?**  
Jesus responded that no kingdom divided against itself can stand.

### Mark 3:24

**What was Jesus' response to the scribes' accusation?**  
Jesus responded that no kingdom divided against itself can stand.

### Mark 3:25

**What was Jesus' response to the scribes' accusation?**  
Jesus responded that no kingdom divided against itself can stand.

**Mark 3:28**

**What sin did Jesus say cannot be forgiven?**

Jesus said that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit cannot be forgiven.

**Mark 3:29**

**What sin did Jesus say cannot be forgiven?**

Jesus said that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit cannot be forgiven.

**Mark 3:30**

**What sin did Jesus say cannot be forgiven?**

Jesus said that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit cannot be forgiven.

**Mark 3:33**

**Who did Jesus say were his mother and brothers?**

Jesus said that his mother and brothers were those who do the will of God.

**Mark 3:34**

**Who did Jesus say were his mother and brothers?**

Jesus said that his mother and brothers were those who do the will of God.

**Mark 3:35**

**Who did Jesus say were his mother and brothers?**

Jesus said that his mother and brothers were those who do the will of God.

---

## Chapter 4

<sup>1</sup> Again he began to teach beside the sea, and a large crowd gathered around him. He stepped into a boat that was on the sea, and he sat down in it. The whole crowd was on the shore beside the sea. <sup>2</sup> He taught them many things in parables, and in his teaching, this is what he said to them. <sup>3</sup> "Listen! A farmer went out to sow his seed. <sup>4</sup> As he sowed, some seed fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured it. <sup>5</sup> Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. Immediately it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil. <sup>6</sup> But when the sun rose, the plants were scorched, and because they had no root, they dried up. <sup>7</sup> Other seed fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked it, and it did not produce a crop. <sup>8</sup> Other seed fell into good soil and it produced a crop growing up and increasing and yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times." <sup>9</sup> Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear!"

<sup>10</sup> When Jesus was alone, those around him with the twelve asked him about the parables. <sup>11</sup> He said to them, "To you is given the mystery of the kingdom of God. But to those outside everything is in parables,

<sup>12</sup> so that when they look,  
yes they look,  
but do not see,  
and so that when they hear,  
yes they hear,  
but do not understand,  
or else they would turn  
and God would forgive them."

<sup>13</sup> He said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?"

<sup>14</sup> The sower sows the word. <sup>15</sup> These are the ones beside the road, where the word is sown. When they hear, Satan immediately comes and takes away the word that is sown in them. <sup>16</sup> And these are the seed sown on the rocky ground; who, when they hear the word immediately receive it with joy. <sup>17</sup> But they do not have root in themselves, but they endure for a while. Afterward when tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word, they immediately fall away. <sup>18</sup> Still others are the ones sown among the thorns. They are those who hear the word, <sup>19</sup> but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word, and it is unproductive. <sup>20</sup> Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much.

<sup>21</sup> Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand. <sup>22</sup> For nothing is hidden that will not be known, and nothing is secret that will not come out into the open. <sup>23</sup> If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear!" <sup>24</sup> He said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear, for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added to you. <sup>25</sup> Because whoever has, to him will be given more, and whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken."

<sup>26</sup> He also said, "The kingdom of God is like a man who sows his seed on the ground. <sup>27</sup> He sleeps at night and gets up by day, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he does not know how. <sup>28</sup> The earth bears grain by itself: First the blade, then the ear, then the mature grain in the ear. <sup>29</sup> When the crop is ripe, he immediately sends in the sickle because the harvest has come."

<sup>30</sup> Again he said, "To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?"

<sup>31</sup> It is like a mustard seed, which, when it is sown, is the smallest of all the seeds on earth. <sup>32</sup> Yet, when it is sown, it grows and becomes greater than all the garden plants, and it forms large branches, so that the birds of heaven can make their nests in its shade."

<sup>33</sup> With many parables like this he spoke the word to them, as much as they were able to understand, <sup>34</sup> and he did not speak to them without a parable. But when he was alone, he explained everything to his own disciples.

<sup>35</sup> On that day, when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side." <sup>36</sup> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There were other boats going along with

him. <sup>37</sup> Just then a violent windstorm arose, and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was almost full of water. <sup>38</sup> But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. They woke him up, saying, "Teacher, do you not care that we are about to die?"

<sup>39</sup> He got up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Peace! Be still!" Then the wind ceased, and there was a great calm. <sup>40</sup> Then he said to them, "Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?"

<sup>41</sup> They were filled with great fear and said to one another, "Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?"

---

## Mark 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Mark 4:3-10 forms one parable. The parable is explained in 4:14-23.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:12, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth.

---

## Mark 4

### 4:1-9

#### Why did Jesus get into the boat?

[4:1]

Jesus got into the boat near the shore. By doing this, people could not get too close to him. Therefore, everyone could see him and could hear him.

#### What was a parable?

[4:2]

See: [Parable](#)

#### Why did Mark write about sowing seeds?

[4:3]

In this passage, Mark wrote about sowing seeds. This was a long metaphor. He wrote about the different types of people. However, scholars do not agree on who were the people about which Mark wrote.

See: Matthew 13:3-9; Luke 8:5-8

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

#### What was a thorny plant?

[3:7]

A thorny plant was a type of weed. Weeds are bad plants. They harm the good plants. These plants grew in places where people did not want them to grow. Farmers wanted to stop these plants from growing because they harmed the good plants that they wanted to grow.

**Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?**

[4:9]

When someone said “he who has ears to hear, let him hear,” they wanted someone to really listen to what they said because they needed to hear it.

**4:10-12**

**Who were the twelve?**

[4:10]

Mark wrote about the twelve disciples when he wrote about the twelve.

See: [Disciple](#)

**What was the mystery?**

[4:11]

See: [Mystery](#)

**Who was given the mystery of the kingdom of God?**

[4:11]

Those who believed in Jesus were given the mystery of the kingdom of God. Anyone who rejected Jesus would not understand the things he taught. In 4:12, Jesus said that if they understood the things he taught, then they would have believed in him.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

**4:13-20**

**What was the word?**

[4:14]

Jesus explained the metaphor about sowing seeds. He said the sower sowed the word. That is, the things about which Jesus taught. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the gospel. Fewer scholars think Jesus spoke about the kingdom of God.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Metaphor](#); [Word of God](#); [Gospel](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

**Who were the people who were like seeds sown beside the road?**

[4:15]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown beside the road. This was a place where seeds could not grow. Those seeds died because the dirt was too hard. Some scholars think that Jesus spoke about Christians. These people say they were Christians, but they did not do things that honored God. Therefore, they were not at peace with God.

Other scholars think that Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. These people did not believe in the things Jesus taught. They did not believe in Jesus.

See: ; [Metaphor](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **What people were like the seeds sown on rocky ground?**

[4:16]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown on rocky ground. On the rocky ground, the seed could begin to grow. But there was not enough dirt for it to grow very much, so it died.

Some scholars think that Jesus spoke about Christians. These people believed in Jesus, but they rejected Jesus when they were persecuted. Therefore, they are not at peace with God.

Other scholars think that Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. These people said they were Christians, but rejected Jesus when they were persecuted. Therefore, they were not Christians.

See: [Gospel](#) ; [Metaphor](#); [Gospel](#)

### **What people were like seeds sown with the thorns?**

[4:18]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown with the thorns. Thorn plants were bad plants. The thorn plants killed the good plants.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about Christians. These people believed in Jesus, but they made other things more significant than Jesus in their life. They did not honor God as much as they should have honored him.

Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people who were not Christians. They said they were Christians, but they cared more for the things they owned than they cared for Jesus. They were not Christians.

**Advice to translators:** Here, “thorns” is a type of plant that grows among other plants and kills them. It is also not good to be used for anything.

See: [Gospel](#); [Metaphor](#); [Gospel](#)

### **What people were like seeds sown on good soil?**

[4:20]

Jesus used a metaphor to talk about what happened to people when they heard the gospel. Jesus talked about certain people who were like seeds sown on good soil. These people obeyed God and did things that honored God. They made fruit when they did this. That is, they did not live in the way they used to live. They helped others to believe in Jesus and did the things that honored Jesus.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **How did someone bear fruit?**

[4:20]

See: [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#)

### **4:21-29**

### **Why did Jesus use a metaphor about light?**

[4:21]

A lamp lights the entire room. It allows everything to be seen. God is light, and the word of God is light (see: Psalm 119:105; 1 John 1:5). Light made things known that were not known before. Jesus used a metaphor about the light.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the kingdom of God. He wanted people to know they could now know about the kingdom of God.



Other scholars think Jesus spoke about himself. When people believe in Jesus, they should want to tell other people about him and the gospel.

See: [Gospel](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Metaphor](#); [Gospel](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?**

[4:23]

When someone said “he who has ears to hear, let him hear,” they wanted someone to listen to what they said. This is why Jesus said it.

**Why did Jesus say, “for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added”?**

[4:24]

Jesus said, “for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added.” He wanted to say that if the disciples listened to him and obeyed him, they would be rewarded. If they did not do this, they would be disciplined.

See: [Discipline \(To Disciple\)](#); [Reward](#); [Discipline \(To Disciple\)](#)

**How is the kingdom of God like a man who sows his seed on the ground?**

[4:26]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God is like a man who sowed his seed on the ground. This was a metaphor. The seeds were the gospel. Christians sowed the seeds. That is, they spread the gospel by telling it to other people. However, they did not make the seeds grow. God made the seed grow. Jesus wanted to say that Christians could not make other people believe in Jesus.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

**4:30-34**

**How was the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?**

[4:31]

Jesus said the kingdom of God was like a mustard seed. This was a metaphor. The mustard seed was very small seed. It was about 1 millimeter in size. A mustard tree was very large. Jesus wanted to say that the kingdom of God began very small, but became great.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

**What were the birds of heaven?**

[4:32]

The birds of heaven were birds. Heaven was the sky.

See: [Heaven](#)

**What was a parable?**

[4:33]

See: [Parable](#)

**4:35-41**

**Why did Jesus tell the wind to stop?**

[4:39]

Jesus told the wind to stop. This allowed others to know that he controlled the weather. Only God could do this. In ancient times, people thought the sea could not be controlled. They were afraid of the seas.

### Why were the disciples afraid?

[4:41]

The disciples believed in Jesus, but they did not understand who Jesus was. They knew he was the messiah, but they did not understand that he is God.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

---

#### Mark 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus teaches from a boat at the seaside, he tells them the parable of the soils.

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 4:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 4:3

##### Listen!

"Pay attention!"

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

#### Mark 4:4

##### some seed ... devoured it

"some seeds ... devoured them"

#### Mark 4:5

##### Other seed ... it did not have ... it sprang ... it did not have

"Other seeds ... they did not have ... they sprang ... they did not have"

##### it sprang up

"the seed that landed on the rocky ground began to grow quickly"

##### soil

This refers to the loose dirt on the ground in which you can plant seeds.

#### Mark 4:6

##### the plants were scorched

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it scorched the young plants"

##### because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

##### Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seeds ... choked them ... they did not produce"

#### Mark 4:8

##### yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

The amount of grain produced by each plant is being compared to the single seed from which it grew. Ellipsis is used here to shorten the phrases but they can be written out. Alternate translation: "Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

##### thirty ... sixty ... a hundred

"30 ... 60 ... 100." These may be written as numerals.

#### Mark 4:9

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" is a metonym for being willing to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

##### Whoever has ... let him hear

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." Alternate translation: "If you have ears to hear, then hear" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

##### When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone

and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

### Mark 4:11

#### To you is given

This can be stated in active form. "God has given you" or "I have given you"

#### to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

#### everything is in parables

It can be stated that Jesus gives the parables to the people. Alternate translation: "I have spoken everything in parables"

### Mark 4:12

#### when they look ... when they hear

It is assumed that Jesus is speaking about the people looking at what he shows them and hearing what he tells them. Alternate translation: "when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

#### they look, but do not see

Possible meanings are 1) the word "look" here refers to making an effort to see and "see" refers to actually being able to see what they have looked for and is a metaphor for "understand." Alternate translation: "they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

#### they would turn

"they would turn to God." Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "they would repent"

### Mark 4:13

#### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

Jesus used these questions to show how sad he was that his disciples could not understand his parable. Alternate translation: "If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

### Mark 4:14

#### General Information:

Jesus begins to explain the parable he told in [Mark 4:3-8]

#### The sower

"The farmer who sows his seed"

#### sows the word

Sowing God's word represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "teaches people God's word" or "represents one who teaches God's word"

#### the word

The phrase "the word" represents God's message. Alternate translation: "God's message"

### Mark 4:15

#### These are the ones beside the road

Here Jesus speaks about people. Alternate translation: "These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

#### When they hear

"When they hear the word"

### Mark 4:16

#### these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

### Mark 4:17

#### they do not have root in themselves

Having no root represents not fully understanding or believing God's word. Alternate translation: "they are like young plants that have no roots"

#### endure

In this parable, "endure" means "continue to believe." Alternate translation: "continue in their belief"

#### tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

The phrase "on account of the word" means "because they believe God's message. Alternate translation: "tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

#### they immediately fall away

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

### Mark 4:18

#### Still others are the ones sown among the thorns

"Still other people are the seeds that fall among the thorns" or "And other people are like seeds that fall among the thorns"

## Mark 4:19

**the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word**

The words "cares," "deceitfulness," and "desires" are spoken of as if they were weeds that wrap around plants and keep them from growing.

Alternate translation: "the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

**the cares of the world**

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

**the deceitfulness of wealth**

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

**it is unproductive**

"the word does not produce a crop in them." The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

## Mark 4:20

**Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit**

"The seeds that fall on the good soil represent people who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit"

**and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much**

Fruit represents the results or effect of God's word in a person's life. The numbers tell how much fruit there might be, or how great the results might be. Alternate translation: "and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

## Mark 4:21

**Jesus said to them**

"Jesus said to the crowd"

**Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?**

This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

## Mark 4:22

**For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

**nothing is hidden ... nothing is secret**

"there is nothing that is hidden ... there is nothing that is secret" Both of the phrases have the same meaning. Jesus is emphasizing that everything that is secret will be made known.

## Mark 4:23

**If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear**

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

**If anyone ... let him hear**

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

## Mark 4:24

**He said to them**

"Jesus said to the crowd"

**for the measure you use**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) this is a metaphor in which Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

**will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

## Mark 4:25

**to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

## Mark 4:26

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus tells the people parables to teach them about the kingdom of God. Later he explains the parables to his disciples.

**like a man who sows his seed**

When someone sows seed, he plants the seed by scattering it on the ground. Alternate translation: "like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

## Mark 4:27

### **He sleeps at night and gets up by day**

This is something that the man habitually does.  
Alternate translation: "He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

### **gets up by day**

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

### **though he does not know how**

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

## Mark 4:28

### **the blade**

the stalk or sprout

### **the ear**

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

## Mark 4:29

### **he immediately sends in the sickle**

Here "the sickle" is a metonym that stands for the farmer or the people whom the farmer sends out to harvest the grain. Alternate translation: "he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

### **sickle**

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

### **because the harvest has come**

Here the words "has come" are part of an idiom that means it is time for something. Alternative translation: "because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

## Mark 4:30

### **To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?**

Jesus asked this question to cause his hearers to think about what the kingdom of God is like.  
Alternate translation: "With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

## Mark 4:31

### **when it is sown**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

## Mark 4:32

### **it forms large branches**

The mustard tree is described as causing its branches to grow large. Alternate translation: "it has large branches"

## Mark 4:33

### **he spoke the word to them**

"Word" here is a synecdoche for "the message of God." The word "them" refers to the crowds.  
Alternate translation: "he taught them the message of God"

### **as much as they were able to understand**

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

## Mark 4:34

### **when he was alone**

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

### **he explained everything**

Here "everything" refers to all his parables.  
Alternate translation: "he explained all his parables"

## Mark 4:35

### **Connecting Statement:**

As Jesus and his disciples take a boat to escape the crowds of people, a great storm arises. His disciples are afraid when they see that even the wind and the sea obey Jesus.

### **he said to them**

"Jesus said to his disciples"

### **the other side**

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

## Mark 4:36

### **General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 4:37

### **a violent windstorm arose**

Here "arose" is an idiom for "began." Alternate translation: "a violent windstorm began"

### **the boat was almost full of water**

It may be helpful to state that the boat was filling up with water. Alternate translation: "the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

### Mark 4:38

#### the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

#### They woke him up

The word "they" refers to the disciples.

#### do you not care that we are about to die?

The disciples asked this question to show that they were in great danger and that they were upset that Jesus was not helping them. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

#### we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

### Mark 4:39

#### Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

#### a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

### Mark 4:40

#### Then he said to them

"And Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

Jesus asks these questions to make his disciples consider why they are afraid when he is with them. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

### Mark 4:41

#### Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

The disciples ask this question in amazement at what Jesus did. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 4:1

#### Why did Jesus get into a boat to teach?

Jesus got into a boat to teach because a very large crowd had gathered around him.

### Mark 4:4

#### What happened to the seeds sown on the road?

The birds came and devoured them.

### Mark 4:6

#### What happened to the seeds sown on the rocky ground when the sun rose?

They withered away because they had no root.

### Mark 4:7

#### What happened to the seeds sown among thorn plants?

The thorn plants choked them.

### Mark 4:8

#### What happened to the seeds sown in the good soil?

The seeds produced grain, yielding thirty, sixty, and some a hundred times what was planted.

### Mark 4:11

#### What did Jesus say was given to the Twelve, but not to those outside?

Jesus said the mystery of the kingdom of God was given to the Twelve, but not to those outside.

### Mark 4:14

#### In Jesus' parable, what is the seed?

The seed is the word of God.

### Mark 4:15

#### What does the seed sown on the road represent?

It represents those who hear the word, but immediately Satan takes it away.

### Mark 4:16

#### What does the seed sown on the rocky ground represent?

It represents those who hear the word with joy, but when persecution comes they stumble.

### Mark 4:17

#### What does the seed sown on the rocky ground represent?

It represents those who hear the word with joy, but when persecution comes they stumble.

**Mark 4:18**

**What does the seed sown among thorn plants represent?**  
It represents those who hear the word, but the cares of the world choke the word.

**Mark 4:19**

**What does the seed sown among thorn plants represent?**  
It represents those who hear the word, but the cares of the world choke the word.

**Mark 4:20**

**What does the seed sown in the good soil represent?**  
It represents those who hear the word, receive it, and produce fruit.

**Mark 4:22**

**What did Jesus say would happen to the hidden and secret things?**  
Jesus said that the hidden and secret things would be brought into the light.

**Mark 4:26**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a man who casts his seed upon the ground?**  
The man casts the seed, and it grows, but he does not know how, then when the harvest is ripe he gathers it.

**Mark 4:27**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a man who casts his seed upon the ground?**  
The man casts the seed, and it grows, but he does not know how, then when the harvest is ripe he gathers it.

**Mark 4:28**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a man who casts his seed upon the ground?**  
The man casts the seed, and it grows, but he does not know how, then when the harvest is ripe he gathers it.

**Mark 4:29**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a man who casts his seed upon the ground?**  
The man casts the seed, and it grows, but he does not know how, then when the harvest is ripe he gathers it.

**Mark 4:30**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?**  
The mustard seed begins as the smallest of seeds, yet grows into a great plant where many can make their nests.

**Mark 4:31**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?**  
The mustard seed begins as the smallest of seeds, yet grows into a great plant where many can make their nests.

**Mark 4:32**

**In what way is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?**  
The mustard seed begins as the smallest of seeds, yet grows into a great plant where many can make their nests.

**Mark 4:35**

**What happened as the disciples and Jesus crossed the lake?**  
A great storm began, threatening to fill the boat with water.

**Mark 4:36**

**What happened as the disciples and Jesus crossed the lake?**  
A great storm began, threatening to fill the boat with water.

**Mark 4:37**

**What happened as the disciples and Jesus crossed the lake?**  
A great storm began, threatening to fill the boat with water.

**Mark 4:38**

**What was Jesus doing at this time in the boat?**  
Jesus was sleeping.

**What question did the disciples ask Jesus?**  
The disciples asked Jesus if he cared that they were about to die.

**Mark 4:39**

**What did Jesus then do?**  
Jesus rebuked the wind and calmed the sea.

**Mark 4:41**

**After Jesus did this, what was the response of the disciples?**  
The disciples were filled with great fear and wondered who Jesus was that the wind and sea obeyed him.





## Chapter 5

<sup>1</sup> They came to the other side of the sea, to the region of the Gerasenes. <sup>2</sup> When Jesus was getting out of the boat, a man with an unclean spirit came up to him out of the tombs. <sup>3</sup> The man lived in the tombs. No one could restrain him anymore, not even with a chain. <sup>4</sup> He had been bound many times with shackles and with chains. He tore the chains apart and his shackles were shattered. No one had the strength to subdue him. <sup>5</sup> Every night and day in the tombs and in the mountains, he cried out and cut himself with sharp stones. <sup>6</sup> When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran to him and bowed down before him. <sup>7</sup> He cried out with a loud voice, "What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you by God himself, do not torment me." <sup>8</sup> For he had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit."

<sup>9</sup> He asked him, "What is your name?"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many." <sup>10</sup> He begged him again and again not to send them out of the region. <sup>11</sup> Now a great herd of pigs was there feeding on the hill, <sup>12</sup> and they begged him, saying, "Send us into the pigs; let us enter into them." <sup>13</sup> So he allowed them; the unclean spirits came out and entered into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea. <sup>14</sup> Then those who were feeding the pigs ran away and reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside, and so people went out to see what had happened. <sup>15</sup> Then they came to Jesus and they saw the demon-possessed man, the one who had been possessed by Legion, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid. <sup>16</sup> Those who had seen what happened to the demon-possessed man told them about it in detail, and they also told them about the pigs. <sup>17</sup> Then they started to beg him to leave their region.

<sup>18</sup> When he was getting into the boat, the demon-possessed man begged him that he might be with him.

<sup>19</sup> But Jesus did not permit him, but said to him, "Go to your house and to your people and tell them what the Lord has done for you, and how he has shown you mercy." <sup>20</sup> So he went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis the great things that Jesus had done for him, and everyone was amazed.

<sup>21</sup> Now when Jesus had crossed over again to the other side in the boat, a great crowd gathered around him, as he was beside the sea. <sup>22</sup> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue named Jairus came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. <sup>23</sup> He begged again and again, saying, "My little daughter is near death. I beg you, come and lay your hands on her that she may be made well and live." <sup>24</sup> So he went with him, and a great crowd followed him and pressed close around him.

<sup>25</sup> Now a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years. <sup>26</sup> She had suffered much from many doctors and had spent everything that she had, but instead of getting better she grew worse. <sup>27</sup> When she had heard the reports about Jesus, she came up behind him in the crowd and touched his cloak. <sup>28</sup> For she said, "If I touch just his clothes, I will be healed." <sup>29</sup> When she touched him, the bleeding stopped, and she felt in her body that she was healed from her affliction.

<sup>30</sup> Jesus immediately realized in himself that power had gone out from him. He turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched my clothes?"

<sup>31</sup> His disciples said to him, "You see this crowd pressed around you, and you say, 'Who touched me?'"

<sup>32</sup> But Jesus looked around to see who had done it. <sup>33</sup> The woman, knowing what had happened to her, feared and trembled. She came and fell down before him and told him the whole truth. <sup>34</sup> He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace and be healed from your affliction."

<sup>35</sup> While he was speaking, some people came from the leader of the synagogue, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Why trouble the teacher any longer?"

<sup>36</sup> But when Jesus overheard the message that was spoken, he said to the leader of the synagogue, "Do not be afraid. Just believe." <sup>37</sup> He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter, James, and John, the brother of James. <sup>38</sup> They came to the house of the leader of the synagogue and he saw there people making a lot of noise; they were weeping and wailing loudly. <sup>39</sup> When he entered the house, he said to them, "Why are you upset and why do you weep? The child is not dead but sleeps." <sup>40</sup> They began to mock

him. But he put them all outside and took the father of the child and the mother and those who were with him, and he went in where the child was. <sup>41</sup> He took the hand of the child and said to her, "Talitha, koum!" which is translated, "Little girl, I say to you, get up." <sup>42</sup> Immediately the child got up and walked (for she was twelve years of age). They were immediately astonished with overwhelming amazement. <sup>43</sup> He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then he told them to give her something to eat.

---

## Mark 5 General Notes

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Talitha, koum"

The words "Talitha, koum"

---

## Mark 5

### 5:1-8

#### Where was Gerasenes?

[5:1]

See Map: Gerasenes

#### How did someone come out of the tombs?

[5:2]

A tomb was a place where dead people were buried. These were caves at the bottom of mountains. At that time, people possessed with demons lived in those tombs. The tombs were unclean.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[5:2]

Mark wrote about an unclean spirit. Here, he wrote about many demons who were in this man.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

#### Why could no one restrain the man?

[5:4]

When someone was restrained, they could not go from one place to another place or doing other things. This man could not be restrained. This is because the unclean spirit was very strong in the man.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

#### Why did the man cut himself?

[5:5]

The man was in so much pain that he cut himself. He did not want to live anymore. He would rather die than to live with this demon inside of him.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **Why did the man bow down before Jesus?**

[5:6]

The unclean spirit knew Jesus is God. He knew Jesus was greater than he was. In ancient times, someone kneeled before someone who was greater. Or perhaps the unclean spirit was worshipping Jesus.

See: [Son of God](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Son of God](#)

### **Why did the man ask Jesus not to torment him?**

[5:7]

The man did not want Jesus to torment him. That is, he did not want Jesus to harm him in a severe way. He did not want Jesus to punish him and send him to hell to be punished forever. Some scholars think the man was talking here, not the demon living in the man. Other scholars think the demon was talking.

See: [Hell](#); [Hell](#)

## **5:9-20**

### **What was this demon's name?**

[5:9]

The demon said his name was Legion. A legion was a Roman military word. It was a group of 6000 soldiers. So the demon said his name was legion because there were many demons in the man. However, it was possible to speak of this as one demon because they were all in one man.

See: [Demon](#)

### **Why did the demon want to enter into the pigs?**

[5:12]

The demons did not want Jesus to make them leave the area. They wanted Jesus to allow them to go into the group of pigs. Some scholars think they wanted to remain in the same area where they could hurt more people. Other scholars think that they did not want Jesus to punish them and send them to hell.

See: [Hell](#); [Hell](#)

### **Why did the pigs run down the cliffs and into the sea?**

[5:13]

The pigs ran off the cliffs after the demons entered into them. Some scholars think the demons chose pigs because they were unclean according to the Law of Moses. Other scholars think they wanted to destroy the man, but when they were not able to do this, they wanted to destroy the pigs. Other scholars think the pigs were overwhelmed by the demons and the demons made the pigs run over the cliff and into the sea.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why were the people afraid of Jesus?**

[5:15]

The people in that region were afraid after seeing the things Jesus did.

1. Some scholars think the people were afraid because Jesus controlled the demons.
2. Other scholars think the people were afraid because all of the pigs died. 2000 pigs were worth a lot of money. Perhaps they were afraid that they could lose a lot of money.
3. Other scholars think that Jesus greatly punished evil. They were afraid that they would be punished too.

See: [Demon](#)

**Why did the man want to go with Jesus?**

[5:18]

The man wanted to be with Jesus. Some scholars think the man wanted to become a disciple of Jesus. However, Jesus wanted him to stay with the man's own people. This is because the man was a Gentile and lived in a Gentile area. He wanted this man to tell the Gentiles in Decapolis about Jesus.

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

See Map: Decapolis

**Why did Jesus call himself "the Lord"?**

[5:19]

See: [Lord](#)

**5:21-43**

**What was a leader of the synagogue?**

[5:22]

The leader of the synagogue was someone who helped lead people in worshipping God in the synagogue. He was not necessarily a pharisee or sadducee.

See: [Sadducees](#); [Pharisees](#); [Sadducees](#)

**Why did Jairus fall at Jesus' feet?**

5:22

Jairus fell at Jesus' feet to ask him for help. He was begging. He was desperate for help. He was not worshipping Jesus.

**Why did this man want Jesus to lay his hands on his daughter?**

[5:23]

This man thought that Jesus could heal his daughter by touching her. He did not know that Jesus could heal her without touching her. He also did not know that he could heal her after she died.

**What was a flow of blood?**

[5:25]

Women bleed for a few days every month if they are not pregnant. However, this woman bled continuously for 12 years. This would have made her unclean.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#)

**How did this woman "suffer much from many doctors"?**

[5:26]

Mark wrote that the woman "suffered much from many doctors" because many doctors had tried to help her. However, instead of helping her, they actually harmed her more.

**Why were the disciples surprised that Jesus asked who touched him?**

[5:31]

The disciples were surprised that Jesus asked who touched him. That was because many people were touching him. They did not think he could know when someone specific touched him.

**Why was this woman healed?**

[5:29]

This woman was healed because she believed in Jesus.

**What did Jesus say to the woman?**

[5:34]

Jesus told the woman to go in peace and be healed from her suffering. He wanted her to live in a way that honored God. He also wanted her to know that he completely healed her. She was now clean and did not need to be separated from other people.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#)

**Why were the people at the house crying?**

[5:38]

The people at the house were crying because the little girl died.

**Why did the people laugh at Jesus?**

[5:40]

The people laughed at Jesus. The people did not know that Jesus had the power to make someone alive again.

**Why did Jesus not want them to tell anyone about this?**

[5:43]

Jesus did not want this girl's family to tell other people about Jesus healing her. Her father was a Jewish leader and many Jewish leaders rejected Jesus as the messiah. It was not time for them to fight against Jesus. So he did not want them to know what he was doing. Some scholars also think Jesus did not want people to begin bringing dead people to him to be made alive again.

See: [Messianic Secret](#); [Messianic Secret](#)

**Why did the girl need to eat?**

[5:43]

The girl needed to eat because she was alive again in the same way she was alive before she died. She was not resurrected. When someone is resurrected, they do not need to eat.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

---

**Mark 5:1**

**Connecting Statement:**

After Jesus calms the great storm, he heals a man who has many demons, but the local people in

Gerasa are not glad about his healing, and they beg Jesus to leave.

**They came**

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

**the sea**

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

**Gerasenes**

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

**Mark 5:2**

**with an unclean spirit**

This is an idiom meaning that the man is "controlled" or "possessed" by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

**Mark 5:3**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 5:4**

**He had been bound many times**

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "People had bound him many times"

**his shackles were shattered**

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "he shattered his shackles"

**shackles**

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

**No one had the strength to subdue him**

The man was so strong that no one could subdue him. Alternate translation: "He was so strong that no one was strong enough to subdue him"

**subdue him**

"control him"

**Mark 5:5**

**cut himself with sharp stones**

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

**Mark 5:6**

**When he saw Jesus from a distance**

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

**bowed down**

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

**Mark 5:7**

**General Information:**

The information in verses 7 and 8 may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UDB.

**He cried out**

"The unclean spirit cried out"

**What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?**

The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

**Jesus ... do not torment me**

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

**Son of the Most High God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**I beg you by God himself**

Here the unclean spirit is swearing by God as he makes a request of Jesus. Consider how this type of request is made in your language. Alternate translation: "I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

**Mark 5:8**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 5:9**

**He asked him**

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

**He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."**

One spirit was speaking for many here. He spoke of them as if they were a legion, a Roman army unit of about 6,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: "And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

**Mark 5:10**

**He begged him**

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus"

**not to send them**

"not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

**Mark 5:11**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 5:12

**they begged him**  
"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

### Mark 5:13

**he allowed them**  
It may be helpful to state clearly what Jesus allowed them to do. Alternate translation: "Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

**into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea**  
You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

**about two thousand pigs**  
"about 2,000 pigs"

### Mark 5:14

**reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside**  
"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

### Mark 5:15

**Legion**  
This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man. See how you translated this in Mark 5:9.

**in his right mind**  
This is an idiom meaning that he is thinking clearly. Alternate translation: "of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

**they were afraid**  
The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

### Mark 5:16

**Those who had seen what happened**  
"The people who had witnessed what had happened"

### Mark 5:17

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 5:18

**the demon-possessed man**  
Though the man is no longer demon-possessed, he is still described in this way. Alternate translation: "the man who had been demon-possessed"

### Mark 5:19

**But Jesus did not permit him**  
What Jesus did not allow the man to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But he did not allow the man to come with them"

### Mark 5:20

**Decapolis**  
This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

**everyone was amazed**  
It may be helpful to state why the people were amazed. Alternate translation: "all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

### Mark 5:21

**Connecting Statement:**  
After healing the demon-possessed man in region of the Gerasenes, Jesus and his disciples return across the lake to Capernaum where one of the leaders of the synagogue asks Jesus to heal his daughter.

**the other side**  
This refers to the other side of the sea

**beside the sea**  
"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

**the sea**  
This is the Sea of Galilee.

### Mark 5:22

**Jairus**  
This is the name of a man.

### Mark 5:23

**lay your hands**  
"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

**that she may be made well and live**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and heal her and make her live"

### Mark 5:24

**So he went with him**  
"So Jesus went with Jairus." Jesus's disciples also went with him. Alternate translation: "So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

**pressed close around him**  
This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

## Mark 5:25

### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus is on his way to heal the man's little 12-year-old girl, a woman who has been sick for 12 years interrupts by touching Jesus for her healing.

### Now a woman was there

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story with a new person. Consider how new people are introduced into a story in your language.

### who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

### for twelve years

"for 12 years"

## Mark 5:26

### she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

## Mark 5:27

### the reports about Jesus

She had heard reports about Jesus of how he healed people. Alternate translation: "that Jesus healed people"

### cloak

outer garment or coat

## Mark 5:28

### I will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

## Mark 5:29

### she was healed from her affliction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

## Mark 5:30

### that power had gone out from him

When the woman touched Jesus, Jesus felt his power healing her. Jesus himself did not lose any of his power to heal people when he healed her. Alternate translation: "that his healing power had healed someone"

## Mark 5:31

### this crowd pressed around you

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus. See how you translated this in Mark 5:24.

## Mark 5:32

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 5:33

### fell down before him

"knelt down before him." She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission.

### told him the whole truth

The phrase "the whole truth" refers to how she had touched him and had become well. Alternate translation: "told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

## Mark 5:34

### Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

### your faith

"your faith in me"

## Mark 5:35

### While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

### some people came from the leader of the synagogue

"The leader of the synagogue" is a metonym for the synagogue leader's house or household. It is most likely that these were family members or servants and not some other people who happened to be in the house. Alternate translation: "some people came from the house of the leader of the synagogue" or "some people from the synagogue leader's household came"

### the leader of the synagogue

This refers to Jairus ([Mark 5:22](#)).

### synagogue, saying

"synagogue, saying to Jairus"

### Why trouble the teacher any longer?

This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."



**the teacher**

This refers to Jesus.

**Mark 5:36**

**the message that was spoken**

This can be stated as in active form. Alternate translation: "the message that they told Jairus"

**Just believe**

If necessary, you can state what Jesus is commanding Jairus to believe. Alternate translation: "Just believe I can make you daughter live"

**Mark 5:37**

**General Information:**

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

**He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James**

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom he permitted to accompany him. Alternate translation: "He only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

**He did not permit**

Jesus did not permit

**to accompany him**

"to come with him." It may be helpful to state where they were going. Alternate translation: "to accompany him to Jairus' house"

**Mark 5:38**

**General Information:**

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

**he saw**

Jesus saw

**Mark 5:39**

**he said to them**

"Jesus said to the people who were weeping"

**Why are you upset and why do you weep?**

Jesus asked this question to help them see their lack of faith. This may be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "This is not a time to be upset and crying."

**The child is not dead but sleeps**

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

**Mark 5:40**

**They began to mock him**

Jesus used the common word for sleep (verse 39). The reader should understand that the people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

**put them all outside**

"sent all the other people outside the house"

**those who were with him**

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

**went in where the child was**

It may be helpful to state where the child is. Alternate translation: "went into the room where the child was lying"

**Mark 5:41**

**Talitha, koum**

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

**Mark 5:42**

**she was twelve years of age**

"she was 12 years old"

**Mark 5:43**

**He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then**

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

**He strictly ordered them**

"He strongly commanded them"

**Then he told them to give her something to eat.**

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 5:1

**Who met Jesus when they came to the region of the Gerasenes?**

A man with an unclean spirit met Jesus.

### Mark 5:2

**Who met Jesus when they came to the region of the Gerasenes?**

A man with an unclean spirit met Jesus.

### Mark 5:4

**What had happened when people tried to restrain this man with chains?**

When people tried to restrain this man with chains, he tore the chains apart.

### Mark 5:7

**What title did the unclean spirit give Jesus?**

The unclean spirit called Jesus the Son of the Most High God.

### Mark 5:8

**What did Jesus say to the man?**

Jesus said to the man, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit".

### Mark 5:9

**What was the name of the unclean spirit?**

The unclean spirit's name was Legion, because there were many.

### Mark 5:13

**What happened when Jesus cast out the unclean spirit from the man?**

The spirits came out and entered a herd of pigs, who ran down a steep hill and drowned in the lake.

### Mark 5:15

**After the unclean spirit was cast out, what was the condition of the man?**

The man was sitting with Jesus, clothed and in his right mind.

### Mark 5:17

**What did the people of the region ask Jesus to do?**

The people asked Jesus to leave their region.

### Mark 5:19

**What did Jesus tell the man who had lived in the tombs to now do?**

Jesus told the man to tell his people what the Lord had done for him.

### Mark 5:22

**What request did Jairus, the synagogue leader, make of Jesus?**

Jairus asked Jesus to come with him to lay hands on his daughter who was near death.

### Mark 5:23

**What request did Jairus, the synagogue leader, make of Jesus?**

Jairus asked Jesus to come with him to lay hands on his daughter who was near death.

### Mark 5:25

**What was the problem with the woman who touched Jesus' cloak?**

The woman had suffered with a discharge of blood for twelve years.

### Mark 5:28

**Why did the woman touch Jesus' cloak?**

The woman thought that if she just touched Jesus' clothes, she would be healed.

### Mark 5:30

**What did Jesus do when the woman touched his cloak?**

Jesus knew that power had gone out from him and looked around to see who had touched him.

### Mark 5:32

**What did Jesus do when the woman touched his cloak?**

Jesus knew that power had gone out from him and looked around to see who had touched him.

### Mark 5:34

**When the woman told Jesus all the truth, what did Jesus say to her?**

Jesus told her that her faith had made her well, and to go in peace.

### Mark 5:35

**What was the condition of Jairus' daughter when Jesus arrived at the house?**

Jairus' daughter was dead.

**Mark 5:36**

**What did Jesus tell Jairus at this time?**

Jesus told Jairus to not be afraid, but to just believe.

**Mark 5:37**

**Which disciples went with Jesus into the room where the child was?**

Peter, James, and John went with Jesus into the room.

**Mark 5:40**

**What did the people in the house do when Jesus said Jairus' daughter was only sleeping?**

The people laughed at Jesus when he said that Jairus' daughter was only sleeping.

**Mark 5:42**

**When the child got up and walked, how did the people react?**

The people were greatly overcome and astonished.

---

## Chapter 6

<sup>1</sup> He went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. <sup>2</sup> When the Sabbath came, he taught in the synagogue. Many people heard him and they were amazed. They said, "Where did he get these teachings?" "What is this wisdom that has been given to him?" "What are these miracles that he does with his hands?" <sup>3</sup> "Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Josés and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?" They were offended by Jesus. <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor, except in his hometown and among his own relatives and in his own household." <sup>5</sup> He could not do any mighty work, except to lay his hands on a few sick people and heal them. <sup>6</sup> He was amazed at their unbelief. Then he went around the villages teaching.

<sup>7</sup> Then he called the twelve and began to send them out two by two, and he gave them authority over the unclean spirits, <sup>8</sup> and instructed them to take nothing for their journey, except a staff—no bread, no bag, and no money in their belts— <sup>9</sup> but to wear sandals, and not to wear two tunics. <sup>10</sup> He said to them, "Whenever you enter a house, remain until you go away from there. <sup>11</sup> If any town will not receive you or listen to you, when you leave that place, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony to them." <sup>12</sup> They went out and proclaimed that people should repent. <sup>13</sup> They cast out many demons, and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them.

<sup>14</sup> King Herod heard this, for Jesus' name had become well known. Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and that is why these miraculous powers are at work in him." <sup>15</sup> Some others said, "He is Elijah." Still others said, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets in ancient times."

<sup>16</sup> But when Herod heard this he said, "John, whom I beheaded, has been raised."

<sup>17</sup> For Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison on account of Herodias (his brother Philip's wife), because he had married her. <sup>18</sup> For John told Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife." <sup>19</sup> But Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not, <sup>20</sup> for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous and holy man, and he kept him safe. Listening to him made him greatly perplexed, yet he heard him gladly.

<sup>21</sup> Then an opportunity came when Herod had his birthday and he made a dinner for his officials and for the commanders and leaders of Galilee. <sup>22</sup> The daughter of Herodias herself came in and danced for them, and she pleased Herod and his dinner guests. The king said to the girl, "Ask me for anything you want and I will give it to you." <sup>23</sup> He swore to her saying, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half of my kingdom."

<sup>24</sup> She went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask him for?"

She said, "The head of John the Baptist."

<sup>25</sup> She immediately hurried back to the king, and she asked, saying, "I want you to give me, right now, the head of John the Baptist on a wooden platter." <sup>26</sup> Though this deeply grieved the king, he could not refuse her request because of the oath he had made and because of his dinner guests. <sup>27</sup> So the king sent a soldier from his guard and commanded him to bring him John's head. The guard went and beheaded him in the prison. <sup>28</sup> He brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl, and the girl gave it to her mother. <sup>29</sup> When his disciples heard of this, they came and took his body and placed it in a tomb.

<sup>30</sup> The apostles came together with Jesus and told him all that they had done and taught. <sup>31</sup> Then he said to them, "Come away by yourselves into a deserted place and rest a while." For many were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat. <sup>32</sup> So they went away in the boat to a deserted place by themselves. <sup>33</sup> But they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them. <sup>34</sup> When they came ashore, he saw a great crowd and he had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd. So he began to teach them many things.

<sup>35</sup> When the hour was late, his disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place and the hour is already late. <sup>36</sup> Send them away so that they may go into the nearby countryside and villages to buy something to eat for themselves."

<sup>37</sup> But he answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said to him, "Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?"

<sup>38</sup> He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see."

When they found out, they said, "Five loaves and two fish." <sup>39</sup> He commanded all the people to sit down in groups upon the green grass. <sup>40</sup> They sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties. <sup>41</sup> He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples to set before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all. <sup>42</sup> They all ate until they were satisfied. <sup>43</sup> They took up broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full, and also pieces of the fish. <sup>44</sup> There were five thousand men who ate the loaves.

<sup>45</sup> Immediately he made his disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, to Bethsaida, while he sent the crowd away. <sup>46</sup> After taking leave of them, he went up the mountain to pray. <sup>47</sup> Evening came, and the boat was now in the middle of the sea, and he was alone on land. <sup>48</sup> He saw that they were straining against the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night he came to them, walking on the sea, and he wanted to pass by them. <sup>49</sup> But when they saw him walking on the sea, they thought he was a ghost and cried out, <sup>50</sup> because they saw him and were troubled. Immediately he spoke to them and said to them, "Be courageous! It is I! Do not be afraid!" <sup>51</sup> He got into the boat with them, and the wind ceased blowing. They were completely amazed. <sup>52</sup> For they had not understood what the loaves meant. Instead, their hearts were hardened.

<sup>53</sup> When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret and anchored the boat. <sup>54</sup> When they came out of the boat, the people recognized him immediately, <sup>55</sup> and they ran throughout the whole region and began to bring the sick on their mats to wherever they heard he was. <sup>56</sup> Wherever he entered into villages, or cities, or into the country, they would put the sick in the marketplaces. They begged him to let them touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched him were healed.

---

## Footnotes

---

6:3 <sup>[1]</sup>The man called Joses here is called

---

## Mark 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Anointed with oil"

In the ancient Near East, people would try to heal sick people by putting olive oil on them.

---

## Mark 6

### 6:1-6

#### Where did Jesus live when he was a child?

[6:1]

Jesus' family lived in Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

### **What was the Sabbath?**

[6:2]

See: [Sabbath](#)

### **Why did the people want to know who taught Jesus?**

[6:2]

In ancient Israel, many teachers learned from other teachers. They taught the same things their teachers taught. This is why they wanted to know who taught Jesus. He did not teach the same things any other teacher taught.

### **Why did the people ask questions about how Jesus performed miracles?**

[6:2]

The people asked Jesus who gave Jesus the power to do miracles. They did not think God gave Jesus the power to do these miracles. They thought Satan gave him this power (see: Mark 3:22).

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **Did Jesus have brothers and sisters?**

[6:3]

Some scholars think that Mary and Joseph had other children after Jesus was born. These people were talking about Jesus' brothers and sisters. Fewer scholars think that Mary and Joseph did not have any more children after Jesus. They think these were Jesus' cousins.

See: [Family of Jesus](#)

### **Why did the people not like what Jesus said?**

[6:3]

The people did not like what Jesus said because the people knew Jesus was Mary's son. They knew his brothers and sisters, they did not believe he was sent from God and was their messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What did Jesus mean when he said, "a prophet is not without honor"?**

[6:4]

When Jesus said that a prophet was "not without honor," he wanted to say that people respected or honored a prophet. The only place that a prophet is not honored is in the place where he lived when he was a child. Jesus was a prophet. Perhaps he was also thinking about how Israel would reject him as their messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **Why was Jesus unable to heal people?**

[6:5]

Jesus was able to heal anyone in this place. Some scholars think Jesus was not free to heal people when the people did not believe in him. Jesus healed people so they would know that God sent him and that they will believe in him. The people in Nazareth did not believe in Jesus, even when they saw him heal people.

## **6:7-13**

### **Who were the twelve?**

[6:7]

The twelve were the twelve disciples.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What did Jesus send the disciples to do?**

[6:7]

Jesus sent the twelve disciples to tell other people about Jesus and to heal people who have unclean spirits living in them.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus not want the disciples to take anything with them?**

[6:8, 6:9]

Jesus did not want the disciples to take anything with them when they traveled. That was because they were to go quickly and to know that God would give them everything they needed. They took only a staff to help them walk.

They were also not to have two tunics. A tunic was the main piece of clothing they wore. They wore a second tunic at night when it was cold. They carried the other tunic during the day. However, God would make sure they were warm at night.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **Why were the disciples to remain in one house?**

[6:10]

The disciples were told to remain in one house. At this time it was a great honor to have someone stay in your home. Jesus did not want his disciples to dishonor a host by leaving that house.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **Why were the disciples to shake the dust off their feet?**

[6:11]

If the people in a town rejected the disciples, the disciples were told to shake the dust off their feet when they left the town. According to the Law of Moses, the Jews needed to welcome people who were travelling. If they did not welcome the disciples, they disobeyed God. At this time, certain Jews shook the dust off their feet when leaving a place where Gentiles lived. This is because they thought they were leaving an unclean area.

See: [Gentile](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Gentile](#)

### **Why should people repent?**

[6:12]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **Why did someone get anointed with oil?**

[6:13]

In ancient Israel, it was common to anoint someone with oil who was sick so that they might be healed. They poured oil on their head or where they were hurt. It was a way of asking God to help this person.

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

## **6:14-20**

### **Who was King Herod?**

[6:14]

See: [King Herod](#)

### **Why did people think John the Baptist was made alive again?**

[6:14]

Scholars do not know why people thought Jesus was John the Baptist made alive again. These people did not know that these two men lived at the same time. Both Jesus and John were prophets who honored God.

See: [Prophet](#) ;[Prophet](#)

### **Why did people think Jesus was Elijah?**

[6:15]

In ancient Israel, people thought Elijah would return to the earth. This is because he never died. Instead, he went straight to heaven. The prophet Malachi wrote about Elijah returning (see: Malachi 4:5).

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### **What was a prophet?**

[6:15]

See: [Prophet](#)

### **Why did Herod arrest John the Baptist?**

[6:17]

John the Baptist spoke against King Herod. He said the things King Herod did were evil. He said it was wrong for Herod to marry Herodias because his brother Philip was still alive. This made Herod angry. Herod wanted to kill John. However, Herod worried about what people would do if he killed John. Therefore, he put him into prison.

See: Leviticus 20:21

### **Who was Herodias?**

[6:17]

Herodias was the wife of King Herod. Before Herod married her, Herodias was married to Herod's brother Philip.

### **Why was it difficult for Herod to kill John the Baptist?**

[6:20]

The people of Israel thought John the Baptist was a prophet. Therefore they thought it was very wrong to harm John. Herod feared what people would do if he killed a prophet. Some scholars also think he feared John because John was a man who honored God while Herod did not honor God.



See: [Prophet](#)

## **6:21-29**

### **What day was this dinner?**

[6:21]

In this passage, it was Herod's birthday. Many different leaders who served him went to the dinner feast he made for his birthday.

**Advice to translators:** A birthday is a celebration of the day someone was born. Every year on the same day someone was born people celebrate that person.

### **Who was the girl?**

[6:22]

Herodias sent her daughter to dance for Herod. She danced in a way that made men have sexual thoughts about her. She was the daughter of Herodias and Philip. She was Herod's niece and step-daughter.

### **What was an oath?**

[6:22]

See: [Swear \(Oath\)](#)

### **Why did this make Herod sad?**

[6:26]

Herod did not want to kill John the Baptist. He knew John was a man who honored God. However, he did not want people to see him break his oath. Therefore, he had John killed. This made Herod very sad.

See: [Swear \(Oath\)](#)

### **Why did the disciples place John's body in a tomb?**

[6:29]

According to the Law of Moses, a person needed to be buried before the end of the day. Therefore, the disciples buried John's body to obey the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

## **6:30-44**

### **Who went away in the boat?**

[6:32]

The apostles and Jesus went away in the boat.

See: [Apostle](#)

### **What happened in verse 33?**

[6:33]

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving. Many of the people knew who were Jesus and the apostles. The people ran there together on foot from all the towns. Many of them arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

See: [Apostle](#)

**How were the people like sheep without a shepherd?**

[6:34]

Jesus said that the people were like sheep without a shepherd. This was a metaphor. This meant the people did not have a leader to follow.

See: [Metaphor](#)

**What did Mark mean when he wrote the “hour was late”?**

[6:35]

Mark wrote that it was late in the day and they needed to eat and find a place to sleep.

**What was a loaf?**

[6:38]

Bread is made in a loaf. In ancient times, a person needed at least one loaf a day to live. For a meal, five loaves and two fish fed 2 or 3 small families.

**Why did Jesus “bless” the bread?**

[6:41]

When Jesus blessed the bread, he thanked God for giving them the bread.

**How many people ate the bread and fish?**

[6:44]

Mark wrote that 5000 men ate the bread and fish. There were also women and children who ate of the bread and fish. Therefore, more than 5000 people ate.

**6:45-56**

**Where was Bethsaida?**

[6:45]

See Map: Bethsaida

**How were the disciples “straining against the oars”?**

[6:48]

Mark wrote that the disciples were “straining against the oars, for the wind was against them.” That is, they were working hard to row to keep their boat from sinking because of the bad weather.

See: [Disciple](#)

**When was the fourth watch of the night?**

[6:48]

The fourth watch of the night was a time after midnight.

**What was a ghost?**

[6:49]

A ghost is the spirit of a dead person trapped on earth. Ghosts are not real because people must either go to heaven or hell after they die. Spirits do not get trapped on earth when a person dies.

See: [Hell](#); [Heaven](#); [Hell](#)

### What did the loaves mean?

[6:52]

Mark wrote about what the loaves meant. Mark wrote about Jesus walking on the water and feeding 5000 men. These were both miracles. He wanted people to know that Jesus could do miracles because he is God.

See: [Miracle](#)

### Where was Gennesaret?

[6:53]

See Map: Gennesaret

#### Mark 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to his hometown, where he is not accepted.

##### his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

#### Mark 6:2

##### What is this wisdom that has been given to him?

This question can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What is this wisdom that he has gained?"

##### that he does with his hands

This phrase emphasizes that Jesus himself does the miracles. Alternate translation: "that he himself works"

#### Mark 6:3

##### Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

#### Mark 6:4

##### to them

"to the crowd"

##### A prophet is not without honor, except

This sentence uses a double negative to emphasize the positive. Alternate translation: "A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

#### Mark 6:5

##### to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

#### Mark 6:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends his disciples out in sets of two to preach and to heal.

##### he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

##### two by two

"2 by 2" or "in pairs"

#### Mark 6:8

##### General Information:

Jesus's instructions in verses 8 and 9 can be reordered to separate what he told the disciples to do from what he told them not to do, as in the UDB.

**to take nothing for their journey, except a staff**

This double negative emphasizes that a staff is the only thing that they were to take. Alternate translation: "to take only a staff for their journey"

**no bread**

Here "bread" is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: "no food"

**Mark 6:9**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 6:10**

**He said to them**

"Jesus said to the twelve"

**remain until you go away from there**

Here "remain" represents daily going back to that house to eat and sleep there. Alternate translation: "eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

**Mark 6:11**

**as a testimony to them**

"as a testimony against them." The testimony can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

**Mark 6:12**

**They went out**

The word "They" refers to the twelve and does not include Jesus. Also, it may be helpful to state that they went out to various towns. Alternate translation: "They went out to various towns"

**repent**

"stop sinning"

**Mark 6:13**

**They cast out many demons**

It may be helpful to state that they cast the demons out of people. Alternate translation: "They cast many demons out of people"

**Mark 6:14**

**Connecting Statement:**

Before this time, Herod commanded that John the Baptist be killed. When Herod hears about Jesus's miracles, he worries, thinking that someone has raised John the Baptist from the dead.

**King Herod heard this**

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

**Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised**

Some people thought that Jesus was John the Baptist. This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who has been raised'"

**John the Baptist has been raised from the dead**

"Raised from the dead" is an idiom that means "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has raised John the Baptist from the dead" or "John the Baptist has become alive again"

**Mark 6:15**

**Some others said, "He is Elijah."**

It may be helpful to state why some people thought he was Elijah. Alternate translation: "Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

**Mark 6:16**

**whom I beheaded**

Herod said "I beheaded" because he had commanded his soldier to behead John. Alternate translation: "whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

**has been raised**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has risen" or "has become alive again"

**Mark 6:17**

**General Information:**

Here the author begins to give background information about Herod and why he beheaded John the Baptist.

**Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

**on account of Herodias**

"because of Herodias"

**his brother Philip's wife**

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

**because he had married her**

"because Herod had married her"

## Mark 6:18

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 6:19

### Herodias held on to anger against him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John"

### and wanted to kill him

Herodias wanted someone to kill John. Alternate translation: "and she wanted someone to kill him"

### but she could not

What she could not do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

## Mark 6:20

### for Herod feared John; he knew

These two clauses can be linked differently to show more clearly why Herod feared John. Alternate translation: "for Herod feared John because he knew"

### he knew that he was a righteous

"Herod knew that John was a righteous"

### Listening to him

"Listening to John"

## Mark 6:21

### Connecting Statement:

The author continues to give background information about Herod and the beheading of John the Baptist.

### an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time." This was a time when Herodias could finally do something so that John the Baptist would be killed.

### he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

This means that he invited those people to a special dinner to celebrate his birthday with him. Alternate translation: "he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

### a dinner

a formal meal or banquet

## Mark 6:22

### Herodias herself

The word "herself" is a reflexive pronoun used to emphasize that it was significant that it was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

### came in

"came into the room"

## Mark 6:23

### Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

## Mark 6:24

### went out

"went out of the room"

## Mark 6:25

### on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

## Mark 6:26

### because of the oath he had made

The oath was what Herod swore to the girl in verse 23. Alternate translation: "because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

### and because of his dinner guests

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

## Mark 6:27

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 6:28

### on a platter

"on a tray"

## Mark 6:29

### When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

## Mark 6:30

### Connecting Statement:

After the disciples return from preaching and healing, they go somewhere to be alone, but there are many people who come to hear Jesus teach. When it becomes late, he feeds the people and then sends everyone away while he prays alone.

## Mark 6:31

### a deserted place

a place where there are no people

**many were coming and going**

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

**they did not even**

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

**Mark 6:32**

**So they went away**

Here the word "they" includes both the apostles and Jesus.

**Mark 6:33**

**they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them**

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving, and many of the people recognized Jesus and the apostles, and the people ran there together on foot from all the towns, and the people arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

**on foot**

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

**Mark 6:34**

**When they came ... on them because they were like ... to teach them**

When Jesus and the disciples came ... on the people in the crowd because the people in the crowd were like ... to teach the people in the crowd

**they were like sheep without a shepherd**

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

**Mark 6:35**

**When the hour was late**

This means it was late in the day. Alternate translation: "When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

**a deserted place**

This refers to a place where there are no people. See how you translated this in Mark 6:31.

**Mark 6:36**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 6:37**

**But he answered and said to them**

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

**Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?**

The disciples ask this question to say that there is no way they could afford to buy enough food for this crowd. Alternate translation: "We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

**two hundred denarii**

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

**Mark 6:38**

**loaves**

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

**Mark 6:39**

**green grass**

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

**Mark 6:40**

**in groups of hundreds and fifties**

This refers to the number of people in each of the groups. Alternate translation: "with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

**Mark 6:41**

**looking up to heaven**

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

**he blessed**

"he spoke a blessing" or "he gave thanks"

**He also divided the two fish among them all**

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

**Mark 6:42**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 6:43**

**They took up**

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

**broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full**

"twelve baskets full of broken pieces of bread"

**twelve baskets**  
"12 baskets"

#### **Mark 6:44**

**There were five thousand men who ate the loaves**  
Telling the number of men in the crowd hints at how large the crowd was. The women and children also ate. Alternate translation: "So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

**five thousand men**  
"5,000 men"

#### **Mark 6:45**

**to the other side**  
This refers to the Sea of Galilee. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

**Bethsaida**  
This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### **Mark 6:46**

**After taking leave of them**  
"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### **Mark 6:47**

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Mark 6:48**

**Connecting Statement:**  
A storm arises while the disciples are trying to cross the lake. Seeing Jesus walking on the water terrifies them. They do not understand how Jesus can calm the storm.

**fourth watch**  
This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### **Mark 6:49**

**a ghost**  
the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### **Mark 6:50**

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Mark 6:51**

**They were completely amazed**  
If you need to be more specific, it can be stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### **Mark 6:52**

**what the loaves meant**  
Here the phrase "the loaves" refers to when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread. Alternate translation: "what it meant when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread" or "what it meant when Jesus caused the few loaves to become many"

**their hearts were hardened**  
Having a hard heart represents being too stubborn to understand. Alternate translation: "they were too stubborn to understand"

#### **Mark 6:53**

**Connecting Statement:**  
When Jesus and his disciples arrive at Gennesaret in their boat, people see him and bring people for him to heal. This happens wherever they go.

**Gennesaret**  
This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### **Mark 6:54**

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Mark 6:55**

**they ran throughout the whole region**  
It may be helpful to state why they ran through the region. Alternate translation: "they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

**they ran ... they heard**  
The word "they" refers to the people who recognized Jesus, not to the disciples.

**the sick**  
This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

#### **Mark 6:56**

**Wherever he entered**  
"Wherever Jesus entered"

**they would put**  
Here "they" refers to the people. It does not refer to Jesus's disciples.

**the sick**

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

**They begged him**

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

**let them touch**

The word "them" refers to the sick.

**the edge of his garment**

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

**as many as**

"all those who"

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 6:2

**Why were the people of Jesus' home town shocked about him?**

The people did not know from where he got his teachings, his wisdom, and his miracles.

### Mark 6:4

**Where did Jesus say a prophet is without honor?**

Jesus said a prophet is without honor in his home town, among his relatives, and in his own household.

### Mark 6:6

**What amazed Jesus about the people in his home town?**

Jesus was amazed by the unbelief of the people in his home town.

### Mark 6:7

**What authority did Jesus give the Twelve as he sent them out?**

Jesus gave the Twelve authority over unclean spirits.

### Mark 6:8

**What did the Twelve take with them on their journey?**

The Twelve took a staff, sandals, and one tunic.

### Mark 6:9

**What did the Twelve take with them on their journey?**

The Twelve took a staff, sandals, and one tunic.

### Mark 6:11

**What did Jesus tell the Twelve to do if a place did not receive them?**

Jesus told the Twelve to shake off the dust under their feet as a testimony against them.

### Mark 6:14

**Who did the people suppose Jesus was?**

The people supposed that Jesus was John the Baptizer, or Elijah, or a prophet.

### Mark 6:15

**Who did the people suppose Jesus was?**

The people supposed that Jesus was John the Baptizer, or Elijah, or a prophet.

### Mark 6:18

**What had John the Baptizer told Herod he was doing unlawfully?**

John had told Herod it was unlawful for Herod to marry his brother's wife.

### Mark 6:20

**How did Herod react when he heard John preach?**

Herod became upset when he heard John preach, but he was still glad to hear him.

### Mark 6:23

**What oath did Herod swear to Herodias?**

Herod swore that she could have whatever she asked of him, up to half of his kingdom.

### Mark 6:25

**For what did Herodias ask?**

Herodias asked for the head of John the Baptizer on a platter.

### Mark 6:26

**How did Herod react to Herodias' request?**

Herod became very sorry, but did not refuse her request because of the oaths he had made in front of his guests.



**Mark 6:33**

**What happened when Jesus and the apostles tried to go away by themselves to rest?**

Many people recognized them and ran to arrive there before Jesus and the apostles.

**Mark 6:34**

**What was Jesus' attitude toward the crowd that was waiting for them?**

Jesus had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd.

**Mark 6:37**

**When asked by Jesus, what did the disciples think they would have to do to feed the people?**

The disciples thought they would have to go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread.

**Mark 6:38**

**What food did the disciples already have with them?**

The disciples already had five loaves and two fish with them.

**Mark 6:41**

**What did Jesus do as he took the loaves and fish?**

As he took the loaves and fish, Jesus looked up to heaven, blessed and broke the loaves, and gave them to his disciples.

**Mark 6:43**

**How much food was left after everyone ate?**

There were twelve baskets of bread, and pieces of fish left after everyone ate.

**Mark 6:44**

**How many men had been fed?**

There were five thousand men that had been fed.

**Mark 6:48**

**How did Jesus come to the disciples on the lake?**

Jesus came to the disciples walking on the lake.

**Mark 6:50**

**What did Jesus tell the disciples when they saw him?**

Jesus told the disciples to be brave and to not be afraid.

**Mark 6:52**

**Why did the disciples not understand about the miracle of the loaves?**

The disciples did not understand about the miracle of the loaves because their minds were slow to understand.

**Mark 6:55**

**What did the people of the region do when they recognized Jesus?**

The people brought the sick on stretchers to Jesus wherever they heard he was coming.

**Mark 6:56**

**What happened to those who just touched the fringe of Jesus' garment?**

Those who just touched the fringe of Jesus' garment were healed.

## Chapter 7

<sup>1</sup> The Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around him. <sup>2</sup> They saw that some of his disciples ate bread with hands that were unclean, that is, unwashed. <sup>3</sup> (For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully, because they hold to the tradition of the elders. <sup>4</sup> When the Pharisees come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they bathe themselves, and they hold to many other things they have received, such as the washing of cups, pots, copper vessels, and the couches upon which they eat.) <sup>5</sup> The Pharisees and the scribes asked Jesus, "Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?"

<sup>6</sup> But he said to them, "Isaiah prophesied well about you hypocrites. As it is written,

'This people honors me with their lips,  
but their heart is far from me.

<sup>7</sup> In vain they worship me,  
teaching the commands of men as their doctrines.'

<sup>8</sup> You abandon the commandment of God and hold on to the tradition of men." <sup>9</sup> He also said to them, "How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! <sup>10</sup> For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and, 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death.' <sup>11</sup> But you say, 'If a man says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"' (that is to say, 'a Gift'), <sup>12</sup> then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother. <sup>13</sup> You are making the word of God void by your tradition which you have handed down. And many similar things you do." <sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup><sup>[1]</sup><sup>17</sup> Now when Jesus left the crowd and entered the house, his disciples asked him about the parable. <sup>18</sup> Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding? Do you not know that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, <sup>19</sup> because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine?" With this statement Jesus declared all foods clean. <sup>20</sup> He said, "It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>21</sup> For from within a person, out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder, <sup>22</sup> adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, folly. <sup>23</sup> All these evils come from within, and they are what defile a person."

<sup>24</sup> He got up from there and went away to the region of Tyre and Sidon. There he went into a house, and he wanted no one to know where he was, yet he could not be hidden. <sup>25</sup> But immediately <sup>[2]</sup> a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit heard about him and came and fell down at his feet. <sup>26</sup> Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophenician by descent. She begged him to cast out the demon from her daughter. <sup>27</sup> He said to her, "Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

<sup>28</sup> But she answered and said to him, "Yes, Lord, even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs."

<sup>29</sup> He said to her, "Because of what you have said, you are free to go. The demon has gone out of your daughter." <sup>30</sup> She went back to her house and found the child lying on the bed, and the demon was gone.

<sup>31</sup> Then he went out again from the region of Tyre, and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee up into the region of the Decapolis. <sup>32</sup> They brought to him someone who was deaf and had difficulty speaking, and they begged him to lay his hand on him. <sup>33</sup> Then taking him aside away from the crowd privately, he put his fingers into his ears, and then he spit and touched his tongue. <sup>34</sup> Then he looked up to heaven, sighed, and said to him, "Ephphatha," that is to say, "Open!" <sup>35</sup> At once his ears were opened, the bond of his tongue was released, and he began to speak plainly.

<sup>36</sup> Jesus ordered them to tell no one. But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it. <sup>37</sup> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done all things well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak."

## Footnotes

---

7:16 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies do not have verse 16.

7:25 <sup>[2]</sup>Some ancient copies do not have the words,

---

## Mark 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:6-7, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hand washing

The Pharisees washed many things that were not dirty because they were trying to make God think that they were good. They washed their hands before they ate, even when their hands were not dirty, though the law of Moses did not say that they had to do it. Jesus told them that they were wrong and that people make God happy by thinking and doing the right things. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Ephphatha"

This is an Aramaic word. Mark wrote it the way it sounds using Greek letters and then explained what it means.

---

## Mark 7

### 7:1-23

#### Why did the Pharisees and scribes come from the region of Galilee to Jerusalem?

[7:1]

The Pharisees and scribes came from Jerusalem to see what Jesus and the disciples were doing. Scholars think the Pharisees and Scribes were searching for ways to accuse Jesus of not following the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Scribe](#); [Disciple](#); [Law of Moses](#)

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did people not eat without washing their hands?

[7:2]

In ancient Israel, the Jews did not eat unless they washed their hands in a certain way. The Jews washed their hands in the way the religious leaders taught. Mark called the rules made by the religious leaders the "traditions of the elders." They taught that Jews needed to wash their hands after they went to the marketplace. They needed to wash because they were around Gentiles. Gentiles were unclean. These rules were not in the Law of Moses.

**Advice to Translators:** A marketplace is a place where people go to get food, clothing, and other things they need to live.

See: [Gentile](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Gentile](#)

**Why did the Pharisees bathe themselves?**

[7:4]

The Pharisees bathed themselves after they went to the marketplace. The religious teachers taught that people needed to wash their hands after they went to the marketplace. However, the Pharisees washed their whole body. They did this because they were near Gentiles and Gentiles were unclean. None of this was in the Law of Moses.

**Advice to Translators:** A marketplace is a place where people go to get food, clothing, and other things they need to live.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Gentile](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

**Why did the Pharisees wash everything?**

[7:4]

The Law of Moses taught that certain things were unclean and needed to be washed. The religious teachers and the Pharisees thought that even more things needed to be washed than what the Law of Moses said to wash. Mark wanted to write that the Pharisees and other religious teachers taught certain things were sins. However, those things were not taught in the Law of Moses. These were rules made by men, not God.

See: [Sin](#); [Pharisees](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Sin](#)

**What did Jesus say to the Pharisees?**

[7:6, 7:7]

Jesus said that the Pharisees were hypocrites. The Pharisees said they were honoring God. They did things so that other people would think they were honoring God. However, they really did not want to honor God. Instead, they only wanted people to think they honored God.

The Pharisees were like the people Isaiah prophesied about. They obeyed men and the rules made by men. However, they did not obey God and the rules he made.

See: [Hypocrisy \(Hypocrite\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Hypocrisy \(Hypocrite\)](#)

**What did Mark say about honoring your father and mother?**

[7:10, 7:11, 7:12]

In the Law of Moses, children were to honor their father and mother. However, the religious teachers in Israel taught something different. Children could promise something to God that normally would be given to their parents. If they did this, they did not need to give it to help their parents. Neither did they need to use it in a certain way or to give it to a priest. Jesus said this did not obey the Law of Moses about honoring your father and mother.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

**What defiled someone?**

[7:15]

Jesus said that things going into a person did not make them unclean. Instead, it was things that came out of people that made them unclean. That is, the wrong things a person thought and did made them unclean.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#)

**Advice to translators:** Something that is defiled has been made unclean.

### **Why do some translations not have verse 16?**

[7:16]

Most of the ancient copies of the New Testament in Greek do not have the words in verse 16. Therefore, scholars think Mark did not write these words. However, the person who made separated the passages into verses did this with a copy of the New Testament in Greek that had those words.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#))

### **Which parable did the disciples ask Jesus about?**

[7:17]

The disciples asked about a parable. The parable was about what Jesus said in verse 15.

See: [Parable](#); [Parable](#)

### **What did Jesus want to teach when he used this parable?**

[7:18, 7:19, 7:20, 7:21, 7:22, 7:23]

The disciples did not understand what Jesus wanted to teach them when Jesus used this parable. He wanted them to know that God cared more about what people did than what people ate.

Some scholars think Jesus changed the Law of Moses. He could do this because he made the Law of Moses. Christians were now able to eat any food. Food was no longer clean or unclean. Other scholars do not think Jesus changed the Law of Moses. Instead, Jesus wanted people to know that the Law of Moses was going to be fulfilled in Jesus. Believing in Jesus would now be how Christians could now follow the Law of Moses.

See: Matthew 5:21-48; Acts 10; Acts 15

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Parable](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Law of Moses](#)

## **7:24-36**

### **Where were Tyre and Sidon?**

[7:24]

Tyre and Sidon were cities outside of Israel.

See Map: Tyre and Sidon

### **Why did Jesus not want people to know where he was?**

[7:24]

Scholars think Jesus was searching for a place to rest. He wanted to have time alone with his disciples.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What was an unclean spirit?**

[7:25]

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **Why did the woman fall down at Jesus' feet?**

[7:25]

The women begged Jesus to do something when she fell down at his feet. She did not do this to worship him.

### **Where was Syrophenicia?**

[7:26]

See Map: Syrophenicia

### **Why did Jesus talk about dogs?**

[7:27]

Jesus talked about a dog who ate food that fell off the table. This was a metaphor.

Some scholars think he talked about the disciples when he talked about the children. He talked about the Gentiles when he talked about the dogs. He talked about something he gave them when he talked about the bread. He wanted to say that he needed to teach the disciples before he taught her.

Other scholars think that he talked about Israel when he talked about the children. He was talking about the Gentiles when he talked about the dogs. He talked about the gospel message and the blessings of Jesus' miracles when he talked about bread. He wanted to say that he taught the gospel to the Jews before he taught the gospel to the Gentiles.

See: [Miracle](#); [Disciple](#); [Gentile](#); [Gospel](#); [Miracle](#)

### **Why did Jesus heal this woman's daughter?**

[7:29]

The woman made it known that she believed in Jesus by her reply to Jesus. Jesus healed her daughter because the woman believed in Jesus.

### **Where was the Sea of Galilee?**

[7:31]

See Map: Sea of Galilee

### **Where was Decapolis?**

[7:31]

See Map: Decapolis

### **What was the laying on of hands?**

[7:32]

See: [Laying on of Hands](#)

### **Why did Jesus spit and touch the man's tongue?**

[7:33]

Jesus spit and touched the man's tongue. This was a symbol. However, he did not say what was the meaning of the symbol.

Some scholars think Jesus spat onto the ground.

Other scholars think Jesus spat into his hand and then touched the man's tongue.

See: [Symbol](#)

## What did Mark mean when he said the man's "tongue was released"?

[7:35]

Jesus healed a man that was not able to hear or speak. Mark said that the man's "tongue was released." That is, the man was now able to speak. The man was healed instantly.

## Why did Jesus not want them to tell anyone?

[7:36]

See: [Messianic Secret](#)

### Mark 7:1

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees and scribes.

#### gathered around him

"gathered around Jesus"

### Mark 7:2

#### They saw

"The Pharisees and the scribes saw"

#### that is, unwashed

The word "unwashed" explains why the disciples' hands were defiled. It can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

### Mark 7:3

#### General Information:

In verses 3 and 4, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

#### For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully

The words "do not" and "unless" are a double negative. This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "For the Pharisees and all the Jews eat only after they wash their hands carefully"

#### unless they wash their hands carefully

This kind of hand washing was an important ceremonial or religious act, not just an act of making ones hands clean physically. The Jews washed their hands carefully to obey all religious traditions and rules about cleanness. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

#### elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

### Mark 7:4

#### they hold to many other things they have received

The words "things they have received" refers to traditions that they learned from their elders. Alternate translation: "they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

#### copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

#### the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

### Mark 7:5

#### Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

Here "walk according to" is a metaphor for "obey." The Pharisees and scribes asked this question to challenge Jesus's authority. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

#### unclean

The hands were ritually unclean because the disciples had not performed the ceremonial washing. The Pharisees were not accusing them of eating with physical dirt on their hands.

#### bread

This is a synecdoche, representing food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

### Mark 7:6

#### General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah, who had written scripture many years earlier.

**with their lips**

Here "lips" is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: "by what they say"

**but their heart is far from me**

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts or emotions. This is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: "but they do not really love me"

**Mark 7:7**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 7:8**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

**You abandon the commandment of God**

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

**hold on to**

This phrase is a metaphor for strictly obeying. Alternate translation: "strictly obey"

**Mark 7:9**

**How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition**

Jesus uses this ironic statement to rebuke his listeners for forsaking God's commandment. Alternate translation: "You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

**How well you reject**

"How skillfully you reject"

**Mark 7:10**

**He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death**

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother"

**who speaks evil of**

"who curses"

**Mark 7:11**

**General Information:**

In verses 11 and 12, Jesus shows how the Pharisees teach people that they do not have to obey God's commandment to honor their parents. In verse 11 Jesus tells what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions, and in verse 12 he tells how that affects what people do for their parents.

**is Corban**

"Corban" is a Hebrew word that refers to things that people promise to give to God. Translators normally transliterate it using the target language alphabet. Some translators translate its meaning, and then leave out Mark's explanation of the meaning that follows. Alternate translation: "is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

**Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban**

A person might say this so that he would not have to give anything to help his parents. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

**a Gift**

This phrase explains the meaning of the Hebrew word "Corban." Mark explained the meaning so that his non-Jewish readers could understand what Jesus said. This seems to have been the proper name of a sacrifice. You may need to make explicit who the gift was given to. Alternate translation: "a Gift to God"

**Mark 7:12**

**then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother**

Possible meanings are that by telling people that they could say that their possessions are Corban, 1) the Pharisees did not allow people to help their parents, or 2) the Pharisees allowed people to refuse to help their parents. Alternate translation: "then you permit him to do nothing for his father or his mother"

**then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother**

Here "do anything" refers to helping his parents by giving to them. This can be translated as "then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

**Mark 7:13**

**the word of God**

Jesus is speaking specifically of the command to love father and mother. Alternate translation: "God's command"

**void**

canceled or done away with

**many similar things you do**

"you are doing many other things similar to this"



## Mark 7:14

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable to the crowd to help them understand what he has been saying to the scribes and Pharisees.

### He called

"Jesus called"

### Listen to me, all of you, and understand

The words "Listen" and "understand" are related. Jesus uses them together to emphasize that his hearers should pay close attention to what he is saying.

### understand

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is telling them to understand. Alternate translation: "try to understand what I am about to tell you"

## Mark 7:15

### nothing from outside of a person

Jesus is speaking about what a person eats. This is in contrast to "what comes out of the person." Alternate translation: "nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

### It is what comes out of the person

This refers to the things a person does or says. This is in contrast to what is "outside a person that ... enters into him." Alternate translation: "It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

## Mark 7:16

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 7:17

### Connecting Statement:

The disciples still do not understand what Jesus has just said to the scribes, Pharisees, and crowds. Jesus explains his meaning more thoroughly to them.

### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story. Jesus is now away from the crowd, in a house with his disciples.

## Mark 7:18

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples by asking a question.

### Are you also still without understanding?

Jesus uses this question to express his disappointment that they do not understand. This

can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

## Mark 7:19

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he is using to teach his disciples.

### because ... latrine?

This is the end of the question that begins with the words "Do you not see" in verse 18. Jesus uses this question to teach his disciples something they should already know. It can be expressed as a statement. "You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

### it cannot go into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Here Jesus means that food does not affect a person's character. Alternate translation: "it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

### because it

Here "it" refers to what goes into a person; that is, what a person eats.

### all foods clean

It may be helpful to explain clearly what this phrase means. Alternate translation: "all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

## Mark 7:20

### He said

"Jesus said"

### It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

## Mark 7:21

### out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Alternate translation: "out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

## Mark 7:22

### sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

### slander

or blasphemy

## Mark 7:23

### come from within

Here the word "within" describes a person's heart. Alternate translation: "come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

## Mark 7:24

### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus goes away to Tyre, he heals the daughter of a Gentile woman who has extraordinary faith.

## Mark 7:25

### had an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that she was possessed by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "was possessed by an unclean spirit"

### fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

## Mark 7:26

### Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophenician by descent

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story, as the author gives us background information about the woman.

### Syrophenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

## Mark 7:27

### Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

Here Jesus speaks about the Jews as if they are children and the Gentiles as if they are dogs. Alternate translation: "Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

### Let the children first be fed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We must first feed the children of Israel"

### proper

morally right

### bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

### dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

## Mark 7:28

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 7:29

### you are free to go

Jesus was implying that she no longer needed to stay to ask him to help her daughter. He would do it. Alternate translation: "you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

### The demon has gone out of your daughter

Jesus has caused the unclean spirit to leave the woman's daughter. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

## Mark 7:30

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 7:31

### Connecting Statement:

After healing people in Tyre, Jesus goes to the Sea of Galilee. There he heals a deaf man, which amazes the people.

### went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

### up into the region

Possible meanings are 1) "in the region" as Jesus is at the sea in the region of the Decapolis or 2) "through the region" as Jesus went through the region of the Decapolis to get to the sea.

### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:20]

## Mark 7:32

### They brought

"And people brought"

### who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

### they begged him to lay his hand on him

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, people are begging Jesus to heal a man. Alternate translation: "they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

### Mark 7:33

**Then taking him ... privately, he**  
"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

**he put his fingers into his ears**  
Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

**then he spit and touched his tongue**  
It may be helpful to state that Jesus spit on his fingers. Alternate translation: "then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

### Mark 7:34

**looked up to heaven**  
This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

**sighed**  
This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

**said to him**  
"said to the man"

**Ephphatha**  
This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

### Mark 7:35

**his ears were opened**  
This means he was able to hear. Alternate translation: "his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

### the bond of his tongue was released

This metaphor speaks of the man's tongue as if it were bound by a rope or chain that kept the man from speaking and that Jesus broke or loosened so the man could speak. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

### Mark 7:36

**But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it**  
The refers to him ordering them not to tell anyone about what he had done. Alternate translation: "But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

**the more abundantly**  
"the more widely" or "the more"

### Mark 7:37

**were extremely astonished**  
"were utterly amazed" or "were exceedingly astonished" or "were astonished beyond all measure"

**the deaf hear and the mute speak**  
These refer to people. Alternate translation: "the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 7:2

**What were some of Jesus' disciples doing that offended the Pharisees and scribes?**  
Some of the disciples were eating with unwashed hands.

### Mark 7:3

**Whose tradition was it that hands, cups, pots, copper vessels, and dining couches be washed before eating?**  
It was the tradition of the elders that hands, cups, pots, copper vessels, and dining couches be washed before eating.

### Mark 7:4

**Whose tradition was it that hands, cups, pots, copper vessels, and dining couches be washed before eating?**  
It was the tradition of the elders that hands, cups, pots, copper vessels, and dining couches be washed before eating.

### Mark 7:8

**What did Jesus say to the Pharisees and scribes about their teaching on the issue of washing?**  
Jesus said that the Pharisees and scribes taught the rules of men while abandoning the commandment of God.

### Mark 7:9

**What did Jesus say to the Pharisees and scribes about their teaching on the issue of washing?**

Jesus said that the Pharisees and scribes taught the rules of men while abandoning the commandment of God.

### Mark 7:11

**How did the Pharisees and scribes void the commandment of God which says to honor your father and mother?**

They voided God's commandment by telling people to give to them as Corban the money that would have helped their father and mother.

### Mark 7:12

**How did the Pharisees and scribes void the commandment of God which says to honor your father and mother?**

They voided God's commandment by telling people to give to them as Corban the money that would have helped their father and mother.

### Mark 7:13

**How did the Pharisees and scribes void the commandment of God which says to honor your father and mother?**

They voided God's commandment by telling people to give to them as Corban the money that would have helped their father and mother.

### Mark 7:15

**What did Jesus say does not defile a person?**

Jesus said that nothing from outside of a person can defile him when it enters into him.

**What did Jesus say defiles a person?**

Jesus said that what comes out of a person defiles him.

### Mark 7:18

**What did Jesus say does not defile a person?**

Jesus said that nothing from outside of a person can defile him when it enters into him.

### Mark 7:19

**What did Jesus say does not defile a person?**

Jesus said that nothing from outside of a person can defile him when it enters into him.

**What kinds of foods did Jesus declare to be clean?**

Jesus declared all foods to be clean.

### Mark 7:20

**What did Jesus say defiles a person?**

Jesus said that what comes out of a person defiles him.

### Mark 7:21

**What did Jesus say defiles a person?**

Jesus said that what comes out of a person defiles him.

**What are three things that Jesus said can come out of a person to defile him?**

Jesus said that evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder, adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, and folly can come out of a person to defile him.

### Mark 7:22

**What did Jesus say defiles a person?**

Jesus said that what comes out of a person defiles him.

**What are three things that Jesus said can come out of a person to defile him?**

Jesus said that evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder, adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, and folly can come out of a person to defile him.

### Mark 7:23

**What did Jesus say defiles a person?**

Jesus said that what comes out of a person defiles him.

### Mark 7:25

**Was the woman whose daughter had an unclean spirit a Jew or a Greek?**

The woman whose daughter had an unclean spirit was a Greek.

### Mark 7:26

**Was the woman whose daughter had an unclean spirit a Jew or a Greek?**

The woman whose daughter had an unclean spirit was a Greek.

### Mark 7:28

**How did the woman respond when Jesus told her that it was not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs?**

The woman said that even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs.

**Mark 7:29**

**What did Jesus do for the woman?**

Jesus cast the demon out of the woman's daughter.

**Mark 7:30**

**What did Jesus do for the woman?**

Jesus cast the demon out of the woman's daughter.

**Mark 7:33**

**When the man who was deaf and had a speech impediment was brought to Jesus, what did he do to heal him?**

Jesus put his fingers in the man's ears, spit and touched his tongue, then looked to heaven and said, "Open!"

---

**Mark 7:34**

**When the man who was deaf and had a speech impediment was brought to Jesus, what did he do to heal him?**

Jesus put his fingers in the man's ears, spit and touched his tongue, then looked to heaven and said, "Open!"

**Mark 7:36**

**What did the people do when Jesus told them to tell no one about his healings?**

The more Jesus commanded them to be quiet, the more they talked about it.

## Chapter 8

<sup>1</sup> In those days, there was again a great crowd, and they had nothing to eat. Jesus called his disciples and said to them, <sup>2</sup> "I have compassion on the crowd because they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat. <sup>3</sup> If I send them away to their home without eating, they may faint on the way. Some of them have come a long way."

<sup>4</sup> His disciples answered him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?"

<sup>5</sup> He asked them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven." <sup>6</sup> He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground. He took the seven loaves, gave thanks, and broke them. He gave them to his disciples to set before them, and they set them before the crowd. <sup>7</sup> They also had a few small fish, and after he gave thanks for them, he commanded the disciples to serve these as well. <sup>8</sup> They ate and were satisfied, and they picked up the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets. <sup>9</sup> There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away. <sup>10</sup> Immediately he got into the boat with his disciples, and they went into the region of Dalmanutha.

<sup>11</sup> Then the Pharisees came out and began to argue with him. They sought from him a sign from heaven, to test him. <sup>12</sup> He sighed deeply in his spirit and said, "Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation." <sup>13</sup> Then he left them, got into a boat again, and went away to the other side.

<sup>14</sup> Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread with them. They had no more than one loaf of bread in the boat. <sup>15</sup> He instructed them, saying, "Keep watch and be on guard against the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod."

<sup>16</sup> The disciples were arguing with one another about having no bread.

<sup>17</sup> When he understood this, he asked them, "Why are you arguing about having no bread? Do you still not see or understand? Do you have hardened hearts? <sup>18</sup> You have eyes, do you not see? You have ears, do you not hear? Do you not remember? <sup>19</sup> When I broke the five loaves among the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Twelve."

<sup>20</sup> "When I broke the seven loaves among the four thousand, how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Seven."

<sup>21</sup> He said, "Do you not yet understand?"

<sup>22</sup> They came to Bethsaida. The people there brought to him a blind man and begged Jesus to touch him.

<sup>23</sup> Jesus took hold of the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. When he had spit on his eyes and laid his hands on him, he asked him, "Do you see anything?"

<sup>24</sup> He looked up, and said, "I see men who look like walking trees."

<sup>25</sup> Then he again laid his hands upon his eyes, and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored, and he saw all things clearly. <sup>26</sup> Jesus sent him away to his home and said, "Do not enter the village."

<sup>27</sup> Jesus went out with his disciples into the villages of Caesarea Philippi. On the way he asked his disciples, "Who do the people say that I am?"

<sup>28</sup> They answered him and said, "John the Baptist. Others say, 'Elijah,' and others, 'One of the prophets.'"

<sup>29</sup> He asked them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter said to him, "You are the Christ." <sup>30</sup> Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

<sup>31</sup> He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things, and would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up. <sup>32</sup> He spoke that message openly. Then Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him. <sup>33</sup> But Jesus turned and looked at his disciples and then he rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind me, Satan! You are not setting your mind on the things of God, but on the things of people." <sup>34</sup> Then he called the crowd and his disciples together, and he said to them, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me. <sup>35</sup> For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake and for the gospel will save it. <sup>36</sup> What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life? <sup>37</sup> What can a person give in exchange for his life? <sup>38</sup> Whoever is ashamed of me and my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

---

## Mark 8 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Bread

When Jesus worked a miracle and provided bread for a large crowd of people, they probably thought about when God miraculously provided food for the people of Israel when they were in the wilderness.

Yeast is the ingredient that causes bread to become larger before it is baked. In this chapter, Jesus uses yeast as a metaphor for things that change the way people think, speak, and act.

#### "Adulterous generation"

When Jesus called the people an "adulterous generation," he was telling them that they were not faithful to God. (See: faithful and peopleofgod)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Jesus used many rhetorical questions as a way of both teaching the disciples

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it" ([Mark 8:35-37](#)).

---

## Mark 8

### 8:1-21

#### What were "those days"?

[8:1]

Mark wrote about the time when Jesus was in Decapolis when he wrote about "those days."

See Map: Decapolis

#### Why did the people not have anything to eat?

[8:2]

Mark does not write why the people did not have anything to eat.

**How were they in a deserted place?**

[8:4]

The disciples spoke about being in a deserted place. That is they were in a place where they could not get any food. Perhaps they were in the wilderness or desert.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus give thanks?**

[8:6]

Jesus gave thanks to God before they ate. He thanked God for giving them their food. This was common in ancient Israel.

**Why did Mark write about how much fish and bread remained uneaten?**

[8:8]

Mark wrote there were 7 large baskets of uneaten food after everyone ate. There was more food that remained than the food with which they started. This was a miracle.

See: [Miracle](#)

**Where was Dalmanutha?**

[8:10]

See Map: Dalmanutha

**Why did the Pharisees want a sign from heaven?**

[8:11]

The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give them a sign from heaven. They wanted Jesus to prove that God gave Jesus the power and permission to do these miracles. They thought that Satan gave Jesus the power and permission to do these things (see: Mark 3:22)

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Sign](#); [Heaven](#); [Miracle](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

**Why did Jesus talk about yeast?**

[8:15]

Jesus used the metaphor of yeast. He did this to talk about people doing evil things. In the same way a small amount of yeast goes through the whole lump of dough, so evil things would make other people want to do more evil things.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

**Why did Jesus ask the disciples many questions?**

[8:17, 8:18, 8:19, 8:20, 8:21]

Jesus asked his disciples many different questions. They did not understand what Jesus was saying about who he is and why he did these things. They knew Jesus fed 5000 people through a miracle. They forgot he could do this. They worried that the people would not have food to eat (see: Mark 8:4).

Some scholars think Jesus rebuked them. That is, he spoke to them in a way that they would know they did something wrong.

Other scholars think Jesus was trying to help them understand (see: Matthew 16:11-12).



See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

## **8:22-38**

### **Where was Bethsaida?**

[8:22]

See Map: Bethsaida

### **Why did the people want Jesus to touch the blind man?**

[8:22]

The people wanted Jesus to touch the blind man because they believed that this would heal the man.

### **Why did Jesus take the man outside of the village?**

[8:23]

Jesus took the man outside of the village because he did not want other people to see what he was doing.

See: [Messianic Secret](#)

### **Why did Jesus spit on the man's eyes?**

[8:23]

It was a symbol when Jesus spat on the man's eyes. However, Mark does not write about what was this symbol. Perhaps Jesus spat on the man's eyes because then the man could feel what Jesus was doing.

See: [Symbol](#)

### **Why did the man see men who looked like walking trees?**

[8:24]

The man saw people and said they looked like walking trees. This is because his eyes were not yet completely healed. Jesus tried to teach the disciples something by not healing the man completely the first time. This was because seeing was a metaphor. People often spoke about understanding something as if they were seeing it. In the same way the man saw more clearly after Jesus touched his eyes again, so the disciples understood Jesus more clearly when he explained the things he taught.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **Why did Jesus not want this man to enter into the village?**

[8:26]

Jesus told this man not to enter into the village. He did this because he did not want the man to tell other people about what Jesus did.

See: [Messianic Secret](#)

### **Where was Caesarea Philippi?**

[8:27]

See Map: Caesarea Philippi

### **Why did Jesus ask, "who do people say that I am"?**

[8:27]

Jesus asked, “who do people say that I am.” Scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to be prepared for the next question he asked. That is, he asked them “but who do you say that I am”?

See: [Disciple](#)

### **Why did Jesus not want the disciples to tell people that he is the messiah?**

[8:30]

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What is the Son of Man?**

[8:31]

Jesus spoke about himself when he spoke about the Son of Man. He prophesied about things that would happen to him.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

### **Who were the elders, chief priests, and scribes?**

[8:31]

Mark wrote about older men in Israel who lead the people in some way when he wrote about elders. Together the scribes, the chief priests, and the elders helped to lead Israel to worship and obey God.

See: [Scribe](#); [Scribe](#)

### **How would Jesus rise up after three days?**

[8:31]

Jesus said he would rise up after three days. That is he would be made alive again through his resurrection.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **Why did Peter rebuke Jesus?**

[8:32]

Peter rebuked Jesus. He said that what Jesus said must be wrong. Peter thought that the messiah would not suffer and die in the way Jesus said. However, Jesus rebuked Peter. He said Peter spoke wrongly. The things he said were the things that Satan wanted Peter to say. Peter did not yet understand the things Jesus was supposed to do on earth.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What did it mean for people to “take up their cross”?**

[8:34]

The words “take up your cross” were a metaphor. Jesus died on a cross. He obeyed God even though he suffered for obeying God. He wanted people to do the same thing. He wanted them to obey God even if they suffered because they obeyed God.

See: [Cross](#); [Cross](#)

### **How does someone save their life?**

[8:35]

Jesus talked about "life" in two ways in this passage. He spoke about the life a person has before they die and the life they have after they die. He said people needed to obey God before they die if they want to live with God forever. In the same way, people who die on Earth because they obeyed God will still live with God forever after they die.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### How was this generation sinful and adulterous?

[8:38]

Jesus called the people living in Israel sinful and adulterous. This was a metaphor. Jesus meant the people were not faithful to God because they did not believe in Jesus.

[Adultery](#); [Adultery](#)

### How will Jesus be ashamed of people when he comes with the glory of his father?

[8:38]

Jesus talked about people being ashamed of him. That is, he talked about the people who rejected him. They did not believe in him. Jesus will reject everyone who rejected him when he returns. They will live in hell forever.

See: Matthew 24:30; Mark 13:26

See: [Angel](#); [Hell](#); [Glory \(Glorify\)](#); [Angel](#)

#### Mark 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

A great, hungry crowd is with Jesus. He feeds them using only seven loaves and a few fish before Jesus and his disciples get in a boat to go to another place.

##### In those days

This phrase is used to introduce a new event in the story.

#### Mark 8:2

**they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat**

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

##### they may faint

Possible meanings are 1) literal, "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or 2) hyperbolic exaggeration, "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

**Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?**

The disciples are expressing surprise that Jesus would expect them to be able to find enough food. Alternate translation: "This place is so deserted that

there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

##### loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:5

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:6

**He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.**

This can be written as a direct quote. "Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

##### sit down

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

#### Mark 8:7

##### They also had

Here the word "they" is used to refer to Jesus and his disciples.

##### he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

## Mark 8:8

**They ate**  
"The people ate"

**they picked up**  
"the disciples picked up"

**the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets**  
This refers to the broken pieces of fish and bread that were left over after the people ate. Alternate translation: "the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

## Mark 8:9

**Then he sent them away**  
It may be helpful to clarify when he sent them away. Alternate translation: "After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

## Mark 8:10

**they went into the region of Dalmanutha**  
It may be helpful to clarify how they got to Dalmanutha. Alternate translation: "they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha"

**Dalmanutha**  
This is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

## Mark 8:11

**Connecting Statement:**  
In Dalmanutha, Jesus refuses to give the Pharisees a sign before he and his disciples get in a boat and leave.

**They sought from him**  
"They asked him for"

**a sign from heaven**  
They wanted a sign that would prove that Jesus's power and authority were from God. Possible meanings are 1) The word "heaven" is a metonym for God. Alternate translation: "a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

**to test him**  
The Pharisees tried to test Jesus to make him prove that he was from God. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to prove that God had sent him"

## Mark 8:12

**He sighed deeply in his spirit**  
This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows

Jesus's deep sadness that the Pharisees refused to believe him. See how you translated this in Mark 7:34.

**in his spirit**  
"in himself"

**Why does this generation seek for a sign?**  
Jesus is scolding them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This generation should not seek a sign."

**this generation**  
When Jesus speaks of "this generation," he is referring to the people who lived at that time. The Pharisees are included in this group. Alternate translation: "you and the people of this generation"

**no sign will be given**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give a sign"

## Mark 8:13

**he left them, got into a boat again**  
Jesus's disciples went with him. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

**to the other side**  
This describes the Sea of Galilee, which can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the sea"

## Mark 8:14

**Connecting Statement:**  
While Jesus and his disciples are in a boat, they have a discussion about the lack of understanding among the Pharisees and Herod, though they had seen many signs.

**Now**  
This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author tells background information about the disciples forgetting to bring bread.

**no more than one loaf**  
The negative phrase "no more" is used to emphasize how small an amount of bread they had. Alternate translation: "only one loaf"

## Mark 8:15

**Keep watch and be on guard**  
These two terms have a common meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "Keep watch"

**the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod**  
Here Jesus is speaking to his disciples in a metaphor they do not understand. Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you

translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

### Mark 8:16

#### no bread

The word "no" is an exaggeration. The disciples did have one loaf of bread

### Mark 8:17

#### Why are you arguing about having no bread?

Here Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples because they should have understood what he had been talking about. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

#### Do you still not see or understand?

These questions have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that they do not understand. This can be written as one question or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Do you have hardened hearts?

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind and "hardened" is a metaphor for not being able or willing to understand something. Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

### Mark 8:18

#### You have eyes, do you not see? You have ears, do you not hear? Do you not remember?

Jesus continues to mildly rebuke his disciples. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

### Mark 8:19

#### the five thousand

This refers to the 5,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 5,000 people"

#### how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected the baskets of pieces. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

### Mark 8:20

#### the four thousand

This refers to the 4,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 4,000 people"

#### how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected these. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

### Mark 8:21

#### Do you not yet understand?

Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples for not understanding. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should understand by now the things I say and do."

### Mark 8:22

#### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples get out of their boat at Bethsaida, Jesus heals a blind man.

#### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated the name of this town in [Mark 6:45]

#### to touch him

It may be helpful to state why they wanted Jesus to touch the man. Alternate translation: "to touch him in order to heal him"

### Mark 8:23

#### When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

### Mark 8:24

#### He looked up

"The man looked up"

#### I see men who look like walking trees

The man sees men walking around, yet they are not clear to him, so he compares them to trees. Alternate translation: "Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

### Mark 8:25

#### Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

#### and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

The phrase "his sight was restored" can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

## Mark 8:26

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 8:27

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples talk on their way to the villages of Caesarea Philippi about who Jesus is and what will happen to him.

## Mark 8:28

### They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

### John the Baptist

The disciples answer that this was who some people said Jesus was. This can be shown more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

### Others say ... others

The word "others" refers to other people. This refers to their responses to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

## Mark 8:29

### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

## Mark 8:30

### Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

Jesus did not want them to tell anyone that he was the Christ. This can be made more explicit. This can also be written as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

## Mark 8:31

### Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

### would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

## Mark 8:32

### He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

### began to rebuke him

Peter rebuked Jesus for saying the things he said would happen to the Son of Man. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "began to rebuke him for saying these things"

## Mark 8:33

### Connecting Statement:

After rebuking Peter for his not wanting Jesus to die and rise, Jesus tells both his disciples and the crowd how to follow him.

### Get behind me, Satan

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do. Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan"

### Get behind me

"Get away from me"

## Mark 8:34

### follow me

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

### take up his cross, and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

### follow me

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "obey me"

## Mark 8:35

### For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

### life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

### for my sake and for the gospel

"because of me and because of the gospel." Jesus is talking about people who lose their lives because

they follow Jesus and the gospel. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

### Mark 8:36

**What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

**to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life**

This can also be expressed as a condition starting with the word "if." Alternate translation: "if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

**to gain the whole world**

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "to gain everything he ever wanted"

**forfeit**

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

### Mark 8:37

**What can a person give in exchange for his life?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

**What can a person give**

If in your language "giving" requires someone to receive what is given, "God" can be stated as the receiver. Alternate translation: "What can a person give to God"

### Mark 8:38

**ashamed of me and my words**

"ashamed of me and my message"

**in this adulterous and sinful generation**

Jesus speaks of this generation as "adulterous," meaning that they are unfaithful in their relationship with God. Alternate translation: "in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

**the Son of Man will be ashamed**

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

**when he comes**

"when he comes back"

**in the glory of his Father**

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

**with the holy angels**

"accompanied by the holy angels"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 8:1

**What concern did Jesus state about the great crowd that had been following him?**

Jesus stated that he was concerned the great crowd had nothing to eat.

### Mark 8:2

**What concern did Jesus state about the great crowd that had been following him?**

Jesus stated that he was concerned the great crowd had nothing to eat.

### Mark 8:5

**How many loaves did the disciples have with them?**

The disciples had seven loaves with them.

### Mark 8:6

**What did Jesus do with the disciples' loaves?**

Jesus gave thanks, broke the loaves, and gave them to his disciples to serve.

### Mark 8:8

**How much food remained after everyone had eaten?**

There were seven baskets of food remaining after everyone had eaten.

### Mark 8:9

**How many people ate and were satisfied?**

There were about four thousand men who ate and were satisfied.

**Mark 8:11**

**To test him, what did the Pharisees want Jesus to do?**  
The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give them a sign from heaven.

**Mark 8:15**

**About what did Jesus warn his disciples concerning the Pharisees?**  
Jesus warned his disciples to be on guard of the yeast of the Pharisees.

**Mark 8:16**

**About what did the disciples think Jesus was talking?**  
The disciples thought Jesus was talking about the fact that they had forgotten to bring bread.

**Mark 8:19**

**Jesus reminded his disciples that what had happened when Jesus had broken five loaves?**  
Jesus reminded them that when he had broken five loaves, five thousand people had been fed and twelve baskets full of broken pieces had been taken up.

**Mark 8:23**

**What two things did Jesus first do to the blind man in order to restore his sight?**  
Jesus first spat on his eyes and laid his hands upon him.

**Mark 8:25**

**What third thing did Jesus do to the blind man in order to completely restore his sight?**  
Jesus laid his hands upon his eyes.

**Mark 8:28**

**Who were the people saying that Jesus was?**  
The people were saying that Jesus was John the Baptizer, Elijah, or one of the prophets.

**Mark 8:29**

**Who did Peter say that Jesus was?**  
Peter said that Jesus was the Christ.

**Mark 8:31**

**About what future events did Jesus begin to teach his disciples clearly?**  
Jesus taught his disciples that the Son of Man must suffer, be rejected, be killed, and be raised after three days.

**Mark 8:33**

**What did Jesus say when Peter began to rebuke him?**  
Jesus said to Peter, "Get behind me Satan! You do not care for the things of God, but for the things of people".

**Mark 8:34**

**What did Jesus say anyone who wants to follow him must do?**  
Jesus said that anyone who wants to follow him must deny himself and take up his cross.

**Mark 8:36**

**What did Jesus say about a person's desire to gain the things of the world?**  
Jesus said, "What does it profit a person to gain the whole world, and then forfeit his life?"

**Mark 8:38**

**What did Jesus say he would do concerning those who are ashamed of him and his words?**  
Jesus said that at his coming he would be ashamed of those who were ashamed of him and his words.



## Chapter 9

<sup>1</sup> He said to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power."

<sup>2</sup> Six days later, Jesus took Peter and James and John with him up a high mountain, alone by themselves. Then he was transfigured before them. <sup>3</sup> His garments became radiantly brilliant, extremely white, whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them. <sup>4</sup> Then Elijah with Moses appeared to them, and they were talking with Jesus. <sup>5</sup> Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here, and so let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." <sup>6</sup> (For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified.)

<sup>7</sup> A cloud came and overshadowed them. Then a voice came out of the cloud, "This is my beloved Son. Listen to him." <sup>8</sup> Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them, but only Jesus.

<sup>9</sup> As they were coming down the mountain, he commanded them to tell no one what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead. <sup>10</sup> So they kept the matter to themselves, but they discussed among themselves what "rising from the dead" could mean. <sup>11</sup> They asked him, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

<sup>12</sup> He said to them, "Elijah does come first to restore all things. Why then is it written that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be despised? <sup>13</sup> But I say to you that Elijah has come, and they did whatever they wanted to him, just as it is written about him."

<sup>14</sup> When they came to the disciples, they saw a great crowd around them, and scribes were arguing with them. <sup>15</sup> As soon as they saw Jesus, the whole crowd was amazed and as they ran up to him they greeted him. <sup>16</sup> He asked his disciples, "What are you arguing with them about?"

<sup>17</sup> Someone in the crowd answered him, "Teacher, I brought my son to you. He has a spirit that makes him unable to speak. <sup>18</sup> It seizes him and it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive it out of him, but they could not."

<sup>19</sup> He answered them, "Unbelieving generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you? Bring him to me." <sup>20</sup> They brought the boy to him. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw him into a convulsion. The boy fell on the ground and foamed at the mouth. <sup>21</sup> Jesus asked his father, "For how much time has he been like this?"

The father said, "Since childhood. <sup>22</sup> It has often thrown him into the fire or into the waters and tried to destroy him. If you are able to do anything, have pity on us and help us."

<sup>23</sup> Jesus said to him, "'If you are able'? All things are possible for the one who believes."

<sup>24</sup> Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

<sup>25</sup> When Jesus saw the crowd running to them, he rebuked the unclean spirit and said, "You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him, and never enter into him again."

<sup>26</sup> It cried out and convulsed the boy greatly and then came out. The boy looked like one who was dead, so that many said, "He is dead." <sup>27</sup> But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and the boy stood up.

<sup>28</sup> When Jesus came into the house, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could we not cast it out?"

<sup>29</sup> He said to them, "This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer."

<sup>30</sup> They went out from there and passed through Galilee. He did not want anyone to know where they were, <sup>31</sup> for he was teaching his disciples. He said to them, "The Son of Man will be given over into the

hands of men, and they will put him to death. When he has been put to death, after three days he will rise again." <sup>32</sup> But they did not understand this statement, and they were afraid to ask him.

<sup>33</sup> Then they came to Capernaum. After he entered the house he asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?" <sup>34</sup> But they were silent. For they had been arguing with one with another on the way about who was the greatest. <sup>35</sup> Sitting down, he called the twelve together and he said to them, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all." <sup>36</sup> He took a little child and placed him in their midst. He took him in his arms and said to them, <sup>37</sup> "Whoever receives such a child in my name receives me; whoever receives me does not receive me but the one who sent me."

<sup>38</sup> John said to him, "Teacher, we saw someone driving out demons in your name and we stopped him, because he does not follow us."

<sup>39</sup> But Jesus said, "Do not stop him, for there is no one who will do a mighty work in my name and can soon afterwards say anything bad about me. <sup>40</sup> Whoever is not against us is for us. <sup>41</sup> Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ, truly I say to you, he will not lose his reward. <sup>42</sup> Whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large millstone tied around his neck and be thrown into the sea. <sup>43</sup> If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed than to have two hands and to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire. <sup>44</sup><sup>[1]</sup><sup>45</sup> If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life lame than to have your two feet and be thrown into hell. <sup>46</sup><sup>[2]</sup><sup>47</sup> If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out. It is better for you to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes and to be thrown into hell, <sup>48</sup> where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. <sup>49</sup> For everyone will be salted with fire. <sup>50</sup> Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its saltiness, how can you make it salty again? Have salt among yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

---

## Footnotes

9:44 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 44 is not included in the ULB,

9:46 <sup>[2]</sup>The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 46 is not included in the ULB,

---

## Mark 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "transfigured"

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Mark says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Hyperbole

Jesus said things that he did not expect his followers to understand literally. When he said, "If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off" ([Mark 9:43](#)), he was exaggerating so they would know that they should stay away from anything that caused them to sin, even if it was something they loved or thought they needed.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Elijah and Moses

Elijah and Moses suddenly appeared to Jesus, James, John, and Peter, and then they disappeared. All four of them saw Elijah and Moses, and because Elijah and Moses spoke with Jesus, the reader should understand that Elijah and Moses appeared physically.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus referred to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

**Paradox**

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all" ([Mark 9:35](#)).

---

**Mark 9**

**9:1-13**

**Did Jesus say that certain people would still be alive when the kingdom of God came?**

[9:1]

Jesus said that certain people would not "taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power." That is, they will not die before they saw this. However, scholars disagree about what they would see.

1. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about what was about to happen. That is, Jesus would be transfigured. Perhaps Mark wanted to write that Jesus himself was the kingdom of God. Or perhaps the things the disciples saw were similar to how Jesus would appear when he begins to rule on the earth.
2. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about something the Holy Spirit would do. He would begin to live in Christians forever (see: Acts 2).
3. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about dying and being resurrected.

See: [Transfigure \(Transfiguration\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Transfigure \(Transfiguration\)](#)

**How was Jesus transfigured?**

[9:2]

Mark wrote that Jesus was transfigured. That is, Jesus was changed in some way. The disciples did not see Jesus as he was, they saw him as he will be when he returns to the earth.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Disciple](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

**Why did Peter, James, and John see Elijah and Moses?**

[9:4]

Peter, James, and John saw Elijah and Moses. Elijah and Moses were in heaven. Scholars think this was a symbol. It symbolized that Jesus was the messiah for whom people were waiting.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Symbol](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

**Why did Peter call Jesus "rabbi"?**

[9:5]

Peter called Jesus "rabbi." Rabbi was the Hebrew word for teacher. Peter did not understand what was happening. If he did, then he would have called Jesus the messiah, not simply a teacher.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

**Why did Peter want to make three shelters?**

[9:5]

Peter wanted to make three shelters. One for Jesus, one for Elijah, and one for Moses. Scholars disagree about why he did this.

1. Some scholars think Peter wanted to build three tents of meeting. That is, he wanted to build a place where God could talk to men once again. He did not know that God was already talking to people through Jesus. They did not need to meet in a tent to learn what God said to them.
2. Some scholars think Peter wanted to build three shelters (see: Leviticus 23:34-44). Perhaps he thought this was for the Feast of Shelters when the messiah came to rule over the world (see: Zechariah 14:16)

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Festival of Shelters](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **Why was Peter terrified?**

[9:6]

Peter was terrified because he thought the time was coming for God to judge the world. He did not understand that this was not what was happening. Some scholars think Peter, James, and John did not have fear, but had great awe in seeing Jesus, Elijah, and Moses together on the mountain.

See: [Awe \(Awesome\)](#)

### **Who spoke from the cloud?**

[9:7]

God the Father spoke from the cloud. In the Bible, heaven is often spoken about as if it is in the clouds.

See: [Heaven](#)

### **Why did Jesus tell the disciples not to say anything until the Son of man had “risen from the dead”?**

[9:9]

Jesus spoke about the Son of Man rising from the dead. He spoke about himself. He would be resurrected. However, the disciples did not understand that Jesus would be resurrected. Some scholars think Jesus knew the disciples would understand after he was resurrected. Certain Jewish teachers even taught that no one would be made alive again after they died. This was why they talked about what Jesus said among themselves.

See: [Disciple](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Disciple](#)

### **What did the scribes teach about Elijah?**

[9:11]

The scribes taught that Elijah must return to the earth before the messiah came. He would tell Israel to repent and be ready for the messiah. It is not known whether they taught that Elijah would come back to the earth or that there would be a prophet who was like Elijah.

See: [Prophet](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Prophet](#)

### **Who was Jesus talking about when he said that Elijah has come?**

[9:13]

Jesus told them that the scribes were right about Elijah. A prophet like Elijah did help Israel to be ready for the messiah. Jesus spoke about John the Baptist when he spoke about Elijah.

See: Malachi 3:1; 4:5

See: [Sin](#); [Prophet](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Sin](#)

## **9:14-29**

### **Why were the scribes arguing with the disciples?**

[9:14]

The scribes were arguing with the disciples. However, Mark did not write what they were arguing about. Some scholars think the scribes were arguing with the disciples because the disciples could not make the demon leave the boy.

See: [Demon](#); [Disciple](#); [Demon](#)

### **Why were the disciples not able to make the demon leave the boy?**

[9:18]

Scholars think the disciples were not able to make the demon leave the boy because they forgot to ask God for help. That is, they forgot to pray. They were not able to make the demon leave without God.

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that these demons could only come out through "prayer and fasting." However, scholars think Mark did not write "and fasting."

See: [Fasting](#); [Demon](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Fasting](#)

### **Why did Jesus rebuke the "unbelieving generation"?**

[9:19]

Jesus rebuked the "unbelieving generation." That is, he said that the people of Israel were evil for not believing in him. He did not speak about everyone in Israel. Some people believed in him. Jesus spoke about the people of Israel in general. Perhaps Jesus said this because he wanted the disciples to know that they did the same things that people who did not believe in him did.

### **What did the spirit do when it saw Jesus?**

[9:20]

The demon made the boy shake violently when it saw Jesus. Mark did not write why the demon did this.

See: [Demon](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, "all things are possible for the one who believes"?**

[9:23]

Jesus said, "all things are possible for the one who believes." He did not say that people who believe in him can do anything they wanted to do. Instead, he said that when someone obeys God, they can do things they did not think possible to do. God can make anything happen. He can use people to make anything happen that he wants to happen.

## **9:30-37**

### **Where was Galilee?**

[9:30]

See Map: Galilee

### **Why did Jesus not want people to know where they were?**

[9:30]

Jesus did not want people to know where they were because he was teaching the disciples. He did not want people to interrupt them.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What did Jesus teach the disciples about the Son of Man?**

[9:31]

Jesus taught the disciples about what must happen to the Son of Man. The Son of Man must die and be resurrected. The disciples did not understand that Jesus is the Son of Man. They did not want other people to know they did not understand this, so they did not say anything.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Son of Man](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **Where was Capernaum?**

[9:33]

See Map: Capernaum

### **Why were the disciples silent when Jesus asked them a question?**

[9:34]

The disciples were silent when Jesus asked them a question because they were ashamed of the things the spoke about to one another.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What did Jesus teach his disciples?**

[9:35, 9:36, 9:37]

Jesus said, "if anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and "servant of all." He wanted to say that the person who was the greatest was the one who obeyed God. A person who obeyed God served other people in the same way Jesus served other people. This person also did not think he was greater than he was really. He knew God gave him everything that he had.

Jesus helped the disciples to understand what he said by talking about a child. At this time, people did not think they should spend their time teaching and helping children. He wanted the disciples to help people who wanted to believe in Jesus and follow Jesus, even if they did not think they were significant enough to teach. They served Jesus by serving these people. They also honored God, who sent Jesus to the Earth.

See: [Serve](#); [Serve](#)

## **9:38-50**

### **Why did John call Jesus "teacher"?**

[9:38]

In ancient Israel, people often followed someone who taught them. They called them "rabbi" or "teacher." When he said this, it did not mean that John did not think Jesus was the messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **How was someone driving out demons in Jesus name?**

[9:38]

John said that someone was driving out demons in Jesus' name. The disciples made this man stop because he was not one of Jesus' followers. Some scholars think this man was not currently following Jesus, but they think he might have been one of the 70 people he sent out to preach the gospel (see: Luke:10:1). Jesus told the disciples that they did the wrong thing. This was because the man was honoring Jesus. Because Jesus knows everything, he also knew what the man was doing and gave him permission to do this. This man followed Jesus even though he was not with Jesus and the disciples.

See: Matthew 12:30

See: [Disciple](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Gospel](#); [Disciple](#)

### **Who will be rewarded?**

[9:41]

Jesus said that anyone who does something to honor Jesus will be rewarded. However, anyone who does something that caused someone to sin will be punished. That is, if they cause someone to want to do something that dishonored God or stops them from doing something that honored God, then they will be punished. In ancient times, people were punished by having a very large stone tied around their necks. They were thrown into the water which caused them to drown. He wanted to say that it was better to be punished while on earth than to lose your reward in heaven or to go to hell.

See: [Hell](#); [Sin](#); [Heaven](#); [Hell](#)

### **Should people harm themselves?**

[9:42, 9:43, 9:45]

Jesus said that it would be better for people to harm themselves than to go to hell. Jesus did not want people to harm themselves. However, he wanted them to know that it would be much better to suffer on the earth than to be punished forever in hell.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Fire](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

### **Did Mark write the words in verse 44?**

[9:44]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 44. However, more of the ancient Greek copies do not have the words from verse 44. Mark probably did not write the words that are in verse 44.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

### **Did Mark write the words in verse 46?**

[9:46]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 46. However, more of the ancient Greek copies do not have the words from verse 46. Mark probably did not write the words that are in verse 46.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

### **How was someone salted with fire?**

[9:49]

Scholars do not know why Jesus said that someone was "salted with fire." Perhaps he wanted to say that some people will be punished by going to hell, being burned with fire forever. Other people would be made clean by fire. This is a metaphor. They will be made clean so they can be with God forever.

See: Leviticus 2:13

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Fire](#); [Metaphor](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **Why did Jesus speak about salt?**

[9:50]

Jesus spoke about salt as a metaphor. In the ancient world, salt was used to keep food from going bad. At this time, the salt could spoil or go bad. It was useless after this happened. Jesus wanted to say that the disciples needed to do things differently than other people. Then people would want to believe in Jesus and follow Jesus if they did this. However, if they do the same things that other people do, then people will not want to follow Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

---

### Mark 9:1

#### He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

#### the kingdom of God come with power

The kingdom of God coming represents God showing himself as king. Alternate translation: "God show himself with great power as king"

### Mark 9:2

#### alone by themselves

The author uses the reflexive pronoun "themselves" here to emphasize that they were alone and that only Jesus, Peter, James, and John went up the mountain.

#### he was transfigured

"Transfigure" means for a person's outward appearance to change. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

#### before them

"in front of them"

### Mark 9:3

#### radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing." Jesus's garments were so white they were emitting or giving off light.

#### extremely

"very"

#### whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

Bleaching describes the process of making natural white wool even whiter by using chemicals like bleach or ammonia. Alternate translation: "whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

### Mark 9:4

#### Elijah with Moses appeared

It may be helpful to state who these men are. Alternate translation: "two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

#### they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

### Mark 9:5

#### Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus." Here the word "answered" is used to introduce Peter into the conversation. Peter was not answering a question.

#### it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

#### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

### Mark 9:6

#### For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified

This parenthetical sentence tells background information about Peter, James, and John.

#### they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

### Mark 9:7

#### came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

#### Then a voice came out of the cloud

Here "a voice came out" is a metonym for someone speaking. It can also be stated clearly who spoke. Alternate translation: "Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

#### This is my beloved Son. Listen to him

God the Father expresses his love for his "beloved Son," the Son of God.

#### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

### Mark 9:8

#### when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.



## Mark 9:9

**he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen**

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

**risen from the dead**

"risen from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "risen from death"

## Mark 9:10

**rising from the dead**

"to rise from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "rising from death"

**So they kept the matter to themselves**

Here "kept the matter to themselves" is an idiom that means they did not tell anyone about what they had seen. Alternate translation: "So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

## Mark 9:11

**Connecting Statement:**

Though Peter, James, and John wondered what Jesus might mean by "rising from the dead," they asked him instead about Elijah's coming.

**They asked him**

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

**Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?**

Prophecy foretold that Elijah would come again from heaven. Then the Messiah, who is the Son of Man, would come to rule and reign. The disciples are confused about how the Son of Man could die and rise again. Alternate translation: "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

## Mark 9:12

**Elijah does come first to restore all things**

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

**Why then is it written ... be despised?**

Jesus uses this question to remind his disciples that the scriptures also teach that the Son of Man must suffer and be despised. This may be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and be hated."

**be despised**

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people would hate him"

## Mark 9:13

**they did whatever they wanted to him**

It may be helpful to state what people did to Elijah. Alternate translation: "our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

## Mark 9:14

**Connecting Statement:**

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

**When they came to the disciples**

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

**they saw a great crowd around them**

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

**scribes were arguing with them**

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

## Mark 9:15

**was amazed**

It may be helpful to state why they were amazed. Alternate translation: "was amazed that Jesus had come"

## Mark 9:16

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 9:17

**He has a spirit**

This means the boy is possessed by an unclean spirit. "He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

## Mark 9:18

**down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes**

A convulsion, or seizure, can cause a person to have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to come out of the mouth. If your language has a way to describe that, you could use it.

Alternate translation: "down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes"

**becomes rigid**  
"becomes stiff" or "his body becomes rigid"

**they could not**  
This refers to the disciples not being about to drive the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "they could not drive it out of him"

### Mark 9:19

**He answered them**  
Though it was the boy's father who made a request of Jesus, Jesus responds to the whole crowd. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Jesus responded to the crowd"

**Unbelieving generation**  
"You unbelieving generation." Jesus calls the crowd this as he begins to respond to them.

**how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?**  
Jesus uses these questions to express his frustration. Both questions have the same meaning. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

**bear with you**  
"endure you" or "put up with you"

**Bring him to me**  
"Bring the boy to me"

### Mark 9:20

**spirit**  
This refers to the unclean spirit. See how you translated this in Mark 9:17.

**convulsion**  
This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

### Mark 9:21

**For how much time**  
"How long"

**Since childhood**  
"Since he was a small child." It may be helpful to state this as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He has been like this since he was a small child"

### Mark 9:22

**have pity**  
"have compassion"

### Mark 9:23

**'If you are able'?**  
Jesus repeated what the man had said to him. Alternate translation: "Do you say to me 'If you are able'?" or "Why do you say 'If you are able'?"

**'If you are able'?**  
Jesus used this question to rebuke the man's doubt. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

**All things are possible for the one who believes**  
"God can do anything for people who believe in him"

**for the one**  
"for the person" or "for anyone"

**believes**  
This refers to belief in God. Alternate translation: "believes in God"

### Mark 9:24

**Help my unbelief**  
The man is asking Jesus to help him overcome his unbelief and increase his faith. Alternate translation: "Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

### Mark 9:25

**the crowd running to them**  
This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

**You mute and deaf spirit**  
The words "mute" and "deaf" can be explained. Alternate translation: "You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

### Mark 9:26

**It cried out**  
"The unclean spirit cried out"

**convulsed the boy greatly**  
"shook the boy violently"

**came out**  
It is implied that the spirit came out of the boy. Alternate translation: "came out of the boy"

**The boy looked like one who was dead**  
The boy's appearance is compared to that of a dead person. Alternate translation: "The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

**so that many**  
"so that many people"

### Mark 9:27

**took him by the hand**  
This means that Jesus grasped the boy's hand with his own hand. Alternate translation: "grasped the boy by the hand"

**lifted him up**  
"helped him get up"

### Mark 9:28

**privately**  
This means they were alone.

**cast it out**  
"cast the unclean spirit out." This refers to casting the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

### Mark 9:29

**This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer**  
The words "cannot" and "except" are both negative words. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "This kind can be cast out only by prayer"

**This kind**  
This describes unclean spirits. Alternate translation: "This kind of unclean spirit"

### Mark 9:30

**Connecting Statement:**  
After he heals the demon-possessed boy, Jesus and his disciples leave the house where they are staying. He takes time to teach his disciples alone.

**They went out from there**  
"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

**passed through**  
"traveled through" or "passed by"

### Mark 9:31

**for he was teaching his disciples**  
Jesus was teaching his disciples privately, away from the crowd. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for he was teaching his disciples privately"

**The Son of Man will be given over**  
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will give the Son of Man over"

### The Son of Man

Here Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man. This is an important title for Jesus. "I, the Son of Man,"

### into the hands of men

Here "hands" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

**When he has been put to death, after three days he**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

### Mark 9:32

**they were afraid to ask him**  
They were afraid to ask Jesus what his statement meant. Alternate translation: "they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

### Mark 9:33

**Connecting Statement:**  
When they come to Capernaum, Jesus teaches his disciples about being humble servants.

**they came to**  
"they arrived at." The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

**were you discussing**  
"were you discussing with one another"

### Mark 9:34

**they were silent**  
They were silent because they were ashamed to tell Jesus what they had been discussing. Alternate translation: "they were silent because they were ashamed"

**who was the greatest**  
Here "the greatest" refers to "the greatest" among the disciples. Alternate translation: "who was the greatest among them"

### Mark 9:35

**If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all**  
Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "most important" as being "first" and of being the "least important" as being "last." Alternate translation: "If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all"

**of all ... of all**  
"of all people ... of all people"

### Mark 9:36

**in their midst**

"among them." The word "their" refers to the crowd.

**He took him in his arms**

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

### Mark 9:37

**such a child**

"a child like this"

**in my name**

This means to do something because of love for Jesus. Alternate translation: "because he loves me" or "for my sake"

**the one who sent me**

This refers to God, who has sent him to earth. Alternate translation: "God, who has sent me"

### Mark 9:38

**John said to him**

"John said to Jesus"

**driving out demons**

"sending away demons." This refers to casting demons out of people. Alternate translation: "driving demons out of people"

**in your name**

Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. Alternate translation: "by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

**he does not follow us**

This means that he is not among their group of disciples. Alternate translation: "he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

### Mark 9:39

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 9:40

**is not against us**

"is not opposing us"

**is for us**

It can be explained clearly what this means. Alternate translation: "is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

### Mark 9:41

**gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ**

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another. This is a metaphor for helping someone in any way.

**not lose**

This negative sentence emphasizes the positive meaning. In some languages, it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "definitely receive"

### Mark 9:42

**millstone**

a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

### Mark 9:43

**If your hand causes you to stumble**

Here "hand" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your hand. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

**to enter into life maimed**

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

**to enter into life**

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

**maimed**

missing a body part as a result of having it removed or being injured. Here it refers to missing a hand. Alternate translation: "without a hand" or "missing a hand"

**into the unquenchable fire**

"where the fire cannot be put out"

### Mark 9:44

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 9:45

**If your foot causes you to stumble**

Here the word "foot" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your feet, such as going to a place you should not go to. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

**to enter into life lame**

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

**to enter into life**

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

**lame**

"unable to walk easily." Here it refers not being able to walk well because of missing a foot. Alternate translation: "without a foot" or "missing a foot"

**be thrown into hell**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

**Mark 9:46**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 9:47**

**If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out**

Here the word "eye" is a metonym for either 1) desiring to sin by looking at something. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful by looking at something, tear your eye out" or 2) Desiring to sin because of what you have looked at. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

**to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes**

This refers to the state of a person's physical body when he dies. A person does not take his physical body with him into eternity. Alternate translation: "to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

**to be thrown into hell**

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

**Mark 9:48**

**where their worm does not die**

The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "where worms that eat people there do not die"

**Mark 9:49**

**everyone will be salted with fire**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

**will be salted with fire**

Here "fire" is a metaphor for suffering, and putting salt on people is a metaphor for purifying them. So "will be salted with fire" is a metaphor for being purified through suffering. Alternate translation: "will be made pure in the fire of suffering" or "will suffer in order to be purified as a sacrifice is purified with salt"

**Mark 9:50**

**its saltiness**

"its salty taste"

**how can you make it salty again?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you cannot make it salty again."

**salty again**

"taste salty again"

**Have salt among yourselves**

Jesus speaks of doing good things for one another as if good things were salt that people possess. Alternate translation: "Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Mark 9:1**

**Who did Jesus say would see the kingdom of God coming with power?**

Jesus said that some standing there with him would not die before they saw the kingdom of God coming with power.

**Mark 9:2**

**What happened to Jesus when Peter, James, and John went up a high mountain with him?**

Jesus was transfigured and his garments became radiantly brilliant.

**Mark 9:3**

**What happened to Jesus when Peter, James, and John went up a high mountain with him?**  
Jesus was transfigured and his garments became radiantly brilliant.

**Mark 9:4**

**Who was talking with Jesus on the mountain?**  
Elijah and Moses were talking with Jesus.

**Mark 9:7**

**On the mountain, what did the voice from the cloud say?**  
The voice said, "This is my beloved Son. Listen to him".

**Mark 9:9**

**What did Jesus command the disciples about what they had seen on the mountain?**  
Jesus commanded them to tell no one what they had seen, until the Son of Man had risen from the dead.

**Mark 9:11**

**What did Jesus say about Elijah's coming?**  
Jesus said that Elijah does come first to restore all things, and that Elijah had already come.

**Mark 9:12**

**What did Jesus say about Elijah's coming?**  
Jesus said that Elijah does come first to restore all things, and that Elijah had already come.

**Mark 9:13**

**What did Jesus say about Elijah's coming?**  
Jesus said that Elijah does come first to restore all things, and that Elijah had already come.

**Mark 9:17**

**What were the disciples unable to do for the father and his son?**  
The disciples were unable to drive out the evil spirit from the father's son.

**Mark 9:18**

**What were the disciples unable to do for the father and his son?**  
The disciples were unable to drive out the evil spirit from the father's son.

**Mark 9:22**

**Into what did the evil spirit throw the boy to try to destroy him?**  
The evil spirit threw the boy into the fire or into the waters to try to destroy him.

**Mark 9:23**

**How did the father respond when Jesus said all things are possible for the one who believes?**  
The father responded, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

**Mark 9:24**

**How did the father respond when Jesus said all things are possible for the one who believes?**  
The father responded, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

**Mark 9:28**

**Why were the disciples unable to cast out the mute and deaf spirit in the boy?**  
The disciples were unable to cast out the spirit because it could not be cast out except by prayer.

**Mark 9:29**

**Why were the disciples unable to cast out the mute and deaf spirit in the boy?**  
The disciples were unable to cast out the spirit because it could not be cast out except by prayer.

**Mark 9:31**

**What did Jesus tell his disciples would happen to him?**  
Jesus told them he would be put to death, then after three days he would rise again.

**Mark 9:33**

**What were the disciples arguing about along the way?**  
The disciples were arguing about who among them was the greatest.

**Mark 9:34**

**What were the disciples arguing about along the way?**  
The disciples were arguing about who among them was the greatest.

**Mark 9:35**

**Who did Jesus say is first?**  
Jesus said that he is first who is servant of all.

**Mark 9:36**

**When someone receives a little child in Jesus' name, who are they also receiving?**

When someone receives a little child in Jesus' name, they are also receiving Jesus and the one who sent Jesus.

**Mark 9:37**

**When someone receives a little child in Jesus' name, who are they also receiving?**

When someone receives a little child in Jesus' name, they are also receiving Jesus and the one who sent Jesus.

**Mark 9:42**

**What would be better for someone who causes a little one who believes in Jesus to stumble?**

It would be better for that one if a millstone were tied around his neck and he was thrown into the sea.

**Mark 9:47**

**What did Jesus say to do with your eye if it causes you to stumble?**

Jesus said to tear out your eye if it causes you to stumble.

**Mark 9:48**

**What did Jesus say happens in hell?**

Jesus said that in hell the worm does not die, and the fire is not put out.

---

## Chapter 10

<sup>1</sup> Jesus left that place and went to the region of Judea and to the area beyond the Jordan River, and the crowds came to him again. He was teaching them again, as he was accustomed to do. <sup>2</sup> Then Pharisees came to him to test him and asked, "Is it lawful for a husband to divorce his wife?"

<sup>3</sup> He answered, "What did Moses command you?"

<sup>4</sup> They said, "Moses allowed a man to write a certificate of divorce and then to send her away."

<sup>5</sup> "It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law," Jesus said to them. <sup>6</sup> "But from the beginning of creation, 'God made them male and female.'

<sup>7</sup> 'For this reason  
a man will leave his father and mother  
and be united to his wife,

<sup>8</sup> and the two will become one flesh.'

So they are no longer two, but one flesh. <sup>9</sup> Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart."

<sup>10</sup> When they were in the house, the disciples asked him again about this. <sup>11</sup> He said to them, "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another woman commits adultery against her. <sup>12</sup> If she divorces her husband and marries another man, she commits adultery."

<sup>13</sup> Then they brought their little children to him so that he might touch them, but the disciples rebuked them. <sup>14</sup> But when Jesus noticed it, he was angry and said to them, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them, for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them. <sup>15</sup> Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God as a little child will definitely not enter it." <sup>16</sup> Then he took the children into his arms and blessed them as he placed his hands on them.

<sup>17</sup> When he began his journey, a man ran up to him and knelt before him and asked, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

<sup>18</sup> Jesus said, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone. <sup>19</sup> You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not testify falsely, do not defraud, honor your father and mother.'"

<sup>20</sup> The man said, "Teacher, all these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

<sup>21</sup> Jesus looked at him and loved him. He said to him, "One thing you lack. You must sell all that you have and give it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me." <sup>22</sup> But because of this statement he looked very sad and he went away sorrowful, because he had many possessions.

<sup>23</sup> Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!" <sup>24</sup> The disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus said to them again, "Children, how hard it is to enter into the kingdom of God! <sup>25</sup> It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

<sup>26</sup> They were greatly astonished and said to each other, "Then who can be saved?"

<sup>27</sup> Jesus looked at them and said, "With people it is impossible, but not with God. For all things are possible with God."

<sup>28</sup> Peter began to speak to him, "Look, we have left everything and have followed you."

<sup>29</sup> Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or lands for my sake and for the gospel <sup>30</sup> who will not receive a hundred times as much now in this age: houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and lands, with



persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life. <sup>31</sup> But many who are first will be last, and the last first."

<sup>32</sup> They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was going ahead of them. The disciples were amazed, and those who were following behind were afraid. Then Jesus took the twelve aside again and began to tell them what would soon happen to him. <sup>33</sup> "See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and the scribes. They will condemn him to death and give him over to the Gentiles. <sup>34</sup> They will mock him, spit on him, whip him, and put him to death. But after three days he will rise."

<sup>35</sup> James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you."

<sup>36</sup> He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

<sup>37</sup> They said, "Allow us to sit with you in your glory, one at your right hand and the other at your left."

<sup>38</sup> But Jesus replied to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup which I will drink or be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized?"

<sup>39</sup> They said to him, "We are able."

Jesus said to them, "The cup that I will drink, you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you also will be baptized. <sup>40</sup> But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared." <sup>41</sup> When the other ten disciples heard about this, they began to be very angry with James and John. <sup>42</sup> Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their high officials exercise authority over them. <sup>43</sup> But it is not this way among you. Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant, <sup>44</sup> and whoever wishes to be first among you must be the slave of all. <sup>45</sup> For the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

<sup>46</sup> They came to Jericho. As he left Jericho with his disciples and a great crowd, the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, sat by the road. <sup>47</sup> When he heard that it was Jesus the Nazarene, he began to shout and to say, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

<sup>48</sup> Many rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

<sup>49</sup> Jesus stopped and commanded him to be called. They called the blind man, saying, "Be brave! Get up! He is calling for you." <sup>50</sup> He threw aside his coat, sprang up, and came to Jesus.

<sup>51</sup> Jesus answered him and said, "What do you want me to do for you?"

The blind man said, "Rabboni, I want to receive my sight."

<sup>52</sup> Then Jesus said to him, "Go. Your faith has healed you." Immediately he could see again, and he followed him on the road.

---

## Mark 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 10:7-8.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Jesus's teaching about divorce

The Pharisees wanted to find a way to make Jesus say that it is good to break the law of Moses, so they asked him about divorce. Jesus tells how God originally designed marriage to show that the Pharisees taught wrongly about divorce.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. When Jesus spoke of "the cup which I will drink," he was speaking of the pain he would suffer on the cross as if it were a bitter, poisonous liquid in a cup.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant" ([Mark 10:43](#)).

---

## Mark 10

### 10:1-12

#### Where was the area beyond the Jordan River?

[10:1]

Jesus left Capernaum to go to Judea. This was a place past the Jordan River. Judea was on the west side of the Jordan River. This was an area where Jews lived. Mark wrote about the area east of the Jordan river when he wrote about beyond the Jordan River. This was a place where Gentiles lived.

See: [Gentile](#)

See Map: Capernaum; Jordan River; Judea

#### How did the Pharisees test Jesus?

[10:2]

Mark wrote that the Pharisees tested Jesus. That is, they wanted to get him to say something that made people angry. It would make certain people angry if he said people could not get divorced. It would make certain other people angry if he said that people could get divorced.

See: [Divorce](#); [Test](#); [Divorce](#)

#### What did Moses teach about divorce?

[10:3, 10:4]

Moses taught about divorce in the Law of Moses. The Pharisees thought that Moses said a man could divorce his wife. However, they did not think that a woman could divorce her husband. Some Pharisees taught that a man could only divorce his wife if she committed adultery or did evil things. Other Pharisees taught that any man could divorce his wife if he wanted to, even if she did not do anything wrong.

When a man wrote his wife a "certificate of divorce," he divorced her and gave her something written that said she did not commit adultery. This would help her to marry another man.

See: Deuteronomy 24:1-4

See: [Adultery](#); [Pharisees](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Adultery](#)

#### What did Jesus teach about divorce?

[10:5, 10:6, 10:7, 10:8, 10:9]

Jesus told the Pharisees what the Law of Moses actually said. Moses did not want people to get divorced because God did not want people to get divorced. Instead, Moses knew that some people had hard hearts. That is, they did not want to listen to God's will about divorce. Moses allowed people to be divorced because of this. However, a certificate of divorce must be written.

Jesus told them about the marriage between Adam and Eve (see: Genesis 1:27; 2:24). A husband and wife became one flesh. That is, it was as if they shared one body. This could not be separated without hurting both the husband and the wife. Therefore, marriage was not simply a contract between two people. It was the joining together of two bodies.

**Advice to translators:** A contract is a written agreement between two people. They promised something to each other. If they did not do what they promised, they would promise to be punished in a certain way. When marriage is spoken about as a contract, it is written agreement they give to the government. They can easily end this agreement by giving the government another written agreement, that is, a divorce.

See: [Will of God](#); [Pharisees](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sin](#); [Will of God](#)

## 10:13-16

### Why did people want their children to have Jesus touch them?

[10:13]

The people brought their children to have Jesus touch them. They thought that if they did this, Jesus would bless the children. He did this by putting his hands on them and saying a blessing.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

### Why were the disciples angry with the people bringing their children to have Jesus touch them?

[10:13]

The disciples were angry with the people bringing their children to have Jesus touch them. Scholars think the disciples thought Jesus needed to be doing other things. Perhaps they thought that Jesus should be teaching adults instead.

See: [Disciple](#)

### What did Jesus teach the disciples about the kingdom of God?

[10:14, 10:15]

Jesus told the disciples they were wrong for being angry with these people. Jesus wanted to have the little children come to him. This was because many adults rejected Jesus. They thought they knew more about the messiah than they did. However, the children were willing to learn and did not reject Jesus.

After this, Jesus taught the disciples about the kingdom of God. If people wanted to have the kingdom of God, they needed to believe in Jesus the same way children believed in Jesus. That was because children often trusted someone completely, but adults often only trusted someone who has earned it.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

## 10:17-31

### What was inheriting eternal life?

[10:17]

This man spoke about having peace with God and living with him forever when he spoke about inheriting eternal life.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### How was someone good?

[10:17, 10:18]

Jesus spoke about someone who always did the right thing when he talked about someone who was “good.” Some scholars think because only God is good, that Jesus said that he is God also. The man did not understand what it meant to be “good” and to obey God perfectly.

### **What were these commandments?**

[10:20]

Jesus talked about some of the 10 commandments in the Law of Moses.

See: Exodus 20; Deuteronomy 5

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did Jesus want this man to sell everything he had?**

[10:21]

The man called Jesus teacher. He thought that Jesus was just a teacher. He did not believe that Jesus was the messiah or that he was God. Jesus knew that the man wanted money more than anything else. He did not trust in God. He trusted in the things he had. Because of this, he rejected Jesus.

All people do not need to sell everything they have to be Christians. This was not a command for all people to follow. Jesus knew the man’s money kept him from believing in Jesus.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What was treasure in heaven?**

[10:21]

Jesus spoke about some rewards people will get after they die when he spoke about treasure in heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### **Can the rich enter the kingdom of God?**

[10:23]

In ancient Israel, people thought that God blessed people who obeyed him. Therefore, God also blessed rich people. This was not what Jesus said. When people put their trust in themselves and their money they will not be able to enter into God’s kingdom. Jesus used the metaphor of a camel. A camel would never fit through the eye of a needle, which is less than one millimeter. This made other people know how difficult it was for people to trust in Jesus when they had great riches and trusted in those riches instead of God.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Metaphor](#)

**Advice to translators:** Someone who has a lot of money is rich. They have riches.

### **What did Jesus want to teach the disciples?**

[10:23, 10:24, 10:25, 10:27]

Here, Jesus wanted to teach his disciples that there was only one way to have peace with God and to enter into his kingdom. That was to trust in Jesus. People should not trust in anything or anyone else.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

### **How will people be given “a hundred times” as much as they left behind?**

[10:30]

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the many homes that would be opened for the servants of God. The brothers and sisters were those who believed in Jesus and became brothers and sisters in Christ.

Other scholars think Jesus spoke about spiritual blessings that replaced the homes and families that were left behind. The blessings might be considered “a hundred times” better than what they left behind.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Children of God](#); [Spirit \(Spiritual\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

## **10:32-45**

### **Why were the disciples amazed and the people afraid?**

[10:32]

Jesus went to Jerusalem knowing that he would die in Jerusalem. He taught this to people. The people were afraid that what he said was true and that he would be killed in Jerusalem. So they were amazed that he still wanted to go to Jerusalem if he was going to die.

See: [Disciple](#)

See Map: Jerusalem

### **What did Jesus tell the disciples would soon happen?**

[10:33]

Jesus told the disciples that he was going to die and would be made alive again. That is, he will be resurrected.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **Who is the Son of Man?**

[10:33]

See: [Son of Man](#)

### **Why will the chief priests and scribes give Jesus over to the Gentiles?**

[10:33]

At this time, the Jews were not able to kill a criminal. Only their Roman leaders could do this. They were Gentiles. Jesus wanted to say that the Jewish leaders would get the Gentile leaders to kill Jesus.

See: [Gentile](#); [Scribe](#); [Gentile](#)

### **Why did James and John want to sit at Jesus' right and left hand?**

[10:37]

James and John wanted to sit at Jesus' right and left hand. That is, they wanted to sit next to him in heaven. To be seated at the right and left hand of the throne were places of honor. They wanted to be honored.

See: [Throne](#); [Throne](#)

### **What will happen to Jesus?**

[10:38]

Jesus spoke about drinking the cup he was about to drink and enduring the baptism he was about to endure. These were metaphors. He was asking them if they would suffer and die to obey him. If they did this, it would be a type of offering to God. Eventually, James would be killed for believing in Jesus (see: Acts 12:2).

See: [Offer \(Offering\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Offer \(Offering\)](#)

**Who will sit at Jesus' right and left side in heaven?**

[10:40]

Jesus will sit at God the Father's right hand in heaven. Therefore, God is at Jesus' left hand side in heaven. However, God the Father is the one who decides who will sit at the right hand of Jesus (see: Matthew 20:23).

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**Why were the disciples angry with James and John?**

[10:41]

Some scholars think the other disciples were angry with James and John because they asked Jesus to honor them in a special way. Other scholars think the other disciples were jealous or afraid James and John might be honored over them.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Who will be honored in heaven?**

[10:43]

Jesus taught the disciples that certain people will be honored in heaven. Just as Jesus came to serve, so Christians who serve other people will be honored in heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**How did Jesus give his life as a ransom for many?**

[10:45]

Jesus gave his life as a ransom for many. That is, he died so that people would be at peace with God. Mark spoke about Jesus dying as a price to be paid for their sin. By dying, Jesus set them free from being slaves to their own sinful desires.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

**10:46-52**

**Where is Jericho?**

[10:46]

See Map: Jericho

**Who was Jesus the Nazarene?**

[10:47]

Jesus was Jesus the Nazarene. He was Jesus from Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

**How was Jesus the Son of David?**

[10:47]

The blind man called Jesus the "Son of David." David was one of Jesus' ancestors. He called him this because the messiah was to be one of David's descendants. He was to fulfill the covenant God made with David.

See: [Covenant with David](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Covenant with David](#)

## Why did the people rebuke the blind man?

[10:48]

People told the blind man that he was wrong. Some scholars think the people wanted to get to Jerusalem quickly, so they did not want Jesus to stop when the blind man cried out. Other scholars think the people were not ready to hear that Jesus is the Son of David, that is, the Messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## Why did the man call Jesus rabbi?

[10:51]

In ancient Israel, people called certain teachers "rabbi." People followed the teacher, obeyed the things he taught, and called him rabbi. The Greek word can also be used to call someone "master."

## Why was this man healed?

[10:52]

Jesus healed this man because he believed in Jesus.

### Mark 10:1

#### Connecting Statement:

After Jesus and his disciples leave Capernaum, Jesus reminds the Pharisees, as well as his disciples, what God really expects in marriage and divorce.

#### Jesus left that place

Jesus's disciples were traveling with him. They were leaving Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

#### and to the area beyond the Jordan River

"and to the land on the other side of the Jordan River" or "and to the area east of the Jordan River"

#### He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

#### he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

### Mark 10:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 10:3

#### What did Moses command you

Moses gave the law to their ancestors, which they now were also supposed to follow. Alternate translation: "What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

### Mark 10:4

#### a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

### Mark 10:5

#### "It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

In some languages speakers do not interrupt a quote to say who is speaking. Rather they say who is speaking at the beginning or end of the complete quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law.'"

#### because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

Long before this time, Moses wrote this law for the Jews and their descendants because they had hard hearts. The Jews of Jesus's time also had hard hearts, so Jesus included them by using the words "your" and "you." Alternate translation: "because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

#### your hard hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. The phrase "hard hearts" is a metaphor for "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "your stubbornness"

### Mark 10:6

#### God made them

"God made people"

## Mark 10:7

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to quote what God said in the book of Genesis.

### For this reason

"Therefore" or "Because of this"

### be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

## Mark 10:8

### and the two ... one flesh

Jesus finishes quoting what God said in the book of Genesis.

### they are no longer two, but one flesh

This is a metaphor to illustrate their close union as husband and wife. Alternate translation: "the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

## Mark 10:9

### Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

The phrase "what God has joined together" refers to any married couple. Alternate translation: "Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

## Mark 10:10

### When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

### were in the house

Jesus's disciples were speaking to him privately. Alternate translation: were alone in the house"

### asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

## Mark 10:11

### Whoever

"Anyone who"

### commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

## Mark 10:12

### she commits adultery

In this situation she commits adultery against her previous husband. Alternate translation: "she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

## Mark 10:13

### Connecting Statement:

When the disciples rebuke the people for bringing their little children to Jesus, he blesses the children and reminds the disciples that people must be as humble as a child to enter the kingdom of God.

### Then they brought

"Now people were bringing." This is the next event in the story.

### he might touch them

This means that Jesus would touch them with his hands and bless them. Alternate translation: "he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

### rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

## Mark 10:14

### Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

### was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

### Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

These two clauses have similar meanings, repeated for emphasis. In some languages it is more natural to emphasize this in another way. Alternate translation: "Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

### do not forbid

"allow"

### for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

The kingdom belonging to people represents the kingdom including them. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

## Mark 10:15

### whoever will not receive ... child will definitely not enter it

"if anyone will not receive ... child, he will definitely not enter it"

### as a little child

Jesus is comparing how people must receive the kingdom of God to how little children would receive it. Alternate translation: "in the same manner as a little child would"



**will not receive the kingdom of God**  
"will not accept God as their king"

**definitely not enter it**  
The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

#### Mark 10:16

**he took the children into his arms**  
"he hugged the children"

#### Mark 10:17

**to inherit eternal life**  
Here the man speaks of "receiving" as if it were "inheriting." This metaphor is used to emphasize the importance of receiving. Also, "inherit" here does not mean that someone has to die first. Alternate translation: to receive eternal life"

#### Mark 10:18

**Why do you call me good?**  
Jesus asks this question to remind the man that no man is good the way God is good. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

**No one is good except God alone**  
This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

#### Mark 10:19

**do not testify falsely**  
"do not testify falsely against anyone" or "do not lie about someone in court"

#### Mark 10:20

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 10:21

**One thing you lack**  
"There is one thing you are missing." Here "lack" is a metaphor for needing to do something. Alternate translation: "One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done" or

**give it to the poor**  
Here the word "it" refers to the things he sells and is a metonym for the money he receives when he sells them. Alternate translation: "give the money to the poor"

**the poor**  
This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

**treasure**  
wealth, valuable things

#### Mark 10:22

**had many possessions**  
"owned many things"

#### Mark 10:23

**How difficult it is**  
"It is very difficult"

#### Mark 10:24

**Jesus said to them again**  
"Jesus said to his disciples again"

**Children, how**  
"My children, how." Jesus is teaching them as a father would teach his children. Alternate translation: "My friends, how"

**how hard it is**  
"it is very hard"

#### Mark 10:25

**It is easier for a camel ... kingdom of God**  
It is impossible for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. Jesus uses an exaggeration to emphasize how very difficult it is for rich people to get into the kingdom of God.

**It is easier for a camel**  
This speaks of an impossible situation. If you cannot state this in this way in your language, you can use the word "would." Alternate translation: "It would be easier for a camel"

**the eye of a needle**  
Here "the eye" refers to the small hole in one end of a sewing needle. The thread goes through this hole and ties to the needle. Alternate translation: "the hole of a needle"

#### Mark 10:26

**They were**  
"The disciples were"

**Then who can be saved?**  
This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

#### Mark 10:27

**With people it is impossible, but not with God**  
The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

## Mark 10:28

**Look, we have left everything and have followed you**  
Here the word "Look" is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Similar emphasis can be expressed in other ways. Alternate translation: "We have left everything and have followed you"

**have left everything**  
"have left everything behind"

## Mark 10:29

**Truly I say to you, there is no one**  
This sentence ends in verse 30. It can be stated in positive form. If so, in verse 30, "who will not receive" would become "will receive." Alternate translation: "Truly I say to you, everyone"

**or lands**  
"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

**for my sake**  
"for my cause" or "for me"

**for the gospel**  
"to proclaim the gospel"

## Mark 10:30

**who will not receive**  
This sentence began in verse 29. If you the sentence was stated in positive form in verse 29, verse 30 would be changed to positive form also. Alternate translation: "will receive"

**this age**  
"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

**brothers and sisters and mothers and children**  
Like the list in verse 29, this describes the family in general. The word "fathers" is missing in verse 30, but it does not significantly change the meaning.

**with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life**  
This can be reworded so that the ideas in the abstract noun "persecution" are expressed with the verb "persecute." Because the sentence is so long and complicated, "will receive" can be repeated. Alternate translation: "and even though people persecute them, in the world to come, they will receive eternal life"

**in the world to come**  
"in the future world" or "in the future"

## Mark 10:31

**are first will be last, and the last first**  
Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "important" as being "first" and of being the "unimportant" as

being "last." Alternate translation: "are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

**the last first**  
The phrase "the last" refers to people who are "last." Also, the understood verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "those who are last will be first"

## Mark 10:32

**They were on the road ... and Jesus was going ahead of them**  
"Jesus and his disciples were walking on the road ... and Jesus was in front of his disciples"

**those who were following behind**  
"those who were following behind them." Some people were walking behind Jesus and his disciples.

## Mark 10:33

**See**  
"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**the Son of Man will**  
Jesus is speaking about himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

**the Son of Man will be given over to**  
The words "given over" mean "betrayed" or "put into the power of." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

**They will condemn**  
The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

**give him over to the Gentiles**  
"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

## Mark 10:34

**They will mock**  
"People will mock"

**put him to death**  
"kill him"

**he will rise**  
This refers to rising from the dead. Alternate translation: "he will rise from being dead"

## Mark 10:35

**we ... us**  
These words refer only to James and John.

## Mark 10:36

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 10:37

### in your glory

"when you are glorified." The phrase "in your glory" refers to when Jesus is glorified and rules over his kingdom. Alternate translation: "when you rule in your kingdom"

## Mark 10:38

### You do not know

"You do not understand"

### drink the cup which I will drink

Here "cup" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Suffering is often referred to as drinking from a cup. Alternate translation: "drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

### be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

Here "baptism" and being baptized represent suffering. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

## Mark 10:39

### We are able

They respond this way, meaning that they are able to drink the same cup and endure the same baptism.

### you will drink

"you will drink as well"

## Mark 10:40

### But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

"but those places are for those for whom they have been prepared." The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

### it has been prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

## Mark 10:41

### heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

## Mark 10:42

### Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

### those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) people in general consider these people the rulers of the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "those whom people consider to be the rulers of the Gentiles" or 2) the Gentiles consider these people their rulers. Alternate translation: "those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

### dominate

have control or power over

### exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

## Mark 10:43

### But it is not this way among you

This refers back to the previous verse about the Gentile rulers. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But do not be like them"

### become great

"be highly respected"

## Mark 10:44

### to be first

This is a metaphor for being the most important. Alternate translation: "to be the most important"

## Mark 10:45

### For the Son of Man did not come to be served

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man did not come to have people serve him"

### to be served, but to serve

"to be served by people, but to serve people"

### for many

"for many people"

## Mark 10:46

### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples continue walking toward Jerusalem, Jesus heals blind Bartimaeus, who then walks with them.

**the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar**  
"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

**Mark 10:47**

**When he heard that it was Jesus**  
Bartimaeus heard people saying that it was Jesus. Alternate translation: "When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

**Son of David**  
Jesus is called the Son of David because he is a descendant of King David. Alternate translation: "You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

**Mark 10:48**

**Many rebuked**  
"Many people rebuked"

**all the more**  
"even more"

**Mark 10:49**

**commanded him to be called.**  
This can be translated in active form or as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

**They called**  
The word "They" refers to the crowd.

**Be brave**  
"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

**He is calling for you**  
"Jesus is calling for you"

**Mark 10:50**

**sprang up**  
"jumped up"

**Mark 10:51**

**answered him**  
"answered the blind man"

**to receive my sight**  
"to be able to see"

**Mark 10:52**

**Your faith has healed you**  
This phrase is written this way to place emphasis on the man's faith. Jesus heals the man because he believes that Jesus can heal him. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I am healing you because you have believed in me"

**he followed him**  
"he followed Jesus"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Mark 10:2**

**What question did the Pharisees ask Jesus in order to test him?**  
The Pharisees asked Jesus if it was lawful for a husband to divorce his wife.

**Mark 10:4**

**What commandment had Moses given the Jews concerning divorce?**  
Moses had allowed a man to write a certificate of divorce and then send his wife away.

**Mark 10:5**

**Why had Moses given the Jews this commandment concerning divorce?**  
Moses had given this commandment to the Jews because of their hard hearts.

**Mark 10:6**

**To what event in history did Jesus refer when telling the Pharisees about God's original design for marriage?**  
Jesus referred to the creation of male and female at the beginning when telling about God's original design for marriage.

**Mark 10:7**

**What did Jesus say the two people, the man and his wife, become when they are married?**  
Jesus said that the two become one flesh.

**Mark 10:8**

**What did Jesus say the two people, the man and his wife, become when they are married?**  
Jesus said that the two become one flesh.

**Mark 10:9**

**What did Jesus say about what God joins together in marriage?**

Jesus said that what God joins together, let no man tear apart.

**Mark 10:13**

**What was Jesus' reaction when the disciples rebuked those bringing little children to him?**

Jesus was angry with the disciples and told them to permit the little children to come to him.

**Mark 10:14**

**What was Jesus' reaction when the disciples rebuked those bringing little children to him?**

Jesus was angry with the disciples and told them to permit the little children to come to him.

**Mark 10:15**

**How did Jesus say the kingdom of God must be received in order to enter it?**

Jesus said the kingdom of God must be received as a little child in order to enter it.

**Mark 10:19**

**What did Jesus first tell the man he must do to inherit eternal life?**

Jesus told the man he must not kill, not commit adultery, not steal, not testify falsely, not defraud, and must honor his father and mother.

**Mark 10:21**

**What additional commandment did Jesus then give the man?**

Jesus then commanded the man to sell all that he had and to follow him.

**Mark 10:22**

**How did the man react when Jesus gave him this commandment, and why?**

The man was sorrowful and walked away, for he had many possessions.

**Mark 10:23**

**Who did Jesus say had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God?**

Jesus said that the rich had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God.

**Mark 10:24**

**Who did Jesus say had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God?**

Jesus said that the rich had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God.

**Mark 10:25**

**Who did Jesus say had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God?**

Jesus said that the rich had great difficulty entering the kingdom of God.

**Mark 10:26**

**How did Jesus say even a rich person could be saved?**

Jesus said that with people it is impossible, but with God all things are possible.

**Mark 10:27**

**How did Jesus say even a rich person could be saved?**

Jesus said that with people it is impossible, but with God all things are possible.

**Mark 10:29**

**What did Jesus say anyone would receive who had left house, family, and lands for Jesus' sake?**

Jesus said they would receive a hundred times as much in this world, with persecutions, and eternal life in the world to come.

**Mark 10:30**

**What did Jesus say anyone would receive who had left house, family, and lands for Jesus' sake?**

Jesus said they would receive a hundred times as much in this world, with persecutions, and eternal life in the world to come.

**Mark 10:32**

**On what road were Jesus and the disciples traveling?**

Jesus and the disciples were traveling on the road going up to Jerusalem.

**Mark 10:33**

**What did Jesus tell his disciples would happen to him in Jerusalem?**

Jesus told his disciples that he would be condemned to death, and after three days he would rise.

**Mark 10:34**

**What did Jesus tell his disciples would happen to him in Jerusalem?**

Jesus told his disciples that he would be condemned to death, and after three days he would rise.

**Mark 10:35**

**What request did James and John make to Jesus?**

James and John requested to sit on Jesus' right and left hand with him in glory.

**Mark 10:36**

**What request did James and John make to Jesus?**  
James and John requested to sit on Jesus' right and left hand with him in glory.

**Mark 10:37**

**What request did James and John make to Jesus?**  
James and John requested to sit on Jesus' right and left hand with him in glory.

**Mark 10:39**

**What did Jesus say that James and John would endure?**  
Jesus said that James and John would endure the cup Jesus would drink, and the baptism with which Jesus would be baptized.

**Mark 10:40**

**Did Jesus grant the request of James and John?**  
No, Jesus said that the seats at his right and left hand were not his to give.

**Mark 10:42**

**How did Jesus say the rulers of the Gentiles treat their subjects?**  
Jesus said that the rulers of the Gentiles dominate their subjects.

**Mark 10:43**

**How did Jesus say those who wish to be great among the disciples must live?**  
Jesus said those who wish to be great among the disciples must be servant of all.

**Mark 10:44**

**How did Jesus say those who wish to be great among the disciples must live?**  
Jesus said those who wish to be great among the disciples must be servant of all.

**Mark 10:48**

**What did the blind man Bartimaeus do when many rebuked him, telling him to be quiet?**  
Bartimaeus cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

**Mark 10:52**

**What did Jesus say had healed Bartimaeus of his blindness?**  
Jesus said that Bartimaeus' faith had healed him.

## Chapter 11

<sup>1</sup> Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, and Jesus sent out two of his disciples <sup>2</sup> and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. <sup>3</sup> If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' you should say, 'The Lord has need of it and will immediately send it back here.'"

<sup>4</sup> They went away and found a colt tied at a door outside in the street, and they untied it. <sup>5</sup> Some people were standing there and said to them, "What are you doing, untying that colt?" <sup>6</sup> They spoke to them as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way. <sup>7</sup> They brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it. <sup>8</sup> Many people spread their garments on the road, and others spread branches they had cut from the fields. <sup>9</sup> Those who went before him and those who followed shouted,

"Hosanna! Blessed is the one  
who comes in the name of the Lord.

<sup>10</sup> Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David!  
Hosanna in the highest!"

<sup>11</sup> Then Jesus entered into Jerusalem and went into the temple and looked around at everything. Now the time being late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve. <sup>12</sup> The next day while they were going out from Bethany, he was hungry. <sup>13</sup> Seeing from far away a fig tree that had leaves, he went to see if he could find any fruit on it, and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs. <sup>14</sup> He spoke to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again." And his disciples heard it.

<sup>15</sup> They came to Jerusalem, and he entered the temple and began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple. He turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold pigeons. <sup>16</sup> He did not allow anyone to carry anything through the temple that could be sold. <sup>17</sup> He taught them and said, "Is it not written,

'My house will be called  
a house of prayer for all the nations'?

But you have made it a den of robbers."

<sup>18</sup> The chief priests and the scribes heard what he had said, and they looked for a way to destroy him. For they feared him because the entire crowd was amazed at his teaching. <sup>19</sup> When evening came, they left the city.

<sup>20</sup> As they walked by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots. <sup>21</sup> Peter remembered and said, "Rabbi, look! The fig tree you cursed has withered away."

<sup>22</sup> Jesus answered them, "Have faith in God. <sup>23</sup> Truly I say to you that if anyone says to this mountain, 'Get up and cast yourself into the sea,' and if he does not doubt in his heart but believes that what he said will happen, that is what God will do. <sup>24</sup> Therefore I say to you: Everything you pray and ask for, believe that you received it, and it will be yours. <sup>25</sup> When you stand and pray, you must forgive whatever you have against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven will also forgive you your trespasses." <sup>26</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>27</sup> They came to Jerusalem again. As Jesus was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him. <sup>28</sup> They said to him, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?"

<sup>29</sup> Jesus said to them, "I will ask you one question. Tell me and I will tell you by what authority I do these things. <sup>30</sup> The baptism of John, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me." <sup>31</sup> They discussed between themselves and argued and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then did you not believe him?' <sup>32</sup> But if we say, 'From men,' ... ." They were afraid of the people, for everyone was convinced that John was a prophet. <sup>33</sup> Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

Then Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

## Footnotes

---

11:26 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies of Mark do not have this sentence:

---

## Mark 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 11:9-10, 17, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULB without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

---

## Mark 11

### 11:1-10

#### Where were Bethany, Bethpage, and the Mount of Olives?

[11:1]

See Map: Bethany; Bethpage; Mount of Olives

#### How did Jesus enter into Jerusalem?

[11:2]

Jesus entered Jerusalem in the same way a king returned home after a great victory in a war. Often, they rode on horses or in a chariot. Jesus entered Jerusalem on a colt because he told people that he was the messiah and the king of the Jews (see: Zechariah 9:9). He also had a great victory. He lived the perfect life and was about to die so that people could have peace with God.

See: Matthew 21:1-11; Luke 19:28-44; John 12:12-19

See: [Chariot](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Chariot](#)

#### What was a colt?

[11:2]

A colt was a young donkey. This colt was with its mother, a donkey (see: Matthew 21:2). No one had ever ridden this colt. In the Old Testament, an animal that had never been used had special value for religious purposes (see: Numbers 19:2; Deuteronomy 21:3; 1 Samuel 6:7).

#### Why did Jesus say, "the Lord has need of it"?

[11:3]



Some scholars think that Jesus said, “the Lord has need of it” to say that God needed it for God’s purpose. Other scholars think Jesus said this because he was calling himself Lord. That is, he was calling himself God. Still other scholars think the owner of the colt was traveling with Jesus, and Jesus said the owner had need of the colt.

See: [Jesus is God](#)

### **Why did the disciples put their cloaks on the colt?**

[11:7]

The disciples put their cloaks on the colt to make it easier for Jesus to ride on it. A cloak was a coat. It was a piece of clothing used to make someone warm. It was put on over other clothes. This coat covered the whole body with a single piece of thick cloth.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **Why did the people put things on the road?**

[11:8]

The road on which Jesus rode the colt was dirty. The people honored Jesus by putting things on the road so that he would not get dirty. In ancient times, people did this to welcome a new king (see: 2 Kings 9:13).

### **Why did the people shout “hosanna”?**

[11:9]

The people shouted “Hosanna” because they wanted God to save them. They said that Jesus came “in the name of the Lord.” That is, God gave Jesus power and permission to serve him. They believed Jesus was the messiah who came to begin the kingdom promised to David.

See: [Covenant with David](#); [Heaven](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Covenant with David](#)

## **11:11-26**

### **Why did Jesus look around the temple?**

[11:11]

Jesus went to Jerusalem. He walked around the temple. Scholars think Jesus looked at the things happening in the temple. Many forbidden things were happening. They think Jesus planned what he would do the next day.

See: [Temple](#)

See Map: Jerusalem

### **Why did Jesus curse the fig tree?**

[11:13, 11:14]

Jesus saw a fig tree. It did not have fruit. He cursed it. He did not do this because he was hungry or angry. It was a metaphor. In the same way a fig tree produced figs, so God wanted Israel to produce fruit. That is, he wanted Israel to serve and obey him. However, they did not do this. Therefore, they made themselves useless to God.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **Why did Jesus make people leave the temple?**

[11:15]

Jesus made certain people leave the temple. He made people who sold things in the temple leave. He made people who bought things in the temple leave. He did not want people there to make money. He only wanted people to go to the temple to worship God. People from every nation were to go to the temple to pray (see: Isaiah 56:7). However, the Jews did not want other people to go to the temple to worship God. Instead, they used the area God made for the Gentiles worship God as a market to make money.

Jesus said the temple was made into a “den of robbers.” That is, a place where people who robbed other people lived (see: Jeremiah 7:11). Some scholars think Jesus quoted Jeremiah so everyone would know that the people did not honor the temple.

Before, Jesus also made people leave the temple earlier (see: John 2:13-22).

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

### **Why did the chief priests and scribes want to kill Jesus?**

[11:18]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to kill Jesus because of what he did. Some scholars think the chief priests and the scribes made money from the things sold in the temple. Jesus stopped them from making money in the temple. Other scholars think Jesus made others know that he was greater than the high priest and he ruled the temple by doing the things he did there.

See: [Scribe](#); [High Priest](#); [Chief Priest](#); [Scribe](#)

### **Why did Peter call Jesus “rabbi”?**

[11:21]

See: Mark 9:5

### **Why did Jesus speak about a mountain?**

[11:23]

Jesus spoke about a mountain to teach his disciples. This was a metaphor. He wanted to say they could do great things if they trusted in God. They were not actually going to move a mountain. This was hyperbole. However, God did many miracles through these disciples after Jesus was made alive again. God would do things that no person could ever do if they asked God for something in prayer that God wanted to happen. Jesus wanted them to trust in God when they prayed.

Jesus also wanted the disciples to forgive other people. God forgave their sins. So they should forgive other people. Some scholars think Jesus told the disciples to forgive others because God heard their prayers. They think there is a kind of separation between God and the person praying when they do not forgive other people.

See: Disciple; [Sin](#); [Miracle](#); [Hyperbole](#); [Will of God](#); [Sin](#)

### **Did Mark write the words in 11:26?**

[11:26]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words in 11:26. Fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in 11:26. Some English Bibles were translated from a copy of the Greek New Testament that had 11:26. However, scholars think Mark did not write these words.

## **11:27-33**

### **Who were the elders?**

[11:27]

The elders were the Jewish leaders who were older men. Why did the leaders want to know who gave Jesus permission to do the things he did?

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did. They did not think God gave him permission to do the things he did. They thought Satan gave him permission to do these things. Some scholars think the leaders really wanted to have Jesus say that God sent him. They thought that the Law of Moses said they could kill him if he did this. However, God sent Jesus.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### Why did Jesus ask the leaders about the baptism of John?

[11:29, 11:30]

Jesus asked the leaders about who gave John the Baptist permission to do the things he did. The people in Israel loved John the Baptist. They thought God sent him. John the Baptist said that Jesus was the messiah. The leaders were afraid of saying that God sent John because they would also have to say that God sent Jesus. However, the people would be angry with these leaders and reject them if they said that God did not send John.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

#### Mark 11:1

**Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives**  
 "When Jesus and his disciples came near to Jerusalem, they came to Bethphage and Bethany, near the Mount of Olives" They have come to Bethphage and Bethany in the vicinity of Jerusalem.

##### Bethphage

This is the name of a village.

#### Mark 11:2

**opposite us**  
 "ahead of us"

##### a colt

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.

##### that has never been ridden

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "that no one has ever ridden"

#### Mark 11:3

##### Why are you doing this

It can be written clearly what the word "this" refers to. Alternate translation: "Why are you untying and taking the colt"

**has need of it**  
 "needs it"

##### will immediately send it back here

Jesus will send it back promptly when he is finished using it. Alternate translation: "will immediately send it back when he no longer needs it"

#### Mark 11:4

##### They went

"The two disciples went"

##### colt

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man. See how you translated this in Mark 11:2.

#### Mark 11:5

##### What are you doing, untying that colt?

The people wanted to know why the two men were untying the colt. They may have been concerned that the two men were doing something they should not have been doing. Alternate translation: "Why are you untying that colt?"

#### Mark 11:6

##### They spoke

"They responded"

##### as Jesus told them

"as Jesus had told them to respond." This refers to how Jesus had told them to respond to people's questions about taking the colt.

##### let them go their way

This means that they allowed them to continue doing what they were doing. Alternate translation: "let them take the donkey with them"

#### Mark 11:7

##### They brought the colt to Jesus

The word "They" refers to the two disciples.

##### threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it

"laid their cloaks on its back and Jesus sat on it." It is easier to ride a colt or a horse when there is a

blanket or something similar on its back. In this case, the disciples put their cloaks on it.

**cloaks**  
"coats" or "robes"

### Mark 11:8

**Many people spread their garments on the road**  
It was a tradition to lay garments on the road in front of important people to honor them. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Many people spread their garments on the road to honor him"

**others spread branches they had cut from the fields**  
It was a tradition to lay palm branches on the road in front of important people to honor them. Alternate translation: "others spread on the road branches that they had cut from the fields to honor him"

### Mark 11:9

**who followed**  
"who followed him"

**Hosanna**  
This word means "save us," but people also shouted it joyfully when they wanted to praise God. You can translate it according to how it was used, or you can write "Hosanna" using your language's way of spelling that word. Alternate translation: "Praise God"

**Blessed is the one**  
This is referring to Jesus. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you, the one"

**in the name of the Lord**  
This is a metonym for the Lord's authority. Alternate translation: "with the authority of the Lord"

**Blessed is**  
"May God bless"

### Mark 11:10

**Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David**  
"Blessed is our father David's coming kingdom."  
This refers to Jesus coming and ruling as king. The word "blessed" can be translated as an active verb. Alternate translation: "Blessed be the coming of your kingdom" or "May God bless you as you rule your coming kingdom"

**of our father David**  
Here David's descendant who will rule is referred to as David himself. Alternate translation: "of the greatest descendant of our father David" or "that David's greatest descendant will rule"

**Hosanna in the highest**  
Possible meanings are 1) "Praise God who is in heaven" or 2) "Let those who are in heaven shout 'Hosanna'."

**the highest**  
Here heaven is spoken of as "the highest."  
Alternate translation: "the highest heaven" or "heaven"

### Mark 11:11

**the time being late**  
"because it was late in the day"

**he went out to Bethany with the twelve**  
"he and his twelve disciples left Jerusalem and went to Bethany"

### Mark 11:12

**he was hungry**  
"Jesus was hungry"

### Mark 11:13

**Connecting Statement:**  
This happens while Jesus and his disciples are walking to Jerusalem.

**if he could find any fruit on it**  
"if there was any fruit on it"

**he found nothing but leaves**  
This means that he did not find any figs. Alternate translation: "he found only leaves and no figs on the tree"

**the season**  
"the time of year"

### Mark 11:14

**He spoke to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again**  
Jesus speaks to the fig tree and curses it. He speaks to it so that his disciples hear him.

**He spoke to it**  
"He spoke to the tree"

**his disciples heard it**  
The word "it" refers to Jesus speaking to the fig tree.

### Mark 11:15

**They came**  
"Jesus and his disciples came"

**began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple**

Jesus is driving these people out of the temple. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "began to drive the sellers and buyers out of the temple"

**the sellers and the buyers**

"the people who were buying and selling"

#### Mark 11:16

**to carry anything through the temple that could be sold**

"to carry anything that could be sold through the temple"

#### Mark 11:17

**General Information:**

God had said earlier in his word, through the prophet Isaiah, that his temple would be a house of prayer for all the nations.

**Is it not written, 'My house will be called ... the nations'?**

Jesus is rebuking the Jewish leaders for their misuse of the temple. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is written in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be called a house where people from all nations may pray.'"

**But you have made it a den of robbers**

Jesus compares the people to robbers and the temple to a robbers' den. Alternate translation: "But you are like robbers who have made my house into a robbers' den"

**a den of robbers**

"a cave where robbers hide"

#### Mark 11:18

**they looked for a way**

"they sought a way" or "they tried to find a way"

**to destroy him**

"to kill him"

#### Mark 11:19

**When evening came**

"In the evening"

**they left the city**

"Jesus and his disciples left the city"

#### Mark 11:20

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus uses the example of the fig tree to remind the disciples to have faith in God.

**walked by**

"were walking along the road"

**they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots**

Translate this statement to clarify that the tree died. Alternate translation: "they saw that the fig tree had withered away down to its roots and died"

**withered away**

"dried up"

#### Mark 11:21

**Peter remembered**

It may be helpful to state what Peter remembered.

Alternate translation: "Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree"

#### Mark 11:22

**Jesus answered them**

"Jesus replied to his disciples"

#### Mark 11:23

**Truly I say to you**

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**if he does not doubt in his heart but believes**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "if he truly believes in his heart" or "if he does not doubt but believes"

**God will do**

"God will make happen"

#### Mark 11:24

**Therefore I say to you**

"So I tell you"

**it will be yours**

It is understood that this will happen because God will provide what you ask for. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "God will give it to you"

#### Mark 11:25

**When you stand and pray**

It is common in Hebrew culture to stand when praying to God. Alternate translation: "When you pray"

**whatever you have against anyone**

"whatever grudge you have against anyone." Here the word "whatever" refers to any grudge you hold against someone for sinning against you or any anger you have against someone.

## Mark 11:26

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 11:27

### Connecting Statement:

The next day when Jesus returns to temple, he gives the chief priests, scribes, and elders an answer to their question about his casting the money changers out of the temple area, by asking them a question that they were not willing to answer.

### They came to

"Jesus and his disciples came to"

### Jesus was walking in the temple

This means that Jesus was walking around inside of the temple; he was not walking into the temple.

## Mark 11:28

### They said to him

The word "They" refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

### By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?

Possible meanings: 1) Both of these questions have the same meaning and are asked together to strongly question Jesus's authority and so can be combined. Alternate translation: "Who gave you authority to do these things?" 2) They are two separate questions, the first asking about the nature of the authority and the second about who gave it to him.

### you do these things

The words "these things" refer to Jesus turning over the sellers' tables in the temple and speaking against what the chief priests and scribes taught. Alternate translation: "things like those you did here yesterday"

## Mark 11:29

### Tell me

"Answer me"

## Mark 11:30

### The baptism of John

"The baptism that John performed"

### was it from heaven or from men

"was it authorized by heaven or by men"

### from heaven

Here "heaven" refers to God. Alternate translation: "from God"

### from men

"from people"

## Mark 11:31

### If we say, 'From heaven,'

This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "If we say, 'It was from heaven,'"

### From heaven

Here "heaven" refers to God. See how you translated this in [Mark 11:30]

### not believe him

The word "him" refers to John the Baptist.

## Mark 11:32

### But if we say, 'From men,'

The religious leaders imply that they will suffer from the people if they give this answer. This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "But if we say, 'The baptism of John was from men,'" or "But if we say, 'From men,' that would not be good." or "But we do not want to say that it was from men."

### From men

"It came from a person"

### They were afraid of the people

The author, Mark, explains why the religious leaders did not want to say that John's baptism was from men. This can be stated clearly. "They said this to each other because they were afraid of the people" or "They did not want to say that John's baptism was from men because they were afraid of the people"

## Mark 11:33

### We do not know

This refers to the baptism of John. This understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "We do not know where the baptism of John came from"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 11:2

**What did Jesus send two of his disciples to do in the village opposite them?**

Jesus sent them to bring a colt to him that had never been ridden.

### Mark 11:5

**What happened when the disciples untied the colt?**

Some people asked the disciples what they were doing, so they spoke to the people as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way.

### Mark 11:6

**What happened when the disciples untied the colt?**

Some people asked the disciples what they were doing, so they spoke to the people as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way.

### Mark 11:8

**What did the people spread on the road as Jesus rode on the colt?**

The people spread their garments, and branches they had cut from the fields.

### Mark 11:10

**What coming kingdom were the people shouting about as Jesus rode toward Jerusalem?**

The people were shouting that the kingdom of their father David was coming.

### Mark 11:11

**What did Jesus do when he entered the temple area?**

Jesus looked around and then went out to Bethany.

### Mark 11:14

**What did Jesus do when he saw the fig tree with no fruit on it?**

Jesus said to the fig tree, "No one will ever eat fruit from you".

### Mark 11:15

**What did Jesus do when he entered the temple area this time?**

Jesus cast out the sellers and purchasers, and would not allow anyone to carry merchandise through the temple.

### Mark 11:16

**What did Jesus do when he entered the temple area this time?**

Jesus cast out the sellers and purchasers, and would not allow anyone to carry merchandise through the temple.

### Mark 11:17

**What did Jesus say the temple was supposed to be, according to Scripture?**

Jesus said that the temple was supposed to be a house of prayer for all the nations.

**What did Jesus say the chief priests and scribes had made the temple?**

Jesus said they had made the temple a den of robbers.

### Mark 11:18

**What were the chief priests and scribes trying to do to Jesus?**

The chief priests and scribes were trying to kill Jesus.

### Mark 11:20

**What happened to the fig tree to which Jesus had spoken?**

The fig tree to which Jesus had spoken withered away to its roots.

### Mark 11:24

**What did Jesus say about everything we ask for in prayer?**

Jesus said that everything we ask for in prayer, believe that we have received it, and it will be ours.

### Mark 11:25

**What did Jesus say we must do so that the Father in heaven will also forgive you?**

Jesus said we must forgive whatever we have against anyone, so that the Father will also forgive us.

### Mark 11:27

**In the temple, what did the chief priests, scribes, and elders want to know from Jesus?**

They wanted to know by what authority he did the things he was doing.

**Mark 11:28**

**In the temple, what did the chief priests, scribes, and elders want to know from Jesus?**

They wanted to know by what authority he did the things he was doing.

**Mark 11:30**

**What question did Jesus ask the chief priests, scribes, and elders?**

Jesus asked them if John's baptism was from heaven or from men.

**Mark 11:31**

**Why did the chief priests, scribes, and elders not want to answer that John's baptism was from heaven?**

They did not want to give this answer because Jesus would ask why they didn't believe John.

**Mark 11:32**

**Why did the chief priests, scribes, and elders not want to answer that John's baptism was from men?**

They did not want to give this answer because they feared the people, who all believed that John was a prophet.

---



## Chapter 12

<sup>1</sup> Then Jesus began to teach them in parables. He said, "A man planted a vineyard, put a hedge around it, and dug a pit for a winepress. He built a watchtower and then leased the vineyard to vine growers. Then he went away on a journey. <sup>2</sup> At the right time, he sent a servant to the vine growers to receive from them some of the fruit of the vineyard. <sup>3</sup> But they took him, beat him, and sent him away empty-handed. <sup>4</sup> Again he sent to them another servant, and they wounded him in the head and treated him shamefully. <sup>5</sup> He sent yet another, and this one they killed. They treated many others in the same way, beating some and killing others. <sup>6</sup> He had still one more person to send, a beloved son. He was the last one he sent to them. He said, 'They will respect my son.'

<sup>7</sup> "But the vine growers said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.' <sup>8</sup> They seized him, killed him, and threw him out of the vineyard. <sup>9</sup> Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vine growers and will give the vineyard to others.

<sup>10</sup> Have you not read this scripture?

'The stone which the builders rejected  
has been made the cornerstone.

<sup>11</sup> This was from the Lord,  
and it is marvelous in our eyes.'"

<sup>12</sup> After this the Jewish leaders sought a way to arrest Jesus because they understood that he spoke the parable against them. But they were afraid of the crowd. So they left him and went away.

<sup>13</sup> Then they sent some of the Pharisees and the Herodians to him to trap him with words. <sup>14</sup> When they came, they said to him, "Teacher, what people think is not a concern to you because you do not show partiality to anyone. You truly teach the way of God. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not? Should we pay or not?"

<sup>15</sup> But Jesus knew their hypocrisy and said to them, "Why do you test me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it." <sup>16</sup> They brought one to Jesus. He said to them, "Whose likeness and inscription is this?"

They said, "Caesar's."

<sup>17</sup> Jesus said, "Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." They marveled at him.

<sup>18</sup> Then Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him, saying, <sup>19</sup> "Teacher, Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies and leaves a wife behind him, but had no child, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.' <sup>20</sup> There were seven brothers; the first took a wife and then died, having no children. <sup>21</sup> Then the second took her and died, leaving no child, and the third in the same way. <sup>22</sup> The seven left no children. Last of all, the woman also died. <sup>23</sup> In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be? For all seven brothers had her as their wife."

<sup>24</sup> Jesus said, "Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because you do not know the scriptures nor the power of God? <sup>25</sup> For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are like angels in heaven. <sup>26</sup> But concerning the dead that are raised, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the account about the bush, how God spoke to him and said, 'I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob'? <sup>27</sup> He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. You are quite mistaken."

<sup>28</sup> One of the scribes came and heard their discussion; he saw that Jesus answered them well. He asked him, "What commandment is the most important of all?"

<sup>29</sup> Jesus answered, "The most important is, 'Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one. <sup>30</sup> You must love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.' <sup>31</sup> The second commandment is this, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' There is no other greater commandment than these."

<sup>32</sup> The scribe said, "Good, Teacher! You have truly said that God is one, and that there is no other besides him. <sup>33</sup> To love him with all the heart and with all the understanding and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself is even more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices."

<sup>34</sup> When Jesus saw that he had given a wise answer, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God." After that, no one dared to ask Jesus any more questions.

<sup>35</sup> While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said, "How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David? <sup>36</sup> David himself, in the Holy Spirit, said,

'The Lord said to my Lord,  
"Sit at my right hand  
until I put your enemies under your feet.'"

<sup>37</sup> David himself calls him 'Lord,' so how can the Christ be David's son?" The large crowd gladly listened to him.

<sup>38</sup> In his teaching Jesus said, "Beware of the scribes, who like to walk in long robes and be greeted in the marketplaces, <sup>39</sup> and have the most important seats in the synagogues and the places of honor at feasts.

<sup>40</sup> They also devour widows' houses, and they pray long prayers for people to see. These men will receive greater condemnation."

<sup>41</sup> Then Jesus sat down across from an offering box in the temple area; he was watching people as they dropped their money into the box. Many rich people put in large amounts of money. <sup>42</sup> Then a poor widow came and put in two mites, worth about a penny. <sup>43</sup> He called his disciples and said to them, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them who contributed to the offering box. <sup>44</sup> For all of them gave out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all of the money which she had to live on."

---

## Mark 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 12:10-11, 36, which is from the Old Testament.

---

## Mark 12

### 12:1-6

#### What was a parable?

[12:1]

Jesus used a parable about a vineyard. He did this to talk about Israel. In the same way a farmer makes and protects a vineyard, so God made and protects the nation of Israel. God gave certain leaders permission to care for Israel. He sent prophets to Israel to help the Israelites obey God. However, they did not do what these prophets said to do. Finally, God sent Jesus. That is, he sent his son. Then the Jewish leaders had him killed.

See: [Son of God](#); [Prophet](#); [Son of God](#)

#### What was a vineyard?

[12:1]

A vineyard was a place where people grew grapes. The man put up plants around the field to protect it from animals. He also built a watchtower. This is a tall tower where people could see far away.

At this time, scholars think the vineyard was owned by a Gentile who did not live in this area. Instead, he had made people pay him money to use his land.

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

See: Isaiah 5:1-2

**Why did the owner of the vineyard send servants?**

[12:2]

The owner of the vineyard sent his servants to get what they promised to the owner for using his land. They promised him a certain part of what they grew.

**Why did the men beat the servants?**

[12:3]

These men did not want to give the servant what they promised to give to the owner of the land. Therefore, they beat the servants. They wanted the owner to know they were not going to give him anything and that he should not send any more servants.

**12:7-12**

**What was an inheritance?**

[12:7]

See: [Inherit \(Inheritance, Heir\)](#)

**What scripture said these words?**

[12:10]

See: Psalm 118:22-23

**Why did the Jewish leaders want to arrest Jesus?**

[12:12]

The Jewish leaders wanted to arrest Jesus after they heard what he said. That is, they wanted to catch him so they could kill him. This is because they knew he was speaking about them. Jesus knew the Jewish leaders wanted to kill him.

**Why were the Jewish leaders afraid of the crowd?**

[12:12]

Mark wrote that the Jewish leaders did not try to arrest Jesus. They feared all the people there. Many people thought Jesus was a great man. However, Mark wanted people to know that the Jewish leaders feared the people more than they feared God. They thought they were obeying God by killing Jesus. However, they were not obeying God.

**12:13-17**

**What was a pharisee?**

[12:13]

See: [Pharisees](#)

### **What was a Herodian?**

[12:13]

A Herodian was someone who served King Herod. He was the leader of the Jews and served the Romans.

### **How did the Jewish leaders try to trap Jesus?**

[12:13]

The Jewish leaders tried to trap Jesus. That is, they tried to get Jesus to say something that would cause someone to be angry with him. They wanted Jesus to speak against the leader of the Roman Empire. Or they wanted Jesus to say something that made the Jew.

The Jewish leaders said several things to Jesus.

1. The Jewish leaders did not believe the things Jesus said. However, they said he spoke truth when they really thought he lied.
2. The Jewish leaders said Jesus did not care what anyone thinks. That is, Jesus will say true things. He will not stop saying these things because someone does not want him to say these things. He did not say things so that people would like him.
3. Jesus does not show partiality. That is, Jesus did not favor one person over another.
4. Jesus taught the way of God. That is, he taught them about the way God wanted them to live. The Jewish leaders did not believe this. They would have obeyed Jesus if they had believed this.

Because of this, Jesus said the Jewish leaders were hypocrites. That is, they said one thing, but they did not believe it. Or they said something and did not do it.

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus about paying taxes. The Romans made the Jews pay taxes to them every year. The Jews had to pay the Romans to rule them. The Jews did not like having to pay this tax. The Jews would have been angry if Jesus said that the Jews should pay this tax to the Romans. The Romans would be angry if Jesus said that the Jews should not pay this tax to the Romans.

### **What did Jesus say to the Jewish leaders?**

[12:15]

Jesus told the Jewish leaders to give him a Roman coin. This coin had the face of the Roman emperor on it. This man was called Caesar. The coin also had certain words on it. These words said that Caesar was God.

Jesus said that the Jews needed to obey Caesar, but they also needed to obey God more. Jesus wanted people to know that Caesar was not God and that God gave permission to Caesar to rule. He also wanted people to know that he did not think that Caesar was God.

See: Romans 13:1-7

### **What was a denarius?**

[12:15]

See: [Denarius](#)

### **12:18-27**

### **What did the Sadducees think happened when people died?**

[12:18]

The Sadducees did not think that people would be resurrected. That is, they did not think people would go to heaven or hell when they died. They did not believe in many things taught in the Bible.

See: [Hell](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Heaven](#); [Hell](#)

### **Why did the Sadducees ask Jesus this question?**

[12:19, 12:20, 12:21, 12:22, 12:23]

The Law of Moses taught the people of Israel how to care for a woman whose husband died. In ancient Israel, a woman became very poor when her husband died and she had no children. Therefore, the Law of Moses said that the husband's brother would marry her. He would care for her. They had children who would inherit the dead husband's land.

The Sadducees tried to trap Jesus by asking this question. They wanted Jesus to say something that would make people angry. They thought their question proved that no one would be resurrected.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Sadducees](#); [Inherit \(Inheritance, Heir\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **How did Jesus answer the Sadducees?**

[12:24, 12:25]

Jesus told the Sadducees that they thought the wrong things. They did not know the Scriptures because they only believed God gave Israel the first five books of the Old Testament. They did not understand many things about God. Jesus told them that people were married on the earth. God wanted them to do this. They had children and helped each other. However, in heaven, people will worship God. They do not need to be married. Therefore, people will be like the angels who do not get married.

See: [Angel](#); [Heaven](#); [Worship](#); [Angel](#)

### **Why did Jesus speak about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?**

[12:26]

The Sadducees believed that God only gave Israel the first five books of the Old Testament. Here, Jesus said the same thing God said to Moses. When God said these words, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were dead. However, God spoke about them in the same way he would speak about someone who is alive. The Sadducees did not understand the parts of the Bible in which they believed.

See: Exodus 3:6

### **12:28-34**

### **Why did the scribe ask Jesus about the greatest commandment?**

[12:28]

The scribe heard what Jesus said to the Sadducees. Therefore, he wanted to know how Jesus would answer his question. At this time, scholars asked each other about which of the commandments was the greatest. However, they did not agree which was the greatest.

See: [Sadducees](#); [Command \(Commandment\)](#); [Sadducees](#)

### **Why did Jesus say that these two commandments were the greatest?**

[12:29, 12:30]

Jesus told the scribes that the two greatest commandments were to love God and to love other people. A person will be doing all of the other things God commands people to do if they do these two things.

See: [Command \(Commandment\)](#); [Command \(Commandment\)](#)

### **Why did the Scribes call Jesus teacher?**

[12:32]

In ancient Israel, many people called Jesus "teacher." They believed that he was a teacher. However, they would know that Jesus was much more than a teacher if they believed in him.

### **How is God one?**

[12:32]

God is one because there is only one God. There is nothing or no one else like him.

See: [Trinity](#)

### **What were burnt offerings and sacrifices?**

[12:33]

See: [Sacrifice](#); [Sacrifice](#)

### **Why did Jesus say that the Scribe was “not far from the kingdom of God”?**

[12:34]

Jesus said this man “was not far from the kingdom of God.” That is, he was close to believing in Jesus and becoming part of God’s kingdom.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

### **Why did people stop asking Jesus questions?**

[12:34]

Mark wrote that people stopped asking Jesus questions. People tried to trap Jesus by asking him questions. They wanted Jesus to say something that made people angry. However, they knew they could not trap Jesus by asking him questions because of the way Jesus answered them.

## **12:35-44**

### **What was a temple court?**

[12:35]

See: [Temple Courts](#)

### **Why did Jesus ask this question?**

[12:35]

Jesus asked people about something the scribes said while he was in the temple. The messiah was the “son of David.” That is, he would be a descendant of King David (see: 2 Samuel 7). However, David said that the messiah was his master (see: Psalm 110). He knew people would not know how this would happen.

See: [Covenant with David](#); [Scribe](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Covenant with David](#)

### **What did David say?**

[12:36]

David said, “the Lord said to my lord.” That is, God said to the one who ruled David. He will sit at God’s right hand. That is, God will honor him. God will also make the messiah’s enemies his footstool. That is, one day God will defeat all of the messiah’s enemies.

See: [Trinity](#); [Trinity](#)

### **Why did Jesus warn people about the Scribes?**

[12:38]

Jesus warned people about the scribes. They only did things so that people honored them. However, they did not honor God. God gave them permission to care for the Jewish people. However, they did not do this. Therefore, God will punish them more severely than those people who are not leaders.

See: [Scribe](#)

### What was an offering box?

[12:41]

An offering box was a place in the temple where people put money. The people serving in the temple used this money. People worshipped God by giving money in this way.

See: [Worship](#); [Temple](#); [Worship](#)

### Why was the woman's offering better than the offering of rich people?

[12:43, 12:44]

Giving money to the temple was an offering to God. Jesus told them that God did not care who gave the most money. The woman gave more to God because she gave everything she had to God. The rich people only gave a part of what they had to God. They kept most of what they had for themselves. However, the woman gave all she had for her to live.

See: [Offer \(Offering\)](#); [Offer \(Offering\)](#)

## Mark 12:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus speaks this parable against the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

### Then Jesus began to teach them

The word "them" here refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders to whom Jesus had been talking in the previous chapter.

### put a hedge around it

He put a barrier around the vineyard. It could have been a row of shrubs, a fence, or a stone wall.

### dug a pit for a winepress

This means that he carved a pit on the rock, which would be the bottom part of the winepress used for collecting the squeezed grape juice. Alternate translation: "carved a pit into rock for the winepress" or "he made a vat to collect the juice from the winepress"

### leased the vineyard to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

## Mark 12:2

### At the right time

This refers to the time of harvest. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "When the time came to harvest the grapes"

## Mark 12:3

### But they took him

"But the vine growers took the servant"

### empty-handed

This means that they did not give him any of the fruit. Alternate translation: "without any grapes"

## Mark 12:4

### he sent to them

"the owner of the vineyard sent to the vine growers"

### they wounded him in the head

This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "they beat that one on the head, and they hurt him terribly"

## Mark 12:5

### yet another ... many others

These phrases refer to other servants. Alternate translation: "yet another servant ... many other servants"

### They treated many others in the same way

This refers to servants that the owner sent. The phrase "in the same way" refers to them being mistreated. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "They also mistreated many other servants whom he sent"

## Mark 12:6

### **a beloved son**

It is implied that this is the owner's son. Alternate translation: "his beloved son"

## Mark 12:7

### **the heir**

This is the owner's heir, who would inherit the vineyard after his father died. Alternate translation: "the owner's heir"

### **the inheritance**

The tenants are referring to the vineyard as "the inheritance." Alternate translation: "this vineyard"

## Mark 12:8

### **They seized him**

"The vine growers seized the son"

## Mark 12:9

### **Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do?**

Jesus asks a question and then gives the answer to teach the people. The question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do."

### **Therefore**

Jesus has finished telling the parable and is now asking the people what they think will happen next.

### **destroy**

kill

### **will give the vineyard to others**

The word "others" refers to other vine growers who will care for the vineyard. Alternate translation: "he will give the vineyard to vine growers to care for it"

## Mark 12:10

### **General Information:**

This scripture was written long before in God's word.

### **Have you not read this scripture?**

Jesus reminds the people of a scripture passage. He uses a rhetorical question here to rebuke them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read this scripture." or "You should remember this scripture."

### **has been made the cornerstone**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord made into the cornerstone"

## Mark 12:11

### **This was from the Lord**

"The Lord has done this"

### **it is marvelous in our eyes**

Here "in our eyes" stands for seeing, which is a metaphor for the people's opinion. Alternate translation: "we have seen it and think that it is marvelous" or "we think that it is wonderful"

## Mark 12:12

### **sought a way**

"wanted to find a way"

### **they were afraid of the crowd**

They were afraid of what the crowd would do to them if they arrested Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but they feared what the crowd would do if they arrested him"

### **against them**

"to accuse them"

## Mark 12:13

### **Connecting Statement:**

In an effort to trap Jesus, some of the Pharisees and Herodians, and then the Sadducees, come to Jesus with questions.

### **Then they sent**

"Then the Jewish leaders sent"

### **the Herodians**

This was the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

### **to trap him**

Here the author describes tricking Jesus as trying to "trap him." Alternate translation: "to trick him"

## Mark 12:14

### **When they came, they said**

Here "they" refers to those sent from among the Pharisees and the Herodians.

### **what people think is not a concern to you**

The abstract noun "concern" may be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "you are not concerned about what people think of you" or "you do not try to win people's favor"

### **you do not show partiality to anyone**

"you do not judge people by how they look" or "you judge people by what is in their hearts"



## Mark 12:15

### Jesus knew their hypocrisy

They were acting hypocritically. This can be explained more clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do"

### Why do you test me?

Jesus rebukes the Jewish leaders because they were trying to trick him. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you are trying to make me say something wrong so you can accuse me."

### denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages.

## Mark 12:16

### They brought one

"The Pharisees and the Herodians brought a denarius"

### likeness and inscription

"picture and name"

### They said, "Caesar's

Here "Caesar's" refers to his likeness and inscription. Alternate translation: "They said, 'They are Caesar's likeness and inscription'"

## Mark 12:17

### Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's

Jesus is teaching that his people must respect the government by paying taxes. This figure of speech can be clarified by changing Caesar to Roman government. Alternate translation: "Give to the Roman government the things that belong to the Roman government"

### and to God

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

### They marveled at him

They were amazed at what Jesus had said. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They marveled at him and at what he had said"

## Mark 12:18

### who say there is no resurrection

This phrase explains who the Sadducees were. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "who say there is no resurrection from the dead"

## Mark 12:19

### Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies ... brother.'

The Sadducees are quoting what Moses had written in the law. Moses's quote can be expressed as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies ... brother."

### wrote for us

"wrote for us Jews." The Sadducees were a group of Jews. Here they use the word "us" to refer to themselves and all Jews.

### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his brother's wife"

### raise up children for his brother

"have a son for his brother." The man's first son would be considered to be the dead brother's son, and the son's descendants would be considered to be the dead brother's descendants. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "have a son who will be considered to be the dead brother's son"

## Mark 12:20

### There were seven brothers

The Sadducees tell Jesus a story because they want to ask him a question about it to test him. The story is not about things that really happened. Alternate translation: "Suppose there were seven brothers"

### the first

the first brother

### the first took a wife

"the first brother married a woman." Here marrying a woman is spoken of as "taking" her.

## Mark 12:21

### the second ... the third

These numbers refer to each of the brothers and can be expressed as such. Alternate translation: "the second brother ... the third brother"

### the second took her

"the second married her." Here marrying a woman is spoken of as "taking" her.

### the third in the same way

"the third brother married her as his other brothers had done, and he also died leaving no children"

## Mark 12:22

### The seven

This refers to all the brothers. Alternate translation: "The seven brothers"

**The seven left no children**

Each of the brothers married the woman and then died before he had any children with her. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but none of them had any children with her, and one by one they died"

**Mark 12:23**

**In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be?**

The Sadducees are testing Jesus by asking this question. If your readers can only understand this as a request for information, this can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now tell us whose wife she will be in the resurrection, when they all rise again."

**Mark 12:24**

**Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because ... power of God?**

Jesus rebukes the Sadducees because they are mistaken about God's law. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken because ... power of God."

**you do not know the scriptures**

This means that they do not understand what is written in the Old Testament scriptures.

**the power of God**

"how powerful God is"

**Mark 12:25**

**For when they rise**

Here the word "they" refers to the brothers and the woman from the example.

**rise**

Waking and getting up from sleep is a metaphor for becoming alive after having been dead.

**from the dead**

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

**they neither marry nor are given in marriage**

"they do not marry, and they are not given in marriage"

**nor are given in marriage**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and no one gives them in marriage"

**heaven**

This refers to the place where God lives.

**Mark 12:26**

**that are raised**

This can be expressed with an active verb.

Alternate translation: "who rise" or "who rise to live again"

**the book of Moses**

"the book that Moses wrote"

**the account about the bush**

This refers to the part of the book of Moses that tells about when God spoke to Moses out of a bush that was burning but that did not burn up.

Alternate translation: "the passage about the burning bush" or "the words about the fiery bush"

**the bush**

This refers to a shrub, a woody plant that is smaller than a tree.

**how God spoke to him**

"about when God spoke to Moses"

**I am the God of Abraham ... Isaac ... Jacob**

This means that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship God. These men have died physically, but they are still alive spiritually and still worship God.

**Mark 12:27**

**not the God of the dead, but of the living**

Here "the dead" refers to people who are dead, and "the living" refers to people who are alive. Also, the words "the God" can be stated clearly in the second phrase. Alternate translation: "not the God of dead people, but the God of living people"

**the living**

This includes people who are alive physically and spiritually.

**You are quite mistaken**

It may be helpful to state what they are mistaken about. Alternate translation: "When you say that dead people do not rise again, you are quite mistaken"

**quite mistaken**

"completely mistaken" or "very wrong"

**Mark 12:28**

**He asked him**

"The scribe asked Jesus"

**Mark 12:29**

**The most important is**

"The most important" refers to the most important commandment. Alternate translation: "The most important commandment is"

**Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one**  
 "Listen, O Israel! The Lord our God is one Lord"

### Mark 12:30

**with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength**  
 Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

### Mark 12:31

**love your neighbor as yourself**  
 Jesus uses this simile to compare how people are to love each other with the same love as they love themselves. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

**than these**  
 Here the word "these" refers to the two commandments that Jesus had just told the people.

### Mark 12:32

**Good, Teacher**  
 "Good answer, Teacher" or "Well said, Teacher"

**God is one**  
 This means that there is only one God. Alternate translation: "there is only one God"

**that there is no other**  
 The word "God" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "that there is no other God"

### Mark 12:33

**with all the heart ... all the understanding ... all the strength**  
 Here "heart" is a metonym for person's thoughts, feelings, or inner being. These three phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

**to love one's neighbor as oneself**  
 This simile compares how people are to love each other with the same love that they love themselves. Alternate translation: "to love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

**is even more than**  
 This idiom means that something is more important than something else. In this case, these two commandments are more pleasing to God than burnt offering and sacrifices. This may be written clearly. Alternate translation: "is even more important than" or "is even more pleasing to God than"

### Mark 12:34

**You are not far from the kingdom of God**  
 This can be stated in positive form. Here Jesus speaks of the man being ready to submit to God as king as being physically close to the kingdom of God, as if it were a physical place. Alternate translation: "You are close to submitting to God as king"

**no one dared**  
 This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "everyone was afraid"

### Mark 12:35

**While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said**  
 Some time has passed and Jesus is now in the temple. This is not part of the previous conversation. Alternate translation: "Later, while Jesus was teaching in the temple area, he said to the people"

**How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?**  
 Jesus uses this question to get the people to think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Consider why the scribes say the Christ is the son of David."

**the son of David**  
 "a descendant of David"

### Mark 12:36

**David himself**  
 This word "himself" refers to David and is used to place emphasis on him and what he said. Alternate translation: "It was David who"

**in the Holy Spirit**  
 This means that he was inspired by the Holy Spirit. That is, the Holy Spirit directed David in what he said. Alternate translation: "inspired by the Holy Spirit"

**said, 'The Lord said to my Lord'**  
 Here David calls God "The Lord" and calls the Christ "my Lord." This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "said about the Christ, 'The Lord God said to my Lord'"

**Sit at my right hand**  
 Jesus is quoting a psalm. Here God is speaking to the Christ. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

**until I put your enemies under your feet**  
 In this quote, God speaks of defeating enemies as putting them under the feet of the victor. Alternate

translation: "until I completely defeat your enemies"

### Mark 12:37

**calls him 'Lord,'**

Here the word "him" refers to the Christ.

**so how can the Christ be David's son?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "so consider how the Christ can be a descendant of David"

### Mark 12:38

**be greeted in the marketplaces**

This can be expressed with an active form. These greetings showed that the people respected the scribes. Alternate translation: "to have people greet them respectfully in the marketplaces"

### Mark 12:39

**the most important seats ... the places of honor**

You may want to make explicit that the scribes liked to sit in these places. Alternate translation: "to sit in the most important seats ... to have people seat them in the places of honor"

### Mark 12:40

**They also devour widows' houses**

Here Jesus describes the scribes' cheating of widows and stealing of their houses as "devouring" their houses. Alternate translation: "They also cheat widows in order to steal their houses from them"

**widows' houses**

The words "widows" and "houses" are synecdoches for helpless people and all of a person's important possessions, respectively. Alternate translation: "everything from helpless people"

**These men will receive greater condemnation**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them with greater condemnation" or "God will certainly punish them severely"

**will receive greater condemnation**

The word "greater" implies a comparison. Here the comparison is to other men who are punished. Alternate translation: "will receive greater condemnation than other people"

### Mark 12:41

**Connecting Statement:**

Still in the temple area, Jesus comments on the value of the widow's offering.

**an offering box**

This box, which everyone could use, held temple offerings.

### Mark 12:42

**two mites**

"two small copper coins." These were the least valuable coins available.

**worth about a penny**

"worth very little." A penny is worth very little. Translate "penny" with the name of the smallest coin in your language if you have one that is worth very little.

### Mark 12:43

**General Information:**

In verse 43 Jesus says that the widow put more money in the offering than the rich people put in, and in verse 44 he tells his reason for saying that. The information can be reordered so that Jesus tells his reason first and then says that the widow put in more, as in the UDB.

**He called**

"Jesus called"

**Truly I say to you**

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

**all of them who contributed to**

"all the other people who put money into"

### Mark 12:44

**abundance**

much wealth, many valuable things

**her poverty**

"lack" or "the little she had"

**to live on**

"to survive on"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 12:1

**After building and leasing the vineyard, what did the owner do?**  
After building and leasing the vineyard, the owner went away on a journey.

### Mark 12:5

**What did the vine dressers do to the many servants that the owner sent to receive the fruit of the vineyard?**  
The vine dressers beat some and killed some of the many servants.

### Mark 12:6

**Who did the owner send last to the vine dressers?**  
The owner sent his beloved son last.

### Mark 12:8

**What did the vine dressers do with the one sent last by the owner?**  
The vine dressers seized him, killed him, and threw him out of the vineyard.

### Mark 12:9

**What will the owner of the vineyard do to the vine dressers?**  
The owner of the vineyard will come and destroy the vine dressers and give the vineyard to others.

### Mark 12:10

**In the scripture, what happens to the stone which the builders rejected?**  
The stone which the builders rejected has been made the cornerstone.

### Mark 12:14

**What question did the Pharisees and some of the Herodians ask Jesus?**  
They asked him if it was lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not.

### Mark 12:17

**How did Jesus answer their question?**  
Jesus said they should give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God, the things that are God's.

### Mark 12:18

**In what did the Sadducees not believe?**  
The Sadducees did not believe in the resurrection.

### Mark 12:22

**In the story told by the Sadducees, how many husbands did the woman have?**  
The woman had seven husbands.

### Mark 12:23

**What question did the Sadducees ask Jesus about the woman?**  
They asked which of the men would be the woman's husband in the resurrection.

### Mark 12:24

**What reason did Jesus give the Sadducees for their error?**  
Jesus said that the Sadducees did not know the scriptures nor the power of God.

### Mark 12:25

**What was Jesus' answer to the Sadducees' question about the woman?**  
Jesus said that in the resurrection, men and women will not marry, but will be like angels.

### Mark 12:26

**How did Jesus show from the scriptures that there is a resurrection?**  
Jesus quoted from the book of Moses, where God says that he is the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob—all who must then be still alive.

### Mark 12:27

**How did Jesus show from the scriptures that there is a resurrection?**  
Jesus quoted from the book of Moses, where God says that he is the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob—all who must then be still alive.

### Mark 12:29

**What commandment did Jesus say is most important?**  
Jesus said that to love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, mind, and strength is the most important commandment.

### Mark 12:30

**What commandment did Jesus say is most important?**  
Jesus said that to love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, mind, and strength is the most important commandment.

**Mark 12:31**

**What commandment did Jesus say is second?**

Jesus said that to love your neighbor as yourself is the second commandment.

**Mark 12:35**

**What question did Jesus ask the scribes about David?**

Jesus asked how David could call the Christ Lord when the Christ is the son of David.

**Mark 12:36**

**What question did Jesus ask the scribes about David?**

Jesus asked how David could call the Christ Lord when the Christ is the son of David.

**Mark 12:37**

**What question did Jesus ask the scribes about David?**

Jesus asked how David could call the Christ Lord when the Christ is the son of David.

**Mark 12:38**

**What did Jesus tell the people to beware of concerning the scribes?**

Jesus said that the scribes desire to be honored by men, but they devour widows' houses, and make long prayers for people to see.

**Mark 12:39**

**What did Jesus tell the people to beware of concerning the scribes?**

Jesus said that the scribes desire to be honored by men, but they devour widows' houses, and make long prayers for people to see.

**Mark 12:40**

**What did Jesus tell the people to beware of concerning the scribes?**

Jesus said that the scribes desire to be honored by men, but they devour widows' houses, and make long prayers for people to see.

**Mark 12:44**

**Why did Jesus say that the poor widow had put in more than all who contributed to the offering box?**

Jesus said she had contributed more because she gave out of her poverty while the others gave out of their abundance.

## Chapter 13

<sup>1</sup> As Jesus was walking away from the temple, one of his disciples said to him, "Teacher, look at the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings!"

<sup>2</sup> Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."

<sup>3</sup> As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately, <sup>4</sup> "Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when all these things are about to happen?"

<sup>5</sup> Jesus began to say to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. <sup>6</sup> Many will come in my name and say, 'I am he,' and they will lead many astray. <sup>7</sup> When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be frightened; these things must happen, but the end is not yet. <sup>8</sup> For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be earthquakes in many places, and famines. These are the beginnings of birth pains.

<sup>9</sup> "Be on your guard. They will give you over to councils, and you will be beaten in synagogues. You will stand before both governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them. <sup>10</sup> But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations. <sup>11</sup> When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry about what you should say. For in that hour, what you should say will be given to you; it will not be you who speak, but the Holy Spirit. <sup>12</sup> Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death. <sup>13</sup> You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved.

<sup>14</sup> "When you see the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing," (let the reader understand) "let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains, <sup>15</sup> let him who is on the housetop not go down into the house or take anything out of it, <sup>16</sup> and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak. <sup>17</sup> But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days! <sup>18</sup> Pray that it might not occur in the winter. <sup>19</sup> For those will be days of great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of creation, which God created, until now, no, nor ever will be again. <sup>20</sup> Unless the Lord had shortened the days, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those whom he chose, he cut short the days. <sup>21</sup> Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not believe it. <sup>22</sup> For false Christs and false prophets will appear and will give signs and wonders so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect. <sup>23</sup> Be on guard! I have told you all these things ahead of time.

<sup>24</sup> "But after the tribulation of those days,

'the sun will be darkened,  
the moon will not give its light,

<sup>25</sup> the stars will fall from the sky,  
and the powers that are in the heavens  
will be shaken.'

<sup>26</sup> Then they will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory. <sup>27</sup> Then he will send his angels and he will gather together his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky.

<sup>28</sup> Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near. <sup>29</sup> So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that he is near, close to the gates. <sup>30</sup> Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things occur.

<sup>31</sup> Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away. <sup>32</sup> But concerning that day or that hour, no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father.

<sup>33</sup> "Be alert! Watch, because you do not know what time it is. <sup>34</sup> It is like a man who goes on a journey—he leaves his house and puts his servants in charge of the house, each one with his work, and he commands the doorkeeper to stay alert. <sup>35</sup> Therefore stay alert because you do not know when the master of the house will come home; it could be in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or in the

morning. <sup>36</sup> If he comes suddenly, do not let him find you sleeping. <sup>37</sup> What I say to you I say to everyone: Watch!"

---

## Footnotes

---

13:33 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies of the Greek text read:

---

## Mark 13 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 13:24-25, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The return of Christ

Jesus said much about what would happen before he returned ([Mark 13:6-37](#)). He told his followers that bad things would happen to the world and bad things would happen to them before he returned, but they needed to be ready for him to return at any time.

---

## Mark 13

### 13:1-13

#### Why did the disciples talk about the buildings with Jesus?

[13:1]

The disciples were amazed by the buildings that made the temple in Jerusalem. Jesus saw that the people used the temple to make money. He also saw that the Jewish leaders rejected Jesus. Therefore, he prophesied about the temple being destroyed. The destruction of the temple happened about 40 years after Jesus returned to heaven. However, it was not completely destroyed. There is one wall that still remains from the temple in Jerusalem.

See: [Heaven](#); [Temple](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Heaven](#)

See Map: Jerusalem; Mount of Olives

#### What was a sign?

[13:4]

See: [Sign](#)

#### What did Jesus teach about his return to earth?

[13:5, 13:6, 13:7, 13:8]

Jesus told his disciples about things that would happen when he returned to the earth. However, the disciples did not know that he would die. They did not know it would be a long period of time before these things happened. Therefore, Jesus warned them. Many people will say that they are Jesus. Many people will believe these people who say that they are Jesus. However, Jesus talked about certain things that must happen before he returns to the earth.

1. There will be wars and rumors of wars. That is, people will worry about wars and there will be many wars.



2. There will be many earthquakes and famines. Jesus said these are “birth pains.” This was a metaphor to say that difficult things will happen before he returns to earth. People and the whole world will be judged and punished before the earth is made new again.
3. People who worship Jesus will be persecuted.
4. The gospel will be told to all nations. Some scholars think this means that every person will hear the gospel. Other scholars think this means that someone from every nation will hear the gospel.
5. People will have their children, brothers, sisters, and parents killed because their family are Christians.

See: [Gospel](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Gospel](#)

### **What will happen when Christians are persecuted?**

[13:9]

Jesus warned the disciples that Christians will be persecuted before he returns to the earth. The Holy Spirit will help Christians when they are persecuted. He will tell them what to say to leaders and those who persecute them.

See: [Holy Spirit](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#) ; [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Holy Spirit](#)

### **How will the person who is persecuted be saved?**

[13:13]

Jesus said that the person who endures to the end when persecuted will be saved. Scholars think Jesus was talking about different things when he said these words.

Some Christians reject Jesus when they are persecuted. Some scholars think when they do this, they are no longer at peace with God and will not live with him forever. Some Christians reject Jesus when they are persecuted. Other scholars think when they do this, God will save them. That is, God will rescue them from persecution and they will go to be with God. Some people say they are Christians, but they reject Jesus when persecuted. Other scholars think when they do this, they prove they were never truly Christians.

See: [Heaven](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Heaven](#)

## **13:14-23**

### **What is the abomination of desolation?**

[13:14]

Jesus talked about an “abomination of desolation.” This was when someone who rejected God did something that greatly dishonored God. Daniel also wrote about this (see: Daniel 7:27; 11:31; 12:11). Some scholars think Daniel wrote about a Gentile leader who sacrificed an unclean animal on the altar in the temple. Some scholars think Jesus talked about a time when the antichrist would sacrifice something in the temple or claim to be God in the temple. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about a time when people would no longer go to the temple. Other scholars think it is some type of idolatry.

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about a time 40 years after he returned to heaven. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about a time near to his return to the earth (see: Revelation 4-19).

See: [Heaven](#); Sacrifice; [Clean and Unclean](#); [Altar](#); [Temple](#); [Antichrist](#); [Idolatry \(Idol\)](#); [Heaven](#)

### **What did Jesus want people to do when they saw the abomination of desolation?**

[13:14, 13:15, 13:16]

Jesus wanted people to flee and go away from Jerusalem when people saw the abomination of desolation. Jesus warned them. He wanted them to know that he will judge people at this time. He warned people by telling them that they will not want to be alive when these things happen.

See: [Tribulation](#); [Tribulation](#)

### **Who will Jesus save?**

[13:20]

Jesus warned people about a time of great tribulation. That is a time when there will be great trouble because God will judge people. At this time, if God did not stop punishing people, no one would be saved. That is, everyone would die. When he said this, he was not talking about being separated from God forever. He was talking about someone dying on the earth, both Christians and non-Christians.

See: [Tribulation](#); [Tribulation](#)

### **Why should people not believe that Jesus returned?**

[13:21]

Jesus warned about a time when many people would say they are the messiah or that they are Jesus who returned to earth. However, everyone will know that Jesus has returned to earth when he returns (see: Matthew 24:23-27). Therefore, people should not believe other people who say this even if they do miracles and signs. However, many Christians will believe these false messiahs and false prophets.

See: [Miracle](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Prophet](#); [Sign](#); [Miracle](#)

### **13:24-37**

#### **When are the days of tribulation?**

[13:24]

Jesus spoke about certain days of tribulation or trouble. Some scholars think he spoke about the difficult times that happened soon after he returned to earth. Other scholars think he spoke about the time near his return to the earth.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

#### **Why did Jesus talk about things that happen in the sky?**

[13:24, 13:25]

Jesus spoke about certain things people could see in the sky. Some scholars think these things will actually happen just before Jesus returns to the earth. Other scholars think this was a metaphor. Just as the stars will fall from the sky, so the rulers of the world will be destroyed. Jesus said these things to warn people.

See: Joel 2:10; 3:15; Ezekiel 32:7-8)

See: [Metaphor](#)

#### **What will people see?**

[13:26]

The people will see the Son of Man coming to the earth with glory. Jesus would return to the earth and everyone would know that he is God.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Glory \(Glorify\)](#); [Jesus is God](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

#### **What will Jesus do when he returns to the earth?**

[13:27]

When Jesus returns to the earth, he will bring angels who serve him. He will gather all Christians from all over the world and bring them to himself.

See: [Angel](#); [Angel](#)

### Why did Jesus talk about a fig tree?

[13:28]

Jesus talked about a fig tree to help people understand the things he said. This was a metaphor. When a fig tree does certain things, people know that the seasons are changing. He wanted people to know that he was going to return to the earth soon when the things he spoke about happened.

See: [Hebrew Calendar \(Seasons in Israel\)](#); [Hebrew Calendar \(Seasons in Israel\)](#)

### When did these things happen?

[13:30]

Jesus prophesied that these things happened before the people listening to him died. Some scholars think that these things happened 40 years after he said these things. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about people in the future who lived when they saw the things he spoke about in this passage. Once these things happened, Jesus would return to the earth in a few years.

Jesus said that heaven and earth will end, but his words will not change. The apostle spoke about heaven and earth ending (see: Revelation 21). However, these things must happen.

Jesus said that he did not know when these things would happen. Only God the Father knew these things will happen.

See: [Apostle](#) ; [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Heaven](#); [God the Father](#); [Apostle](#)

### What did Jesus tell people to do?

[13:33]

In some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament, Jesus told people to "watch." In fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament, Jesus told people to "watch and pray."

### Why did Jesus talk about a man going on a journey?

[13:34]

Jesus spoke about a man going on a journey. This was a metaphor. He wanted people to be ready for him to return to the earth. When he returns, Jesus' followers will need to tell Jesus about the things they did while they were waiting for him to return. Jesus wanted Christians to serve him. He wanted them to tell other people about Jesus and the gospel. He wanted Christians to do things that honor God.

See: [Gospel](#); [Metaphor](#); [Gospel](#)

#### Mark 13:1

##### General Information:

As they leave the temple area, Jesus tells his disciples what will happen to the wonderful temple that Herod the Great has built.

##### the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings

The "stones" refer to the stones that the buildings were built with. Alternate translation: "the wonderful buildings and the wonderful stones that they are made of"

#### Mark 13:2

##### Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone

This question is used to draw attention to the buildings. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look at these great buildings! Not one stone" or "You see these great buildings now, but not one stone"

##### Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Not one stone will remain on top of another, for enemy soldiers will come and destroy these buildings"

## Mark 13:3

### Connecting Statement:

In answer to the disciples' questions about the temple's destruction and what is going to happen, Jesus tells them what was going to take place in the future.

**As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter**

It can be expressed clearly that Jesus and his disciples had walked to the Mount of Olives. Alternate translation: "After arriving at the Mount of Olives, which is opposite the temple, Jesus sat down. Then Peter"

**privately**  
when they were alone

## Mark 13:4

**these things happen ... are about to happen**

This refers to what Jesus had just said will happen to the stones of the temple. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "these things happen to the buildings of the temple ... are about to happen to the temple buildings"

**when all these things**  
"that all these things"

## Mark 13:5

**to them**  
"to his disciples"

**leads you astray**

Here "leads you astray" is a metaphor for "persuades you to believe what is not true." Alternate translation: "deceives you"

## Mark 13:6

**lead many astray**

Here "lead many astray" is a metaphor "persuades many to believe what is not true." Alternate translation: "deceive many people"

**in my name**

This is metonymy. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "claiming my authority" or 2) Alternate translation: "claiming that God sent them."

**I am he**  
"I am the Christ"

## Mark 13:7

**hear of wars and rumors of wars**

"hear of wars and reports about wars." Possible meanings are 1) "hear the sounds of wars close by

and news of wars far away" or 2) "hear of wars that have started and reports about wars that are about to start"

**but the end is not yet**

"but it is not yet the end" or "but the end will not happen until later" or "but the end will be later"

**the end**

This probably refers to the end of the world.

## Mark 13:8

**will rise against**

This idiom means to fight against one another. Alternate translation: "will fight against"

**kingdom against kingdom**

The words "will rise" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of one kingdom will fight against the people of another kingdom"

**These are the beginnings of birth pains**

Jesus speaks of these disasters as the beginnings of birth pains because more severe things will happen after them. Alternate translation: "These events will be like the first pains a woman suffers when she is about to bear a child"

## Mark 13:9

**Be on your guard**

"Be ready for what people will do to you"

**will give you over to councils**

"take you and put you under the control of councils"

**you will be beaten**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will beat you"

**You will stand before**

This means to be put on trial and judged. Alternate translation: "You will be put on trial before" or "You will be brought to trial and judged by"

**for my sake**

"because of me" or "on account of me"

**as a testimony to them**

This means they will testify about Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "and testify to them about me" or "and you will tell them about me"

## Mark 13:10

**But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations**

Jesus is still speaking about things that must happen before the end comes. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "But the gospel must

first be proclaimed to all the nations before the end will come"

### Mark 13:11

#### **hand you over**

Here this means to put people under the control of the authorities. Alternate translation: "give you over to the authorities"

#### **but the Holy Spirit**

The words "who will speak" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "but the Holy Spirit, who will speak through you"

### Mark 13:12

#### **Brother will deliver up brother to death**

"One brother will put another brother under the control of people who will kill him" or "Brothers will put their brothers under the control of people who will kill them." This will happen many times to many different people. Jesus is not speaking of just one person and his brother.

#### **Brother ... brother**

This refers to both brothers and sisters. Alternate translation: "People ... their siblings"

#### **a father his child**

The words "will deliver up to death" are understood from the previous phrase. This means that some fathers will betray their children, and this betrayal will cause their children to be killed. Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death" or "fathers will betray their children, handing them over to be killed"

#### **Children will rise up against their parents**

This means that children will oppose their parents and betray them. Alternate translation: "Children will oppose their parents"

#### **cause them to be put to death**

This means that the authorities will sentence the parents to be put to death. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "cause the authorities to sentence the parents to die" or "the authorities will kill the parents"

### Mark 13:13

#### **You will be hated by everyone**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you"

#### **because of my name**

Jesus uses the metonym "my name" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you believe in me"

#### **whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved**

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whoever endures to the end, God will

save that person" or "God will save whoever endures to the end"

#### **whoever endures to the end**

Here "endures" represents continuing to be faithful to God even while suffering. Alternate translation: "whoever suffers and stays faithful to God to the end"

#### **to the end**

Possible meanings are 1) "to the end of his life" or 2) "to the end of that time of trouble"

### Mark 13:14

#### **the abomination of desolation**

This phrase is from the book of Daniel. Jesus's audience would have been familiar with this passage and the prophecy about the abomination entering the temple and defiling it. Alternate translation: "the shameful thing that defiles the things of God"

#### **standing where it should not be standing**

Jesus's audience would have known that this refers to the temple. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "standing in the temple, where it should not be standing"

#### **let the reader understand**

Mark added this to get the readers' attention, so that they would think about what Jesus meant when he spoke about the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing. Alternate translation: "may everyone who reads this understand what it means"

### Mark 13:15

#### **on the housetop**

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people could stand on them.

### Mark 13:16

#### **not return**

This refers to returning to his house. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "not return to his house"

#### **to take his cloak**

"to get his cloak"

### Mark 13:17

#### **those who are nursing infants**

women who give babies breast milk

### Mark 13:18

#### **Pray that it**

"Pray that these times" or "Pray that these things"

**the winter**

"the cold season" or "the cold, rainy season." This refers to the time of year when it is cold and unpleasant and difficult to travel.

**Mark 13:19**

**such as has not been from the beginning**

"greater than there has ever been since the beginning of the world." This describes how great and terrible the tribulation will be. There has never been a tribulation as terrible as this one will be.

**the beginning of creation, which God created**

the beginning of creation, when God created the world

**no, nor ever will be again**

"and greater than there will ever be again" or "and after that tribulation, there will never again be a tribulation like it"

**Mark 13:20**

**Unless the Lord had shortened the days**

The writer uses past tense to describe a future event. Alternate translation: "If the Lord had not decided that he would shorten those days"

**had shortened the days**

"had shortened the time." It may be helpful to specify which "days" are referred to. Alternate translation: "had reduced the days of suffering" or "had shortened the time of suffering"

**no flesh would be saved**

The word "flesh" refers to people, and "saved" refers to physical salvation. Alternate translation: "no one would be saved" or "everyone would die"

**for the sake of the elect**

"in order to help the elect"

**the elect, those whom he chose**

The phrase "those whom he chose" means the same thing as "the elect." Together, they emphasize that God chose these people.

**Mark 13:21**

**General Information:**

In verse 21 Jesus gives a command, and in 22 he tells the reason for the command. This can be reordered with the reason first, and the command second, as in the UDB.

**Mark 13:22**

**false Christs**

"people who claim they are Christ"

**so as to deceive**

"in order to deceive" or "hoping to deceive" or "trying to deceive"

**so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect**

The phrase "even the elect" implies that the false Christs and false prophets will expect to deceive some people, but they will not know if they will be able to deceive the elect. Alternate translation: "in order to deceive people, and even deceive the elect, if that is possible"

**the elect**

"the people whom God has chosen"

**Mark 13:23**

**Be on guard**

"Be watchful" or "Be alert"

**I have told you all these things ahead of time**

Jesus told them these things to warn them. Alternate translation: "I have told you all these things ahead of time to warn you"

**Mark 13:24**

**the sun will be darkened**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sun will become dark"

**the moon will not give its light**

Here the moon is spoken of as if it were alive and able to give something to someone else. Alternate translation: "the moon will not shine" or "the moon will be dark"

**Mark 13:25**

**the stars will fall from the sky**

This does not mean that they will fall to earth but that they will fall from where they are now. Alternate translation: "the stars will fall from their places in the sky"

**the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the powers in the heavens will shake" or "God will shake the powers that are in the heavens"

**the powers that are in the heavens**

"the powerful things in the heavens." These words could refer to 1) the sun, moon, and stars or 2) powerful spiritual beings

**in the heavens**

"in the sky"

## Mark 13:26

**Then they will see**  
"Then people will see"

**with great power and glory**  
"powerfully and gloriously"

## Mark 13:27

**he will gather**  
The word "he" refers to God and is a metonym for his angels, as they are the ones who will gather the elect. Alternate translation: "they will gather" or "his angels will gather"

**the four winds**  
The whole earth is spoken of as "the four winds," which refer to the four directions: north, south, east, and west. Alternate translation: "the north, south, east, and west" or "all parts of the earth"

**from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky**  
These two extremes are given to emphasize that the elect will be gathered from the entire earth. Alternate translation: "from every place on earth"

## Mark 13:28

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus gives two short parables here to remind people to be aware when the things that he has been explaining happen.

**the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves**  
The phrase "the branch" refers to the branches of the fig tree. Alternate translation: "its branches become tender and put out their leaves"

**tender**  
"green and soft"

**puts out its leaves**  
Here the fig tree is spoken of as if it were alive and able to willingly cause its leaves to grow. Alternate translation: "its leaves begin to sprout"

**summer**  
the warm part of the year or the growing season

## Mark 13:29

**these things**  
This refers to the days of tribulation. Alternate translation: "these things I have just described"

**recognize that he is near**  
Many modern translations read, "you recognize" or "you know." It is not clear whether Jesus is stating a fact or issuing a command.

**he is near**  
"the Son of Man is near"

**close to the gates**  
This idiom means that he is very near and has almost arrived, referring to a traveler being close to arriving at the city gates. Alternate translation: "and is almost here"

## Mark 13:30

**Truly I say to you**  
This indicates that the statement that follows is especially important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

**will not pass away**  
"Pass away" is a polite way of saying "die." Alternate translation: "will not die" or "will not end"

**until all of these things**  
The phrase "these things" refers to the days of tribulation.

## Mark 13:31

**Heaven and earth**  
The two extremes are given to refer to all of the sky, including the sun, moon, stars, and planets, and all of the earth. Alternate translation: "The sky, the earth, and everything in them"

**will pass away**  
"will cease to exist." Here this phrase refers to the world ending.

**my words will never pass away**  
Jesus speaks of words not losing their power as if they were something that will never physically die. Alternate translation: "my words will never lose their power"

## Mark 13:32

**that day or that hour**  
This refers to the time that the Son of Man will return. Alternate translation: "that day or that hour that the Son of Man will return" or "the day or the hour that I will return"

**no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father**  
These words specify some of those who do not know when the Son of Man will return, different from the Father, who does know. Alternate translation: "no one knows—neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know—but the Father" or "neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know; no one knows but the Father"

**the angels in heaven**  
Here "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

**but the Father**

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language naturally uses to refer to a human father. Also, this is an ellipsis, stating that the Father knows when the Son will return.  
Alternate translation: "but only the Father knows"

**Mark 13:33**

**what time it is**

It can be stated clearly what "time" refers to here.  
Alternate translation: "when all these events will happen"

**Mark 13:34**

**each one with his work**

"telling each one what work he should do"

**Mark 13:35**

**it could be in the evening**

"he could return in the evening"

**rooster crows**

The rooster is a bird that "crows" very early in the morning by making a loud call.

**Mark 13:36**

**find you sleeping**

Here Jesus speaks of not being ready as "sleeping."  
Alternate translation: "find you not ready for his return"

**Mark 13:37**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Mark 13:2**

**What did Jesus say would happen to the wonderful stones and buildings of the temple?**

Jesus said that not one stone would be left on another which would not be torn down.

**Mark 13:4**

**What question did the disciples then ask Jesus?**

The disciples asked Jesus when these things would happen and what would be the sign.

**Mark 13:5**

**About what did Jesus say the disciples must be careful?**

Jesus said the disciples must be careful that no one lead them astray.

**Mark 13:6**

**About what did Jesus say the disciples must be careful?**

Jesus said the disciples must be careful that no one lead them astray.

**Mark 13:7**

**What did Jesus say would be the beginnings of birth pains?**

Jesus said the beginning of birth pains would be wars, rumors of wars, earthquakes, and famines.

**Mark 13:8**

**What did Jesus say would be the beginnings of birth pains?**

Jesus said the beginning of birth pains would be wars, rumors of wars, earthquakes, and famines.

**Mark 13:9**

**What did Jesus say would happen to the disciples?**

Jesus said that the disciples would be delivered to councils, beaten in synagogues, and would stand before governors and kings as a testimony.

**Mark 13:10**

**What did Jesus say must happen first?**

Jesus said the gospel must be preached to all the nations first.

**Mark 13:12**

**What did Jesus say would happen between family members?**

Jesus said that one family member would deliver up another family member to death.

**Mark 13:13**

**Who did Jesus say would be saved?**

Jesus said that whoever endures to the end would be saved.



**Mark 13:14**

**What did Jesus say those in Judea should do when they see the abomination of desolation?**

Jesus said that those in Judea should flee to the mountains when they see the abomination of desolation.

**Mark 13:20**

**What did Jesus say the Lord would do for the sake of the elect, so that they would be saved?**

Jesus said the Lord would shorten the days of tribulation for the sake of the elect.

**Mark 13:22**

**Who did Jesus say would arise to deceive people?**

Jesus said that false Christs and false prophets would arise to deceive people.

**Mark 13:24**

**What will happen to the powers in the heavens after the tribulation of those days?**

The sun and moon will be darkened, the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers in the heavens will be shaken.

**Mark 13:25**

**What will happen to the powers in the heavens after the tribulation of those days?**

The sun and moon will be darkened, the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers in the heavens will be shaken.

**Mark 13:26**

**What will the people see in the clouds?**

They will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.

**Mark 13:27**

**What will the Son of Man do when he comes?**

The Son of Man will gather his elect from the ends of the earth and the sky.

**Mark 13:30**

**What did Jesus say would not pass away until all of these things occurred?**

Jesus said that this generation would not pass away until all of these things occurred.

**Mark 13:31**

**What did Jesus say would never pass away?**

Jesus said that his words would never pass away.

**Mark 13:32**

**When did Jesus say all these things would happen?**

Jesus said that no one knows the day or hour, except the Father.

**Mark 13:33**

**What command did Jesus give his disciples regarding his coming?**

Jesus told his disciples to be alert and watch.

**Mark 13:35**

**What command did Jesus give his disciples regarding his coming?**

Jesus told his disciples to be alert and watch.

**Mark 13:37**

**What command did Jesus give his disciples regarding his coming?**

Jesus told his disciples to be alert and watch.

## Chapter 14

<sup>1</sup> It was now two days before the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking ways to stealthily arrest Jesus and then kill him. <sup>2</sup> For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

<sup>3</sup> While Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he was reclining at the table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard. She broke the jar and poured the nard on his head. <sup>4</sup> But there were some who were angry. They spoke among themselves and said, "What is the reason for the waste of this perfume? <sup>5</sup> This perfume could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and given to the poor." Then they scolded her.

<sup>6</sup> But Jesus said, "Leave her alone. Why are you troubling her? She has done a beautiful thing for me. <sup>7</sup> You always have the poor with you, and whenever you desire you can do good to them, but you will not always have me. <sup>8</sup> She has done what she could. She has anointed my body for burial. <sup>9</sup> Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will be spoken of, in memory of her."

<sup>10</sup> Then Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went away to the chief priests so that he might give him over to them. <sup>11</sup> When the chief priests heard it, they were glad and promised to give him money. He began looking for an opportunity to give him over to them.

<sup>12</sup> On the first day of unleavened bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, "Where do you want us to go to prepare, so you may eat the Passover meal?"

<sup>13</sup> He sent two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the city, and a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him. <sup>14</sup> Where he enters a house, follow him in and say to the owner of that house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'" <sup>15</sup> He will show you a large furnished upper room that is ready. Make the preparations for us there." <sup>16</sup> The disciples left and went to the city. They found everything as he had said to them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

<sup>17</sup> When it was evening, he came with the twelve. <sup>18</sup> As they were lying down at the table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, one of you eating with me will betray me."

<sup>19</sup> They were all very sorrowful, and one by one they said to him, "Surely not I?"

<sup>20</sup> Jesus answered and said to them, "It is one of the twelve, the one now dipping bread with me in the bowl. <sup>21</sup> For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him. But woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for him if he had not been born."

<sup>22</sup> As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to them and said, "Take this. This is my body." <sup>23</sup> He took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it. <sup>24</sup> He said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many. <sup>25</sup> Truly I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God."

<sup>26</sup> When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives. <sup>27</sup> Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away, for it is written,

'I will strike the shepherd  
and the sheep will be scattered.'

<sup>28</sup> But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

<sup>29</sup> Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away, I will not."

<sup>30</sup> Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today—yes, this very night—before the rooster crows twice you will deny me three times."

<sup>31</sup> But Peter said emphatically, "If I must die with you, I will not deny you." They all made the same promise.

<sup>32</sup> They came to the place called Gethsemane, and Jesus said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray." <sup>33</sup> He took Peter, James, and John with him and began to be distressed and deeply troubled. <sup>34</sup> He said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, even to the point of death. Remain here and watch." <sup>35</sup> Going a little farther, Jesus fell to the ground and prayed that if it were possible the hour might pass from him. <sup>36</sup> He said, "Abba, Father, all things are possible with you. Remove this cup from me. But not my will, but yours." <sup>37</sup> He came back and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour? <sup>38</sup> Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak." <sup>39</sup> Again he went away and prayed, and he used the same words. <sup>40</sup> When he came back again, he found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. They did not know what to say to him. <sup>41</sup> He came the third time and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Enough! The hour has come. Look! The Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners. <sup>42</sup> Get up; let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

<sup>43</sup> While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived, and a large crowd was with him with swords and clubs, from the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders. <sup>44</sup> Now his betrayer had given them a sign, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him and lead him away under guard." <sup>45</sup> When Judas arrived, immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Rabbi," and he kissed him. <sup>46</sup> Then they laid hands on him and seized him. <sup>47</sup> But one of them who stood by drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear.

<sup>48</sup> Jesus said to them, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me? <sup>49</sup> When I was daily with you and I was teaching in the temple, you did not arrest me. But this was done that the scriptures might be fulfilled." <sup>50</sup> All those with Jesus left him and ran away.

<sup>51</sup> A young man, wearing only a linen garment that was wrapped around him, was following Jesus. When the men seized him, <sup>52</sup> he left the linen garment and ran away naked.

<sup>53</sup> They led Jesus to the high priest. There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes. <sup>54</sup> Now Peter followed him from a distance, as far as the courtyard of the high priest. He sat among the officers, warming himself near the fire. <sup>55</sup> Now the chief priests and the entire Jewish council were seeking testimony against Jesus so they might put him to death. But they did not find any. <sup>56</sup> For many brought false testimony against him, but even their testimony did not agree. <sup>57</sup> Some stood up and brought false testimony against him; they said, <sup>58</sup> "We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another made without hands.'" <sup>59</sup> Yet even their testimony did not agree.

<sup>60</sup> The high priest stood up among them and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?" <sup>61</sup> But he was silent and answered nothing. Again the high priest questioned him and said, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?"

<sup>62</sup> Jesus said, "I am;

and you will see the Son of Man  
when he sits at the right hand of power  
and comes with the clouds of heaven."

<sup>63</sup> The high priest tore his garments and said, "Do we still need witnesses? <sup>64</sup> You have heard the blasphemy. What is your decision?" They all condemned him as one who deserved death.

<sup>65</sup> Some began to spit on him and to cover his face and strike him with their fists and say to him, "Prophecy!" The officers took him and beat him.

<sup>66</sup> While Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came to him. <sup>67</sup> She saw Peter warming himself, and she looked closely at him and said, "You were also with the Nazarene, Jesus."

**68** But he denied it, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." Then he went out into the gateway. And the rooster crowed. <sup>[1]</sup>

**69** But the servant girl saw him and began to say again to those who stood there, "This man is one of them!"

**70** But he denied it again. After a little while those who stood there were saying to Peter, "Surely you are one of them, for you also are a Galilean."

**71** But he began to put himself under curses and to swear, "I do not know this man you are talking about."

**72** The rooster immediately crowed a second time. Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times," and he broke down and wept.

---

## Footnotes

---

14:68 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient copies do not have,

---

## Mark 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 14:27, 62, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The eating of the body and blood

[Mark 14:22-25](#) describes Jesus's last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist," or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word that the Jews used to speak to their fathers. Mark writes it as it sounds and then translates it.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---

## Mark 14

### 14:1-11

#### What was Passover?

[14:1]

See: [Passover](#)

#### What was the Festival of Unleavened Bread?

[14:1]

See: [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#)

### **Why did the Jewish leaders want to “stealthily arrest” Jesus?**

[14:1]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to “stealthily” arrest Jesus. That is, they wanted to arrest Jesus when no one would know that they were doing it. They did not want to make people angry with them.

See: [Scribe](#); [Scribe](#)

### **Where was Bethany?**

[14:3]

See Map: Bethany

### **What was a leper?**

[14:3]

See: [Leprosy \(Leper\)](#)

### **Why was Jesus reclining at the table?**

[14:3]

In ancient Israel, people ate by laying down sideways at a table. Jesus did this because he had eaten.

### **What did this woman have?**

[14:3]

The woman had a jar with a certain oil that smelled very good. Some people called this perfume. She opened this jar and poured it on Jesus head and feet to honor him. Jesus also said that she anointed him. This prepared his body to be buried. In ancient Israel, people poured these types of oils on a dead person before they buried them.

See: John 12:3

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

### **Why did the disciples not want this woman to do this?**

[14:4]

The disciples did not want this woman to pour this expensive oil on Jesus. This was because it would only smell good for a short time. However, it could be sold for the same amount of money that someone could make from working for one year. This could be used to help many poor people. Jesus said they were wrong. This was because what she did was a metaphor. That is, she anointed Jesus as a way to prepare him to die for people’s sins so they could be at peace with God. This was greater than helping poor people.

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#); [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

### **Why did Judas go to the chief priests?**

[14:10]

Judas went to the chief priests to help them arrest Jesus. Scholars do not agree why he did this. The priests gave Judas a large amount of money to help them.

See: Matthew 26:15; Exodus 21:32; Zechariah 11:12

See: [Chief Priest](#)

## 14:12-21

### When was the first day of unleavened bread?

[14:12]

The first day of unleavened bread was also the first day of the Festival of Unleavened Bread. This was the day they sacrificed a lamb for the passover.

See: [Passover](#); [Sacrifice](#); [Passover](#)

### Why did the disciples need to prepare for the passover meal?

[14:12]

The disciples needed to prepare for the passover meal. This was because they needed to become clean so they could eat this meal. They also needed to get certain foods ready to eat for this meal.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Passover](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### Why did Jesus say that one of the disciples would betray him?

[14:18]

After travelling with these twelve disciples for three years, Jesus had one last meal with them. During this meal, he told them that one of the disciples would betray him. This was to fulfill a prophecy spoken about the messiah (see: Psalm 41:9).

The man that betrayed Jesus would be punished for what he did. He would live forever in hell and be punished there forever. That was why Jesus said it would be better for that man to have not been born than to be punished forever in hell.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#); [Hell](#); [Son of Man](#); [Woe](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

## 14:22-31

### What did Jesus say to the disciples during the passover meal?

[14:22]

Jesus told the disciples about the eating of bread and drinking of wine during this last meal. Some scholars called this the last supper or the Lord's supper. From that time on, Christians ate bread and drank wine at certain times in order to remember that Jesus died for Christians (see: 1 Corinthians 11:23-25).

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Lord's Supper](#); [Covenant](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Passover](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

### What was a hymn?

[14:26]

A hymn was a song that was sung to worship God.

### Where was the Mount of Olives?

[14:26]

See Map: Mount of Olives

### Why did Jesus say that "all of you will fall away"?

[14:27]

Jesus said that the disciples would “fall away.” That is, they would fall away from Jesus. He said this would fulfill what Zechariah prophesied (see: Zechariah 13:7). This was a metaphor. Jesus was the shepherd and the disciples were the sheep. The disciples would not want people to know they followed Jesus when Jesus died. However, this did not last for very long.

Peter said that he would never do this. However, he said that he did not know Jesus three times that night.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Fall \(Fall Away, Stand\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Metaphor](#)

## 14:32-42

### Where was Gethsemane?

[14:32]

See Map: Gethsemane

### What is a soul?

[14:33]

See: [Soul](#)

### Why was Jesus distressed?

[14:33]

Jesus was distressed when he prayed. That is he had a feeling of great sadness and pain in his soul while he prayed. He knew he was about to die. He was not afraid to die because he knew why he had to die. However, he was distressed because he knew that he was about to be separated from God the Father in some way. He knew separation from God was part of the punishment from God for the sins of all people.

See: [Soul](#); [Sin](#); [God the Father](#); [Soul](#)

### Why did Jesus want the hour to pass?

[14:36]

Jesus asked God the Father if it was possible for the hour to pass. That is, he asked God the Father not to make him die. He wanted God to remove the cup. This is a metaphor. He wanted to not have to be punished for all people. However, he was willing to die to obey God.

See: [Will of God](#); [Will of God](#)

### Why did Jesus want Peter to pray not to enter into temptation?

[14:38]

Jesus wanted Peter to pray. However, Peter could not pray for one hour without falling asleep. Jesus told Peter to pray and ask not to enter into temptation. That is, that he would not be tempted. Peter was about to be tempted to say that he did not know Jesus.

See: [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#)

### How was the spirit willing but the flesh weak?

[14:38]

Jesus said that the spirit was willing but the flesh was weak. That is, the disciples wanted to stay awake and pray, but their bodies were too tired to remain awake. They could only do these things with the help of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit wanted to help Peter. Peter just needed to ask for help (see: Psalm 51:12).

See: [Flesh](#); [Flesh](#)

### **How has the hour come?**

[14:41]

Jesus said the hour has come. That is, the things he talked about things that were about to happen.

### **Who were the sinners?**

[14:41]

Jesus said that he was betrayed to sinners. That is, someone would give him to the people who wanted to kill him. These sinners were the Jewish leaders. They were supposed to help people worship God. Instead, they did evil. He knew Judas was about to betray him.

See: [Sin](#)

## **14:43-52**

### **Who were the chief priests, scribes, and elders?**

[14:43]

See: [Elder](#); [Scribe](#); [Elder](#)

### **How did Judas kiss Jesus?**

[14:44, 14:45]

Judas kissed Jesus on the cheek. In ancient Israel, people often greeted each other in this way.

### **What was a rabbi?**

[14:45]

See: [Rabbi](#)

### **Why did someone cut off this man's ear?**

[14:47]

Peter tried to stop the Jewish leaders from arresting Jesus (see: John 18:10-11). He did this by cutting off someone's ear with a sword or knife.

See: [High Priest](#)

### **What scriptures does this fulfill?**

[14:49]

Jesus said that certain prophecies were fulfilled when the Jewish leaders arrested him. These were prophecies spoken by Isaiah (see: Isaiah 53) and Zechariah (see: Zechariah 13:7).

See: [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#) ; [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#)

### **Why did Mark talk about this young man?**

[14:51, 14:52]

Scholars think Mark wrote about this young man running away naked because Mark was this young man. He was there when Jesus was arrested. Other scholars think the young man symbolises all people who ran after Jesus' arrest. This was a fulfillment of prophecy (see: Amos 2:16).



See: [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#) ; [Symbol](#); [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#)

## 14:53-65

### What was the courtyard of the high priest?

[14:54]

The Jewish leaders took Jesus to the high priest. They wanted the high priest to say Jesus had done something wrong so Jesus could be killed. They took him to the courtyard of the high priest. This was outside of where the high priest lived.

See: [High Priest](#)

### What was testimony against Jesus?

[14:55]

The Jewish leaders wanted testimony against Jesus. They wanted people to say Jesus had done something wrong. They wanted them to say that he broke the Law of Moses in a way that he needed to be put to death.

See: [Testify \(Testimony\)](#); [Testify \(Testimony\)](#)

### Why did Mark write that the people's testimony did not agree?

[14:56]

People said that Jesus said things or did things that were wrong in the Law of Moses. However, Mark wrote that what the people said about Jesus did not agree with one another. Mark wrote this because someone could not be punished for something they did wrong unless two people had seen this person doing this wrong thing.

See: Numbers 35:30; Deuteronomy 17:6

See: [Testify \(Testimony\)](#); [Testify \(Testimony\)](#)

### What did the high priest do?

[14:60]

The high priest asked Jesus two questions. He asked Jesus if Jesus was going to say anything. The high priest wanted Jesus to say something because he wanted Jesus to say the wrong thing. He also asked Jesus if he was going to say something about what people said about Jesus. The high priest thought Jesus did something written in the Law of Moses that people should not do. However, the high priest did something written in the law of Moses that he should not do. He said that Jesus did something wrong without the testimony of two people agreeing with one another.

See: [Testify \(Testimony\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Testify \(Testimony\)](#)

### Why did the high priest ask Jesus if he was the messiah, the son of the blessed one?

[14:61]

The high priest asked Jesus if he was the messiah, the son of the blessed one. He wanted Jesus to say that this was true. The high priest would then say that Jesus blasphemed.

See: [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#)

### What did Jesus say to the high priest?

[14:62]

Jesus told the high priest, "I am." He said that he is God when he said this. He then told the high priest that the high priest will see Jesus again when he is next to God in heaven when Jesus returns to the earth to judge the world.

The high priest tore his clothes because he thought Jesus blasphemed God. This was what the high priest did when someone blasphemed. According to the Law of Moses, blasphemy was punished by killing the person who blasphemed.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Jesus is God](#); [Yahweh \(I am\)](#); [Right Hand](#); [BlaspHEME \(Blasphemy\)](#); [Heaven](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did the people ask Jesus to prophesy?**

[14:65]

Many people hit Jesus at the same time. They mocked Jesus. That is, they insulted him. So they asked him to prophesy and tell them which person hit Jesus.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

### **14:66-72**

### **Why did Peter say that he did not know Jesus?**

[14:68]

Peter followed the soldiers who arrested Jesus. However, he did not go near Jesus. He did not want anyone to know he was a disciple of Jesus. He feared being arrested. This is why he said he did not know Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What did Mark write in 14:68?**

[14:68]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words, "then the rooster crowed." Other, older ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. However, Matthew, Luke, and John said that the rooster crowed (see: Matthew 26:74; Luke 22:60; John 18:27). Therefore, the rooster crowed whether or not Mark wrote these words.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

### **What was a Galilean?**

[14:70]

The people in Jerusalem spoke in a different way than the people in Galilee. Because of this, the girl knew Peter lived in Galilee. This was the same place where Jesus and his disciples lived.

See: [Disciple](#)

See Map: Galilee

### **Why did Peter begin to curse and swear?**

[14:71]

Peter wanted this girl to think he was not a disciple of Jesus. He then swore and cursed himself. That is, he said that God needed to curse him if Peter was lying. He swore to her in the same way someone swears an oath to a judge.

See: [Curse](#); [Swear \(Oath\)](#); [Curse](#)

## Mark 14:1

### Connecting Statement:

Just two days before the Passover, the chief priests and scribes are secretly plotting to kill Jesus.

### stealthily

without people noticing

## Mark 14:2

### For they were saying

The word "they" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

### Not during the festival

This refers to them not arresting Jesus during the festival. Alternate translation: "We must not do it during the festival"

## Mark 14:3

### Connecting Statement:

Though some were angry that the oil was used to anoint Jesus, Jesus says that the woman has anointed his body for burial before he will die.

### Simon the leper

This man previously had leprosy but was no longer ill. This is a different man than Simon Peter and Simon the Zealot.

### he was reclining at the table

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they reclined on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

### alabaster jar

This is a jar made from alabaster. Alabaster is a very expensive yellow-white stone. Alternate translation: "beautiful white stone jar"

### of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard

"that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard." Nard is a very expensive, sweet-smelling oil used to make perfume.

### on his head

"on Jesus's head"

## Mark 14:4

### What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?

They asked this question to show that they disapproved of the woman pouring the perfume on Jesus. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is terrible that she wasted that perfume!"

## Mark 14:5

### This perfume could have been sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We could have sold this perfume" or "She could have sold this perfume"

### three hundred denarii

"300 denarii." Denarius is the singular form of denarii. A denarius is a roman silver coin and it is worth one day's wage.

### given to the poor

The phrase "the poor" refers to poor people. This refers to giving the money from the sale of the perfume to the poor. Alternate translation: "the money given to poor people"

## Mark 14:6

### Why are you troubling her?

Jesus rebukes the guests for questioning this woman's action. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not trouble her!"

## Mark 14:7

### the poor

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

## Mark 14:8

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 14:9

### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

### wherever the gospel is preached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever my followers preach the gospel"

### what this woman has done will be spoken of

"what this woman has done will also be spoken of"

## Mark 14:10

### Connecting Statement:

After the woman anoints Jesus with perfume, Judas promises to deliver Jesus to the chief priests.

### so that he might give him over to them

Judas did not deliver Jesus over to them yet, rather he went to make arrangements with them. Alternate translation: "in order to arrange with them that he would give Jesus over to them"

**give him over**

"bring him to them so they could capture him" or "put him in their power" or "betray him"

**Mark 14:11**

**When the chief priests heard it**

It may be helpful to state clearly what the chief priests heard. Alternate translation: "When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them"

**to give him money**

"to give him silver coins"

**give him over to them**

"put them in their power" or "betray him to them"

**Mark 14:12**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus sends two of the disciples to prepare the Passover meal.

**when they sacrificed the Passover lamb**

At the beginning of the Festival of Unleavened Bread, it was customary to sacrifice a lamb. Alternate translation: "when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb"

**eat the Passover**

Here the "Passover" refers to the Passover meal. Alternate translation: "eat the Passover meal"

**Mark 14:13**

**bearing a pitcher of water**

"carrying a large jar full of water"

**Mark 14:14**

**The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room ... with my disciples?"**

This can be written as an indirect quote. Translate this so that it is a polite request. Alternate translation: "Our Teacher would like to know where the guest room is where he may eat the Passover with his disciples."

**guest room**

a room for visitors

**Mark 14:15**

**Make the preparations for us there**

They were to prepare the meal for Jesus and his disciples to eat. Alternate translation: "Prepare the meal for us there"

**Mark 14:16**

**The disciples left**

"The two disciples left"

**as he had said**

"as Jesus had said"

**Mark 14:17**

**Connecting Statement:**

That evening as Jesus and the disciples eat the Passover meal, Jesus tells them that one of them will betray him.

**he came with the twelve**

It may be helpful to state where they came to. Alternate translation: "he came with the twelve to the house"

**Mark 14:18**

**lying down at the table**

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

**Truly I say to you**

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

**Mark 14:19**

**one by one**

This means that "one at a time" each disciple asked him.

**Surely not I?**

Possible meanings are 1) this was a question for which the disciples expected the answer to be no or 2) this was a rhetorical question that did not require a response. Alternate translation: "Surely I am not the one who will betray you!"

**Mark 14:20**

**It is one of the twelve, the one now**

"He is one of the twelve of you, the one now"

**dipping bread with me in the bowl**

In Jesus's culture, people would often eat bread, dipping it in a shared bowl of sauce or of oil mixed with herbs.

**Mark 14:21**

**For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him**

Here Jesus refers to the scriptures prophesying about his death. If you have a polite way to talk about death in your language, use it here. Alternate

translation: "For the Son of Man will die in the way that the scriptures say"

**it is written**

"the scripture says" or "as they wrote in the scripture"

**through whom the Son of Man is betrayed**

This can be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "who betrays the Son of Man"

**Mark 14:22**

**bread**

This was a flat loaf of unleavened bread, which was eaten as part of the Passover meal.

**broke it**

This means that he broke the bread into pieces for the people to eat. Alternate translation: "broke it into pieces"

**Take this. This is my body**

"Take this bread. It is my body." Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus's body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally.

**Mark 14:23**

**He took a cup**

Here "cup" is a metonym for wine. Alternate translation: "He took the cup of wine"

**Mark 14:24**

**This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many**

The covenant is for the forgiveness of sins. This can be written more explicitly. Alternate translation: "This is my blood that confirms the covenant, the blood that is poured out so that many may receive the forgiveness of sins"

**This is my blood**

"This wine is my blood." Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus's blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally.

**Mark 14:25**

**Truly I say to you**

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

**fruit of the vine**

"wine." This is a descriptive way to refer to wine.

**new**

Possible meanings are 1) "again" or 2) "in a new way"

**Mark 14:26**

**hymn**

A hymn is a type of song. It was traditional for them to sing an Old Testament psalm.

**Mark 14:27**

**Jesus said to them**

"Jesus said to his disciples"

**will fall away**

This is an idiom that means leave. Alternate translation: "will leave me"

**I will strike**

"kill." Here "I" refers to God.

**the sheep will be scattered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will scatter the sheep"

**Mark 14:28**

**I am raised up**

This idiom means that God will cause Jesus to become alive again after he has died. This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "God raises me from the dead" or "God makes me alive again"

**I will go ahead of you**

"I will go before you"

**Mark 14:29**

**all fall away**

"everyone else falls away" or "everyone else leaves you"

**Mark 14:30**

**Truly I say to you**

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

**rooster crows**

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. When he makes that sound he "crows."

**twice**

two times

**you will deny me**

"you will say that you do not know me"

**Mark 14:31**

**said emphatically**

"said insistently" or "said strongly"

**If I must die**  
"Even if I must die"

**They all made the same promise**  
This means that all of the disciples said the same thing that Peter said.

### Mark 14:32

**Connecting Statement:**  
When they go to Gethsemane on the Mount of Olives, Jesus encourages three of his disciples to stay awake while he prays. Twice he awakens them, and the third time he tells them to wake up because it is time for the betrayal.

**They came to the place**  
The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

### Mark 14:33

**distressed**  
overwhelmed with sorrow

**deeply troubled**  
The word "deeply" refers to Jesus being greatly troubled in his soul. Alternate translation: "extremely troubled"

### Mark 14:34

**My soul is**  
Jesus speaks of himself as his "soul." Alternate translation: "I am"

**even to the point of death**  
Jesus is exaggerating because he feels so much distress and sorrow that he feels like he is about to die, though he knows he will not die until after the sun rises.

**watch**  
The disciples were to stay alert while Jesus prayed. This does not mean that they were supposed to watch Jesus pray.

### Mark 14:35

**if it were possible**  
This means that if God would allow it to happen. Alternate translation: "if God would allow it"

**the hour might pass**  
Here "this hour" refers to Jesus's time of suffering, both now in the garden and later. Alternate translation: "that he would not have to go through this time of suffering"

### Mark 14:36

**Abba**  
a term used by Jewish children to address their father. Since it is followed by "Father," it is best to transliterate this word.

**Father**  
This is an important title for God.

**Remove this cup from me**  
Jesus speaks of the suffering that he must endure as if it were a cup.

**But not my will, but yours**  
Jesus is asking God to do what he wants to be done and not what Jesus wants. Alternate translation: "But do not do what I want, do what you want"

### Mark 14:37

**found them sleeping**  
The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

**Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?**  
Jesus rebukes Simon Peter for sleeping. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Simon, you are asleep when I told you to stay awake. You could not even stay awake for one hour."

### Mark 14:38

**that you do not enter into temptation**  
Jesus speaks of being tempted as if it were entering into a physical place. Alternate translation: "that you are not tempted"

**The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak**  
Jesus warns Simon Peter that he is not strong enough to do what he wants to do in his own strength. Alternate translation: "You are willing in your spirit, but you are too weak to do what you want to do" or "You want to do what I say, but you are weak"

**The spirit ... the flesh**  
These refer to two different aspects of Peter. "The spirit" is his inmost desires. "The flesh" is his human ability and strength.

### Mark 14:39

**used the same words**  
"prayed again what he prayed before"

### Mark 14:40

**found them sleeping**  
The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

**for their eyes were heavy**

Here the author speaks of a sleepy person having a hard time keeping his eyes open as having "heavy eyes." Alternate translation: "for they were so sleepy they were having a hard time keeping their eyes open"

**Mark 14:41**

**He came the third time**

Jesus had gone and prayed again. Then he returned to them a third time. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then he went and prayed again. He returned the third time"

**Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?**

Jesus rebukes his disciples for not staying awake and praying. You can translate this rhetorical question as a statement if needed. Alternate translation: "You are still sleeping and resting!"

**The hour has come**

The time of Jesus's suffering and betrayal is about to begin.

**Look!**

"Listen!"

**The Son of Man is being betrayed**

Jesus warns his disciples that his betrayer is approaching them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am being betrayed"

**Mark 14:42**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 14:43**

**one of the twelve**

"one of the twelve disciples"

**Mark 14:44**

**General Information:**

Here Mark gives background information about how Judas had arranged with the Jewish leaders to betray Jesus.

**his betrayer**

This refers to Judas.

**The one I kiss is the man**

Here "the man" refers to the man that Judas was going to identify. Alternate translation: "The man I kiss is the one you want"

**Mark 14:45**

**he kissed him**

"Judas kissed him"

**Mark 14:46**

**laid hands on him and seized him**

These two phrases have the same meaning to emphasize that they seized Jesus. Alternate translation: "grabbed Jesus and seized him" or "seized him"

**Mark 14:47**

**who stood by**

"who was standing nearby"

**Mark 14:48**

**Jesus said to them**

"Jesus said to the crowd"

**Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?**

Jesus is rebuking the crowd. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is ridiculous that you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a robber!"

**Mark 14:49**

**But this was done that**

"But this has happened so that"

**Mark 14:50**

**All those with Jesus**

This refers to the disciples.

**Mark 14:51**

**linen**

cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant

**that was wrapped around him**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that he had wrapped around himself"

**When the men seized him**

"When the men seized that man"

**Mark 14:52**

**he left the linen garment**

Because the man was trying to run away, the others would have grabbed at his clothing, trying to stop him.

## Mark 14:53

### Connecting Statement:

After the crowd of the chief priests, scribes, and elders lead Jesus to the high priest, Peter watches nearby while some stand to give false testimony against Jesus.

**There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes**

This can be reordered so that it is easier to understand. "All of the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes had gathered there together"

## Mark 14:54

### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the story as the author tells us about Peter.

**as far as the courtyard of the high priest**

As Peter followed Jesus, he stopped at the high priest's courtyard. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "and he went as far as the courtyard of the high priest"

**He sat among the officers**

Peter sat with the officers who were working at the courtyard. Alternate translation: "He sat in the courtyard among the officers"

**the officers**

These were probably the servants of the "the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes" (Mark 14:54).

## Mark 14:55

### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the story as the author returns to telling us about Jesus being put on trial.

**they might put him to death**

They were not the ones who would execute Jesus; rather, they would order someone else to do it. Alternate translation: "they might have Jesus executed" or "they might have someone execute Jesus"

**But they did not find any**

They did not find testimony against Jesus with which they could convict him and have him put to death. Alternate translation: "But they did not find any testimony with which to convict him"

## Mark 14:56

**brought false testimony against him**

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: "accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

**their testimony did not agree**

"they contradicted each other"

## Mark 14:57

**brought false testimony against him**

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: "accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

## Mark 14:58

**We heard him say**

"We heard Jesus say." The word "we" refers to the people who brought false testimony against Jesus and does not include the people to whom they are speaking.

**made with hands ... made without hands**

Here "hands" refers to men. Alternate translation: "made by men ... without man's help" or "built by men ... without man's help"

**in three days**

"within three days." This means that the temple would be built within a three-day period.

**will build another**

The word "temple" is understood from the previous phrase. It may be repeated. Alternate translation: "will build another temple"

## Mark 14:59

**their testimony did not agree**

"these witnesses contradicted each other"

## Mark 14:60

**Connecting Statement:**

When Jesus answers that he is the Christ, the high priest and all of the leaders there condemn him as one who deserves to die.

**stood up among them**

Jesus stands up in the middle of the angry crowd to speak to them. Translate this to show who was present when Jesus stood up to speak. Alternate translation: "stood up among the chief priests, scribes, and elders"

**Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?**

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: "Are you not going to reply? What do you say in response to the testimony these men are speaking against you?"



## Mark 14:61

### the Son of the Blessed One

Here God is called "the Blessed One." It is best to translate "Son" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a "son" of a human father. Alternate translation: "the Son of God"

## Mark 14:62

### I am

This likely has a double meaning: 1) to respond to the high priest's question and 2) to call himself "I Am," which is what God called himself in the Old Testament.

### he sits at the right hand of power

Here "power" is a metonym that represents God. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "he sits in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

### comes with the clouds of heaven

Here the clouds are described as accompanying Jesus when he returns. Alternate translation: "when he comes down through the clouds in the sky"

## Mark 14:63

### tore his garments

The high priest tore his clothes purposefully to show his outrage and horror at what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "tore his garments in outrage"

### Do we still need witnesses?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We certainly do not need any more people who will testify against this man!"

## Mark 14:64

### You have heard the blasphemy

This refers to what Jesus said, which the high priest called blasphemy. Alternate translation: "You have heard the blasphemy he has spoken"

### They all

all the people in the room

## Mark 14:65

### Some began to

some of the people in the room

### to cover his face

They covered his face with a cloth or blindfold, so he could not see. Alternate translation: "to cover his face with a blindfold"

### Prophecy

They mocked him, asking him to prophecy who was hitting him. Alternate translation: "Prophecy who hit you"

### officers

men who guarded the governor's house

## Mark 14:66

### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus had predicted, Peter denies Jesus three times before the rooster crows.

### below in the courtyard

"outside in the courtyard"

### one of the servant girls of the high priest

The servant girls worked for the high priest. Alternate translation: "one of the servant girls who worked for the high priest"

## Mark 14:67

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 14:68

### denied

This means to claim that something is not true. In this case, Peter was saying that what the servant girl said about him was not true.

### neither know nor understand what you are talking about

Both "know" and "understand" have the same meaning here. The meaning is repeated to add emphasis to what Peter is saying. Alternate translation: "I really do not understand what you are talking about"

## Mark 14:69

### the servant girl

This is the same servant girl who identified Peter previously.

### one of them

The people were identifying Peter as one of Jesus's disciples. This can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "one of Jesus's disciples" or "one of those who have been with that man they arrested"

## Mark 14:70

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 14:71**

**to put himself under curses**

If in your language you have to name the person who curses someone, state God. Alternate translation: "to say for God to curse him"

**Mark 14:72**

**rooster immediately crowed**

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. If he has made that sound he has "crowed."

**a second time**

"Second" here is an ordinal number.

**he broke down**

This idiom means that he was overwhelmed with grief and lost control of his emotions. Alternate translation: "he was overwhelmed with grief" or "he lost control of his emotions"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Mark 14:1**

**What were the chief priests and scribes considering how to do?**

They were considering how to stealthily arrest Jesus and then kill him.

**Mark 14:2**

**Why did the chief priests and scribes not want to act during the Feast of Unleavened Bread?**

They were worried that a riot would arise among the people.

**Mark 14:3**

**What did a woman do to Jesus at the house of Simon the leper?**

A woman broke a vial of costly liquid and poured it on Jesus' head.

**Mark 14:5**

**For what were some rebuking the woman?**

Some were rebuking the woman for not selling the perfume and giving the money to the poor.

**Mark 14:8**

**What did Jesus say the woman had done for him?**

Jesus said the woman had anointed his body for burial.

**Mark 14:9**

**What promise did Jesus make about what the woman had done?**

Jesus promised that wherever the gospel was preached in the whole world, what the woman had done would be spoken of in memory of her.

**Mark 14:10**

**Why did Judas Iscariot go away to the chief priests?**

Judas Iscariot went away to the chief priests so that he might deliver Jesus to them.

**Mark 14:12**

**How did the disciples find the place where they would all eat the Passover?**

Jesus told them to go into the city and follow a man carrying a pitcher of water, and then ask him where the guest room was that they would use to eat the Passover.

**Mark 14:13**

**How did the disciples find the place where they would all eat the Passover?**

Jesus told them to go into the city and follow a man carrying a pitcher of water, and then ask him where the guest room was that they would use to eat the Passover.

**Mark 14:14**

**How did the disciples find the place where they would all eat the Passover?**

Jesus told them to go into the city and follow a man carrying a pitcher of water, and then ask him where the guest room was that they would use to eat the Passover.

**Mark 14:18**

**What did Jesus say as they were reclining at the table and eating?**

Jesus said that one of the disciples eating with him would betray him.

**Mark 14:20**

**Which disciple did Jesus say would betray him?**  
Jesus said that the disciple dipping bread with him in the bowl would betray him.

**Mark 14:21**

**What did Jesus say about the destiny of the disciple who betrayed him?**  
Jesus said that it would have been better for him if he had not been born.

**Mark 14:22**

**What did Jesus say as he gave the disciples the broken bread?**  
Jesus said, "Take this. This is my body".

**Mark 14:24**

**What did Jesus say as he gave the disciples the cup?**  
Jesus said, "This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many".

**Mark 14:25**

**When did Jesus say he would again drink of this fruit of the vine?**  
Jesus said he would again drink of this fruit of the vine on the day when he drank it anew in the kingdom of God.

**Mark 14:27**

**At the Mount of Olives, what did Jesus predict about his disciples?**  
Jesus predicted that his disciples would all fall away because of him.

**Mark 14:30**

**What did Jesus tell Peter after Peter said he would never fall away?**  
Jesus told Peter that before the rooster crowed twice, Peter would deny Jesus three times.

**Mark 14:32**

**What did Jesus tell his three disciples to do while he prayed?**  
Jesus told them to remain there and watch.

**Mark 14:33**

**What did Jesus tell his three disciples to do while he prayed?**  
Jesus told them to remain there and watch.

**Mark 14:34**

**What did Jesus tell his three disciples to do while he prayed?**  
Jesus told them to remain there and watch.

**Mark 14:35**

**For what did Jesus pray?**  
Jesus prayed that this hour might pass from him.

**Mark 14:36**

**What was Jesus willing to accept as an answer to his prayer to the Father?**  
Jesus was willing to accept whatever the Father's will was for him.

**Mark 14:37**

**What did Jesus find when he returned to the three disciples?**  
Jesus found the three disciples sleeping.

**Mark 14:40**

**What did Jesus find the second time he returned from praying?**  
Jesus found the three disciples sleeping.

**Mark 14:41**

**What did Jesus find the third time he returned from praying?**  
Jesus found the three disciples sleeping.

**Mark 14:44**

**What sign did Judas give to show the guards which person was Jesus?**  
Judas kissed Jesus to show which person was Jesus.

**Mark 14:45**

**What sign did Judas give to show the guards which person was Jesus?**  
Judas kissed Jesus to show which person was Jesus.

**Mark 14:48**

**What did Jesus say was being done in his arrest to fulfill scripture?**  
Jesus said that scripture was being fulfilled because they came to arrest him like a robber, with swords and clubs.

**Mark 14:49**

**What did Jesus say was being done in his arrest to fulfill scripture?**  
Jesus said that scripture was being fulfilled because they came to arrest him like a robber, with swords and clubs.

**Mark 14:50**

**What did those with Jesus do when Jesus was arrested?**  
Those with Jesus left him and fled.

**Mark 14:51**

**What did a young man who was following Jesus do when Jesus was arrested?**  
The young man left his linen garment there and ran away naked.

**Mark 14:52**

**What did a young man who was following Jesus do when Jesus was arrested?**  
The young man left his linen garment there and ran away naked.

**Mark 14:53**

**Where was Peter as Jesus was taken to the high priest?**  
Peter sat among the guards, near a fire to keep warm.

**Mark 14:54**

**Where was Peter as Jesus was taken to the high priest?**  
Peter sat among the guards, near a fire to keep warm.

**Mark 14:55**

**What was wrong with the testimony against Jesus given to the Council?**  
The testimony against Jesus was false and did not agree.

**Mark 14:56**

**What was wrong with the testimony against Jesus given to the Council?**  
The testimony against Jesus was false and did not agree.

**Mark 14:61**

**What question did the high priest ask Jesus about who Jesus was?**  
The high priest asked Jesus if he was the Christ, the son of the Blessed.

**Mark 14:62**

**What was Jesus' answer to the high priest's question?**  
Jesus answered that he was the Christ, the son of the Blessed.

**Mark 14:64**

**Hearing Jesus' answer, of what did the high priest say Jesus was guilty?**  
The high priest said that Jesus was guilty of blasphemy.

**Mark 14:65**

**What did they do to Jesus after condemning him as one who deserved death?**  
They spit on him, struck him, and beat him.

**Mark 14:66**

**What was Peter's answer to the servant girl who said that Peter was with Jesus?**  
Peter answered that he did not know or understand about what the girl was talking.

**Mark 14:67**

**What was Peter's answer to the servant girl who said that Peter was with Jesus?**  
Peter answered that he did not know or understand about what the girl was talking.

**Mark 14:68**

**What was Peter's answer to the servant girl who said that Peter was with Jesus?**  
Peter answered that he did not know or understand about what the girl was talking.

**Mark 14:71**

**What was Peter's response when he was asked a third time if he was one of Jesus' disciples?**  
Peter swore and put himself under curses that he did not know Jesus.

**Mark 14:72**

**What happened after Peter answered the third time?**  
After Peter answered the third time, the rooster crowed a second time.

**What did Peter do after he heard the rooster?**  
After he heard the rooster, Peter broke down and wept.

## Chapter 15

<sup>1</sup> Early in the morning, the chief priests, with the elders and scribes and the entire Jewish council consulted together. Then they bound Jesus and led him away. They handed him over to Pilate. <sup>2</sup> Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

He answered him, "You say so." <sup>3</sup> The chief priests were accusing him of many things.

<sup>4</sup> Pilate again asked him, "Do you give no answer? See how many things they are accusing you of!" <sup>5</sup> But Jesus no longer answered Pilate, and that amazed him.

<sup>6</sup> Now at the time of the festival, Pilate usually released to them one prisoner, a prisoner they requested.

<sup>7</sup> There was a man called Barabbas in prison with the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion. <sup>8</sup> The crowd came to Pilate and began to ask him to do for them as he had done in the past. <sup>9</sup> Pilate answered them and said, "Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?" <sup>10</sup> For he knew that it was because of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him. <sup>11</sup> But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to cry out that Barabbas should be released instead. <sup>12</sup> Pilate answered them again and said, "What then should I do with the King of the Jews?"

<sup>13</sup> They shouted again, "Crucify him!"

<sup>14</sup> Pilate said to them, "What evil has he done?"

But they shouted more and more, "Crucify him." <sup>15</sup> Pilate wanted to satisfy the crowd, so he released Barabbas to them. He scourged Jesus and then handed him over to be crucified.

<sup>16</sup> The soldiers led him inside the courtyard (which is the government headquarters), and they called together the whole company of soldiers. <sup>17</sup> They put a purple robe on Jesus, and they twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on him. <sup>18</sup> They began to salute him and say, "Hail, King of the Jews!" <sup>19</sup> They were striking his head with a reed staff and spitting on him. They went to their knees and they bowed down before him. <sup>20</sup> When they had mocked him, they took off of him the purple robe and put his own garments on him, and then led him out to crucify him. <sup>21</sup> A certain man, Simon of Cyrene, was coming in from the country (he was the father of Alexander and Rufus), and they forced him to carry his cross.

<sup>22</sup> The soldiers brought Jesus to the place called Golgotha (which is translated "Place of a Skull"). <sup>23</sup> They offered him wine mixed with myrrh, but he did not drink it. <sup>24</sup> They crucified him and divided up his garments by casting lots to determine what piece each soldier would take. <sup>25</sup> It was the third hour when they crucified him. <sup>26</sup> On a sign they wrote the charge against him, "The king of the Jews." <sup>27</sup> With him they crucified two robbers, one on the right of him and one on his left. <sup>28</sup><sup>[1]</sup><sup>29</sup> Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads and saying, "Aha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, <sup>30</sup> save yourself and come down from the cross!"

<sup>31</sup> In the same way the chief priests were mocking him with each other, along with the scribes, and said, "He saved others, but he cannot save himself. <sup>32</sup> Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, that we may see and believe." Those who were crucified with him also insulted him.

<sup>33</sup> At the sixth hour, darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour. <sup>34</sup> At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is interpreted, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?" <sup>35</sup> Some of those standing by heard his words and said, "Look, he is calling for Elijah."

<sup>36</sup> Someone ran, put sour wine on a sponge, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink. The man said, "Let us see if Elijah comes to take him down." <sup>37</sup> Then Jesus cried out with a loud voice and died.

<sup>38</sup> The curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom. <sup>39</sup> When the centurion who stood and faced Jesus saw that he had died in this way, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God." <sup>40</sup> There were also women who looked on from a distance. Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary (the mother of James the younger and of Joses), <sup>[2]</sup> and Salome. <sup>41</sup> When he was in Galilee they followed him and served him. Many other women also came up with him to Jerusalem.

<sup>42</sup> When evening had come, because it was the Day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath, <sup>43</sup> Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected member of the council who was waiting for the kingdom of God. He boldly went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. <sup>44</sup> Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion and asked him if Jesus was dead. <sup>45</sup> When Pilate learned from the centurion that Jesus was dead, he gave the body to Joseph. <sup>46</sup> Joseph had bought a linen cloth. He took him down from the cross, wrapped him in the linen cloth, and laid him in a tomb that had been cut out of a rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb. <sup>47</sup> Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Jesus saw the place where Jesus was buried.

---

## Footnotes

---

15:28 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Mark 15:28,

15:40 <sup>[2]</sup>The man called

---

## Mark 15 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "The curtain of the temple was split in two"

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus's people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Mark 15:46](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Sarcasm

Both by pretending to worship Jesus ([Mark 15:19](#)) and by pretending to speak to a king ([Mark 15:18](#)), the soldiers and the Jews showed that they hated Jesus and did not believe that he was the Son of God. (See: and mock)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?

This is a phrase in Aramaic. Mark transliterates its sounds by writing them using Greek letters. He then explains its meaning.

---

## Mark 15

### 15:1-15

#### What was the Jewish council?

[15:1]

See: Jewish Council (sanhedrin); [Scribe](#); [Elder](#); [Scribe](#)

#### Why did the Jewish leaders take Jesus to Pilate?

[15:1]

Pilate was a Roman leader of Jerusalem. At this time, the Jews were not allowed to kill someone if the person was guilty of a crime. Therefore, the Jewish leaders needed permission from Pilate to have Jesus killed.

### **Why did Pilate ask Jesus if Jesus was the king of the Jews?**

[15:2]

The Jewish leaders wanted to kill Jesus because they said he spoke blasphemy against God (see: Matthew 27:1-2; Luke 22:66-71). However, the Jewish leaders did not tell Pilate that Jesus was blaspheming God. Instead, they said that Jesus said he was the king of the Jews. Blasphemy of God was not wrong for the Romans. However, they killed people who rebelled against the Romans.

See: [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus not answer Pilate?**

[15:5]

Jesus did not answer Pilate because he did not do anything wrong. He also knew he needed to die for people's sins. This also fulfilled a prophecy of Isaiah (see: Isaiah 53:7). This made Pilate think that Jesus was not guilty of the things the Jewish leaders said he did.

See: [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#)

### **What was the feast?**

[15:6]

Mark wrote about a feast. This was the passover festival.

See: [Passover](#)

### **Why did Pilate release a prisoner?**

[15:6]

In ancient Israel, the Roman leader released a prisoner during the Jewish passover festival. This helped make peace between the Romans and the Jews.

See: [Passover](#)

### **Who did Pilate want the people to release from prison?**

[15:9]

Pilate did not think Jesus was guilty. However, he did not want to make the Jewish leaders angry. Therefore, he tried to get the people to free Jesus. However, they did not want Jesus to live. They told Pilate to kill Jesus.

### **How was someone crucified?**

[15:13]

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **How was Jesus scourged?**

[15:15]

Pilate told soldiers scourge Jesus. That is, they beat him very badly. Some scholars think that scourging a person made them die faster after they were crucified. Other scholars think Pilate had Jesus scourged so the Jewish leaders would have pity for Jesus. He hoped the Jews would not want Jesus crucified after this (see: John 19:1-15).

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **15:16-21**

#### **Where did the soldiers take Jesus?**

[15:16]

The soldiers took Jesus to the courtyard where a Roman leader lived. The courtyard was a large area outside of a home where many people gathered.

#### **How many soldiers are a cohort?**

[15:16]

There were about 600 soldiers in a cohort.

#### **How did the soldiers mock Jesus?**

[15:20]

The soldiers placed a purple robe on Jesus. They did this to mock Jesus. In ancient times, kings wore purple clothes. This was because it was very expensive to make purple clothes. They also put a crown on Jesus. They also did this to mock Jesus. Kings wore crowns. However, this crown had large thorns, so it hurt Jesus. The soldiers also mocked Jesus by saluting him in the way they saluted a king. They also hit Jesus with a staff. Kings held a special staff. They also bowed to Jesus in the same way they would have bowed to their king.

#### **Where was Cyrene?**

[15:21]

See Map: Cyrene

### **15:22-32**

#### **Where was Golgotha?**

[15:22]

Golgotha was a place outside of the wall of the city of Jerusalem. In English, this place is often called "calvary." It was a hill that looked like a person's skull.

#### **Why did the soldiers give Jesus wine mixed with myrrh?**

[15:23]

The soldiers gave Jesus something to drink. People thought that this would stop pain. However, Jesus did not want to drink the mixed wine.

#### **What is casting lots?**

[15:24]

See: [Cast Lots](#)

#### **Why did the soldiers make a sign?**

[15:26]

The soldiers made a sign. This sign told people that Jesus was killed for saying that he was the king of the Jews.



**Did Mark write the words found in verse 28?**

[15:28]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words found in 15:28. A greater number of older copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. Therefore, most translations do not have these words.

**How did the people insult Jesus?**

[15:29]

The people insulted Jesus while he died. They mocked him because they did not know what he said when he said that he would destroy and rebuild the temple. They thought he spoke about the temple building. However, it was a metaphor. He wanted people to know that he would die and be resurrected in three days. They also mocked Jesus and told him to come off the cross if he was God. They spoke against Jesus because they did not believe he was the Son of God.

See: [Son of God](#); [Temple](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Cross](#); [Son of God](#)

**How did the Jewish leaders mock Jesus?**

[15:31]

The Jewish leaders mocked Jesus in the same way people mocked him. They wanted Jesus to do something so they would know that he was the messiah. However, he did not listen to them. Jesus knew that his death on the cross was part of the work that God the Father sent him to do.

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Cross](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

**15:33-37**

**When was the sixth hour?**

[15:33]

The sixth hour was about 12pm.

**When was the ninth hour?**

The ninth hour was about 3pm.

**Why did Jesus cry out about God had forsaken him?**

[15:34]

As Jesus died, people's sins were placed on him in some way. He was separated from God in some way for the first time. Jesus fulfilled prophecy with these words. In Psalm 22, David cried out to God. Jesus quoted the beginning of this Psalm so the people would know that he was the fulfillment of this prophecy.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

**Why did people think Jesus was calling for Elijah?**

[15:35]

When Jesus said, "Eli," the people thought they heard Jesus calling to Elijah to help him.

**15:38-47**

**Why did the temple curtain split into two pieces?**

[15:38]

In the temple, there was a curtain that separated the most holy place from everything else. It was the place where the high priest went once a year to give a sacrifice to God. God was in this place in a certain way. The curtain was so big and thick that it could not be torn. When Jesus died, it tore. This was a metaphor. It allowed everyone to know that nothing separated people from God anymore after Jesus died.

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Most Holy Place \(Holy of Holies\)](#); [High Priest](#); [Sacrifice](#); [Metaphor](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

### **Why did the Roman soldier think Jesus was the son of God?**

[15:39]

The Roman soldier thought Jesus was the son of God. Some scholars think the soldier believed that Jesus was God. More scholars think that he said that Jesus was a very great man whom God blessed. Mark wanted people to think about how the roman soldier believed the truth about Jesus even though the Jewish leaders did not.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Jesus is God](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

### **Where was Galilee?**

[15:41]

See Map: Galilee

### **Why did Jesus need to be buried before the sun went down?**

[15:42]

According to the Law of Moses, a dead body needed to be buried before the sun set.

See: Deuteronomy 21:23

See: [Law of Moses](#)

### **How was Joseph of Arimathea waiting for the kingdom of God?**

[15:43]

Joseph of Arimathea was a pharisee, but he believed in Jesus (see: John 19:38). He believed what Jesus taught about the kingdom of God.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

### **Why was Pilate amazed that Jesus was dead?**

[15:44]

Pilate was amazed that Jesus was dead because he died very fast. Jesus was beaten and very weak when he was placed on the cross. When most people were put on a cross it took a long time for them to die, sometimes two or three days.

See: [Cross](#)

### **Why did Joseph wrap Jesus' body in a linen cloth and put it into a tomb?**

[15:46]

Joseph of Arimathea wrapped Jesus' body in linen cloth to prepare him to be buried. At that time, people wrapped a body in linen cloths with strong smelling spices. When Jesus' body was ready to be buried, it was put into a tomb. This honored the person who had died.

## Why did Joseph place a large stone in front of the entrance to the tomb?

[15:46]

Joseph placed a very large stone in front of the entrance to the tomb. This kept people and animals out of the tomb.

---

### Mark 15:1

#### Connecting Statement:

When the chief priests, the elders, the scribes, and the council give Jesus over to Pilate, they accuse Jesus of doing many bad things. When Pilate asks if what they had said is true, Jesus does not answer him.

#### they bound Jesus and led him away

They commanded for Jesus to be bound, but it would have been the guards who actually bound him and led him away. Alternate translation: "they commanded for Jesus to be bound and then he was led away" or "they commanded the guards to bind Jesus and then they led him away"

#### They handed him over to Pilate

They had Jesus led to Pilate and transferred control of Jesus over to him.

### Mark 15:2

#### You say so

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so" or 2) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said"

### Mark 15:3

#### were accusing him of many things

"were saying that Jesus had done many bad things"

### Mark 15:4

#### Pilate again asked him

"Pilate asked Jesus again"

#### Do you give no answer

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Do you have an answer"

#### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### Mark 15:5

#### that amazed him

It surprised Pilate that Jesus did not reply and defend himself.

### Mark 15:6

#### Connecting Statement:

Pilate, hoping the crowd will choose Jesus, offers to release a prisoner, but the crowd asks for Barabbas instead.

#### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story as the author tells background information about Pilate's tradition of releasing a prisoner at feasts and about Barabbas.

### Mark 15:7

#### General Information:

The writer continues giving background information that will enable the reader to understand the part of the story that follows.

#### the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion

The writer writes as though he believes that the readers know which rebels and which rebellion he is talking about, not as though he is introducing new participants to the story.

### Mark 15:8

#### to do for them as he had done in the past

This refers to Pilate releasing a prisoner at feasts. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "to release a prisoner to them as he had done in the past"

### Mark 15:9

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 15:10

#### For he knew that it was because of envy ... Jesus over to him

This is background information about why Jesus was handed over to Pilate.

**it was because of envy that the chief priests**

They envied Jesus, probably because so many people were following him and becoming his disciples. Alternate translation: "the chief priests were envious of Jesus. This is why they" or "the chief priests were envious of Jesus's popularity among the people. This is why they"

**Mark 15:11**

**stirred up the crowd**

The author speaks of the chief priests rousing or urging the crowd as if the crowd were a bowl of something that they were stirring. Alternate translation: "roused the crowd" or "urged the crowd"

**released instead**

They requested Barabbas to be released instead of Jesus. Alternate translation: "released instead of Jesus"

**Mark 15:12**

**Connecting Statement:**

The crowd asks for Jesus's death, so Pilate turns him over to the soldiers, who mock him, crown him with thorns, strike him, and lead him out to crucify him.

**What then should I do with the King of the Jews**

Pilate asks what he should do with Jesus if he releases Barabbas to them. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "If I release Barabbas, what then should I do with the King of the Jews"

**Mark 15:13**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 15:14**

**Pilate said to them**

"Pilate said to the crowd"

**Mark 15:15**

**to satisfy the crowd**

"make the crowd happy by doing what they wanted him to do"

**He scourged Jesus**

Pilate did not actually scourge Jesus but rather his soldiers did.

**scourged**

"flogged." To "scourge" is to beat with an especially painful whip.

**then handed him over to be crucified**

Pilate told his soldiers to take Jesus away to crucify him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "told his soldiers to take him away and crucify him"

**Mark 15:16**

**the courtyard (which is the government headquarters)**

This was where the Roman soldiers in Jerusalem lived, and where the governor stayed when he was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the courtyard of the soldiers' barracks" or "the courtyard of the governor's residence"

**the whole company of soldiers**

"the whole unit of soldiers" "the whole cohort of soldiers"

**Mark 15:17**

**They put a purple robe on Jesus**

Purple was a color worn by royalty. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was king. They clothed him this way to mock him because others said that he was the King of the Jews.

**a crown of thorns**

"a crown made of thorny branches"

**Mark 15:18**

**began to salute him**

The reader should understand that they were mocking Jesus by pretending to salute him.

**Hail, King of the Jews**

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet the Roman emperor. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was the king of the Jews. Rather they said this to mock him.

**Mark 15:19**

**a reed**

"a stick" or "a staff"

**went to their knees**

"kneeled" or "knelt" or "got on their knees"

**Mark 15:20**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Mark 15:21**

**Simon ... Alexander ... Rufus**

These are names of men.

**Cyrene**

This is the name of a place.

**from the country**  
"from outside the city"

**he was the father of Alexander and Rufus**  
This is background information about the man whom the soldiers forced to carry Jesus's cross.

**they forced him to carry his cross**  
According to Roman law, a soldier could force a man he came upon along the road to carry a load. In this case, they forced Simon to carry Jesus's cross.

## Mark 15:22

**Connecting Statement:**  
The soldiers bring Jesus to Golgotha, where they crucify him with two others. Many people mock him.

**Place of a Skull**  
"Skull Place" or "Place of the Skull." This the name of a place. It does not mean that there are lots of skulls there.

**Skull**  
A skull is the head bones, or a head without any flesh on it.

## Mark 15:23

**wine mixed with myrrh**  
It may be helpful to explain that myrrh is a pain-relieving medicine. Alternate translation: "wine mixed with a medicine called myrrh" or "wine mixed with a pain-relieving medicine called myrrh"

## Mark 15:24

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 15:25

**the third hour**  
"Third" here is a ordinal number. This refers to nine o'clock in the morning. Alternate translation: "nine o'clock in the morning"

## Mark 15:26

**On a sign**  
The soldiers attached this sign to the cross above Jesus. Alternate translation: "They attached to the cross above Jesus's head a sign on which"

**the charge against him**  
"the crime they were accusing him of doing"

## Mark 15:27

**one on the right of him and one on his left**  
This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "one on a cross on the right side of him and one on a cross on the left side of him"

## Mark 15:28

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 15:29

**shaking their heads**  
This action showed that the people disapproved of Jesus.

**Aha!**  
This is a exclamation of mockery. Use the appropriate exclamation in your language.

**You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days**  
The people refer to Jesus by what he earlier prophesied that he would do. Alternate translation: "You who said you would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days"

## Mark 15:30

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 15:31

**In the same way**  
This refers to the way that the people who were walking by Jesus were mocking him.

**were mocking him with each other**  
"were saying mocking things about Jesus among themselves"

## Mark 15:32

**Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down**  
The leaders did not believe that Jesus is the Christ, the King of Israel. Alternate translation: "He calls himself the Christ and the King of Israel. So let him come down" or "If he is really the Christ and the King of Israel, he should come down"

**believe**  
The means to believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "believe in him"

**insulted**  
mocked, slandered

## Mark 15:33

### the sixth hour

This refers to noon or 12 p.m.

### darkness came over the whole land

Here the author describes it becoming dark outside as if the darkness were a wave that moved over the land. Alternate translation: "the whole land became dark"

## Mark 15:34

### At the ninth hour

This refers to three o'clock in the afternoon. Alternate translation: "At three o'clock in the afternoon" or "In the middle of the afternoon"

### Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani

These are Aramaic words that should be copied as is into your language with similar sounds.

### is interpreted

"means"

## Mark 15:35

### Some of those standing by heard his words and said

It can be stated clearly that they misunderstood what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "When some of those standing there heard his words, they misunderstood and said"

## Mark 15:36

### sour wine

"vinegar"

### reed staff

"stick." This was a staff made from a reed.

### gave it to him

"gave it to Jesus." The man held up the staff so that Jesus could drink wine from the sponge. Alternate translation: "held it up to Jesus"

## Mark 15:37

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 15:38

### The curtain of the temple was split in two

Mark is showing that God himself split the temple curtain. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God split the curtain of the temple in two"

## Mark 15:39

### the centurion

This is the centurion who supervised the soldiers who crucified Jesus.

### who stood and faced Jesus

Here "faced" is an idiom that means to look towards someone. Alternate translation: "who stood in front of Jesus"

### that he had died in this way

"how Jesus had died" or "the way Jesus had died"

### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

## Mark 15:40

### looked on from a distance

"watched from far away"

### (the mother of James ... and of Joses)

"who was the mother of James ... and of Joses." This can be written without the parentheses.

### James the younger

"the younger James." This man was referred to as "the younger" probably to distinguish him from another man named James.

### Joses

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3]

### Salome

Salome is the name of a woman.

## Mark 15:41

### When he was in Galilee they followed him ... with him to Jerusalem

"When Jesus was in Galilee these women followed him ... with him to Jerusalem." This is background information about the women who watched the crucifixion from a distance.

### came up with him to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for people to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

## Mark 15:42

### Connecting Statement:

Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus, which he wraps in linen and puts in a tomb.

### evening had come

Here evening is spoken of as if it were something that is able to "come" from one place to another.

Alternate translation: "it had become evening" or "it was evening"

### Mark 15:43

**Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected**

The phrase "came there" refers to Joseph coming to Pilate, which is also described after the background information is given, but his coming is referenced before for emphasis and to help introduce him to the story. There may be a different way to do this in your language. Alternate translation: "Joseph of Arimathea was a respected"

**Joseph of Arimathea**

"Joseph from Arimathea." Joseph is the name of a man, and Arimathea is the name of the place he is from.

**He was a respected member of the council ... for the kingdom of God**

This is background information about Joseph.

**went in to Pilate**

"went to Pilate" or "went in to where Pilate was"

**asked for the body of Jesus**

It can be stated clearly that he wanted to get the body so that he could bury it. Alternate translation: "asked for permission to get the body of Jesus in order to bury it"

### Mark 15:44

**Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion**

When Pilate heard that Jesus was dead, he was surprised, so he asked the centurion if it was true. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Pilate was amazed when he heard that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion"

### Mark 15:45

**he gave the body to Joseph**

"he permitted Joseph to take Jesus's body"

### Mark 15:46

**linen**

Linen is cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant. See how you translated this in Mark 14:51.

**He took him down ... Then he rolled a stone**

You may need to make explicit that Joseph probably had help from other people when he took Jesus's body down from the cross, prepared it for the tomb, and closed the tomb. Alternate translation: "He and others took him down ... Then they rolled a stone"

**a tomb that had been cut out of a rock**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a tomb that someone had previously cut out of solid rock"

**a stone against**

"a huge flat stone in front of"

### Mark 15:47

**Joses**

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3]

**the place where Jesus was buried**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place where Joseph and the others buried Jesus's body"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 15:1

**Early in the morning, what did the chief priests do with Jesus?**  
Early in the morning, they bound Jesus and handed him over to Pilate.

### Mark 15:5

**While the chief priests were presenting many charges against Jesus, what amazed Pilate about Jesus?**  
Pilate was amazed that Jesus no longer answered him.

### Mark 15:6

**What did Pilate usually do for the crowd at the time of the feast?**  
Pilate usually released to the crowd one prisoner they requested at the time of the feast.

### Mark 15:10

**Why did Pilate want to release Jesus to the crowd?**  
Pilate knew that it was because of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him.

### Mark 15:11

**Who did the crowd cry out to be released?**  
The crowd cried out for Barabbas to be released.

### Mark 15:12

**What did the crowd say should be done with the King of the Jews?**  
The crowd said that the King of the Jews should be crucified.

### Mark 15:13

**What did the crowd say should be done with the King of the Jews?**  
The crowd said that the King of the Jews should be crucified.

### Mark 15:17

**How did the cohort of soldiers dress Jesus?**  
The soldiers put a purple robe on Jesus and put on him a twisted crown of thorns.

### Mark 15:21

**Who carried Jesus' cross?**  
A passerby, Simon of Cyrene, was forced to carry Jesus' cross.

### Mark 15:22

**What was the name of the place where the soldiers brought Jesus to crucify him?**  
The name of the place was Golgotha, which means Place of a Skull.

### Mark 15:24

**What did the soldiers do with Jesus' garments?**  
The soldiers cast lots for Jesus' garments.

### Mark 15:26

**What charge against Jesus did the soldiers write on the sign?**  
The soldiers wrote "The King of the Jews" on the sign.

### Mark 15:29

**What did those who passed by challenge Jesus to do?**  
Those who passed by challenged Jesus to save himself and get down from the cross.

### Mark 15:30

**What did those who passed by challenge Jesus to do?**  
Those who passed by challenged Jesus to save himself and get down from the cross.

### Mark 15:31

**What did the chief priests say Jesus should do so they would believe?**  
The chief priests said that Jesus should come down from the cross so they would believe.

### Mark 15:32

**What did the chief priests say Jesus should do so they would believe?**  
The chief priests said that Jesus should come down from the cross so they would believe.

**What titles did the chief priests use for Jesus as they mocked him?**  
The chief priests called Jesus the Christ and the King of Israel.

### Mark 15:33

**What happened at the sixth hour?**  
At the sixth hour, darkness came over the whole land.



**Mark 15:34**

**What did Jesus cry out at the ninth hour?**

Jesus cried out, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?"

**Mark 15:37**

**What did Jesus do before he died?**

Jesus cried out with a loud voice before he died.

**Mark 15:38**

**What happened in the temple when Jesus died?**

The curtain of the temple was split in two from top to bottom when Jesus died.

**Mark 15:39**

**What did the centurion testify when he saw how Jesus died?**

The centurion testified that truly this man was the Son of God.

**Mark 15:42**

**On what day did Jesus die?**

Jesus died on the day before the Sabbath.

**Mark 15:46**

**What did Joseph of Arimathea do after Jesus died?**

Joseph of Arimathea took Jesus down from the cross, wrapped him in linen cloth, and laid him in a tomb, rolling a stone against the entrance of the tomb.

## Chapter 16

<sup>1</sup> When the Sabbath day was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices that they might come and anoint Jesus' body. <sup>2</sup> Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the tomb when the sun had come up. <sup>3</sup> They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the tomb?" <sup>4</sup> When they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, for it was very large. <sup>5</sup> They entered the tomb and saw a young man dressed in a white robe, sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

<sup>6</sup> He said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus, the Nazarene, who was crucified. He is risen! He is not here. Look at the place where they had laid him. <sup>7</sup> But go, tell his disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you.'"

<sup>8</sup> They went out and ran from the tomb; they were trembling and amazed. They said nothing to anyone because they were so afraid. <sup>9</sup><sup>[1]</sup> [Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons. <sup>10</sup> She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping. <sup>11</sup> They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe.

<sup>12</sup> After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them as they were walking out into the country. <sup>13</sup> They went back and told the rest, but they did not believe them.

<sup>14</sup> Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead. <sup>15</sup> He said to them, "Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation. <sup>16</sup> He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned. <sup>17</sup> These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages. <sup>18</sup> They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well."

<sup>19</sup> After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God. <sup>20</sup> The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.] <sup>[2]</sup>

---

### Footnotes

16:9 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Mark 16:9-20.

16:20 <sup>[2]</sup>See the note on Mark 16:9.

---

## Mark 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Mark 15:46](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### A young man dressed in a white robe

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to

translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

---

## **Mark 16**

### **16:1-11**

#### **What was the Sabbath?**

[16:1]

See: [Sabbath](#)

#### **Why did these women bring spices to anoint the body?**

[16:1]

The women brought spices to anoint Jesus' body. In ancient Israel, people did this to someone after they died. They did not think Jesus would be made alive again. The spices were used to stop the body from smelling bad. People did this for people they loved when the person died.

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

#### **What day was the first day of the week?**

[16:2]

The Sabbath began on Friday at sunset and ended Saturday at sunset. The day after the sabbath was the first day of the week. This day began on Saturday at sunset and ended on Sunday at sunset.

See: [Sabbath](#)

#### **Why did the women need someone to roll the stone away?**

[16:3]

The stone in front of Jesus' tomb was very large. It was so large three women could not move it. Therefore, they needed several men to move it.

#### **Who was the man in the tomb?**

[16:5]

The man in the tomb was an angel.

See: [White \(symbol\)](#); [White \(symbol\)](#)

#### **Where was Nazareth?**

[16:6]

See Map: Nazareth

#### **How was Jesus crucified?**

[16:6]

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

#### **How was Jesus resurrected?**

[16:6]

The man in the tomb said that Jesus was risen. That is, Jesus was resurrected and was alive again.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **Where was Galilee?**

[16:7]

See Map: Galilee

### **Why did the man say, “just as he told you”?**

[16:7]

The man said that Jesus was resurrected, “just as he told you.” Jesus told people that he was going to be resurrected after he died. He also said he would go to Galilee (see: 14:28). They did not understand what he said. Or perhaps they did not believe it when he said it.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

See Map: Galilee

### **Did Mark write the words of 16:9-20?**

[16:9]

The oldest copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words written in Mark 16:9-20. Other ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do have these words. Therefore, some scholars do not think Mark wrote these words. They think some ancient scholars added these words to the ending of Mark’s gospel. Perhaps they did this to make the gospel end in a different way. That is, so the gospel would tell people about Jesus’ resurrection. Other scholars think Mark wrote these words. Perhaps an early copy of Mark’s gospel lost its last page and people made copies of this without the last page.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

### **How did Jesus cast out demons?**

[16:9]

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **Why were people mourning and weeping?**

[16:10]

People were mourning and weeping because they were sad. They were sad that Jesus died. They did not know that he promised to be resurrected. They also did not know that he was resurrected. When they heard that Jesus was alive, they did not believe the women. They thought the women lied because people did not become alive after they died.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **16:12-20**

### **How did Jesus appear in a different form?**

[16:12]

Jesus joined two people walking. Scholars think these people saw Jesus before he died. However, Jesus looked different from the first time they saw him. So they did not know it was Jesus (see: Luke 24:13-32).

**Why were the disciples called the eleven?**

[16:14]

People called the disciples the eleven. This is because Judas Iscariot was not a disciple anymore.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Why did the disciples recline at the table?**

[16:14]

The disciples reclined at the table because they were eating.

See: [Disciple](#)

**What did Jesus tell the disciples to do?**

[16:15]

Jesus wanted the disciples to go tell everyone they could that Jesus was made alive again. He wanted them to tell everyone about the gospel. When Jesus said "the entire creation," he wanted everyone in the world to know these things.

See: [Gospel](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Gospel](#)

**How is someone who is baptized saved?**

[16:16]

Jesus said that whoever believes in him and is baptized will be saved. When someone believes in Jesus, they are at peace with God and will live with him forever. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about being baptized by the Holy Spirit. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about being baptized with water.

See: [Heaven](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Heaven](#)

**How is someone who does not believe in Jesus condemned?**

[16:16]

People who do not believe in Jesus are condemned. That is, they are punished and will live forever in hell.

See: [Hell](#)

**What is casting out demons?**

[16:17]

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**How will Christians be able to speak in new languages?**

[16:17]

See: [Speaking in Tongues](#)

**Were Christians able to be poisoned without getting sick?**

[16:18]

Jesus talked about Christians being poisoned. He said that Christians will be poisoned or bitten by poisonous snakes, but they will not die. The apostles did many miracles. These were signs so that other people would know that what they said came from God. Jesus did not talk about all Christians at all times.

See: [Sign](#); [Miracle](#); [Sign](#)

## Why is Jesus at the right hand of God in heaven?

[16:19]

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

## How did Jesus help the disciples when they preached?

[16:20]

The disciples went many places and told people about Jesus. Jesus helped them through the Holy Spirit. He also gave them the power to do miracles. These were signs that the things they taught were from God.

See: [Sign](#); [Miracle](#); [Sign](#)

### Mark 16:1

#### Connecting Statement:

On the first day of the week, women come early because they expect to use spices to anoint Jesus's body. They are surprised to see a young man who tells them Jesus is alive, but they are afraid and do not tell anyone.

#### When the Sabbath day was over

That is, after the Sabbath, the seventh day of the week, had ended and the first day of the week had begun.

### Mark 16:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:3

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:4

#### the stone had been rolled away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had rolled away the stone"

### Mark 16:5

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:6

#### He is risen!

The angel is emphatically stating that Jesus has risen from the dead. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "He arose!" or "God raised him from the dead!" or "He raised himself from the dead!"

### Mark 16:7

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:8

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:9

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus appears first to Mary Magdalene, who tells the disciples, then he appears to two others as they walk in the country, and later he appears to the eleven disciples.

**on the first day of the week**  
"on Sunday"

### Mark 16:10

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:11

#### They heard

"They heard Mary Magdalene say"

#### he had been seen by her

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary Magdalene had seen him" or "she had seen him"

### Mark 16:12

#### he appeared in a different form to two of them

The "two of them" saw Jesus, but he looked different from how he had looked previously.

#### two of them

"two of his disciples"

## Mark 16:13

### they did not believe them

The rest of the disciples did not believe what the two who had been walking in the country said.

## Mark 16:14

### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus meets with the eleven, he rebukes them for their unbelief and tells them to go out into all the world to preach the gospel.

### the eleven

These are the eleven apostles who remain after Judas has left them.

### they were reclining at the table

This is a metonym for eating, which was the usual way people in that day ate meals. Alternate translation: "they were eating a meal"

### reclining

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

### hardness of heart

Jesus is rebuking his disciples because they would not believe in him. Translate this idiom so it is understood that the disciples were not believing Jesus. Alternate translation: "refusal to believe"

## Mark 16:15

### Go into all the world

Here "the world" is a metonym for the people in the world. Alternate translation: "Go everywhere there are people"

### the entire creation

This is an exaggeration and a metonym for people everywhere. Alternate translation: "absolutely everybody"

## Mark 16:16

### He who believes and is baptized will be saved

The word "He" refers to anyone. This sentence can be made active. Alternate translation: "God will save all people who believe and allow you to baptize them"

### he who does not believe will be condemned

The word "he" refers to anyone. This clause can be made active. Alternate translation: "God will condemn all people who do not believe"

## Mark 16:17

### These signs will go with those who believe

Mark speaks of miracles as though they were people going along with the believers. Alternate translation: "People watching those who believe will see these things happen and know that I am with the believers"

### In my name they

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is giving a general list: "In my name they will do things like these: They" or 2) Jesus is giving an exact list: "These are the things they will do in my name: They."

### In my name

Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. See how "in your name" is translated in [Mark 9:38]

## Mark 16:18

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 16:19

### he was taken up into heaven and sat

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God took him up into heaven, and he sat"

### sat down at the right hand of God

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "sat in the place of honor beside God"

## Mark 16:20

### worked with them

worked together with them, helped them as they worked

### confirmed the word

This idiom means they proved that their message was true. Alternate translation: "showed that his message, which they were speaking, was true"

### by the signs that went with them

"by enabling them wherever they went to do miracles that showed that they truly were his disciples"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Mark 16:2

**When did the women go to Jesus' tomb to anoint his body?**

The women went to the tomb on the first day of the week when the sun came up.

### Mark 16:4

**How did the women enter the tomb even though there had been a very large stone at the entrance?**

Someone had rolled away the very large stone from the entrance.

### Mark 16:5

**What did the women see when they entered the tomb?**

The women saw a young man dressed in a white robe sitting on the right side.

### Mark 16:6

**What did the young man say about Jesus?**

The young man said that Jesus was risen and was not there.

### Mark 16:7

**Where did the young man say the disciples would meet Jesus?**

The young man said the disciples would meet Jesus in Galilee.

### Mark 16:9

**To whom did Jesus first appear after his resurrection?**

Jesus first appeared to Mary Magdalene.

### Mark 16:11

**How did Jesus' disciples respond when Mary told them she had seen Jesus alive?**

The disciples did not believe.

### Mark 16:13

**How did Jesus' disciples respond when two other people told them they had seen Jesus alive?**

The disciples did not believe.

### Mark 16:14

**When he appeared to the disciples, what did Jesus say to them about their unbelief?**

Jesus rebuked the disciples for their unbelief.

### Mark 16:15

**What command did Jesus give the disciples?**

Jesus commanded the disciples to go into all the world and preach the gospel.

### Mark 16:16

**Who did Jesus say would be saved?**

Jesus said those who believed and were baptized would be saved.

**Who did Jesus say would be condemned?**

Jesus said those who did not believe would be condemned.

### Mark 16:17

**What signs did Jesus say would go with those who believed?**

Jesus said those who believed would cast out demons, would speak in new languages, would not be hurt by anything deadly, and would heal others.

### Mark 16:18

**What signs did Jesus say would go with those who believed?**

Jesus said those who believed would cast out demons, would speak in new languages, would not be hurt by anything deadly, and would heal others.

### Mark 16:19

**What happened to Jesus after he spoke to the disciples?**

After he spoke to the disciples, Jesus was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

### Mark 16:20

**What did the disciples then do?**

The disciples then left and preached everywhere.

**What did the Lord then do?**

The Lord then worked with the disciples and confirmed the word with miraculous signs.



## Book: Luke

---

### Introduction to the Gospel of Luke

#### Overview

Luke wrote about Jesus and the things he did. He also wanted people to know that Jesus was fully human and fully God. Jesus did the things all people do. That is, he was born, he grew up, he suffered, and he died. However, Luke also wrote Jesus lived a perfect life without sinning while he was on earth. Because Jesus did this, God accepted his death as a sacrifice so that people could be at peace with God.

See: [Jesus is God](#); [Sin](#); [Sacrifice](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

#### Who was the author of the Gospel of Luke?

Scholars think the author of the Gospel of Luke was a man named Luke. Luke also wrote the book of Acts. Scholars think Luke wrote both books as one book.

The following things are known about the author of this gospel.

1. He did not see many of the things that he wrote about. He wrote what other people saw and told him about.
2. He was well-educated.
3. He knew earlier writings about Jesus and he used them in his gospel.
4. He looked for people who saw the events he wanted to write about.
5. He wrote more than any other person in the New Testament.
6. He was a Gentile.
7. Some scholars think Luke was the physician that Paul wrote about in Colossians 4:14. Other scholars think Paul wrote about a different person named Luke.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gentile](#)

#### Who was the audience to whom Luke wrote?

Some scholars think Luke wrote his gospel to a man named Theophilus. Theophilus was thought to be a wealthy person who gave money for Luke to research and write his book. It was normal for writers to address their books to those who helped them with money. Also, scholars think Theophilus was a leader in the Roman government because Luke wrote very respectfully to Theophilus (see: Luke 1:1).

However, other scholars believe “Theophilus” referred to all Christians. His name meant “lover of God” or “friend of God”. In Luke’s gospel, this name represented all Christians because all Christians love God and are friends of God.

Whether or not “Theophilus” was a single person or a word for all Christians, Luke tried to make Gentiles understand the things the Jews did and believed.

#### What did Luke write about in this gospel?

##### Prayer

Luke wrote that Jesus prayed and taught people about prayer. Luke was the only gospel that wrote Jesus prayed when the Holy Spirit came down on him at his baptism (see: Luke 3:21.22), when Jesus chose the twelve apostles (see: Luke 6:12-13), and when God changed the appearance of Jesus on a mountain (see: Luke 9:28-29). Luke was also the only gospel that wrote a parable about prayer (see: Luke 18:1-8).

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#); [Apostle](#); [Gospel](#); [Parable](#)

##### Holy Spirit

Luke wrote about the Holy Spirit when he wrote about John the Baptist and Jesus being born (see: Luke 1:15,35,41; 2:25-35). Luke wrote Jesus “rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit” (see: Luke 10:21). Luke was the only gospel where Jesus talked about the promise of God the Father, which was the promise of the Holy Spirit (see: Luke 24:49).

See: [Holy Spirit](#); [Gospel](#); [God the Father](#)

#### **Poor People**

Luke wrote about how God cared for poor people. When Mary, the mother of Jesus, brought her offering to the temple it was an offering poor people brought (see: Luke 2:24). The other three gospels did not write about this. When Jesus read from Isaiah, he read about taking the good news to poor people (see: Luke 4:18). The other three gospels did not write about this. Luke wrote how Jesus talked about the rich man and the poor man Lazarus (see: Luke 16:19-31), but the other three gospels did not write about it.

See: [Temple](#); [Offer \(Offering\)](#)

#### **Women**

In the ancient world, people did not often write about what women did. However, Luke wrote about several things women did. God chose Elizabeth to give birth to John the Baptist (see: Luke 1:18-25,57-66). The angel Gabriel told Mary she found favor with God (see: Luke 1:26-38). Mary served God (see: Luke 1:38) and she sang a song of praise to God because God chose her to give birth to Jesus (see: Luke 1:46-55). Jesus made alive again the only son of a widow (see: Luke 7:11-17). A woman anointed the feet of Jesus (see: Luke 7:36-50). Several women served Jesus and the twelve disciples (see: Luke 8:3). Jesus spoke well of Mary, the sister of Martha (see: Luke 10:38-42). Also, Jesus used examples of women when he talked about a lost coin and an unjust judge (see: Luke 15:8-10;18:1-8).

See: [Angel](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#); [Disciple](#)

#### **Samaritans**

Luke wrote about how Samaritans did things God wanted them to do.

See: [Samarita](#)

#### **What was the purpose of the Gospel of Luke?**

Luke wrote this gospel so that people would know about Jesus and the things he did. Luke wanted people to believe in Jesus so they can be at peace with God. He also wanted them to live in a way that honors God.

#### **Outline of the Gospel of Luke**

1. Luke named whom he wrote to and wrote why he wrote (1:1-4)
2. The birth of Jesus (1:5-2:38)
3. When Jesus was a boy (2:39-52)
4. Jesus' baptism (3:1-4:13)
5. Jesus in Galilee (4:14-9:50)
6. Jesus traveled to Jerusalem (9:51-19:27)
7. The last week before Jesus died (19:28-23:56)

See: [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#)

---

## **Luke**

### **Chapter 1**

<sup>1</sup> Many have taken on the work of putting together an account of the things that have been accomplished among us, <sup>2</sup> just as they were passed down to us by those who from the first were eyewitnesses and servants of the word. <sup>3</sup> So it seemed good to me also, because I have accurately investigated everything from the beginning, to write an orderly account for you, most excellent Theophilus, <sup>4</sup> so that you might know the certainty of the things you have been taught.

<sup>5</sup> In the days of Herod king of Judea there was a certain priest named Zechariah from the division of Abijah; his wife Elizabeth was also a descendant of Aaron. <sup>6</sup> They were both righteous before God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and statutes of the Lord. <sup>7</sup> But they had no child because Elizabeth was barren, and they were both advanced in their days.

<sup>8</sup> Now it came about that Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties in the order of his division. <sup>9</sup> According to the customary way of choosing which priest would serve, he had been chosen by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. <sup>10</sup> The whole crowd of people was praying outside at the hour when the incense was burned. <sup>11</sup> Now an angel of the Lord appeared to him and stood at the right side of the incense altar. <sup>12</sup> When Zechariah saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell on him. <sup>13</sup> But the angel said to him, "Do not be afraid, Zechariah, because your prayer has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son. You will call his name John. <sup>14</sup> You will have joy and gladness, and many will rejoice at his birth. <sup>15</sup> For he will be great in the sight of the Lord. He must never drink wine or strong drink, and he will be filled with the Holy Spirit from his mother's womb. <sup>16</sup> Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God. <sup>17</sup> He will go before the face of the Lord in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous—to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him."

<sup>18</sup> Zechariah said to the angel, "How can I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." <sup>19</sup> The angel answered and said to him, "I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God. I was sent to speak to you, to bring you this good news. <sup>20</sup> Behold! You will be silent, unable to speak, until the day these things take place. This is because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled at the right time." <sup>21</sup> Now the people were waiting for Zechariah. They were surprised that he was spending so much time in the temple. <sup>22</sup> But when he came out, he could not speak to them. They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. <sup>23</sup> It came about that when the days of his service were over, he went to his house.

<sup>24</sup> After these days, his wife Elizabeth conceived and for five months she kept herself hidden. She said, <sup>25</sup> "This is what the Lord has done for me when he looked at me with favor in order to take away my shame before people."

<sup>26</sup> In the sixth month, the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city in Galilee named Nazareth, <sup>27</sup> to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, who was a descendant of David, and the virgin's name was Mary. <sup>28</sup> He came to her and said, "Greetings, you who are highly favored! The Lord is with you." <sup>29</sup> But she was very confused by his words and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be. <sup>30</sup> The angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. <sup>31</sup> See, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son. You will call his name 'Jesus.' <sup>32</sup> He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. The Lord God will give him the throne of his ancestor David. <sup>33</sup> He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and there will be no end to his kingdom."

<sup>34</sup> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not known any man?"

<sup>35</sup> The angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will overshadow you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God. <sup>36</sup> See, your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age. This is the sixth month for her, she who was called barren. <sup>37</sup> For nothing will be impossible for God."

<sup>38</sup> Mary said, "See, I am the female servant of the Lord. Let it be for me according to your message." Then the angel left her.

<sup>39</sup> Then Mary arose in those days and quickly went into the hill country, to a city in Judea. <sup>40</sup> She went into the house of Zechariah and greeted Elizabeth. <sup>41</sup> Now it happened that when Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby in her womb jumped, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit. <sup>42</sup> She cried out with a loud shout and said, "Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb. <sup>43</sup> Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? <sup>44</sup> For see, when the sound of your greeting came to my ears, the baby in my womb jumped for joy. <sup>45</sup> Blessed is she who believed that there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord."

<sup>46</sup> Mary said,

"My soul praises the Lord,

<sup>47</sup> and my spirit has rejoiced in God my Savior.

<sup>48</sup> For he has looked

at the low condition of his female servant.

For see, from now on all generations will call me blessed.

<sup>49</sup> For the Mighty One has done great things for me,  
and his name is holy.

<sup>50</sup> His mercy lasts from generation to generation  
for those who fear him.

<sup>51</sup> He has displayed strength with his arm;  
he has scattered those who were proud  
about the thoughts of their hearts.

<sup>52</sup> He has thrown down princes from their thrones  
and he has raised up those of low condition.

<sup>53</sup> He has filled the hungry with good things,  
but the rich he has sent away empty-handed.

<sup>54</sup> He has given help to Israel his servant,  
so as to remember to show mercy

<sup>55</sup> (as he said to our fathers)  
to Abraham and his descendants forever."

<sup>56</sup> Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.

<sup>57</sup> Now the time had come for Elizabeth to deliver her baby and she gave birth to a son. <sup>58</sup> Her neighbors  
and her relatives heard that the Lord had shown his great mercy to her, and they rejoiced with her.

<sup>59</sup> Now it happened on the eighth day that they came to circumcise the child. They would have called him  
"Zechariah," after the name of his father. <sup>60</sup> But his mother answered and said, "No. He will be called  
John." <sup>61</sup> They said to her, "There is no one among your relatives who is called by this name." <sup>62</sup> They  
made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named. <sup>63</sup> His father asked for a writing tablet  
and wrote, "His name is John." They all were astonished at this. <sup>64</sup> Immediately his mouth was opened  
and his tongue was freed. He spoke and praised God. <sup>65</sup> Fear came on all who lived around them. All  
these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea. <sup>66</sup> All who heard them stored them in  
their hearts, saying, "What then will this child become?" For the hand of the Lord was with him.

<sup>67</sup> His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied, saying,

<sup>68</sup> "Praised be the Lord, the God of Israel,  
for he has come to help  
and he has accomplished redemption for his people.

<sup>69</sup> He has raised up a horn of salvation for us  
in the house of his servant David

<sup>70</sup> (as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago),  
<sup>71</sup> salvation from our enemies  
and from the hand of all who hate us.

<sup>72</sup> He will do this to show mercy to our fathers  
and to remember his holy covenant,

<sup>73</sup> the oath that he swore  
to Abraham our father.

<sup>74</sup> He swore to grant to us that we,  
having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies,  
would serve him without fear

<sup>75</sup> in holiness and righteousness  
before him all our days.

<sup>76</sup> Yes, and you, child,  
will be called a prophet of the Most High,  
for you will go before the face of the Lord  
to prepare his paths,  
to prepare people for his coming,

<sup>77</sup> to give knowledge of salvation to his people  
by the forgiveness of their sins.

<sup>78</sup> This will happen because  
of the tender mercy of our God,  
because of which the sunrise

from on high will come to help us,  
<sup>79</sup> to shine on those who sit in darkness  
and in the shadow of death.  
He will do this to guide our feet  
into the path of peace."

<sup>80</sup> Now the child grew and became strong in spirit, and he was in the wilderness until the day of his public appearance to Israel.

---

## Luke 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:46-55, 68-79.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "He will be called John"

Most people in the ancient Near East would give a child the same name as someone in their family. People were surprised that Elizabeth and Zechariah named their son John, because there was no one else in their family with that name.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

Luke's language is simple and straightforward. He does not use many figures of speech.

---

## Luke 1 Commentary

### 1:1-4

#### How did Luke begin his gospel?

[1:1, 1:2, 1:3, 1:4]

The first four verses of the Gospel of Luke introduce his gospel. Luke began his gospel in the same way that other people in ancient times began to write their own books. Like them, Luke said why he wrote his gospel, and how he wrote it.

See: [Gospel](#)

#### Who was Theophilus?

[1:3]

Luke wrote his gospel to someone named Theophilus. Luke called him "most excellent," so he showed that he respected him. Some scholars think that Theophilus was a government official. Some scholars have said that his name is perhaps a metaphor, because his name means "lover of God" or "friend of God." These scholars believe that his name showed that Luke wrote his gospel to anyone who wanted to love God or be a friend of God.

Luke did not call Theophilus a brother, so some scholars think that he was not a Christian. However, someone had taught Theophilus about Jesus. Perhaps Luke considered him to be in the group of Christians whom he called "us" in verses 1-2. Scholars do not know anything else about Theophilus.

See: [Name](#)

Folktales are stories that people tell to one another. They are passed down from parents to children, even though they know that these stories did not actually happen. How did Luke describe the events that actually happen? Luke spoke about things that actually happened. These things did not come from folktales. People could find out that the things that Luke wrote about were true because they did happen.

People who saw these things happen told other people about them. It was from these people, the ones who saw these things, that Luke learned much about what Jesus did.

In ancient times, when Jews thought about why some nations became strong, and other nations became weak, they wanted to know what God did to make these things happen. The Gentiles thought in the same way. They were always thinking about what their gods made happen.

However, it is not the same today. Today, if someone says that God makes things happen in the world, many people think that that person is not telling the truth. However, the men who wrote the Old Testament wrote what the Holy Spirit told them to write. They showed that God did many things for the Israelites in ancient times.

When Luke wrote his gospel, he was thinking in the same way. He told about the wonderful things that God did. Luke wrote many things everywhere in his gospel, and in Acts, about what the Holy Spirit did.

See: Acts 1:1-4

### **How did Luke write?**

[1:3, 1:4]

Luke wrote “order”(καθεξής/g2517) in verse three in order to tell how he wrote his gospel. Perhaps he wanted to say that he thought much about the things he wrote about.

Perhaps Luke wanted to say that he wrote first about the things that happened first. However, sometimes he wrote about later things first. For example, in 3:19-20, Luke wrote about why John the Baptist went into prison. He wrote this before he wrote that John baptized Jesus. However, John went into prison some time after he baptized Jesus.

See: Luke 3:19-20; Acts 18:24-28; 19:1-7

### **1:5-25**

#### **When was John the Baptist born?**

[1:5]

Luke said that John was born when Herod was king of Judea. The Old Testament writers also said who was king when something happened. In this way, Luke wrote as the Old Testament writers wrote (see: Isaiah 1:1).

King Herod ruled Judea for the Romans between the years 40 B.C. and 4 or 5 B.C. Scholars think that he was close to dying when the first things that Luke wrote about happened.

The Jews knew that Herod was very cruel. He murdered many people. But he did rebuild the Jewish temple. Luke begins his story by telling about something that happened in this temple.

See: Isaiah 1:1

See: [King Herod](#)

#### **What did Zechariah's and Elizabeth's names mean?**

[1:5]

Zechariah's name meant, “The Lord remembers.” His wife Elizabeth's name meant, “My God is an oath or a promise.” This was because they had no children, and they were too old to have any. Why did God punish Zechariah? God punished Zechariah for not thinking that the angel Gabriel was telling him the truth (see: Luke 1:20). Zechariah should have remembered that God healed many women in the Old Testament who could not have children.

Instead, Zechariah was not able to speak until God made what he told Gabriel happen. Since Elizabeth was unable to have children, people thought that God had punished her and humiliated her. However, this did not happen because she had sinned.

See: Romans 3:21-31

See: [Sin](#); [Gospel](#); [Sin](#)

### **Why did Luke write Zechariah and Elizabeth were righteous and blameless?**

[1:6]

Luke wrote Zechariah and Elizabeth “lived in a way that honored God or lived the right way”(δίκαιος/g1342) and “innocent, blameless, or obeyed the rules”(ἄμεμπτος/g0273). Luke meant that Zechariah and Elizabeth honored God completely and did their best to obey him. Luke wanted his readers to think that God was pleased with Zechariah and Elizabeth because they did so.

Luke also wrote about people who lived in a way that honored God in verse seventeen. He said that John the Baptist helped many people to become wise like other people who honor God.

However, there were many other Jews who did not know God’s law and who did not care about obeying it. These Jews were the people that the Pharisees called “sinners or people who sinned”(ἁμαρτωλός/g0268). The Pharisees said that Jesus was a “sinner” because they thought that he did not obey the law, even though he did (see: John 9:24).

However, when the Apostle Paul wrote about people who lived rightly and sinners, he meant something different. Paul wanted to show everyone that they have all sinned, and that they needed for Jesus Christ to die for them. He showed that God considers righteous anyone who believes in Jesus, even if that person still sins (see: Romans 3:21-31).

See: [Sin](#); [Blameless](#); [Pharisees](#); [Sin](#)

### **Why did Luke write about the Jewish temple?**

[1:9]

About one thousand years before Jesus lived, King David ordered the priests to serve in different divisions or groups at the temple. After the Jews returned to Jerusalem from Babylon and rebuilt the temple, the priests served in these divisions again.

Zechariah belonged to the division of Abijah. The priests in each division served at the temple two weeks every year. There were about 18,000 priests, so not all priests got the chance to serve at the temple even one time their whole life. The leaders of the priests cast lots to choose which priests would burn incense at the morning and evening sacrifice that happened each day.

Luke began telling about what happened before Jesus was born. He began in this chapter by telling about what Zechariah the priest saw in the temple. Luke ended the next chapter by writing about what Jesus did in the temple when he was twelve years old. It is in this way that words about the temple begin and end this part of Luke’s gospel.

See: 1 Chronicles 24

See: [Temple](#)

### **What did John the Baptist succeed in doing by serving God?**

[1:16, 1:17]

John the Baptist had to get the people ready to receive the Messiah. He did this by telling them to repent because they sinned.

Gabriel repeated some words the prophet Malachi wrote (see: Malachi 4:6). These words were about bringing the fathers’ hearts back to their children. This was a prophecy about John the Baptist. Perhaps Luke was also thinking about what Malachi said right after that, and to bring back “the heart of the children to their fathers.” When people “repent”(μετανοέω/g3340), fathers begin to love their children again, and children love their fathers.

Malachi also said that if this did not happen, God would curse the land of Israel. However, Gabriel did not say anything about this. So perhaps Gabriel was thinking that after the people “repented”, God would do for Israel everything he had promised to do in his covenant with Israel.

See: [Covenant](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Curse](#); [Covenant](#)

### **How did Zechariah’s son come with the spirit and power of Elijah?**

[1:17]

Some scholars note that about eight hundred years earlier, some prophets said Elisha also had the spirit of Elijah because Elisha did powerful miracles like the ones that Elijah did (see: 2 Kings 2:15). This meant that Elisha did his work in the way that Elijah had done his. God caused Elisha to continue to serve him as Elijah had done. Much later, God caused John the Baptist to do the same kind of work as Elijah. This is what Malachi said would happen (see: Malachi 4:5-6).

Later in this chapter, when the angel told Mary that she would have a son (see: Luke 1:35), the angel said that the Holy Spirit and God’s power would come upon her. Also, in Luke 4:14, Luke said that Jesus came out of the wilderness with the power of the Holy Spirit.

In verse fifteen, Luke said that the Holy Spirit would fill John even before he was born. Here in verse seventeen, when the angel told Zechariah that John the Baptist would come in the spirit and power of Elijah, perhaps the angel was talking about the Holy Spirit. However, most scholars think that the angel was saying that John would think and act in the same way that Elijah had done. This is how John would serve God.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

### **Why did Elizabeth hide herself for five months?**

[1:24]

When Zechariah and Elizabeth returned to their house in Judea, Elizabeth decided to stay in her house for five months without coming out. Scholars give reasons for this.

1. She was afraid of having a miscarriage.
2. She was afraid people would not believe she was really pregnant, so she wanted to wait until everyone was able to see she was pregnant.
3. She wanted to pray.
4. She wanted to follow her husband’s example of not spreading this good news.
5. She wanted to be sure that Mary would be the first person to know she was pregnant.

See Map: Judea

## **1:26-38**

### **How the angel Gabriel greet Mary?**

[1:28]

Most scholars believe the angel Gabriel greeted Mary in a way that the Jews usually greeted each other (see: Luke 1:28). They think the angel said that God favored Mary. This was why he chose her to bear the baby Jesus and to raise him. These scholars also say that in the Old Testament, some people greeted other people like this. When they greeted a person like this, they meant that God had chosen this person to do something very good for him.

Fewer scholars think the angel meant that Mary was able to show favor to other people and help them in this way. These scholars think this because of an old translation of scripture that said Mary is ‘full of grace.’ These scholars also believe that Mary never sinned in her whole life.

See: Exodus 33:16; Proverbs 12:2

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

See Map: Galilee



**Advice to Translators:** Translate “the house of Jacob” as you did in your local version of the gospel of Luke.

### **How will Jesus make come true what God had promised King David that he would do?**

[1:32]

The angel Gabriel described Jesus, then he said what Jesus would do (see: Luke 1:32-33). Jesus would become king and rule forever over Israel, the “house of Jacob.” This is what God said he would make happen to King David. He made this happen by means of Jesus (see: 2 Samuel 7:14).

However, some scholars think that God has now made these things happen. They say that he made these things happen when Jesus was born. This is because Jesus began to rule over the hearts of those who believed in him.

Other scholars think that God will make these things happen when Jesus returns to earth. They say that this will happen when Jesus becomes king.

Still other scholars say that both of these things are true. They think that God made some of these things happen when Jesus was born, and that God will make the rest of them happen when Jesus comes back to earth.

**Advice to Translators:** Translate “the son of the Most High” here as you did in your local version of the gospel of Luke.

The angel Gabriel called Jesus “the Son of the Most High.” This shows that Jesus, the Messiah who is a descendant of King David, is also God. It was God who gave King David the power to rule over Israel. But after the Babylonians took the Jews to their own country as prisoners, the Israelites never had a king again. However, the Israelites will once again prosper because Jesus, a descendant of King David, will rule over them.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites had many kings, one after another. They were descendants of King David. But now Jesus the Messiah, also a descendant of David, will rule forever.

### **Why did Mary have to be a virgin when she became pregnant?**

[1:34]

It was necessary for Mary to be a virgin when she became pregnant with Jesus. This meant that God was Jesus’ father, not any man. God was Jesus’ father, so Jesus was born without wanting to sin in any way.

When God created Adam and Eve, they did not sin at first, either. God was Jesus’ father, so when Mary gave birth to Jesus, Jesus did not sin. However, after Adam and Eve sinned for the first time, all people have been born wanting to sin. All men and women pass this desire on to their children. Every person who was born after Adam, God considered to be guilty of sin because they were born wanting to sin. When a person wants to sin, this is wrong and it is a sin. But God was Jesus’ father, so Jesus never sinned, and He was not born wanting to sin. Therefore, God did not consider Jesus guilty of wanting to sin.

See: Isaiah 7:14; Psalm 51:5; 71:6; Romans 5:12

See: [Sinful Nature](#); [Sinful Nature](#)

### **Did God sleep with Mary?**

[1:35]

The Holy Spirit came upon Mary to make her pregnant with Jesus. But when God gave Mary this baby, he did not sleep with her.

Jesus, the Son of God, has always been the son of God the Father. When Mary gave birth to Jesus, this was the same Son of God, but he became a human being when Mary became pregnant with him. But he did not stop being God. This is why Jesus is called the “God-Man,” that is, the man who is also God, and God who is also man. It is because he is human, even though he is also God.

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

**Mary asked Gabriel a different question from what Zechariah asked him. How was it different?**

[1:34, 1:38]

Luke wrote that both Mary and Zechariah asked the angel Gabriel a question. However, Luke showed that they thought differently. Zechariah wanted Gabriel to do something that would make him think he was saying the truth (see: Luke 1:18). This was because Zechariah did not believe Gabriel. But Luke made his readers know that Mary believed what Gabriel told her (see: Luke 1:38). Also, Mary's cousin Elizabeth knew that Mary had believed what Gabriel said to her (see: Luke 1:45). Mary even called herself a servant of God, ready to do anything that God commanded her to do (see: Luke 1:20).

**1:39-45**

**How was Mary the mother of Elizabeth's "Lord" in Luke 1:43?**

[1:43]

Elizabeth called Mary the mother of my "Lord" (κύριος/g2962). This word can mean "master" or "God." Some scholars think that Elizabeth knew that Mary's baby would be God because God was referred to as the "Lord." However, other scholars think that Elizabeth called the baby my "Lord" because she knew that the baby would become someone very great. So when she said "my Lord," she was showing respect for the baby.

In some places the New Testament called Mary the mother of Jesus (see: John 2:1). Today, some people call Mary the mother of God. However, Mary is not as great as Jesus.

See: [Love](#)

See Map: Judah

**1:46-56**

**What was Mary's Song?**

[1:46]

This section of poetry is called "Mary's Song." After Elizabeth greeted Mary, Mary praised God with this song. Mary knew the Old Testament, and during her journey of two or three days to visit Elizabeth, Mary probably thought about people in the Old Testament whom God had helped, and people to whom God had sent angels.

In her song, Mary repeated words from two Psalms. She was probably thinking about Hannah, whom God enabled to have a son, and also about how God had brought the Israelites out of Egypt. In the first part of her song, Mary sang about herself. In the second part, she sang about Israel. This song shows that Mary was thinking much about being a servant of God, giving him honor, and about God giving her more than she deserved.

See: Psalms 103:17; 107:9; 1 Samuel 2:1-10; Exodus 6:6

**Why did Mary call herself "a low condition"?**

[1:48]

Mary said that she was a humble servant of God. She knew that she was not great. She belonged to the village of Nazareth, a place that no one in the Old Testament even spoke about. But she said that many, many people would come to honor her because she obeyed God. Mary was thinking of Psalm 103:17. She was not thinking about all Jewish people who were not yet born, but of all the Christians everywhere in the world who would later honor her.

See Map: Nazareth

**Advice to Translators:** Everything in Greek in these verses that Mary said seemed to be about things that God had already done. However, many translations make it seem that God is now doing these things, or that he will do them in the future. Translators must decide if they want to use this entry or not.

### **Mary talked as if God had already had mercy on Israel. Why did she talk this way?**

[1:50]

In verses 51-55 (see: Luke 1:51-55) Mary said that God had already done all these things for Israel. However, she meant that God was going to do them, not that he had already done them.

In the Old Testament, prophets often spoke about what would happen later as if it had already happened. They thought that those things were certain to happen, so they spoke of them as if they had happened. Mary said that God would one day defeat all of Israel's enemies and set the nation free from those who were ruling over it.

### **1:57-66**

#### **How did people in Israel choose what names to give to their children?**

[1:59]

Israelite parents usually named their children when they were born. Usually these were names that others in their family had, or they gave certain names because of something that happened when they were born (see: Genesis 29:32-35). Sometimes they waited one week after the babies were born (see: 2 Samuel 12; Luke 2:21). God also changed Abram's name when he was circumcised (see: Genesis 17).

Zechariah and Elizabeth waited one week to name their child. They named him when he was circumcised. They surprised people by giving him a name that was different from the names of all the other people in their own family. In this way, they helped them to know that God was going to make this boy do great things.

The angel Gabriel had told Zechariah (see: Luke 1:20) that he must name the boy "John," which means, "the Lord has mercy." When Zechariah began to speak and praise God, this also made what the angel had said to him come true.

See: [Circumcise \(Circumcision\)](#)

### **1:67-79**

#### **What does Luke mean by being "filled with the Holy Spirit"?**

[1:67]

The Gospel of Luke is the only gospel with the words "'filled'" (πλήν/g4130) with the Holy Spirit." Luke almost always wrote "fill" when he wrote about the Holy Spirit coming on people. He never shortened "Holy Spirit" to "Spirit" when using "fill".

In this chapter, many people were "filled" with the Holy Spirit. Gabriel said that the Spirit is holy and would give John the power to serve God (see: Luke 1:15,17). For Elizabeth and Zechariah, when the Holy Spirit filled Elizabeth, she blessed Mary and Mary's child right away. When the Spirit filled Zechariah, right away he praised God and said what God would do for Israel.

Luke used different words to tell how the Holy Spirit would come upon Mary. This was probably because she was going to bear the baby Jesus, something that no one else would ever do. When Luke said this, he called the Holy Spirit the power from the "Most High" God (see: Luke 1:35). When the Holy Spirit filled people, one thing most of them did was immediately say things that the Spirit enabled them to say.

See: Acts 13:52

**Advice to Translators:** Some versions use ideas different from "filled with the Holy Spirit." Translators should choose what ideas in this entry to translate.

#### **What was Zechariah's prophecy?**

[1:68]

This poetic section is called "Zechariah's prophecy." In this section, Zechariah answered the question that the people asked in verse 66 (see: Luke 1:66). Zechariah was a priest, so he knew the Old Testament.

During the time that he could not speak, he was probably thinking about things that people in the Old Testament had wrote.

He repeated some words from a psalm (see: Psalm 106:10), and from what the prophets Malachi (see: Malachi 3:1) and Isaiah (see: Isaiah 9:2) had written. He was also thinking about things that other people in the Old Testament had said.

Zechariah spoke two kinds of things. In the first part, he spoke about the Messiah. He did this when he spoke about the family of King David.

In the second part, Zechariah began talking to his newborn son about how he would serve God. Zechariah spoke much about how God was helping the Israelites, how God was giving them more than they deserved and how God would rescue them from their enemies.

See: [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#)

### **How did Zechariah think that God will save people?**

[1:71]

Some scholars say that Zechariah spoke about how God would rescue Israel from its enemies in the first part of his song. They say that then he spoke in the second part about how God would rescue the Israelites by forgiving their sins.

However, if a person thinks about everything together that Zechariah said, then it is easier to understand Zechariah's song. In verse 71, Zechariah repeated words from Psalm 106:10. Those words were about the time when God rescued the Israelites from the people of Egypt. When Zechariah talked about "the 'horn'(κέρας/g2768) of salvation" in verse 69, he was thinking about Psalm 132:17. There "horn of salvation" meant the power of King David, who defeated the enemies of Israel. In verses 72-74, Zechariah talked about the covenant that God had made with Abraham, the ancestor of the Israelites. In that covenant, God promised Abraham that he would defeat Israel's enemies and rescue the Israelites so Israel could worship him.

In the second part of his prophecy, Zechariah stopped speaking about what God did for Israel in the past. He began speaking about what the Messiah was going to do, and about what his own son John would do to get the people ready to believe in the Messiah.

Zechariah was no longer speaking about Israel's enemies. Now he was saying that God would forgive the Israelites and make them live in peace (see: 1:78-79). Some scholars also say that Zechariah was thinking that Jesus would heal people and rescue them from evil spirits.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### **1:80**

#### **How did John the Baptist grow up "in spirit"?**

[1:80]

Most scholars think when Luke wrote "in spirit," he meant John's mind and heart. However, some scholars think that Luke was talking about the Holy Spirit. Perhaps Luke meant both at the same time (see: Ephesians 3:16). Where did John the Baptist grow up? John the Baptist was in the wilderness until he began to preach to the Israelites, so some scholars think he may have been among some more radical religious people. Other scholars do not think he did this. This is because these radical, religious people rejected the temple and its priests. But John's family had priests who served in the temple. Luke did not say what part of the wilderness John lived in.

See: [Zeal \(Zealous, Zealot\)](#)

---

### **Luke 1:1**

#### **General Information:**

Luke explains why he writes to Theophilus.

**of the things that have been accomplished among us**  
"about those things that have happened among us"  
or "about those events that have happened among us"

**among us**

No one knows for sure who Theophilus was. If he was a Christian, the word "us" here would include him and so be inclusive, and if not, it would be exclusive.

**Luke 1:2**

**were eyewitnesses and servants of the word**

An "eyewitness" is a person who saw something happen, and a servant of the word is a person who serves God by telling people God's message. You may need to make it clear how they were servants of the word. Alternate translation: "saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

**servants of the word**

The word "word" is a synecdoche for a message made up of many words. Alternate translation: "servants of the message" or "servants of God's message"

**Luke 1:3**

**accurately investigated**

"carefully researched." Luke was careful to find out exactly what happened. He probably talked to the different people who saw what happened to make sure that what he wrote down about these events was correct.

**most excellent Theophilus**

Luke said this to show honor and respect for Theophilus. This may mean that Theophilus was an important government official. This section should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to also put this greeting at the beginning and say, "To most excellent Theophilus" or "Dear most excellent Theophilus."

**most excellent**

"honorable" or "noble"

**Theophilus**

This name means "friend of God." It may describe this man's character or it may have been his actual name. Most translations have it as a name.

**Luke 1:4**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 1:5**

**General Information:**

Zechariah and Elizabeth are introduced. Verses 5-7 give background information about them.

**Connecting Statement:**

The angel prophesies the birth of John.

**In the days of Herod king of Judea**

The phrase "In the days of" is used to indicate a new event. Alternate translation: "During the time that King Herod ruled over Judea"

**there was a certain**

"there was a particular" or "there was a." This is a way of introducing a new character in a story. Consider how your language does this.

**division**

It is understood that this refers to the priests. Alternate translation: "division of priests" or "group of priests"

**of Abijah**

"who descended from Abijah." Abijah was an ancestor of this group of priests and all of them were descended from Aaron, who was the first Israelite priest.

**Luke 1:6**

**before God**

"in God's sight" or "in God's opinion"

**all the commandments and statutes of the Lord**

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

**Luke 1:7**

**But**

This contrast word shows that what follows here is the opposite of what is expected. People expected that if they did what was right, God would allow them to have children. Although this couple did what was right, they did not have any children.

**they were both advanced in their days**

This is a euphemism that says that they were very old. Alternate translation: "they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

**Luke 1:8**

**Now it came about**

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story from the background information to the participants.

**Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties**

It is implied that Zechariah was in God's temple and that these priestly duties were part of worshiping God.

**in the order of his division**

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

## Luke 1:9

### **According to the customary way of choosing which priest would ... burn incense**

This sentence gives us information about priestly duties.

#### **the customary way**

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

#### **chosen by lot**

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. The priests believed that God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

#### **to burn incense**

The priests were to burn sweet-smelling incense as an offering to God each morning and evening on a special altar inside the temple.

## Luke 1:10

### **The whole crowd of people**

"A large number of people" or "Many people"

#### **outside**

The courtyard was the enclosed area surrounding the temple. Alternate translation: "outside the temple building" or "in the courtyard outside the temple"

#### **at the hour**

"at the set time." It is unclear if this was the morning or evening time for the incense offering.

## Luke 1:11

### **Connecting Statement:**

While Zechariah does his duty in the temple, an angel comes from God to give him a message.

#### **Now**

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

#### **appeared to him**

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah." This expresses that the angel was present with Zechariah, and not simply a vision.

## Luke 1:12

### **Zechariah ... was troubled ... fear fell on him**

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Zechariah was.

#### **When Zechariah saw him**

"When Zechariah saw the angel." Zechariah was afraid because the appearance of the angel was frightening. He had not done anything wrong, so he was not afraid that the angel would punish him.

#### **fear fell on him**

Fear is described as if it was something that attacked or overpowered Zechariah.

## Luke 1:13

#### **Do not be afraid**

"Stop being afraid of me" or "You do not need to be afraid of me"

#### **your prayer has been heard**

This can be stated in active form. It is implied that God will give Zechariah what he has asked for. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer and will give you what you have asked for"

#### **bear you a son**

"have a son for you" or "give birth to your son"

## Luke 1:14

#### **You will have joy and gladness**

The words "joy" and "gladness" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how great the joy will be. Alternate translation: "you will have great joy" or "you will be very glad"

#### **at his birth**

"because of his birth"

## Luke 1:15

#### **For he will be great**

"This is because he will be great." Zechariah and the "many" will rejoice because John will be "great in the sight of the Lord." The rest of verse 15 tells how God wants John to live.

#### **he will be great in the sight of the Lord**

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

#### **he will be filled with the Holy Spirit**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him" Make sure it does not sound similar to what an evil spirit might do to a person.

#### **from his mother's womb**

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

## Luke 1:16

### **Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God**

Here "be turned" is a metaphor for a person repenting and worshiping the Lord. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

## **Luke 1:17**

### **will go before the face of the Lord**

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them.

### **the face of the Lord**

Here "the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord"

### **in the spirit and power of Elijah**

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word "spirit" does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

### **turn the hearts of the fathers to the children**

"persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

### **turn the hearts**

The heart is spoken of as if it were something that could be turned to go in a different direction. This refers to changing someone's attitude toward something.

### **the disobedient**

Here this refers to people who do not obey the Lord.

### **make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him**

What the people will be prepared to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "make ready for the Lord a people who are prepared to believe his message"

## **Luke 1:18**

### **How can I know this?**

"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" Here, "know" means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

### **my wife is advanced in her days**

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 1:7]

## **Luke 1:19**

### **I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God**

This is stated as a rebuke to Zechariah. The presence of Gabriel, coming directly from God, should be enough proof for Zechariah.

### **who stands**

"who serves"

### **I was sent to speak to you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to speak to you"

## **Luke 1:20**

### **Behold**

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

### **silent, unable to speak**

These mean the same thing, and are repeated to emphasize the completeness of his silence. Alternate translation: "completely unable to speak" or "not able to speak at all"

### **not believe my words**

"not believe what I said"

### **at the right time**

"at the appointed time"

## **Luke 1:21**

### **Now**

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "While the angel and Zechariah were talking"

## **Luke 1:22**

### **They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent**

These things probably happened at the same time, and Zechariah's signs helped the people understand that he had had a vision. It might be helpful to your audience to change the order to show that. Alternate translation: "He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. So they realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple"

### **a vision**

The earlier description indicated that Gabriel actually came to Zechariah in the temple. The people, not knowing that, assumed Zechariah saw a vision.

## **Luke 1:23**

### **It came about**

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's service was ended.

### **he went to his house**

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

## **Luke 1:24**

### **After these days**

The phrase "these days" refers to the time Zechariah was serving in the temple. It is possible to state more clearly what this refers to. Alternate translation: "After Zechariah's time of serving at the temple"

### **his wife**

"Zechariah's wife"

### **kept herself hidden**

"did not leave her house"

## **Luke 1:25**

### **This is what the Lord has done for me**

This phrase refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

### **This is what**

This is a positive exclamation. She is very happy with what the Lord has done for her.

### **looked at me with favor**

"to look at" here is an idiom that means "to treat" or "to deal with." Alternate translation: "regarded me kindly" or "had pity on me"

### **my shame**

This refers to the shame she felt when she was not able to have children.

## **Luke 1:26**

### **In the sixth month**

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy." It may be necessary to state this clearly if it would be confused with the sixth month of the year.

### **the angel Gabriel was sent from God**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God told the angel Gabriel to go"

## **Luke 1:27**

### **a virgin engaged to ... Joseph**

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Though they had not had sexual relations, Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

### **who was a descendant of David**

"he belonged to the same tribe as King David"

### **the virgin's name was Mary**

This introduces Mary as a new character in the story.

## **Luke 1:28**

### **He came to her**

"The angel came to Mary"

### **Greetings**

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

### **you who are highly favored!**

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

### **The Lord is with you**

"with you" here is an idiom that implies support and acceptance. Alternate translation: "The Lord is pleased with you"

## **Luke 1:29**

### **she was very confused by his words and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be**

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

## **Luke 1:30**

### **Do not be afraid, Mary**

The angel does not want Mary to be afraid of his appearance, because God sent him with a positive message.

### **you have found favor with God**

The idiom "to find favor" means to be positively received by someone. The sentence can be altered to show God as the actor. Alternate translation: "God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

## **Luke 1:31**

### **you will conceive in your womb and bear a son ... Jesus**

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

## **Luke 1:32**

### **the Son of the Most High**

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

### **will be called**

Possible meanings are 1) "people will call him" or 2) "God will call him"



**Son of the Most High**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

**give him the throne of his ancestor David**

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

**Luke 1:33**

**there will be no end to his kingdom**

The negative phrase "no end" emphasizes that it continues forever. It could also be stated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: "his kingdom will never end"

**Luke 1:34**

**How will this happen**

Though Mary did not understand how it could happen, she did not doubt that it would happen.

**I have not known any man**

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

**Luke 1:35**

**The Holy Spirit will overshadow you**

The process of Mary's conception would begin with the Holy Spirit coming to her.

**the power of the Most High**

It was God's "power" that would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

**will overshadow you**

"will cover you like a shadow"

**So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the holy one who will be born they will call the Son of God" or "So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God"

**the holy one**

"the holy child" or "the holy baby"

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**Luke 1:36**

**See, your relative**

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: your relative"

**your relative Elizabeth**

If you need to state a specific relationship, Elizabeth was probably Mary's aunt or great-aunt.

**has also conceived a son in her old age**

"Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son even though she is already very old" or "Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old when they conceived.

**the sixth month for her**

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

**Luke 1:37**

**For nothing**

"Because nothing" or "This shows that nothing"

**nothing will be impossible for God**

Elizabeth's pregnancy was proof that God was able to do anything—even enable Mary to become pregnant without her sleeping with a man. The double negatives in this statement can be stated with positive terms. Alternate translation: "everything will be possible for God" or "God can do anything"

**Luke 1:38**

**See, I am the female servant**

"Here I am, the female servant" or "I am glad to be the female servant." She is responding humbly and willingly.

**I am the female servant of the Lord**

Choose an expression that shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

**Let it be for me**

"Let this happen to me." Mary was expressing her willingness for the things to happen that the angel had told her were about to happen.

**Luke 1:39**

**Connecting Statement:**

Mary goes to visit her relative Elizabeth, who is going to give birth to John.

**arose**

This idiom means she not only stood up, but also "got ready." Alternate translation: "started out" or "got ready"

**the hilly country**

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

### **Luke 1:40**

#### **She went**

It is implied that Mary finished her journey before she went in to Zechariah's house. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "When she arrived, she went"

### **Luke 1:41**

#### **Now it happened**

The phrase is used to mark a new event in this part of the story.

#### **in her womb**

"in Elizabeth's womb"

#### **jumped**

moved suddenly

### **Luke 1:42**

#### **cried out with a loud shout and said**

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

#### **Blessed are you among women**

The idiom "among women" means "more than any other woman"

#### **the fruit of your womb**

Mary's baby is spoken of as if it is the fruit that a plant produces. Alternate translation: "the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

### **Luke 1:43**

#### **Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?**

Elizabeth is not asking for information. She was showing how surprised and happy she was that the mother of the Lord had come to her. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

#### **the mother of my Lord**

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

### **Luke 1:44**

#### **For see**

This phrase alerts Mary to pay attention to Elizabeth's surprising statement that follows.

#### **when the sound of your greeting came to my ears**

Hearing a sound is spoken of as if the sound came to the ears. Alternate translation: "when I heard the sound of your greeting"

#### **jumped for joy**

"moved suddenly with joy" or "turned forcefully because he was so happy"

### **Luke 1:45**

#### **Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord**

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

#### **Blessed is she who believed**

The passive verb can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless her because she believed"

#### **there would be a fulfillment of the things**

"the things would actually happen" or "the things would come true"

#### **the things that were told her from the Lord**

The word "from" is used here instead of "by" because it was the angel Gabriel whom Mary actually heard speak

### **Luke 1:46**

#### **General Information:**

Mary begins a song of praise to the Lord her Savior.

#### **My soul praises**

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

### **Luke 1:47**

#### **my spirit has rejoiced**

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

#### **has rejoiced in**

"has felt very joyful about" or "was very happy about"

#### **God my Savior**

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

### **Luke 1:48**

#### **For he**

"This is because he"

**looked at**

"looked at with concern" or "cared about"

**low condition**

"poverty." Mary's family was not rich.

**For see**

This phrase calls attention to the statement that follows.

**from now on**

"now and in the future"

**all generations**

"the people in all generations"

**Luke 1:49**

**the Mighty One has**

"God, the Powerful One, has"

**his name**

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God.  
Alternate translation: "he"

**Luke 1:50**

**His mercy**

"God's mercy"

**from generation to generation**

"from one generation to the next generation" or  
"throughout every generation" or "to people in  
every time period"

**Luke 1:51**

**displayed strength with his arm**

Here "his arm" is a metonym that stands for God's  
power. Alternate translation: "shown that he is very  
powerful"

**has scattered those ... hearts**

"has caused those ... hearts to run away in different  
directions"

**who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner  
beings. Alternate translation: "who were proud in  
their thoughts" or "who were proud"

**Luke 1:52**

**He has thrown down princes from their thrones**

A throne is a chair that a ruler sits on, and it is a  
symbol of his authority. If a prince is brought down  
from his throne, it means he no longer has the  
authority to reign. Alternate translation: "He has  
taken away the authority of princes" or "He has  
made rulers stop ruling"

**raised up those of low condition**

In this word picture, people who are important are  
higher than people who are less important.  
Alternate translation: "has made humble people  
important" or "has given honor to people whom  
others have not honored"

**of low condition**

"in poverty." See how you translated this in Luke  
1:48.

**Luke 1:53**

**He has filled the hungry ... the rich he has sent away empty**

The contrast between these two opposite actions  
should be made clear in the translation if possible.

**filled the hungry with good things**

Possible meanings are 1) "given the hungry good  
food to eat" or 2) "given the needy good things."

**Luke 1:54**

**General Information:**

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be  
rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning  
clearer.

**He has given help to**

"The Lord has helped"

**Israel his servant**

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel,  
it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of  
Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

**so as to**

"in order to"

**to remember**

God cannot forget. When God "remembers," it is an  
idiom that means God acts upon his earlier  
promise.

**Luke 1:55**

**General Information:**

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be  
rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning  
clearer.

**as he said to our fathers**

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do."  
This phrase supplies background information about  
God's promise to Abraham. Alternate translation:  
"because he promised our ancestors he would be  
merciful"

**his descendants**

"Abraham's descendants"

### **Luke 1:56**

#### **returned to her house**

"Mary returned to her (Mary's) house" or "Mary returned to her own house"

### **Luke 1:57**

#### **Now**

This word marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

#### **deliver her baby**

"give birth to her baby"

### **Luke 1:58**

#### **Her neighbors and her relatives**

"Elizabeth's neighbors and relatives"

#### **shown his great mercy to her**

"been very kind to her"

### **Luke 1:59**

#### **Now it happened**

This phrase is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

#### **on the eighth day**

Here "eighth day" refers to the time after the birth of the baby, counted from the first day, which was the day he was born. Alternate translation: "on the eighth day of the baby's life"

#### **they came to circumcise the child**

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

#### **They would have called him**

"They were going to name him" or "They wanted to give him the name"

#### **after the name of his father**

"his father's name"

### **Luke 1:60**

#### **General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### **Luke 1:61**

#### **by this name**

"by that name" or "by the same name"

### **Luke 1:62**

#### **They**

This refers to the people who were there for the circumcision ceremony.

#### **made signs**

"motioned." Either Zechariah was unable to hear, as well as unable to speak, or the people assumed that he could not hear.

#### **to his father**

"to the baby's father"

#### **how he wanted him to be named**

"what name Zechariah wanted to give the baby"

### **Luke 1:63**

#### **His father asked for a writing tablet**

Since he could not speak, it may be helpful to state this differently. Alternate translation: "His father indicated that he wanted them to give him a writing tablet" or "His father showed that he wanted a writing tablets"

#### **a writing tablet**

"something on which to write"

#### **astonished**

greatly surprised or amazed

### **Luke 1:64**

#### **his mouth was opened ... his tongue was freed**

These two phrases are word pictures that together emphasize that Zechariah was suddenly able to speak.

#### **his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed**

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God opened his mouth and freed his tongue"

### **Luke 1:65**

#### **Fear came on all who lived around them**

"All who lived around Zechariah and Elizabeth were afraid." It may be helpful to state clearly why they were afraid. Alternate translation: "All who lived around them were in awe of God because he had done this to Zechariah"

#### **all who lived around them**

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who lived around them" or "many who lived in that area"

#### **All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea**

The phrase "these matters were spread" is a metaphor for people talking about them. The passive verb here can also be translated in active

form. Alternate translation: "All these matters were talked about by people throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People throughout the hill country of Judea talked about all these matters"

## Luke 1:66

### All who heard them

"All who heard about these matters"

### stored them in their hearts

People carefully remembering things so that they can think about them later is spoken of as if they were putting those things safely in their hearts. Alternate translation: "kept them in mind" or "thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

### hearts, saying

"hearts. They asked"

### What then will this child become?

"What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" It is also possible that this question was meant to be a statement of their surprise at what they had heard about the baby. Alternate translation: "What a great man this child will be!"

### the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

## Luke 1:67

### Connecting Statement:

Zechariah tells what will happen with his son John.

### His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled his father Zechariah, and Zachariah prophesied"

### His father

John's father

### prophesied, saying

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotes in your language. Alternate translation: "prophesied and said" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

## Luke 1:68

### the God of Israel

"Israel" here refers to the nation of Israel. The relationship between God and Israel could be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom Israel worships"

### his people

"God's people"

## Luke 1:69

### He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

The horn of an animal is a symbol of its power to defend itself. To raise up here is to bring into existence or to enable to act. The Messiah is spoken of as if he were a horn with the power to save Israel. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone who is in the house of his servant David with the power to save us"

### in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

## Luke 1:70

### as he spoke

"just as God said"

### he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

## Luke 1:71

### salvation from our enemies

The abstract noun "salvation" can be expressed with the verbs "save" or "rescue." Alternate translation: "who will save us from our enemies"

### our enemies ... all who hate us

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how strongly their enemies are against them.

### hand

The hand is a metonym for the power that the person uses the hand to exercise. Alternate translation: "power" or "control"

## Luke 1:72

### to show mercy to

"to be merciful to" or "to act according to his mercy toward"

### remember

Here the word "remember" means to keep a commitment or fulfill something.

## Luke 1:73

### the oath that he swore

These words refer to "his holy covenant" (Luke 1:72).

### **Luke 1:74**

#### **to grant to us**

"to make it possible for us"

#### **that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that after he rescued us from the hand of our enemies we would serve him without fear"

#### **out of the hand of our enemies**

Here "hand" refers to the control or power a person. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the control of our enemies"

#### **without fear**

This refers back to the fear of their enemies. Alternate translation: "without being afraid of our enemies"

### **Luke 1:75**

#### **in holiness and righteousness**

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "holiness" and "righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) we would serve God in holy and righteous ways. Alternate translation: "doing what is holy and righteous" or 2) we would be holy and righteous. Alternate translation: "being holy and righteous"

#### **before him**

This is an idiom which means "in his presence"

### **Luke 1:76**

#### **Yes, and you**

Zechariah uses this phrase to begin his direct address to his son. You may have a similar way to direct speech in your language.

#### **you, child, will be called a prophet**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet"

#### **of the Most High**

These words are a euphemism for God. Alternate translation: "who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

#### **will go before the face of the Lord**

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them. See how you translated this in Luke 1:17.

#### **the face of the Lord**

"the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord" See how you translated this in [Luke 1:17]

#### **to prepare his paths**

This is a metaphor that means that John will prepare the people to listen to and believe the Lord's message.

### **Luke 1:77**

#### **to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins**

The phrase "give knowledge" is a metaphor for teaching. The abstract nouns "salvation" and "forgiveness" can be expressed with the verbs "save" and "forgive." Alternate translation: "to teach his people salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach his people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

### **Luke 1:78**

#### **because of the tender mercy of our God**

It might be helpful to state that God's mercy helps people. Alternate translation: "because God is compassionate and merciful to us"

#### **the sunrise from on high**

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the Savior giving spiritual truth to people is spoken of as if he were a sunrise that shines light on the earth. Alternate translation: "the Savior, who is like a sunrise, will come from on high"

#### **from on high**

"from heaven"

### **Luke 1:79**

#### **to shine**

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth that the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth

#### **shine on**

"give knowledge to" or "give spiritual light to"

#### **those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death**

Darkness is here a metaphor for the absence of spiritual truth. Here, people who lack spiritual truth are spoken of as if they are sitting in darkness. Also "shadow of death" represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who do not know the truth and are in spiritual darkness and fear dying"

#### **guide our feet into the path of peace**

Here "guide" is a metaphor for teaching, and "path of peace" is a metaphor for living at peace with God. The phrase "our feet" is a synecdoche that represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "teach us how to live at peace with God"

### **Luke 1:80**

#### **General Information:**

This tells briefly about John's growing years.

**Now**

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of his ministry as an adult.

**became strong in spirit**

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

**was in the wilderness**

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

**until**

This does not necessarily mark a stopping point. John continued to live out in the desert even after he started preaching publicly.

**the day of his public appearance**

"when he began to preach in public"

**the day**

This is used here in the general sense of "the time" or "the occasion."

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 1:1**

**Who were the "eyewitnesses" that Luke mentions?**

The "eyewitnesses" were the ones who were with Jesus from the beginning of his ministry.

**Luke 1:2**

**Who were the "eyewitnesses" that Luke mentions?**

The "eyewitnesses" were the ones who were with Jesus from the beginning of his ministry.

**What did some of the eyewitnesses do after they saw what Jesus did?**

They wrote down an account or story of what Jesus did.

**Luke 1:4**

**Why did Luke decide to write his own account of what Jesus said and did?**

He wanted Theophilus to know the truth about the things he had been taught.

**Luke 1:6**

**Why did God consider Zechariah and Elizabeth to be righteous?**

God considered them to be righteous because they obeyed his commandments.

**Luke 1:7**

**Why did Zechariah and Elizabeth have no children?**

They did not have children because Elizabeth was unable to bear a child. Now she and Zechariah were very old.

**Luke 1:8**

**What work was Zechariah doing in the temple in Jerusalem?**

Zechariah was serving as a priest.

**Luke 1:9**

**What did Zechariah do in the temple?**

He burned incense to God.

**Luke 1:10**

**What did the people do while Zechariah was in the temple?**

The people stayed outside in the courtyard and prayed.

**Luke 1:11**

**Who appeared to Zechariah while he was in the temple?**

An angel of the Lord appeared to Zechariah in the temple.

**Luke 1:12**

**How did Zechariah act when he saw the angel?**

When Zechariah saw the angel, he became very afraid.

**Luke 1:13**

**What did the angel say to Zechariah?**

The angel told Zechariah not to be afraid and that his wife Elizabeth would have a son. His son's name would be John.

**Luke 1:16**

**What did the angel say John would do for the sons of Israel?**

The angel said John would turn the sons of Israel back to the Lord their God.

**Luke 1:17**

**All of John's deeds would make ready what kind of people?**

A people prepared for the Lord would be made ready.

**Luke 1:19**

**What was the angel's name and where did he normally stay?**

The angel's name was Gabriel and he normally stood in the presence of God.

**Luke 1:21**

**What did the angel say would happen to Zechariah because he did not believe the angel's words?**

Zechariah would not be able to speak until the child was born.

**Luke 1:27**

**Sixth months after Elizabeth's conception, who was Gabriel sent by God to see?**

A virgin named Mary, who was engaged to Joseph, a descendant of David.

**Luke 1:31**

**What did the angel say would happen to Mary?**

The angel said that Mary would become pregnant.

**Luke 1:33**

**What was the child to be named and what would he do?**

The child was to be named Jesus and he would reign over the descendants of Jacob forever with no end to his kingdom.

**Luke 1:35**

**How did the angel say this would happen since Mary was a virgin?**

The angel said that the Holy Spirit would come upon Mary and the power of the Most High would overshadow her.

**The angel said that this holy child would be whose son?**

The angel said that the child would be called the Son of God.

**What did the angel say is impossible for God?**

Nothing.

**Luke 1:41**

**When Mary greeted Elizabeth, what did Elizabeth's baby do?**

The baby leaped in her womb for joy.

**Luke 1:42**

**Who did Elizabeth say was blessed?**

Elizabeth said that Mary and her baby were blessed.

**Luke 1:54**

**Mary then said that these powerful acts of God would fulfill which promises made by God?**

They would fulfill God's promises to Abraham and his descendants to be merciful to them and to help them.

**Luke 1:59**

**On the day of circumcision, what would they normally have named Elizabeth's son?**

Zechariah.

**Luke 1:63**

**What did Zechariah write when asked what the name of the child should be?**

Zechariah wrote "His name is John."

**Luke 1:64**

**What happened to Zechariah immediately after he wrote the child's name?**

Immediately after he wrote the child's name, Zechariah spoke and praised God.

**Luke 1:66**

**Because of all these events what did everyone realize about the child?**

They realized that the hand of the Lord was with him.

**Luke 1:68**

**Zechariah praised God because God had now come to make a way for what to happen?**

God had now made a way to set his people free.

**Luke 1:77**

**Zechariah prophesied that his child John would help the people know what?**

John would help the people know how they could be saved through the forgiveness of their sins.

**Luke 1:80**

**Where did John grow up and live until he began to appear publicly?**

John grew up and lived in the desert areas.



## Chapter 2

<sup>1</sup> Now in those days, it came about that Caesar Augustus sent out a decree ordering that a census be taken of all the people living in the world. <sup>2</sup> This was the first census made while Quirinius was governor of Syria. <sup>3</sup> So everyone went to his own city to be registered for the census. <sup>4</sup> Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family line of David. <sup>5</sup> He went there to register along with Mary, who was engaged to him and was pregnant. <sup>6</sup> Now it came about that while they were there, the time came for her to deliver her baby. <sup>7</sup> She gave birth to a son, her firstborn child, and she wrapped him in long strips of cloth and laid him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

<sup>8</sup> There were shepherds in that region who were staying in the fields, guarding their flock at night. <sup>9</sup> An angel of the Lord appeared to them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were filled with great fear. <sup>10</sup> Then the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid, because I bring you good news that will bring great joy to all the people. <sup>11</sup> Today a Savior was born for you in the city of David! He is Christ the Lord! <sup>12</sup> This is the sign that will be given to you: You will find a baby wrapped in strips of cloth and lying in a manger." <sup>13</sup> Suddenly there was together with the angel a great multitude from heaven, praising God and saying,

<sup>14</sup> "Glory to God in the highest,

and may there be peace on earth  
among people with whom he is pleased." [1]

<sup>15</sup> It came about that when the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." <sup>16</sup> They hurried there and found Mary, Joseph, and the baby, who was lying in a manger. <sup>17</sup> After they had seen him, they made known what had been said to them about this child. <sup>18</sup> All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. <sup>19</sup> But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart. <sup>20</sup> The shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for everything that they had heard and seen, just as it had been spoken to them.

<sup>21</sup> When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised, he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel before he was conceived in the womb.

<sup>22</sup> When the required number of days for their purification had passed, according to the law of Moses, they brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. <sup>23</sup> As it is written in the law of the Lord, "Every male who opens the womb will be set apart to the Lord." <sup>24</sup> So they offered a sacrifice according to what was said in the law of the Lord, "a pair of doves or two young pigeons." <sup>25</sup> Behold, there was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon, and this man was righteous and devout. He was waiting for the consolation of Israel, and the Holy Spirit was upon him. <sup>26</sup> It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ. <sup>27</sup> Led by the Spirit, Simeon came into the temple. When the parents brought in the infant Jesus, to do for him according to the custom of the law, <sup>28</sup> he took him into his arms and praised God, and he said,

<sup>29</sup> "Now let your servant depart in peace, Lord,

according to your word.

<sup>30</sup> For my eyes have seen your salvation,

<sup>31</sup> which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples:

<sup>32</sup> A light for revelation to the Gentiles  
and glory to your people Israel."

<sup>33</sup> His father and mother [2] were amazed at what was said about him. <sup>34</sup> Simeon blessed them and said to Mary his mother, "Behold, this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

and for a sign that is rejected—<sup>35</sup> and a sword will pierce your own soul—so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed." <sup>36</sup> A prophetess named Anna was there. She was the daughter of Phanuel from the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in her days. She had lived with her husband for seven years after her virginity, <sup>37</sup> and was a widow for eighty-four years. She never left the temple but was serving with fastings and prayers, night and day. <sup>38</sup> At that very hour she came near to them and began giving thanks to God, and she spoke about the child to everyone who had been waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem. <sup>39</sup> When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own town of Nazareth.

<sup>40</sup> The child grew and became strong; he was full of wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.

<sup>41</sup> His parents went every year to Jerusalem for the Festival of the Passover. <sup>42</sup> When he was twelve years old, they again went up at the customary time for the festival. <sup>43</sup> After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast, they began to return home. But the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem and his parents did not know it. <sup>44</sup> They assumed that he was with the group that was traveling with them, so they traveled a day's journey. Then they started to search carefully for him among their relatives and friends. <sup>45</sup> When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem and started to search carefully for him there. <sup>46</sup> It came about that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the middle of the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. <sup>47</sup> All who heard him were amazed at his understanding and his answers. <sup>48</sup> When they saw him, they were astonished. His mother said to him, "Son, why have you treated us this way? Look, your father and I have been anxiously searching for you." <sup>49</sup> He said to them, "Why were you searching for me? Did you not know that I had to be about my Father's business?" <sup>50</sup> But they did not understand what he meant by those words. <sup>51</sup> Then he went back home with them to Nazareth and was obedient to them. His mother treasured all these things in her heart.

<sup>52</sup> But Jesus continued to grow in wisdom and stature, and increased in favor with God and people.

---

## Footnotes

2:14 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient Greek copies have different spellings that suggest two possible meanings of the last phrase of verse 14, the second being preferred. The suggestions are:

2:33 <sup>[2]</sup>Some copies of the ancient Greek text add to the text the name of his father,

2:49 <sup>[3]</sup>Some scholars translate "about my Father's business" as

---

## Luke 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 2:14, 29-32.

---

## Luke 2

### 2:1-7

#### When did this census occur?

[2:1]

It is often important for a government to count its people. This is called a "census." Near the time when Jesus was born, the Roman emperor began a census. This census required people to go to where they were born or where their family was from. During this census, the Roman emperor was Augustus and the governor of the province of Syria was Quirinius.

However, some scholars do not think that the Romans held a census at that time. They believe that Quirinius did not become governor of Syria until A.D. 6. This was at least ten years after Jesus was born.

Despite this, other scholars believe that Quirinius became governor before A.D. 6. Scholars have given different explanations concerning Quirinius and the census.

1. Quirinius was governor of Syria at two different times. Or he had been an administrator in Syria when he ordered a census before A.D. 6, before he became governor (see: Acts 5:37).
2. The word “first” in verse two meant “before.” If it meant “before” here, then the census was held before Quirinius was governor of Syria.
3. An earlier governor of Syria began the census and Quirinius completed it.
4. The emperor in Rome had ordered the census and it took several years to complete.

Because of some things in the past, scholars think the Romans held many censuses. However, there is little that is known about these censuses.

### **Why did the Romans hold this census?**

[2:1, 2:3]

The Romans held a census to collect taxes and enlist men to serve as soldiers. However, God used this census to cause Mary to go to the place where the Messiah would be born, in the way the Old Testament prophets had said centuries before. In this way, God used the Roman emperor, the most powerful ruler in the world at that time, to fulfill Micah’s prophecy (See: Micah 5:2; Acts 4:27-28).

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

### **Why was Bethlehem called the “city of David”?**

[2:4]

Here, “city of David” referred to Bethlehem. Bethlehem had been the hometown of King David. Luke called Bethlehem the “city of David” in order to say that both David and the Messiah were born in the same place. This was not always the “city of David.” In the Old Testament, the “city of David” was Jerusalem.

See: 2 Samuel 5:7,9; 2 Samuel 20:6

See Map: Judah; Bethlehem

### **Why did Mary put the infant Jesus into a feeding trough?**

[2:7]

Mary put the infant Jesus into a “trough”(φάτνη/g5336) for feeding animals. Because of the census, many people travelled to Bethlehem at this time. Therefore, Luke explained there was no room for Mary and Joseph in the “inn”(κατάλυμα/g2646).

### **What was the “inn”?**

[2:7]

Scholars give different ideas of what the “inn” was.

1. A room for guests in someone’s home.
2. A stopping place for travelers.
3. A stable for animals.

See: Luke 9:58; 7:44-46; 9:52-53

## **2:8-20**

### **What season was Jesus born?**

[2:8]

Most people believe that Jesus was born in the winter. However, some scholars do not think that Jesus was born in the winter. This is because it would have been too cold for sheep to stay in pastures. However, other scholars believe that the winters in ancient Israel were warm enough for the sheep to be outdoors. Luke did not say what season Jesus was born.

**Advice to Translators:** For languages that do not speak of four seasons (spring, summer, autumn, and winter), the idea of winter can be expressed as “the cold season.”

### How did Luke write the word “today”?

[2:11]

Luke wrote the word “today” (see: Luke 2:11) many times in his gospel (see: Luke 4:21; 5:26; 19:9; 23:43). Some scholars think that he wrote this word to show that something fulfilled a prophecy. However, other scholars think that “today” did not have any special meaning. They think that in this verse “today” means simply the day of Jesus’ birth.

**Advice to Translators:** The sentence below about fulfilling a prophecy can be restructured as, “Some scholars think that Luke writes ‘today’ when he is showing that a message from a prophet in the past came true in his gospel.”

### What did the angel call the baby Jesus at his birth?

[2:11]

The angel called Jesus three different things when he was born.

1. The angel called Jesus “Savior”(σωτήρ/g4990). People who worshiped many gods sometimes called their gods “savior”, and the people of Rome sometimes called their leaders “savior”. However, here “Savior” refers to Zechariah’s prophecy that Jesus would save people from their sins (see: Luke 1:77).
2. The angel called Jesus the “Christ”(Χριστός/g5547). That is, Jesus is the “anointed one” whom God chose to be Israel’s Messiah.
3. The angel called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). This word is usually translated “Lord,” but God the Father is called “Lord” in the Greek Old Testament. Scholars say when the angel called Jesus this same thing, he meant that Jesus is himself God.

When the angel called Jesus “Savior,” “Christ,” and “Lord,” perhaps he was explaining what the angel Gabriel said to Mary (see: Luke 1:32-35).

See: [Savior](#); [Incarnation](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Savior](#)

### What were “signs”?

[2:12]

The angel told the shepherds that the newborn baby would be wrapped in cloths and lying in a feeding trough. He said that this would be a “sign”(σημεῖον/g4952) for them. Signs are things that show people that God has power, or that he is telling the truth about something.

When the shepherds saw the baby in a feeding trough, they would know that this was the child of which the angel had spoken. They would also know that the angel had told them the truth. Luke often wrote about signs. He wrote about signs in the sky (see: Luke 21:25), and signs that King Herod wanted to see Jesus do (see: Luke 23:8). Even though Luke did not call it a sign, some scholars believe the judgment on Zechariah was a sign (see: Luke 1:20).

See: [Sign](#)

**Advice to Translators:** Some languages prefer to use a verb instead of a noun such as “sign.” For example, instead of translating, “This will be a sign for you: You will find a baby wrapped in cloths, lying in a feeding trough,” some languages will want to translate, “This is how you will know what I am talking about: You will find a baby....” In the same way, instead of writing, “Signs are things that show people that God has power....,” some languages will prefer to say, “God uses things to show people that he has power....”

### **What did the angels mean when spoke about peace on earth?**

[2:14]

The angels either promised or wished that God would give peace to certain people on earth. They did not speak, as many believe, of God giving general peace to everyone on earth. Here, “peace” meant complete well-being. It means more than just not worrying, or just not fighting with other people.

See: Luke 7:50; 8:48

### **Did the angels say “among people with whom God is pleased” or “among people who please God”?**

[2:14]

The oldest Greek copies disagreed about whether the angels said “among people whom God ‘favors’”(εὐδοκία/g2017) or “among people who please God”. The difference of meaning is whether God choose people because of his “favor”, or whether he gave peace to people who had “favor” for God, that is, who loved God.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

## **2:21-40**

### **Why did the parents of Jesus take him to the temple in Jerusalem?**

[2:22]

Mary and Joseph were careful to obey the Law of Moses (see: Luke 2:22,23,24,27,39). Because Bethlehem was near the temple in Jerusalem, they were able to take Jesus to the temple. There, they asked God to bless Jesus.

See: [Temple](#)

See Map: Jerusalem; Bethlehem

### **How was Jesus’ family poor?**

[2:24]

Some scholars believe that Mary and Joseph were poor because they brought two small birds to sacrifice for her. This was for them to obey the law of Moses. The normal sacrifice was a lamb, but it could be two small birds if the family was poor.

Some scholars believe that Mary and Joseph made this trip to the temple before the “learned men”(μάγος/g3097) visited Jesus. Mary and Joseph would have been able to buy a lamb after the “learned men” brought Jesus valuable gifts (see: Matthew 2:11).

See: Leviticus 12:8

### **Who was Simeon?**

[2:25]

Luke wrote nothing about Simeon except that he honored God and obeyed him. He was waiting for the “helper”(παράκλησις/g3874) of Israel. That is, he was waiting for God to help Israel. Also the Holy Spirit was “on him”. That is, was with him. This was how Simeon was able to speak about what Jesus would do in the future.

### **What were the “helper” of Israel and the “deliverer” of Jerusalem?**

[2:25]

The “helper”(παράκλησις/g3874) of Israel and the “deliverer”(λύτρωσις/g3085) of Jerusalem are both in this passage (see: Luke 2:25,38). They were both things that Simeon, Anna, and others were “waiting”(προσδέχομαι/g4327) for God to make happen. Some scholars believe that they were waiting for God to free Israel from the Romans, who ruled over it. Others believe that they were waiting for the kingdom of God, that is, for God to begin to rule in Israel.

Simeon, Anna, and others like them were probably waiting for the Messiah to come and rescue them from their suffering. Some scholars say that when Jews talked about the “helper” of Israel, they were talking about the Messiah, the person they were expecting to come.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

### **Why was the Holy Spirit was upon Simeon?**

[2:25]

The Holy Spirit was “upon”(ἐπί/g1909) Simeon. Because of this, Simeon honored God (see: Luke 2:25). Also, the Holy Spirit told Simeon that he would see the Messiah (see: Luke 2:26). The Holy Spirit guided Simeon’s life until he went to the temple at the right time to see the Messiah (see: Luke 2:27). Finally, the Holy Spirit made Simeon able to recognize the Messiah and to prophesy about him.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

### **What did Simeon believe about Jesus?**

[2:26]

Simeon believed that Jesus is the Messiah God sent (see: Luke 2:26). He also believed that Jesus would “save”(σωτήριος/g4992) the people of Israel (see: Luke 2:30). Simeon also called Jesus the “light”(φῶς/g5457) for the Gentiles. This metaphor meant that Jesus would enable Gentiles to also know God. Simeon also believed that Jesus would bring “glory”(δόξα/g1391) to Israel (see: Luke 2:32). Some scholars say all the people in the world will honor Israel because of Jesus. Other scholars say Jesus is the Israelite whom all people in the world will honor in the future (see: Isaiah 49:5). God also honored Israel by planning to save people everywhere through Jesus, an Israelite man.

See: [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#)

### **Why were Joseph and Mary amazed at what Simeon said about Jesus?**

[2:33]

Jesus’ parents were amazed at what Simeon said about Jesus (see: 2:33). Most Jews did not believe that Gentiles could live together with God forever. Mary probably did not expect Simeon to praise God because of her child.

### **How did Simeon say to Mary that Jesus will be very great?**

[2:34]

Simeon said that Jesus was “appointed”(κεῖμαι/g2749) to do a certain task. He meant that God had sent Jesus in order to cause many in Israel to “rise” and many others to “fall.” That is, God would bless many Israelites through Jesus, and would condemn many others, those who would reject Jesus. Some scholars also believe that “rise” represents living with God forever, and that “fall” represents suffering forever away from God.

Simeon also called Jesus a “sign,” that is, someone that God would show to the people. Despite this, many people would speak against him and not accept his message.

See: Luke 11:23

See: [Sign](#); [Heaven](#); [Hell](#); [Sign](#)

### How will a sword pierce Mary's "soul"?

[2:35]

Simeon told Mary that a sword will pierce her "soul" (ψυχή/g5590). By saying this, Simeon meant that Mary would become very sad. Many scholars believe that it was over the death of Jesus that Mary would become sad like this. Some scholars believe that she would become sad over the division in Israel between those who would accept her Son and those who would reject him. Other scholars believe that she would become sad over grief Jesus caused when he stayed in the temple (see: Luke 2:49), and when he gave his disciples priority over his own family (see: Luke 8:21). It is also possible that Simeon spoke about the sword for more than one of these reasons. In any case, Mary would suffer greatly in the years ahead.

See: John 19:25; Luke 12:51-53

### How did the birth of John the Baptist compare to Jesus' birth?

There were some ways in which the birth of John the Baptist was born in the same way Jesus was born.

1. The angel Gabriel announced beforehand that each would be born.
2. Both John's mother and Jesus' mother did not expect to become pregnant.
3. Men gave prophecies about each of the babies.
4. Both babies caused people to rejoice.

However, scholars have pointed out several differences.

1. John was born to old and barren parents, but Jesus was born to a virgin.
2. John was a prophet of God, but Jesus is the Son of God.
3. The Holy Spirit filled John while he was in his mother's womb, but Jesus' mother conceived him as the Holy Spirit came on her.
4. Neighbors and relatives rejoiced because of John's birth, but angels rejoiced because of Jesus' birth.
5. John grew and became strong in spirit (see: Luke 1:80), but Jesus also increased in wisdom.
6. John was the greatest human to ever live, but Jesus is more excellent than John.

These differences were how Jesus was greater than John.

### How did the Holy Spirit begin to work in a different way after Jesus was born?

[2:38]

Most scholars believe that God stopped sending prophets to Israel about four hundred years before Jesus was born. These four hundred years are called the "inter-testamental years," that is, the years between when the last book of the Old Testament was written and when Jesus was born.

However, since Luke calls Anna a "prophetess" (προφῆτις/g4398), some scholars believe that the Holy Spirit continued to work in the same way in Israel. Still other scholars believe that God began to send prophets again after these four hundred years.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

### 2:41-52

#### Why did Jesus' parents go to Jerusalem every year?

[2:41]

The Law of Moses required Jewish men to go to three festivals in Jerusalem each year (see: Deuteronomy 16:16), but it was often impossible for the poor to go so often, because for many of them, Jerusalem was very far away. Probably many people went only to the Passover festival, as Mary and Joseph did. In doing so, they showed themselves to be people who honored God. At the Passover, they offered sacrifices and celebrated for a week. This festival was to remember how God had brought the Israelites out from Egypt and freed them from being slaves.

See: Leviticus 23:6

See: [Passover](#)

See Map: Jerusalem

### **When did Jesus' parents take him to the Passover?**

[2:41]

Some scholars believe that this was the first time that Jesus' parents took him to Jerusalem for the Passover. Other scholars believe that they took him every year. Either is possible.

### **How did Jesus become a son of the Law of Moses?**

[2:43]

The Jews thought that when boys became twelve years old, they were old enough to know the difference between right and wrong. It was at this age that a Jewish boy began to have to obey the Law of Moses. People then began to call him a "son of the Law".

See: [Law of Moses](#)

### **How did Jesus' parents leave him in Jerusalem?**

[2:44]

Jesus and his parents traveled to Jerusalem in a large group of people. Mary and Joseph probably thought that everyone in the group made sure that all the children were with them.

### **Where did Mary and Joseph find Jesus?**

[2:46]

Mary and Joseph found Jesus in the temple. Jesus was not inside the temple itself. He was in the courtyard of the temple.

See: [Temple Courts](#); [Temple Courtss](#)

### **How did Jesus amaze teachers in the temple?**

[2:47]

During Passover, many teachers came to the temple. They taught by asking questions and then answering their own questions. At the end of the festival, although most visitors had left Jerusalem, the boy Jesus stayed behind in the temple. Perhaps Jesus asked questions of the teachers because he truly wanted to know various things about the Law of Moses. Perhaps he also asked questions in the same way the teachers did, in order to answer them himself. In any case, he answered questions in a way that amazed the teachers.

See: [Temple](#)

### **Why did Mary ask Jesus a question?**

[2:48]

Mary asked Jesus a question because she cared for her son. She was very worried after she and Joseph could not find Jesus for three days. She thought that Jesus had done wrong when he left their group and stayed behind in Jerusalem. However, Jesus did not do anything wrong.

### **Who was Jesus' Father?**

[2:49]

See: [God the Father](#); [God the Father](#)



**What was “necessary” to happen?**

[2:49]

Luke wrote the word “necessary” (δεῖ/g1163) to say God required Jesus to be in his Father’s house, or to be busy with his Father’s affairs. Jesus had no choice other than to honor and obey God. At the age of twelve, Jesus understood that he had to do what his Father wished him to do.

**How did Jesus grow in wisdom?**

[2:52]

Jesus grew up like other children grow up. Even though he was God, he was also a human being, so he needed to learn just like any other child. Luke seems to want to say that as Jesus grew, he understood better and better how he was going to serve God his Father.

See: [Incarnation](#)

---

**Luke 2:1****General Information:**

This gives background to show why Mary and Joseph have to move at the time of Jesus's birth.

**Now**

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

**it came about that**

This phrase is used to show that this is the beginning of an account. If your language has a way of showing the start of an account, you may use that. Some versions do not include this phrase.

**Caesar Augustus**

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." Augustus was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

**sent out a decree ordering**

This command was probably carried by messengers throughout the empire. Alternate translation: "sent messengers with a decree ordering"

**that a census be taken of all the people living in the world**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they register all the people living in the world" or "that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

**the world**

Here the word "world" represents only the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

**Luke 2:2****Quirinius**

Quirinius was appointed to be the governor of Syria.

**Luke 2:3****everyone went**

"everyone started off" or "everyone was going"

**his own city**

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. People may have lived in a different city. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived"

**to be registered for the census**

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

**Luke 2:4****General Information:**

The UDB rearranges verses 4 and 5 into a verse bridge in order to make it easier to shorten the sentences.

**Joseph also**

This introduces Joseph as a new participant in the story.

**to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem**

The phrase "the city of David" was a name for Bethlehem that tells why Bethlehem was important. Although it was a small town, King David was born there, and there was a prophecy that the Messiah would be born there. Alternate translation: "to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David was born"

**because he was of the house and family line of David**

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

**Luke 2:5****to register**

This means to report to the officials there so they could include him in the count. Use a term for an official government count if possible.

**along with Mary**

Mary traveled with Joseph from Nazareth. It is likely that women were also taxed, so Mary would have needed to travel and be registered as well.

**who was engaged to him**

"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but there would not have been physical intimacy between them.

**Luke 2:6**

**General Information:**

The UDB rearranges verses 6 and 7 into a verse bridge in order to keep together the details about the place they stayed.

**Now it came about**

This phrase marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

**while they were there**

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

**the time came for her to deliver her baby**

"it was time to give birth to her baby"

**Luke 2:7**

**wrapped him in long strips of cloth**

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

**laid him in a manger**

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. It was most likely clean and may have had something soft and dry like hay in it as a cushion for the baby. Animals were often kept near the home to keep them secure and to feed them easily. Mary and Joseph stayed in a room that was used for animals.

**there was no room for them in the inn**

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room." This was probably because so many people went to Bethlehem to register. Luke adds this as background information.

**Luke 2:8**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 2:9**

**An angel of the Lord**

"An angel from the Lord" or "An angel who served the Lord"

**appeared to them**

"came to the shepherds"

**the glory of the Lord**

The source of the bright light was the glory of the Lord, which appeared at the same time as the angel.

**Luke 2:10**

**Do not be afraid**

"Stop being afraid"

**that will bring great joy to all the people**

"that will make all the people very happy"

**all the people**

Some understand this to refer to the Jewish people. Others understand it to refer to all people.

**Luke 2:11**

**the city of David**

This refers to Bethlehem.

**Luke 2:12**

**This is the sign that will be given to you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you this sign" or "You will see this sign from God"

**the sign**

"the proof." This could either be a sign to prove that what the angel was saying was true, or it could be a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby.

**wrapped in strips of cloth**

This was the normal way that mothers protected and cared for their babies in that culture. See how you translated this in [Luke 2:7]

**lying in a manger**

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

**Luke 2:13**

**a great multitude from heaven**

These words could refer to a literal army of angels, or it could be a metaphor for an organized group of angels. Alternate translation: "a large group of angels from heaven"

**praising God**

"giving praise to God"

### **Luke 2:14**

#### **Glory to God in the highest**

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

#### **may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased**

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

### **Luke 2:15**

#### **It came about**

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story to what the shepherds did after the angels left.

#### **from them**

"from the shepherds"

#### **to each other**

"to one another"

#### **Let us ... to us**

Since the shepherds were speaking to one another, languages that have inclusive forms for "we" and "us" should use the inclusive form here.

#### **Let us**

"We should"

#### **this thing that has happened**

This refers to the birth of the baby, and not to the appearance of the angels.

### **Luke 2:16**

#### **lying in a manger**

A manger is a box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

### **Luke 2:17**

#### **what had been said to them**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the angels had told the shepherds"

#### **this child**

"the baby"

### **Luke 2:18**

#### **what was spoken to them by the shepherds**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the shepherds told them"

### **Luke 2:19**

#### **treasuring them in her heart**

A person who thinks is something is very valuable or precious is "treasuring" it. Mary considered the things she was told about her son to be very precious. Alternate translation: "carefully remembering them" or "joyfully remembering them"

### **Luke 2:20**

#### **shepherds returned**

"shepherds went back to the sheep"

#### **glorifying and praising God**

These are very similar and emphasize how excited they were about what God had done. Alternate translation: "talking about and praising God's greatness"

### **Luke 2:21**

#### **General Information:**

The laws God gave the Jewish believers told them when to circumcise a boy baby and what sacrifice the parents had to bring.

#### **When it was the end of the eighth day**

This phrase shows the passing of time before this new event.

#### **the end of the eighth day**

"the end of the eighth day of his life." The day he was born was counted as the first day.

#### **he was named**

Joseph and Mary gave him his name.

#### **the name he had been given by the angel**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the name the angel had called him"

### **Luke 2:22**

#### **When the required number ... had passed**

This shows the passing of time before this new event.

#### **the required number of days**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the number of days that God required"

#### **for their purification**

"for them to become ceremonially clean." You can also state God's role. Alternate translation: "for God to consider them clean again"

#### **they brought him up to the temple**

"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

**to present him to the Lord**

"to bring him to the Lord" or "to bring him into the Lord's presence." This was a ceremony acknowledging God's claim on the firstborn children who were male.

**Luke 2:23**

**As it is written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As Moses wrote" or "They did this because Moses wrote"

**Every male who opens the womb**

This is an idiom meaning the first male born into a family. This referred to both animals and people. Alternate translation: "The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

**Luke 2:24**

**what was said in the law of the Lord**

"that which the law of the Lord also says." This is a different place in the law. It refers to all males, whether firstborn or not.

**Luke 2:25**

**Behold**

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

**was righteous and devout**

These abstract terms can be expressed as actions. Alternate translation: "did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

**consolation of Israel**

The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. To "console" someone is to give them comfort, or "consolation." The words "consolation of Israel" are a metonym for the Christ or Messiah who would comfort or bring consolation to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

**the Holy Spirit was upon him**

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with him in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction in his life.

**Luke 2:26**

**It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

**he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ**

"he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

**Luke 2:27**

**Led by the Spirit**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As the Holy Spirit directed him"

**came**

Some languages may say "went."

**into the temple**

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests could enter the temple building.

**the parents**

"Jesus's parents"

**the custom of the law**

"the custom of the law of God"

**Luke 2:28**

**he took him into his arms**

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

**Luke 2:29**

**Now let your servant depart in peace**

"I am your servant; let me depart in peace." Simeon was referring to himself.

**depart**

This is a euphemism meaning "die"

**according to your word**

"Word" here is a metonym for "promise." Alternate translation: "as you have promised"

**Luke 2:30**

**my eyes have seen**

This expression means, "I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

**your salvation**

This expression refers to the person who would bring salvation—the infant Jesus—whom Simeon was holding. Alternate translation: "the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save"

**Luke 2:31**

**which you**

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

**have prepared**

"have planned" or "caused to happen"

### Luke 2:32

#### **A light for revelation to the Gentiles**

This metaphor means that the child will help people to understand God's will. The Gentiles understanding God's will is spoken of as if they were people using physical light to see a solid object. You may need to make explicit what it is that the Gentiles will see. Alternate translation: "This child will enable the Gentiles to understand God's will as light allows people to see clearly"

#### **for revelation**

It may be necessary to state what is to be revealed. Alternate translation: "that will reveal God's truth"

#### **glory to your people Israel**

"he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

### Luke 2:33

#### **what was said about him**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Simeon said about him"

### Luke 2:34

#### **said to Mary his mother**

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

#### **Behold**

Simeon used this expression to tell Mary that what he is about to say is extremely important to her.

#### **this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel**

The words "downfall" and "rising up" express turning away from God and drawing closer to God. Alternate translation: "this child will cause many people in Israel to fall away from God or to rise closer to God"

### Luke 2:35

#### **a sword will pierce your own soul**

This metaphor describes the deep sadness that Mary would feel. Alternate translation: "your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

#### **the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "he may reveal what many people secretly think"

### Luke 2:36

#### **A prophetess named Anna was there**

This introduces a new participant into the story.

#### **Phanuel**

This is a man's name.

#### **She was advanced in her days**

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luk 2:7]

#### **seven years**

"7 years"

#### **after her virginity**

"after she married him"

### Luke 2:37

#### **a widow for eighty-four years**

Possible meanings are 1) she had been a widow for 84 years or 2) she was a widow and was now 84 years old.

#### **never left the temple**

This is probably an exaggeration meaning that she spent so much time in the temple that it seemed as though she never left it. Alternate translation: "was always at the temple" or "was often at the temple"

#### **with fastings and prayers**

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering many prayers"

### Luke 2:38

#### **came near to them**

"approached them" or "went to Mary and Joseph"

#### **the redemption of Jerusalem**

Here the word "redemption" is used to refer to the person who would do it. Alternate translation: "the one who would redeem Jerusalem" or "the person who would bring God's blessings and favor back to Jerusalem"

### Luke 2:39

#### **Connecting Statement:**

Mary, Joseph, and Jesus leave the town of Bethlehem and return to the city of Nazareth for his childhood.

#### **they were required to do according to the law of the Lord**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the law of the Lord required them to do"

**their own town of Nazareth**

This phrase means they lived in Nazareth. Make sure it does not sound like they owned the town. Alternate translation: "the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

**Luke 2:40**

**full of wisdom**

"becoming wiser" or "learning what was wise"

**the grace of God was upon him**

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

**Luke 2:41**

**His parents went ... Festival of the Passover**

This is background information.

**His parents**

"Jesus's parents"

**Luke 2:42**

**they again went up**

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

**at the customary time**

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

**the festival**

The Festival of the Passover, which involved eating a ceremonial meal.

**Luke 2:43**

**After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast**

"When the entire time for celebrating the feast was over" or "After celebrating the feast for the required number of days"

**Luke 2:44**

**They assumed**

"They thought"

**they traveled a day's journey**

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

**Luke 2:45**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 2:46**

**It came about that**

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the temple**

This refers to the courtyard around the temple.

Only the priests were allowed in the temple.

Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

**in the middle of**

This does not mean the exact center. Rather, it means "among" or "together with" or "surrounded by."

**the teachers**

"the religious teachers" or "those who taught people about God"

**Luke 2:47**

**All who heard him were amazed**

They could not understand how a twelve-year-old boy with no religious education could answer so well.

**at his understanding**

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much about God"

**his answers**

"at how well he answered them" or "that he answered their questions so well"

**Luke 2:48**

**When they saw him**

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

**why have you treated us this way?**

This was an indirect rebuke because he had not gone with them on the way back home. This caused them to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have done this to us!"

**Look**

This word is often used to show the beginning of a new or important event. It also can be used to show where the action begins. If your language has a phrase that is used in this way, consider whether it would be natural to use it here.

**Luke 2:49**

**Why were you searching for me?**

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents, and to begin to tell them that he had a purpose from his heavenly Father that they did not

understand. Alternate translation: "You did not need to be concerned about me."

**Did you not know ... business?**

Jesus uses this second question to try to say that his parents should have known about the purpose for which his Father sent him. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

**about my Father's business**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus meant these words literally, to indicate that he was doing the work that his Father had given him, or 2) these words are an idiom that indicate where Jesus was, "in my Father's house." Since the next verse says that his parents did not understand what he was telling them, it would be best not to explain it more.

**my Father's business**

At age 12, Jesus, the Son of God, understood that God was his real Father

**Luke 2:50**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 2:51**

**he went back home with them**

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

**was obedient to them**

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

**treasured all these things in her heart**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "carefully remembered all these things"

**Luke 2:52**

**grow in wisdom and stature**

"become wiser and stronger." These refer to mental and physical growth.

**increased in favor with God and people**

This refers to spiritual and social growth. These could be stated separately. Alternate translation: "God blessed him more and more, and people liked him more and more"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 2:3**

**Where did the people go to be registered for the census?**  
The people went to their own town to be registered.

**Luke 2:4**

**Joseph went to Bethlehem with Mary because he was a descendant of whom?**

Joseph and Mary went to Bethlehem because Joseph was a descendant of David.

**Luke 2:7**

**When Mary gave birth to her son, where did she place him?**

When the child was born, Mary placed him in an animal feeding trough.

**Luke 2:8**

**To whom did the angel appear?**

The angel appeared to shepherds who were tending their flocks.

**Luke 2:9**

**To whom did the angel appear?**

The angel appeared to shepherds who were tending their flocks.

**How did the shepherds react when they saw the angel?**  
The shepherds were very afraid.

**Luke 2:11**

**What good news did the angel give to the shepherds?**

The angel told the shepherds that the Savior had been born, the one who is Christ the Lord.

**Luke 2:15**

**What did the shepherds do after the angels left them?**

The shepherds went to Bethlehem to see the child that had been born.

**Luke 2:16**

**What did the shepherds do after the angels left them?**

The shepherds went to Bethlehem to see the child that had been born.

**Luke 2:21**

**When was Jesus circumcised?**

Jesus was circumcised on the eighth day after his birth.

**Luke 2:22**

**Why did Joseph and Mary bring the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem?**

They brought him to the temple to present him to the Lord and to offer a sacrifice, which was commanded in the Law of Moses.

**Luke 2:23**

**Why did Joseph and Mary bring the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem?**

They brought him to the temple to present him to the Lord and to offer a sacrifice, which was commanded in the Law of Moses.

**Luke 2:24**

**Why did Joseph and Mary bring the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem?**

They brought him to the temple to present him to the Lord and to offer a sacrifice, which was commanded in the Law of Moses.

**Luke 2:26**

**What did the Holy Spirit reveal to Simeon?**

The Holy Spirit revealed to Simeon that he would not die before he saw the Lord's Christ.

**Luke 2:32**

**What did Simeon say that Jesus would be?**

Simeon said that Jesus would be a light for revealing truth to the Gentiles and the glory of God's people Israel.

**Luke 2:35**

**What did Simeon say would happen to Mary as a result of Jesus?**

Simeon said that a sword would pierce her soul.

**Luke 2:38**

**What did the prophetess Anna do when she came up to Mary, Joseph, and Jesus?**

Anna began to thank God and to talk about the child to everyone.

**Luke 2:40**

**What happened to the child Jesus after he returned to Nazareth?**

Jesus grew and became strong, increasing in wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.

**Luke 2:43**

**Why did Jesus' parents not realize he had stayed behind in Jerusalem during the Festival of the Passover?**

They did not realize because they assumed that he was in the group that was traveling with them.

**Luke 2:44**

**Why did Jesus' parents not realize he had stayed behind in Jerusalem during the Festival of the Passover?**

They did not realize Jesus stayed behind because they assumed he was in the group that was traveling with them.

**Luke 2:46**

**Where did his parents find Jesus and what was he doing?**

His parents found him in the temple sitting in the middle of the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions.

**Luke 2:49**

**What did Jesus answer when Mary said to him that they had been anxiously searching for him?**

"Did you not know I must be in my Father's house?"

**Luke 2:51**

**What was Jesus' attitude toward his parents when they returned to Nazareth?**

He was obedient to them.

**Luke 2:52**

**As Jesus grew up, what kind of young man was he?**

He grew in wisdom and stature, and increased in favor with God and people.





## Chapter 3

<sup>1</sup> In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—while Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, <sup>2</sup> during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness. <sup>3</sup> He went into all the region around the Jordan, preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. <sup>4</sup> As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

"A voice of one crying out in the wilderness,  
'Make ready the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight.

<sup>5</sup> Every valley will be filled,  
and every mountain and hill will be made low,  
and the crooked roads will be made straight,  
and the uneven places will be built into roads,

<sup>6</sup> and all flesh will see the salvation of God."

<sup>7</sup> So John said to the crowds who were coming out to be baptized by him, "You offspring of vipers! Who warned you to run away from the wrath that is coming? <sup>8</sup> Therefore, produce fruits that are worthy of repentance, and do not begin to say within yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father,' for I tell you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones. <sup>9</sup> Even now the ax is set against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire."

<sup>10</sup> Then the crowds kept asking him, saying, "What then are we to do?"

<sup>11</sup> He answered and said to them, "If someone has two tunics, he should share it with a person who has none, and the one having food should do the same."

<sup>12</sup> Tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, "Teacher, what must we do?"

<sup>13</sup> He said to them, "Do not collect more money than you have been ordered to collect."

<sup>14</sup> Some soldiers also asked him, saying, "What about us? What must we do?"

He said to them, "Do not take money from anyone by force, and do not accuse anyone falsely. Be content with your wages."

<sup>15</sup> Now as the people were eagerly expecting the Christ to come, everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ. <sup>16</sup> John answered by saying to them all, "As for me, I baptize you with water, but someone is coming who is more powerful than I, and I am not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire. <sup>17</sup> His winnowing fork is in his hand to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor and to gather the wheat into his storehouse. But he will burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out."

<sup>18</sup> With many other exhortations also, John was announcing the good news to the people. <sup>19</sup> When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved for marrying his brother's wife Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done, <sup>20</sup> he added this to them all, that he locked John up in prison.

<sup>21</sup> Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized, and while he was praying, the heavens opened, <sup>22</sup> and the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove, and a voice came from heaven, "You are my beloved Son. I am pleased with you."

<sup>23</sup> When Jesus began his ministry, he was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, the son of Heli, <sup>24</sup> the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph.

<sup>25</sup> Joseph was the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of Esli, the son of Naggai, <sup>26</sup> the son of Maath, the son of Mattathias, the son of Semein, the son of Josech, the son of Joda.

<sup>27</sup> Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son of Salathiel, the son of Neri, <sup>28</sup> the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of Elmadam, the son of Er,

<sup>29</sup> the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi. <sup>30</sup> Levi was the son of Simeon, the son of Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of Jonam, the son of Eliakim,

<sup>31</sup> the son of Melea, the son of Menna, the son of Mattatha, the son of Nathan, the son of David, <sup>32</sup> the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the son of Nahshon.

<sup>33</sup> Nahshon was the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin, the son of Arni, the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah, <sup>34</sup> the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham, the son of Terah, the son of Nahor,

<sup>35</sup> the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg, the son of Eber, the son of Shelah. <sup>36</sup> Shelah was the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech,

<sup>37</sup> the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan, <sup>38</sup> the son of Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, the son of God.

---

## Luke 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:4-6, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Justice

John's instructions to the soldiers and tax collectors in this chapter are not complicated. They are things that should have been obvious to them. He instructed them to live justly. (See: justice and [Luke 3:12-15](#))

#### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list which records a person's ancestors or descendants. Such lists were very important in determining who had the right to be king, because the king's authority was usually passed down or inherited from his father. It was also common for other important people to have a recorded genealogy.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Prophecy often involves the use of metaphors to express its meaning. Spiritual discernment is needed for proper interpretation of the prophecy. The prophecy of Isaiah is an extended metaphor describing the ministry of John the Baptist

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "(Herod) had John locked up in prison"

This event can cause confusion because the author says John was imprisoned and then says he was baptizing Jesus. The author probably uses this phrase in anticipation of Herod's imprisonment of John. This would mean that this statement is still in the future at the time of the narrative.

---

## Luke 3

### 3:1-20

#### Who was Tiberius Caesar?

[3:1]

Tiberius Caesar ruled the entire Roman Empire from A.D. 14 to 37. The fifteenth year of his reign was A.D. 27.

See: [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#)

### **Who was Pontius Pilate?**

[3:1]

Pontius Pilate was a “leader”(ἡγεμονεύω/g2230) in the Roman Empire. He ruled over Judea and the area near Judea from A.D. 26 to 36.

See Map: Judea

### **Who was Herod?**

[3:1]

There are several men named Herod in the Bible. The man in this verse is Herod Antipas, one of the sons of King Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετραρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled. Herod Antipas ruled over Galilee from 4 B.C. to A.D. 39.

See: [King Herod](#)

### **Who was Philip?**

[3:1]

Philip was another one of the sons of Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετραρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled. This included the regions of Iturea and Trachonitis, which were located east of Caesarea Philippi, and south of Damascus.

See Map: Israel

### **Who was Lysanias?**

[3:1]

The only thing that is known about Lysanias is that Luke said he was ruler of Abilene at this time. Abilene was place north of Mt. Hermon. Perhaps he was another son of Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετραρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled.

See: [King Herod](#)

See Map: Israel

### **Why did Luke give the names of Roman and Jewish rulers at the time of John the Baptist?**

[3:1]

Luke gave the names of Roman and Jewish rulers at the time of John because John was a prophet who served God. In the Old Testament, when someone wrote about a prophet, they often said what kings were ruling when the prophets served God (see: Isaiah 1:1; Zechariah 1:1). Although Luke did not call John a prophet in this scripture (see: Luke 3:2), Zechariah and Jesus called John a prophet (see: Luke 1:76; 7:26). This was because God told him what to say to people.

Also, Luke gave the names of the rulers because his readers knew them. They knew that these rulers had did many evil things, and that the prophets suffered because of them. When the people of Israel read about these things, perhaps they thought about how kings in the past made the prophets suffer and die (see: Hebrews 11:32-40). John suffered and died because of evil rulers in the same way other prophets suffered and died.

See: [Prophet](#)

**Advice to translators:** Use the expression for “clean” or “ritually pure” that you use in your version of the gospels.

### **Why was John’s baptism different than other kinds of baptism?**

[3:3]

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

See Map: Jordan

### **How did Luke write about repenting?**

[3:3]

“Repentance”(μετάνοια/g3341) is a turning, in the same way when someone turns from facing one way to facing another way. Some scholars think that it means to stop dishonoring God and to turn to follow a path that honors him. Other scholars think it means for a person to change what he thinks about God. John used the word “repentance” because he wanted the people to get ready for the messiah to come to them.

See: Isaiah 40:3-5

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **How did God forgive a Jew’s sins?**

[3:3]

God will only forgive a person for sinning if that person believes in him. Before Jesus came to Earth, the Jews showed God that they believed in him by obeying the Law of Moses. When John the Baptist preached, some Jews showed that they trusted God by “repenting”(μετάνοια/g3341) and asking John to baptize them. However, it was not because of the way that they acted that God forgave them. It was because they trusted in him.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **How did John serve God and Jesus?**

[3:4]

John served God by helping the Jewish people to know that Jesus was the messiah and to believe in Jesus. Luke wrote about the way John served Jesus as if John was announcing that a king was coming (see: Luke 3:5). When a king visited, the people often repaired the road and made it easy to travel on. John explained to the people that the right way to receive Jesus was to repent and trust in God to save them.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **Why did Luke write all flesh will see God’s salvation?**

[3:6]

Luke wrote all flesh will see God’s salvation. Luke was repeating Isaiah 40:5. The Greek translation of the Old Testament used the word “salvation” in Isaiah 40:5. Luke may have also thinking about Isaiah 45:8,17; 46:13 and other scriptures in Isaiah. Isaiah wrote about God’s salvation many times.

See: Luke 2:30; Isaiah 12:2-3; 17:10; 25:9; 52:7; 59:17

### **What was flesh?**

[3:6]

Flesh was “people”(σάρξ/g4561). That is, flesh was a metaphor to say that all people will know about the salvation God brings.

### Why did John call the Jews poisonous snakes?

[3:7]

John called the Jews children of poisonous snakes because they did evil things. The Jews thought they were Abraham's children and friends with God. While Abraham was their ancestor, they did not do the things that Abraham did. Therefore, they were not friends with God. Isaiah said that God's enemies among the Israelites were poisonous snakes (see: Isaiah 59:5).

See: Luke 19:40

See: [Fire](#); [Fire](#)

**Advice to translators:** "Imply" means to want to say something without saying it clearly.

### Why did John speak of the wrath to come?

[3:7]

John implied that God will be angry with the people who do not "repent" (μετάνοια/g3341). He also implied that he was talking about the "Day of the Lord," when God will judge the whole world.

See: Isaiah 13:9; Zephaniah 2:2

See: [Day of Judgment](#); [Day of the Lord](#); [Day of Judgment](#)

### How did John speak about fruit?

[3:8]

John spoke about people doing good things as if they were trees producing fruit. That is, when people "repented" (μετάνοια/g3341), they made fruit. John said that if there was no fruit, then they did not truly "repent".

If Jews did not do good things, then John said they did not live in the same way Abraham lived. If Jews did good things, then John said they were "true" descendants of Abraham. That is, they lived in the way that Abraham lived. However, the Jews thought they were "true" descendants of Abraham even when they did evil things. John said they were wrong to think that. He said they needed to do good things.

John said when trees did not make fruit, they were useless. Therefore, men cut them down and burned them. In the Bible, when God punishes sinners it is often spoken about as if they were being burned (see: Matthew 13:49-50; Revelation 21:8). If the Jews did not "repent", God would punish them. They only had a short period of time in which to repent.

Finally, when people "repented," they changed how they treated other people. They were to share with those who lacked what they needed every day. They were also to treat all people the same way. John wanted people to think about the things they did.

See: [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#); [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#)

### What did the Jews think about tax collectors?

[3:12]

The Jews hated tax collectors for many reasons.

1. Tax collectors collected taxes for the Roman government. The Jews hated the Roman government because they were Gentiles and they treated the Jews badly.
2. Tax collectors often took more money than they needed to take.
3. The Jews believed they were giving money to people who were evil and reject God.

Because of this, the Jews considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people so that they could gain money for themselves.

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

**Advice to translators:** A sandal is a type of shoe that does not completely surround the foot. When someone wears a sandal, you can see his toes.

### **Why was John unworthy to untie Jesus' sandals?**

[3:16]

Except for Jesus, John the Baptist honored God more than anyone else who ever lived (see: Luke 7:28). He was humble, and he knew that Jesus was far stronger than himself. He knew Jesus is God. Because of this, John did not feel that he was good enough to approach Jesus. For the Jews, God could not be approached because he is perfectly "holy" (ἅγιος/g0040). That is, God is perfect and completely different from men.

In ancient Israel, people's feet got dirty from the dusty ground they walked on. Only servants would touch someone's feet; they did so in order to wash them for them. People wore sandals on their feet, so their sandals also became dirty. John thought that Jesus was so much greater than himself, that he did not deserve even to help him remove his sandals.

See: [Holy \(Holiness, Set Apart\)](#)

### **Why did people baptize other people?**

[3:16]

See: [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#)

### **How did Jesus baptize in the Holy Spirit and in fire?**

[3:16]

Some scholars say Jesus baptized in the Holy Spirit and in fire when he punished people who did evil things (see: Luke 3:9,17). Other scholars say Jesus baptized in the Holy Spirit and fire by filling people with the Holy Spirit so they could serve God (see: Acts 1:5; 2:3-4).

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

**Advice to translators:** This entry is mainly for people in cultures that do not know or use threshing floors.

### **What was a threshing floor?**

[3:17]

A [threshing floor](#) was a bare place on the ground where people separated grain from its stalk. In some places, people made threshing floors inside large buildings. At the time of John the Baptist, most threshing floors were outside.

When people separated the grain from its stalk, they often beat the stalks or they had large animals pull heavy loads across the stalks. Then, the people threw the stalks into the air, where the wind blew away the useless parts. The grain, which was heavier, fell back to the ground. Then the people put the grain into bags.

When John said that the messiah would separate grain, he meant that the messiah would separate the people who believed in him from those who rejected him. The writers of the Bible often spoke of God punishing the wicked people as if he were making a fire burn forever (see: Matthew 25:41; Revelation 20:10,15).

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Hell](#); [Fire](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#)

### **What was the good news John announced?**

[3:18]

When Luke said that John announced the "good news" or "gospel" (εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) to the Jews, he meant that John told everyone to repent of their sins. They must also be "baptized" (βαπτίζω/g0907) to get ready for the messiah.

When Jesus began to teach the people, he told them more things about this good news. He told people that the “kingdom of God” was coming. He also spoke more and more clearly about what he would do. He would die on a cross but he would rise again. This was what he must do as the “Lamb of God.” However, it seems that he only said this to the twelve disciples. It does not seem that he ever told the people in general about these things.

See: [Lamb of God](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Lamb of God](#)

### 3:21-22

#### Why was Jesus praying when he was baptized?

[3:21]

Jesus was praying when he was baptized because he wanted the Holy Spirit to help him serve God. Luke often wrote about someone praying at the same time when he wrote about the Holy Spirit. He wrote about how Jesus taught his disciples how to pray to God. Later, God the Father gave the Holy Spirit to them (see: Luke 11:13). God filled Christians with the Holy Spirit when they prayed (see: Acts 4:31).

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

**Advice to translators:** For “the Holy Spirit filled Christians,” consider using the expression in your version of Acts 2:4.

#### Why was the Holy Spirit in bodily form of a dove?

[3:22]

In the Bible, a dove represented many different things. Only Luke wrote the Holy Spirit was in the “bodily”(σωματικός/g4984) “form”(εἶδος/g1491) of a dove.” Luke wrote that because he noted well the service of the Holy Spirit at the start of his Gospel (see: Luke 1:15,35,41,67; 2:25-27).

See: Matthew 3:16; Mark 1:10; Isaiah 42:1

**Advice to translators:** For “the bodily form of a dove,” use the expression in your Bible version.

#### Why did God call Jesus his Son?

[3:22]

God called Jesus his Son because God was announcing that Jesus was the messiah whom he had promised to send. In Psalms 2:7, God said the person he made king was his “Son”. God also loves Jesus and is pleased with him. God spoke from heaven when Jesus was baptized. The people heard him, but they did not see him.

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

#### Why was Jesus baptized?

[3:22]

John “baptized”(βαπτίζω/g0907) people as part of their “repenting”(μετανοέω/g3340) from their sins. He did this so that they would be able to welcome the Messiah, Jesus Christ. He also “baptized” Jesus (see: Mark 1:9), because Jesus asked him to do so, even though Jesus had never sinned. He never needed to “repent” of having sinned. Most scholars think that Jesus wanted to be “baptized” in order to prepare him to be a sacrifice to God. He would die in the same way a sacrifice was done to allow people to be at peace with God.

See: 2 Corinthians 5:21

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)



### 3:23-38

#### Why did Luke write how old Jesus was when he began to serve the people?

[3:23]

Luke wrote that Jesus was about thirty years old when he began to serve the people. The Jews thought that this was when a man should begin doing the work that he would do for the rest of his life. Joseph was thirty years old when he became a leader in Egypt (see: Genesis 41:46). David was thirty when he began to rule over Israel (see: 2 Samuel 5:4). The Levites began serving in the tent of meeting at the age of thirty (see: Numbers 4:3).

See: [Tent of Meeting](#)

**Advice to translators:** A genealogy is a list of someone's ancestors or descendants.

#### How was Luke's genealogy of Jesus different from Matthew's genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Luke's genealogy of Jesus is different from Matthew's genealogy in several ways.

1. Matthew wrote the genealogy first in his gospel. However, Luke wrote the genealogy after he wrote about how Jesus was "baptized" (βαπτίζω/g0907). However, he wrote about it before he wrote about how Satan tried to make Jesus sin.
2. Matthew started Jesus' genealogy with Abraham. He wrote Jesus' descendants until Joseph, who people thought was the father of Jesus. However, Luke started Jesus' genealogy with Joseph. He wrote Jesus' ancestors all the way back to Adam, the first man.
3. Matthew wrote about David's son Solomon in his genealogy. However, Luke wrote about David's son Nathan.
4. Matthew wrote about women in his genealogy. However, Luke did not write about any women.
5. Matthew wrote about three groups of fourteen people. This was forty-two people. Luke wrote about eleven groups of seven people. This was seventy-seven people.
6. The people between Jesus to David are different in Matthew and Luke.

See: [Son of David; Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\); Genealogy; Son of David](#)

**Advice to translators:** A genealogy is a list of someone's ancestors or descendants.

#### Why was Luke's genealogy of Jesus different from Matthew's genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Scholars give different reasons why Luke's genealogy of Jesus was different from Matthew's genealogy.

1. Matthew and Luke thought different kinds of people would read their gospels. Matthew wrote for Jewish Christians and Luke wrote for Gentile Christians.
2. Luke wrote Jesus' ancestors from his mother Mary but Matthew wrote Jesus' ancestors from Joseph.
3. Luke wrote about Nathan instead of Solomon because of prophecies that David would stop having descendants (see: Jeremiah 22:28-30; 36:30-31).
4. Luke wanted to imply that Jesus was also a prophet.

See: [Prophet; Prophet](#)

**Advice to translators:** A genealogy is a list of someone's ancestors or descendants.

#### Why did Luke write a genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Luke's genealogy named the ancestors of Jesus back to Adam, the first man, and then back to God. Luke wanted people to know that Jesus was related to all mankind, not only to the Jews. Therefore, Luke also wanted his readers to know that Jesus came to bring the gospel to all mankind.

Some scholars think Luke wanted people to know Jesus was different than Adam (see: Romans 5:12-21). When Adam sinned, the whole world rebelled against God and began to die. However, Jesus came so that people could live forever with God.

See: [Gospel](#)

## Luke 3:1

### General Information:

Verses 1-3 give background information to tell what is happening when Jesus's cousin John begins his ministry.

### Connecting Statement:

As the prophet Isaiah had foretold, John begins to preach good news to the people.

### Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

### Iturea and Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of territories.

## Luke 3:2

### during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were serving together as the high priest." Annas was the high priest, and the Jews continued to recognize him as such even after the Romans appointed his son-in-law, Caiaphas, to replace him as high priest.

### the word of God came

The writer speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: "God spoke his message"

## Luke 3:3

### preaching a baptism of repentance

The terms "baptism" and "repentance" could be stated as actions. Alternate translation: "and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

### for the forgiveness of sins

They would repent so that God would forgive their sins. The term "forgiveness" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

## Luke 3:4

### General Information:

The author, Luke, quotes a passage from Isaiah the prophet concerning John the Baptist.

### As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

These words introduce a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. They can be stated in active form,

and the missing words can be supplied. Alternate translation: "This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

### A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

### Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight

The second command explains or adds more detail to the first.

### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

### the way

"the path" or "the road"

## Luke 3:5

### Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they cut down the high places and fill in the low places so that the road will be level. This is part of the metaphor started in the previous verse.

### Every valley will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every low place in the road"

### every mountain and hill will be made low

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will level every mountain and hill" or "they will remove every high place in the road"

## Luke 3:6

### see the salvation of God

This can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "learn how God saves people from sin"

## Luke 3:7

### to be baptized by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

**You offspring of vipers**

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring of" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

**Who warned you ... coming?**

He was not really expecting them to answer. John was rebuking the people because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

**from the wrath that is coming**

The word "wrath" is used here to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

**Luke 3:8**

**produce fruits that are worthy of repentance**

In this metaphor, a person's behavior is compared to fruit. Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the kind of fruit that shows that you have repented" or "do the good things that show that you have turned away from your sin"

**to say within yourselves**

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

**We have Abraham for our father**

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may also add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

**raise up children for Abraham**

"create children for Abraham"

**from these stones**

John was probably referring to the actual stones along the Jordan River.

**Luke 3:9**

**the ax is set against the root of the trees**

The ax that is in position so it can cut the roots of a tree is a metaphor for the punishment that is about to begin. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is like the man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

**every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire**

"fire" here is a metaphor for punishment. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he

chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

**Luke 3:10**

**asking him, saying**

"asking him and said" or "asking John"

**Luke 3:11**

**Connecting Statement:**

John begins to respond to questions that people in the crowd ask him.

**answered and said to them**

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

**do the same**

This refers back to giving to someone what he needs. Alternate translation: "give food to someone who does not have any" or "share extra food just as you shared the extra tunic"

**Luke 3:12**

**to be baptized**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

**Luke 3:13**

**Do not collect more money**

"Do not ask for more money" or "Do not demand more money." Tax collectors had been collecting more money than they should have been collecting. John tells them to stop doing that.

**than you have been ordered to collect**

This is passive to show that the tax collector's authority comes from Rome. Alternate translation: "than what the Romans have authorized you to take"

**Luke 3:14**

**What about us? What must we do?**

"How about us soldiers, what must we do?" John is not included in the words "us" and "we." The soldiers have implied that John had told the crowd and the tax collector what they must do and want to know what they as soldiers are to do.

**do not accuse anyone falsely**

It seems that the soldiers were making false charges against people in order to get money. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "in the same way, do not accuse anyone falsely in order to get money from them" or "do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

**Be content with your wages**

"Be satisfied with your pay"

### Luke 3:15

#### as the people

"because the people." This refers to the same people who came to John.

#### everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.

"everyone was unsure what to think about John; they asked themselves, 'Could he be the Christ?'" or "no one was sure what to think about John because they were wondering whether he might be the Christ."

### Luke 3:16

#### John answered by saying to them all

John's answer about a greater person coming clearly implies that John is not the Christ. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience. Alternate translation: "John clarified that he was not the Christ by saying to them all"

#### I baptize you with water

"I baptize using water" or "I baptize by means of water"

#### not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

#### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This metaphor compares literal baptism that brings a person into contact with water to a spiritual baptism that brings them into contact with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

#### fire

Here the word "fire" may refer to 1) judgment or 2) purification. It is preferred to leave it as "fire"

### Luke 3:17

#### His winnowing fork is in his hand

"He is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready." John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as if he were a farmer who is ready to separate wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is ready to judge people like a farmer who is ready"

#### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar to a pitchfork.

#### to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To "clear off" the floor is to finish threshing the grain. Alternate translation: "to finish threshing his grain"

#### to gather the wheat

The wheat is the acceptable harvest that is kept and stored.

#### will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

### Luke 3:18

#### With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

### Luke 3:19

#### General Information:

Verses 19 and 20 tell what is going to happen to John but has not happened at this time.

#### Herod the tetrarch

Herod was a tetrarch, not a king. He had only limited rule over the region of Galilee.

#### When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

It is implied that John reproved Herod. This can also be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved by John" or "When John reproved Herod the tetrarch" )

#### for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he married his brother's wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive"

### Luke 3:20

#### he locked John up in prison

Because Herod was tetrarch, he probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock John up. Alternate translation: "he had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

### Luke 3:21

#### General Information:

The previous verse says that Herod put John in prison. It might be helpful to make it clear that the account starting in verse 21 happened before John was arrested. The UDB does this by starting verse 21 with "But before John was put in prison."

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins his ministry with his baptism.

**Now it came about**

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**when all the people were baptized**

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people present with John.

**Jesus also was baptized**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized Jesus also"

**the heavens opened**

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds, but it's not clear what it means. It possibly means that a hole appeared in the sky.

**Luke 3:22**

**the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove**

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

**a voice came from heaven**

Here "a voice came from heaven" represents people on earth hearing God in heaven speaking. It can be made clear that God spoke to Jesus. Alternate translation: "a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

**my beloved Son**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

**Luke 3:23**

**General Information:**

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of his supposed father, Joseph.

**When**

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jesus's age and ancestors.

**thirty years of age**

"30 years old"

**He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph**

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph"

**Luke 3:24**

**the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph**

This continues the list that begins with the words "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli" in

verse 24. Consider how people normally list ancestors in your language. You should use the same wording throughout the whole list. Possible formats are 1) "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli, who was the son of Matthat, who was the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph" or 2) "He was the son ... of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Heli. Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph" or 3) "His father ... was Joseph. Joseph's father was Heli. Heli's father was Matthat. Matthat's father was Levi. Levi's father was Melchi. Melchi's father was Jannai. Jannai's father was Joseph"

**Luke 3:25**

**the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos ... Naggai**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:26**

**the son of Maath ... Joda**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:27**

**Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa ... Neri**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that begins in [Luke 3:23]

**the son of Salathiel**

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel (as some versions have it), but identification is difficult.

**Luke 3:28**

**the son of Melchi ... Er**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:29**

**the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer ... Levi**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:30**

**the son of Simeon, the son of Judah ... Eliakim**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:31**

**the son of Melea ... David**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:32**

**the son of Jesse ... the son of Nahshon**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:33**

**the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin ... Judah**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:34**

**the son of Jacob ... Nahor**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:35**

**the son of Serug ... Shelah**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:36**

**the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad ... Lamech**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:37**

**the son of Methuselah ... Cainan**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Luke 3:38**

**the son of Enos ... Adam**

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

**Adam, the son of God**

"Adam, created by God" or "Adam, who was from God" or "Adam, the son, we could say, of God"

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 3:3**

**What message did John preach throughout the region around the Jordan River?**

John preached a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.

**Luke 3:4**

**For whom did John say he was making ready the way?**

John said he was making ready the way of the Lord.

**Luke 3:8**

**John told the people not to trust in the fact that Abraham was their father, but to do what instead?**

John told them to produce fruits that come from repentance.

**Luke 3:9**

**What did John say happens to the tree that does not produce good fruit?**

John said that it is chopped down and thrown into the fire.

**Luke 3:13**

**What did John tell the tax collectors they must do to show true repentance?**

John said that they must not collect more money than they are supposed to.

**Luke 3:16**

**John told the people that he baptized with water, but that someone was coming who would baptize with what?**

John said someone was coming who would baptize with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

**Luke 3:19**

**Why did John rebuke Herod?**

John rebuked Herod because Herod had married his own brother's wife, and for doing many other evil things.

**Luke 3:20**

**Who put John into prison?**

Herod put John into prison.

**Luke 3:21**

**What happened right away after John baptized Jesus?**

After John baptized Jesus, the heavens opened up and the Holy Spirit came down on him like a dove.

**Luke 3:22**

**What happened right away after John baptized Jesus?**

After John baptized Jesus, the heavens opened up and the Holy Spirit came down on him like a dove.

**What did the voice from heaven say?**

The voice from heaven said, "You are my beloved son. I am very pleased with you".

**Luke 3:23**

**About how old was Jesus when he began to teach?**

Jesus was about thirty years old when he began to teach.

---

## Chapter 4

<sup>1</sup> Then Jesus, being full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan River and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness, <sup>2</sup> where for forty days he was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing during those days, and at the end of that time he was hungry. <sup>3</sup> The devil said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command this stone to become bread."

<sup>4</sup> Jesus answered him, "It is written, 'Man does not live on bread alone.'"

<sup>5</sup> Then the devil led Jesus up and showed him all the kingdoms of the world in an instant of time. <sup>6</sup> The devil said to him, "I will give to you all this authority and all their glory, for they have been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want. <sup>7</sup> So then, if you will bow down and worship me, it will be yours."

<sup>8</sup> But Jesus answered and said to him, "It is written, 'You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him.'"

<sup>9</sup> Then the devil led Jesus to Jerusalem and put him on the very highest point of the temple building, and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down from here. <sup>10</sup> For it is written,

'He will give orders to his angels regarding you,  
to protect you,'

<sup>11</sup> and, 'They will lift you up in their hands,  
so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.'"

<sup>12</sup> Answering him, Jesus said, "It is said, 'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'"

<sup>13</sup> When the devil had finished tempting Jesus, he went away and left him until another time.

<sup>14</sup> Then Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about him spread throughout the entire surrounding region. <sup>15</sup> Then he began to teach in their synagogues and he was praised by all.

<sup>16</sup> He came into Nazareth, where he had been raised, and, as was his custom, he entered the synagogue on the Sabbath day and he stood up to read aloud. <sup>17</sup> The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. He opened the scroll and found the place where it was written,

<sup>18</sup> "The Spirit of the Lord is upon me,  
because he anointed me  
to announce good news to the poor.  
He has sent me to proclaim freedom to the captives  
and recovery of sight to the blind,  
to set free those who are oppressed,  
<sup>19</sup> to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor."

<sup>20</sup> Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. The eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed on him. <sup>21</sup> He began to speak to them, "Today this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing."

<sup>22</sup> Everyone there spoke well of him and they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth, and they asked, "Is this not the son of Joseph?"

<sup>23</sup> He said to them, "Surely you will say this proverb to me, 'Doctor, heal yourself. Whatever we heard that you did in Capernaum, do the same in your hometown.'"<sup>24</sup> But he said, "Truly I say to you, no prophet is received in his own hometown. <sup>25</sup> But in truth I tell you that there were many widows in Israel during the time of Elijah, when the sky was shut up for three years and six months and a great famine came upon all the land. <sup>26</sup> But Elijah was sent to none of them, but only to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there.

<sup>27</sup> There were many lepers in Israel during the time of Elisha the prophet, but none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian." <sup>28</sup> All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things. <sup>29</sup> They got up, forced him out of the town, and led him to the cliff of the hill on which



their town was built, so they might throw him off the cliff. <sup>30</sup> But he passed through the middle of them and he went to another place.

<sup>31</sup> Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee, and he began to teach them on the Sabbath. <sup>32</sup> They were astonished at his teaching, because he spoke with authority. <sup>33</sup> Now in the synagogue there was a man who had the spirit of an unclean demon, and he cried out with a loud voice, <sup>34</sup> "Ah! What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are—the Holy One of God!"

<sup>35</sup> Jesus rebuked the demon, saying, "Do not speak! Come out of him!" When the demon had thrown the man down in the middle of them, he came out of him, and did not harm him in any way.

<sup>36</sup> All the people were very amazed, and they kept talking about it with one another. They said, "What kind of words are these? He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power and they come out."

<sup>37</sup> So news about him began to spread into every part of the surrounding region.

<sup>38</sup> Then Jesus left the synagogue and entered into the house of Simon. Now Simon's mother-in-law was suffering with a high fever, and they pleaded with him on her behalf. <sup>39</sup> So he stood over her and rebuked the fever, and it left her. Immediately she got up and started serving them.

<sup>40</sup> When the sun was setting, people brought to Jesus everyone who was sick with various kinds of diseases. He laid his hands on every one of them and healed them. <sup>41</sup> Demons also came out from many of them, crying out and saying, "You are the Son of God!" Jesus rebuked the demons and would not let them speak, because they knew that he was the Christ.

<sup>42</sup> When daybreak came, he went out into a solitary place. Crowds of people were looking for him and came to the place where he was. They tried to keep him from going away from them. <sup>43</sup> But he said to them, "I must also preach the gospel about the kingdom of God to many other cities, because this is the reason I was sent here."

<sup>44</sup> Then he continued to preach in the synagogues throughout Judea.

## Luke 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:10-11, 18-19, which is from the Old Testament.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Jesus was tempted by the devil

While it is true that the devil sincerely believed that he could persuade Jesus to obey him, it is important not to imply that Jesus actually ever really wanted to obey him.

## Luke 4

### 4:1-13

#### Why did Luke write that Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit when he went into the wilderness?

[4:1]

Luke wrote that the Holy Spirit wanted Jesus to go into the wilderness. In the wilderness, the devil tried to make Jesus sin. Matthew and Mark also wrote about the Holy Spirit doing this (see: Matthew 4:1; Mark 1:12). However, only Luke wrote that Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit. Some scholars say Jesus had the Holy Spirit in him and was full of the Holy Spirit since he was baptized (see: Luke 3:21-22). Other scholars say Luke wanted people to know that Jesus was not "tempted or tested" (πειράζω/g3985) because he did something wrong.

See: [Test](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Wilderness](#); [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#); [Test](#)

**Advice to translators:** The devil tried to trap Jesus and get him to sin, this was a “temptation.” A “temptation” was a certain type of test or a trap. A “wilderness” was an area that was very hot and had no water.

See Map: Judea

### **How did Jesus in the wilderness compare with the Israelites?**

[4:1, 4:2]

Jesus in the wilderness compared to the Israelites because God tested Israel in the wilderness after they left Egypt with Moses. They did not obey God. However, Jesus obeyed God when the devil tried to make him sin. Also, the forty days Jesus was in the wilderness compared to the forty years the Israelites were in the wilderness. The Israelites were in the wilderness one year for each day the spies were in the promised land. In the same way Jesus was in the wilderness one day for each year the Israelites were in the wilderness (see: Numbers 14:33-34).

See: [Canaan \(Promised Land\)](#); [Canaan \(Promised Land\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus fast for forty days?**

[4:2]

The Old Testament used the number forty is used many times. Moses and Elijah began to serve God in a special way after they fasted for forty days (see: Exodus 34:28; 1 Kings 19:8). After Jesus fasted, he began to serve God in a special way and tell Israel that he was the messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **The devil tried to convince Adam to sin. He also tried to convince Jesus to sin. How did Satan do this?**

[4:2]

The devil tried to convince Adam to sin. He also tried to convince Jesus to sin. Some scholars think that Satan did this in the same way. They think that he did it in a certain way for a certain reason. Perhaps, John talked about these reasons in 1 John 2:16.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

**Advice to translators:** In some translations, Satan said “if” you are the son of God. However, Satan knew that Jesus was the Son of God. This question may need to be adapted to explain your local translation.

### **Did Satan know that Jesus is the Son of God?**

[4:3]

Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. However, the devil wanted Jesus to stop being the Son of God. Perhaps he thought that God would reject Jesus if Jesus rejected God.

In the Old Testament, Israel was also called the “son” of God (see: Exodus 4:22-23; Hosea 11:1). Jesus is also the Son of God. However, he is not the son of God in the same way that Israel was the son of God. Israel disobeyed God and God punished them in the same way a parent punished their son. The devil wanted Jesus to disobey God. Perhaps, Satan wanted God to punish Jesus. Despite this, Jesus obeyed God in the same way a son should obey his father.

See: Luke 3:22

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

### **Why did the devil tempt Jesus when Jesus was hungry?**

[4:3]

The devil wanted Jesus to turn a stone into bread because Jesus was hungry. Jesus was very hungry after not eating for forty days. The devil knew Jesus was a human being in every way except Jesus did not sin. Perhaps Luke remembered that the Israelites were also hungry in the desert. When they were hungry, they disobeyed God (see: Exodus 16:8). However, Jesus obeyed God when he was hungry.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **The devil told Jesus to make himself food in the desert. Why did Jesus not do this?**

[4:4]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus did not make himself food in the desert.

1. God did not want him to eat food. Jesus was fasting when he was in the desert.
2. Jesus needed to suffer in the same way that people suffered (see: Hebrews 2:18; 4:15). This helped Jesus to become a priest who knew what people felt when they were hungry.
3. Jesus trusted God. Jesus knew that God would give him food to eat. He knew that God would give him everything that he needed to live. He also trusted in the things that God said in Scripture. Therefore, he said to the devil the things that Scripture wrote.

However, some scholars say it was not always wrong for Jesus to make food. When Jesus answered the devil, he repeated a scripture that spoke about the manna that God made (see: Deuteronomy 8:3). Later, Jesus made food for people (see: Luke 5:4-10; 9:12-17).

See: [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#); [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#)

### **How did the devil show Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?**

[4:5]

Scholars believe the devil showed Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” in a vision. Whether it was the world that Rome ruled or the whole world, no one was able to see all of it at one time from a mountain. It was a real seeing but it did not belong to this world. Some scholars say it was real the same way the heavens opened at Jesus’ baptism (see: Luke 3:21). Some scholars say that is why Luke did not say Jesus was on a mountain. Other scholars say when the devil led Jesus up it was on a mountain.

See: Deuteronomy 32:49; 34:1-3

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [World](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **How was the devil able to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?**

[4:6]

The devil was able to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” because God gave permission to the devil to rule the whole world (see: 1 John 5:19). However, this is only for a limited time (see: John 12:31; 16:11).

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **Why did the devil want to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?**

[4:6, 4:7]

The devil wanted to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” because that was not God’s plan for Jesus. God gives Jesus authority to rule the world (see: Psalm 2:8; Daniel 7:14; Matthew 28:18). However, God’s plan was for Jesus to suffer and die before he entered into glory (see: Luke 24:26). Paul also wrote about this (see: Philippians 2:5-11).

See: [Glory \(Glorify\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Cross](#); [Glory \(Glorify\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus refuse to worship the devil to receive “all the kingdoms of the world”?**

[4:8]

Jesus refused to worship the devil to receive “all the kingdoms of the world” because the Old Testament wrote only God must be worshipped. That is, someone cannot worship God and worship someone else at the same time. Jesus noted this well by adding the word “only”(μόνος/g3441) when he repeated the Old Testament scripture (see: Deuteronomy 6:13).

See: [Worship](#)

### **How did the devil use Psalm 91 in a wrong way?**

[4:10, 4:11]

The devil used Psalm 91 in a wrong way by telling Jesus that God protected people from harm even when they tested God. The devil tried to convince Jesus that he was able to throw himself down from the “highest point of the temple.” However, the writer of Psalm 91 wrote about someone who trusted God, even when things were difficult. He also wrote about how God promised to care for people who trusted in him. However, the devil wanted to use this Psalm in a different way. He wanted Jesus to think God would help him, even if Jesus tested God or rejected the things that God said. However, God did not promise to protect those who rejected him in Psalm 91.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Temple](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **Why was Jesus not willing to test God?**

[4:12]

Jesus was not willing to test God because Jesus knew all scriptures and he knew how to follow them in the right way. Jesus repeated Deuteronomy 6:16 to the devil. That Scripture said people must not test God. Jesus did not argue with the devil about scripture.

Advice to translators: Translate the phrase “until another time” as your local translation does. Why did Luke write “until another time”? Luke wrote “until another time” so his readers would know the devil left Jesus in order to wait for another time to try to make Jesus disobey God. The devil also tempted Jesus when he died on the cross. At that time, people spoke to Jesus using words using the same words the devil said, “If you are the Son of God” (see: Matthew 27:40).

## **4:14-15**

### **Why did the second major section of Luke’s gospel begin here?**

[4:14]

Jesus’ temptation concluded the first major section of Luke’s gospel. Jesus was a baby born from a virgin when he came into the world. John the Baptist prepared people for Jesus’ coming. Luke recorded Jesus’ genealogy and temptation. Jesus then began seeking people. He announced his ministry at his hometown. He taught and did miracles. This division of major sections is taken from the key verse of Luke’s gospel (see: Luke 19:10).

### **What did Luke say about the start of Jesus’ earthly service?**

[4:15]

After the devil tempted Jesus, Jesus went back to Galilee in the “power”(δύναμις/g1411) of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit helped Jesus to do the great things that he did. He taught and did miracles because the Holy Spirit gave him the power to do these things. Also, Luke said that many people believed in Jesus when he started his earthly service. When Jesus began teaching, everyone in Galilee spoke well of him.

See Map: Galilee

## 4:16-30

### Why did Jesus stand to read the scroll in the synagogue?

[4:16]

Jesus stood to read the scroll in the synagogue because when someone read scripture they needed to stand. This was a way to honor God. Luke wrote that Jesus often went to the synagogue. This time when Jesus went to the synagogue, he asked to read Scripture. Jesus read the words of the prophet Isaiah (see: Isaiah 61:1-2).

See: [Prophet](#); [Prophet](#)

### How did the prophecy that Jesus read from Isaiah say Jesus is the Messiah?

[4:18, 4:19]

Isaiah prophesied that the Holy Spirit, the "Spirit" (πνεῦμα/g4151) of the "Lord" (κύριος/g2962), would be with the messiah (see: Luke 3:22). There were three ways that the people would know the messiah.

1. The messiah told "good news or gospel" (εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) to the "poor" (πτωχός/g4434). The good news was to the "poor" because the poor needed help. People needed help to be at peace with God.
2. The messiah told people in prison that they would be free. The devil caused some people to be sick. The messiah made many sick people healthy. He also freed people from the way that they used to live before they believed in Jesus.
3. The messiah announced the "time" (ἐνῑαντός/g1763) of the Lord's "favor" (δεκτός/g1184) (see: Luke 4:19; Isaiah 61:2). Some scholars think that Isaiah was speaking about a special Sabbath time called the Year of Jubilee in the Law of Moses (see: Leviticus 25:8-55). Other scholars think that Isaiah was speaking about how God would give favor to Christians. He did this when Jesus died so that Christians could be at peace with God.

See: [Sabbath](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Gospel](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#)

### Why did Jesus not talk about God's judgment when he read from Isaiah?

[4:19]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus did not talk about God's judgment when he read from Isaiah.

1. Jesus did not want people to think about Isaiah's warnings of judgment.
2. The people thought Isaiah's judgment was for the Gentiles. Jesus wanted them to know the Lord's favor was for the Gentiles also.
3. This was not time for the judgment. It was the time for the Lord's favor. The judgment will come when Jesus returns at the end of the world (see: Revelation 19:11-16).
4. The people become angry enough in verse twenty-eight without hearing Jesus read about Judgment from Isaiah.

See: [Judge \(Judgment\)](#)

### Why did Jesus tell the people a proverb?

[4:23]

Jesus told the people a proverb about a doctor healing himself because the people wanted Jesus to do miracles in Nazareth. They knew Jesus did miracles in Capernaum and now they wanted him to do the same things in Nazareth (see: Luke 4:23). However, Jesus did not do what they wanted because the people did not believe in him (see: Matthew 13:57-58).

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

See Map: Nazareth; Capernaum; Galilee

### **Why did Jesus talk about the prophets, Elijah and Elisha?**

[4:25, 4:26, 4:27]

Jesus talked about the prophets, Elijah and Elisha. These men died many years before. Jesus wanted the people of Nazareth to know that they rejected him in the same way that the Israelites rejected Elijah and Elisha. However, the people of Nazareth knew that God sent Elijah and Elisha. After the Israelites rejected them, Elijah and Elisha helped the Gentiles. The Israelites thought that the Gentiles were evil and did not honor God. Therefore, a prophet should not help them. After the people of Nazareth rejected him, Jesus began to help Gentiles.

See: 1 Kings 17; 2 Kings 5

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

See Map: Sidon; Syria

### **Why did all the people in the synagogue try to kill Jesus?**

[4:29]

Jesus read the words of Isaiah to the people in Luke 4:18-19 (see: Isaiah 61:1-2). All the people in the synagogue tried to kill Jesus because the things he said made them angry. They thought that Isaiah was speaking about God saving Israel. Jesus said that it was about the Gentiles. This insulted the Jews because they thought the Gentiles were evil.

See: [Gentile](#); [Gentile](#)

## **4:31-44**

### **Why were the people amazed at the teaching of Jesus?**

[4:32]

Luke said that the people were “amazed”(ἐκπλήσσω/g1605) at the things Jesus taught. They were amazed because Jesus said the words God commanded him to speak (see: Matthew 7:29). Jesus spoke with “power”(ἐξουσία/g1849) that came from the Holy Spirit and God himself. Scholars think that Jesus explained the Old Testament to the people.

### **What was another way Jesus demonstrated his power in the synagogue?**

[4:35]

While Jesus was teaching in the synagogue, a man began to shout loudly. The man was controlled by a demon. Jesus commanded the demon to be “quiet”(φίμω/g5392) and he commanded the demon to “come out”(ἐξέρχομαι/g1831) of the shouting man. Luke wanted people to know that Jesus could make demons obey him because he is God. Once again, the people were amazed with Jesus and the power that God had given him.

See: [Demon](#); [Demon](#)

### **How did Jesus heal Simon’s mother-in-law?**

[4:39]

Simon’s mother-in-law was sick with a “high fever”(πυρετός/g4446)(μέγας/g3173) fever. Jesus stood over Simon’s mother-in-law and “commanded”(ἐπιτιμάω/g2008) the fever to leave. Simon’s mother-in-law was immediately healed. Some scholars think that Luke wanted people to know that Jesus could immediately heal a sick person. Other scholars think a demon caused the fever. Jesus “commanded” the fever to leave in the same way that he “commanded” the demon to leave the man in the synagogue.

### **Why did people come to Jesus after sunset?**

[4:40]

People came to Jesus after sunset because it was the sabbath. People did not travel very far or carry a heavy load on the Sabbath. Therefore, after the sabbath they brought ill and demon possessed people to Jesus. Jesus healed them of various diseases and cast out demons.

See: [Demon](#); [Demon](#)

### Why did Jesus lay his hands on people when healing them?

[4:40]

Jesus laid his hands on people when he healed them because he loved them or he favored them. However, putting his hands on people was not what healed them. Instead, it was the power of God.

### Why did Jesus command the demons not to say he is the Son of God even though they were right that he is the Messiah?

[4:41]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus commanded the demons not to say he is the Son of God even though they were right that he is the messiah.

1. Demons taught people wrong things about the messiah.
2. Jesus did not want the evil demons to tell people about him.
3. Jesus wanted his disciples to tell people about him.

See: [Demon](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Demon](#)

### Why did God send Jesus?

[4:43]

God sent Jesus to tell people about God's reign. Some scholars think Jesus told people he was the messiah. They think Jesus offered to rule the Jews on the earth. Other scholars think that Jesus wanted people to believe in him and obey him as their king. They think God sent him to help people to be at peace with God.

See: [Kingdom of God](#)

#### Luke 4:1

##### Then Jesus

After John had baptized Jesus.

##### was led by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led him"

#### Luke 4:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus fasts for 40 days, and the devil meets him to try to persuade him to sin.

##### for forty days he was tempted

Most versions say that the temptation was throughout the forty days. The UDB states "While he was there, the devil kept tempting him" to make this clear.

forty days  
"40 days"

##### he was tempted by the devil

This can be stated in active form, and you can make explicit what it was the devil tempted him to do. Alternate translation: "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

##### He ate nothing

The word "he" refers to Jesus.

#### Luke 4:3

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

##### this stone

The devil either holds a stone in his hand or points to a nearby stone.

#### Luke 4:4

##### Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone."

Jesus's rejection of the devil's challenge is clearly implied in his answer. It may be helpful to state this

clearly for your audience, as the UDB does.  
Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'No, I will not do that because it is written ... alone.'"

**It is written**

The quotation is from Moses's writings in the Old Testament. This can be stated in active form.  
Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

**Man does not live on bread alone**

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food as compared to God, by itself, is not enough to sustain a person. Jesus quotes the scripture to say why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live on just bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live" or "God says there are more important things than food"

**Luke 4:5**

**Then the devil led Jesus up ... world**

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." It is uncertain where the devil led Jesus and how he showed all the kingdoms of the world to him.

**in an instant of time**

"in an instant" or "instantly"

**Luke 4:6**

**they have been given to me**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are that "them" refers to 1) the authority and splendor of the kingdoms or 2) the kingdoms.  
Alternate translation: "God has given them to me"

**Luke 4:7**

**if you will bow down ... worship me**

These two phrases are very similar. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "if you will bow down in worship to me"

**it will be yours**

"I will give you all these kingdoms, with their splendor"

**Luke 4:8**

**It is written**

Jesus refused to do what the devil asked. It may be helpful to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not worship you, because it is written"

**answered and said to him**

"responded to him" or "replied to him"

**It is written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

**You will worship the Lord your God**

Jesus was quoting a command from the scriptures to say why he would not worship the devil.

**You**

This refers to the people in the Old Testament who received God's Law. You could use the singular form of 'you' because each person was to obey it, or you could use the plural form of 'you' because all of the people were to obey it.

**him**

The word "him" refers to the Lord God.

**Luke 4:9**

**the very highest point**

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

**If you are the Son of God**

The devil is challenging Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**throw yourself down**

"jump down to the ground"

**Luke 4:10**

**For it is written**

The devil implies that his quote from the Psalms means Jesus will not be hurt if he is the Son of God. This can be stated clearly, as the UDB does.  
Alternate translation: "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

**it is written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer has written"

**He will give orders**

"He" refers to God. The devil partially quoted from the Psalms in an effort to persuade Jesus to jump off the building.

**Luke 4:11**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 4:12**

**It is said**

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. His refusal to do it can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because it is said"



**It is said**

Jesus quotes from the writings of Moses in Deuteronomy. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has said" or "Moses has said in the scriptures"

**Do not put the Lord your God to the test**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus should not test God by jumping off the temple, or 2) the devil should not test Jesus to see if he is the Son of God. It is best to translate the verse as stated rather than to try to explain the meaning.

**Luke 4:13**

**until another time**

"until another occasion"

**had finished tempting Jesus**

This does not imply that the devil was successful in his temptation—Jesus resisted every attempt. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

**Luke 4:14**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus returns to Galilee, teaches in the synagogue (4:15), and tells the people there that he is fulfilling scripture of Isaiah the prophet (4:17-21).

**Then Jesus returned**

This begins a new event in the story.

**in the power of the Spirit**

"and the Spirit was giving him power." God was with Jesus in a special way, enabling him to do things that humans usually could not.

**news about him spread**

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus" or "knowledge about him was passed on from person to person." Those who heard Jesus told other people about him, and then those other people told even more people about him.

**throughout the entire surrounding region**

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

**Luke 4:15**

**he was praised by all**

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

**Luke 4:16**

**where he had been raised**

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he lived when he was a child" or "where he grew up"

**as was his custom**

"as he did each Sabbath." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

**Luke 4:17**

**The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

**scroll of the prophet Isaiah**

This refers to the book of Isaiah written on a scroll. Isaiah had written the words many years before, and someone else had copied them onto a scroll.

**the place where it was written**

"the place in the scroll with these words." This sentence continues on into the next verse.

**Luke 4:18**

**The Spirit of the Lord is upon me**

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way." When someone says this, he is claiming to speak the words of God.

**he anointed me**

In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person when they were given power and authority to do a special task. Jesus uses this metaphor to refer to the Holy Spirit being on him to prepare him for this work. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit is upon me to empower me" or "the Holy Spirit gave me power and authority"

**the poor**

"the poor people"

**proclaim freedom to the captives**

"tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "set free the prisoners of war"

**recovery of sight to the blind**

"give sight to the blind" or "make the blind be able to see again"

**set free those who are oppressed**

"set free those who are treated harshly"

**Luke 4:19**

**to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor**

"tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

**Luke 4:20**

**rolled up the scroll**

A scroll was closed by rolling it like a tube to protect the writing inside it.

**attendant**

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

**sat down**

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

**were fixed on him**

This idiom means "were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

**Luke 4:21**

**this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing**

Jesus was saying that he was fulfilling that prophecy by his actions and speech at that very time. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now as you are listening to me"

**in your hearing**

This idiom means "while you are listening to me"

**Luke 4:22**

**amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth**

"surprised about the gracious things that he was saying." Here "gracious" may refer to 1) how well or how persuasively Jesus spoke, or 2) that Jesus spoke words about God's grace.

**Is this not the son of Joseph?**

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

**Luke 4:23**

**Surely**

"Certainly" or "There is no doubt that"

**Doctor, heal yourself**

If someone claims to be able to heal diseases that he himself has, there is no reason to believe he is really a doctor. People will speak this proverb to Jesus to say that they will only believe he is a prophet if they see him do what they have heard that he did in other places.

**Whatever we heard ... do the same in your hometown**

The people of Nazareth do not believe Jesus is a prophet because of his low status as Joseph's son. They will not believe unless they personally see him do miracles.

**Luke 4:24**

**Truly I say to you**

"It is certainly true." This is an emphatic statement about what follows.

**no prophet is received in his own hometown**

Jesus makes this general statement in order to rebuke the people. He means that they are refusing to believe the reports of his miracles in Capernaum. They think they already know all about him.

**own hometown**

"homeland" or "native city" or "country where he grew up"

**Luke 4:25**

**General Information:**

Jesus reminds the people who are listening to him in the synagogue about Elijah and Elisha

**But in truth I tell you**

"I tell you truthfully." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

**widows**

Widows are women whose husbands have died and who have not married again.

**during the time of Elijah**

The people to whom Jesus was speaking would have known that Elijah was one of God's prophets. If your readers would not know that, you can make this implicit information explicit as in the UDB. Alternate translation: "when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

**when the sky was shut up**

This is a metaphor. The sky is pictured as a ceiling that was closed, and so no rain would fall from it. Alternate translation: "when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

**a great famine**

"a serious lack of food." A famine occurs when the crops do not produce enough food for the people for a long period of time.

**Luke 4:26**

**to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there**

The people living in the town of Zarephath were Gentiles, not Jews. The people listening to Jesus would have understood that the people of Zarephath were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in Zarephath in Sidon"

## Luke 4:27

### **none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian**

This double negative emphasizes that Naaman was the only one who was cleansed. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman"

### **were cleansed**

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

### **Naaman the Syrian**

A Syrian is a person from the country of Syria. The people of Syria were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "the Gentile Naaman from Syria"

## Luke 4:28

### **All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things**

The people of Nazareth were deeply offended that Jesus had cited scriptures where God had helped Gentiles instead of Jews.

## Luke 4:29

### **forced him out of the town**

"forced him to leave the town" or "shoved him out of the city"

### **cliff of the hill**

"edge of the cliff"

## Luke 4:30

### **through the middle of them**

"through the middle of the crowd" or "between the people who were trying to kill him."

### **he went to another place**

"he went away" or "he went on his way" Jesus went where he had planned to go instead of where the people were trying to force him to go.

## Luke 4:31

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus then goes to Capernaum, teaches the people in the synagogue there, and commands a demon to leave a man (4:35).

### **Then he**

"Then Jesus." This indicates a new event.

### **went down to Capernaum**

The phrase "went down" is used here because Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

### **Capernaum, a city in Galilee**

"Capernaum, another city in Galilee"

## Luke 4:32

### **astonished**

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

### **he spoke with authority**

"he spoke as one with authority" or "his words had great power"

## Luke 4:33

### **Now ... there was a man**

This phrase is used to mark the introduction of a new character into the story; in this case, a demon-possessed man.

### **who had the spirit of an unclean demon**

"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

### **he cried out with a loud voice**

"he shouted loudly"

## Luke 4:34

### **What do we have to do with you**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common" or "What right do you have to bother us"

### **What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?**

This question could be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What do you, Jesus of Nazareth, have to do with us!" or "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

## Luke 4:35

### **Jesus rebuked the demon, saying**

"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

### **Come out of him**

He commanded the demon to stop controlling the man. Alternate translation: "Leave him alone" or "Do not live in this man any longer"

## Luke 4:36

### **What kind of words are these?**

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These are amazing words!" or "His words are amazing!"

**He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power**  
 "He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

#### Luke 4:37

**So news about him began to spread ... the surrounding region**

This is a comment about what happened after the story. The spread of the news was caused by the events within the story itself.

**news about him began to spread**

"reports about Jesus began to spread" or "people began to spread the news about Jesus"

#### Luke 4:38

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus is still in Capernaum, but he is now at the house of Simon.

**Then Jesus left**

This introduces a new event.

**Simon's mother-in-law**

"the mother of Simon's wife"

**was suffering with**

This is an idiom that means "was very sick with"

**a high fever**

"very hot skin"

**pleaded with him on her behalf**

This means they asked Jesus to heal her from the fever. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "asked Jesus to heal her from the fever" or "asked Jesus to cure her fever"

#### Luke 4:39

**So he stood**

The word "So" makes it clear that he did this because the people pleaded with him on behalf of Simon's mother-in-law.

**stood over her**

"went to her and leaned over her"

**rebuked the fever, and it left her**

"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did." It may be helpful to state clearly what he told the fever to do. Alternate translation: "commanded that her skin should become cool, and it did" or "commanded the sickness to leave her, and it did"

**rebuked the fever**

"rebuked the hotness"

**started serving them**

Here this means she began to prepare food for Jesus and the other people in the house.

#### Luke 4:40

**laid his hands on**

"placed his hands on" or "touched"

#### Luke 4:41

**Demons also came out**

It is implied that Jesus made the demons leave the demon-possessed people. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus also forced demons to come out"

**crying out and saying**

These mean about the same thing, and probably refer to cries of fear or anger. Some translations use only one term. Alternate translation: "screaming" or "shouting"

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**rebuked the demons**

"spoke sternly to the demons"

**would not let them**

"did not allow them to"

#### Luke 4:42

**Connecting Statement:**

Though the people want Jesus to stay in Capernaum, he goes to preach in other Judean synagogues.

**When daybreak came**

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

**a solitary place**

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

#### Luke 4:43

**to many other cities**

"to the people in many other cities"

**this is the reason I was sent here**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is the reason God sent me here"

#### Luke 4:44

**throughout Judea**

Since Jesus had been in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time. Alternate translation: "where the Jews lived"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 4:1

**Who led Jesus into the wilderness?**  
The Holy Spirit led Jesus into the wilderness.

### Luke 4:2

**How long did the devil tempt Jesus in the wilderness?**  
The devil tempted Jesus in the wilderness for 40 days.

### Luke 4:3

**What did the devil challenge Jesus to do with the stones on the ground?**  
The devil told Jesus to turn the stones into bread.

### Luke 4:4

**What was Jesus' response to the devil?**  
Man shall not live on bread alone.

### Luke 4:5

**What did the devil show to Jesus from a high place?**  
The devil showed Jesus all of the kingdoms of the world.

### Luke 4:7

**What did the devil want Jesus to do?**  
The devil wanted Jesus to bow down and worship him.

### Luke 4:8

**What was Jesus' response to the devil?**  
You must worship the Lord your God, and you must serve him only.

### Luke 4:9

**What did the devil tell Jesus to do when he took him to the highest point of the temple?**  
He told Jesus to jump down from there.

### Luke 4:12

**What was Jesus' response to the devil?**  
You must not test the Lord your God.

### Luke 4:13

**What did the devil do after Jesus refused to jump from the temple?**  
The devil left Jesus until another time.

### Luke 4:17

**From which book of the scriptures did Jesus read when he stood up in the synagogue?**  
Jesus read from the prophet Isaiah.

### Luke 4:21

**What did Jesus say was being fulfilled on that day?**  
Jesus said that the scripture he had just read from Isaiah was being fulfilled that day.

### Luke 4:24

**What kind of reception did Jesus say a prophet receives in his own country?**  
Jesus said that no prophet is accepted in his own country.

### Luke 4:26

**In Jesus' first example to the people in the synagogue, where did God send Elijah to help someone?**  
God sent Elijah to Zarephath, near the city of Sidon.

### Luke 4:27

**In Jesus' second example to the people in the synagogue, God had Elisha help someone from what country?**  
God had Elisha help Naaman the Syrian.

### Luke 4:28

**What did the people in the synagogue do when they heard these examples from Jesus?**  
They were filled with rage and wanted to throw him over the cliff.

### Luke 4:29

**What did the people in the synagogue do when they heard these examples from Jesus?**  
They were filled with rage and wanted to throw him over the cliff.

### Luke 4:30

**How did Jesus avoid being killed by the people from the synagogue?**  
Jesus walked right through their midst.

### Luke 4:34

**In the synagogue, what did the demon speaking through the man know about Jesus?**  
The demon said that he knew Jesus was the Holy One of God.

**Luke 4:36**

**How did the people react after Jesus cast out the demon?**

The people were amazed and kept talking about it with one another.

**Luke 4:40**

**What did Jesus do for the sick who were brought to him?**

Jesus laid his hands on every one of them and healed them.

**Luke 4:41**

**What did the demons say as they were cast out, and why did Jesus not let them speak?**

The demons said that Jesus was the Son of God, and Jesus did not let them speak because they knew he was the Christ.

**Luke 4:43**

**What did Jesus say was the reason he was sent?**

Jesus said he was sent to preach the good news about the kingdom of God to many other cities.

---

## Chapter 5

<sup>1</sup> Now it happened while the people were crowding around Jesus and listening to the word of God, that he was standing by the lake of Gennesaret. <sup>2</sup> He saw two boats pulled up by the edge of the lake. The fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets. <sup>3</sup> Jesus got into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land. Then he sat down and taught the people out of the boat. <sup>4</sup> When he had finished speaking, he said to Simon, "Take the boat out into the deeper water and let down your nets for a catch."

<sup>5</sup> Simon answered and said, "Master, we have labored all night and caught nothing, but at your word, I will let down the nets." <sup>6</sup> When they had done this, they gathered a very large number of fish, and their nets were breaking. <sup>7</sup> So they motioned to their partners in the other boat that they should come and help them. They came and filled both the boats, so that they began to sink. <sup>8</sup> But Simon Peter, when he saw it, fell down at Jesus' knees, saying, "Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Lord." <sup>9</sup> For he and all who were with him were amazed at the catch of fish which they had taken. <sup>10</sup> And so also were James and John, sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon.

Jesus said to Simon, "Do not be afraid, because from now on you will catch men." <sup>11</sup> When they had brought their boats to land, they left everything and followed him.

<sup>12</sup> It came about that while he was in one of the cities, a man full of leprosy was there. When he saw Jesus, he fell on his face and begged him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

<sup>13</sup> Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." Immediately the leprosy left him.

<sup>14</sup> He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." <sup>15</sup> But the report about him spread even farther, and large crowds of people came together to hear him teach and to be healed of their sicknesses. <sup>16</sup> But he often withdrew into the deserted places and prayed.

<sup>17</sup> It came about on one of those days that he was teaching, and there were Pharisees and teachers of the law sitting there who had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and from Jerusalem. The power of the Lord was with him to heal. <sup>18</sup> Now some men came carrying on a mat a man who was paralyzed, and they looked for a way to bring him inside in order to lay him down in front of Jesus. <sup>19</sup> They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so they went up to the housetop and let the man down through the tiles, on his mat, into the midst of the people, right in front of Jesus. <sup>20</sup> Seeing their faith, Jesus said, "Man, your sins are forgiven you."

<sup>21</sup> The scribes and the Pharisees began to question this, saying, "Who is this who speaks blasphemies? Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

<sup>22</sup> But Jesus, knowing what they were thinking, answered and said to them, "Why are you questioning this in your hearts? <sup>23</sup> Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say 'Get up and walk'? <sup>24</sup> But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins,"—he said to the paralyzed man—"I tell you, get up, pick up your mat and go to your house." <sup>25</sup> Immediately he got up in front of them and picked up the mat on which he was lying. Then he went away to his house, glorifying God.

<sup>26</sup> Everyone was amazed and they glorified God. They were filled with fear, saying, "We have seen extraordinary things today."

<sup>27</sup> After these things happened, Jesus went out from there and saw a tax collector named Levi sitting at the tax collector's tent. He said to him, "Follow me." <sup>28</sup> So Levi got up and followed him, leaving everything behind.

<sup>29</sup> Then Levi gave a big banquet in his house for Jesus. There were many tax collectors there and other people who were reclining at the table and eating with them. <sup>30</sup> But the Pharisees and their scribes were complaining to his disciples, saying, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?"

<sup>31</sup> Jesus answered them, "People who are well do not need a physician; only those who are sick. <sup>32</sup> I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

<sup>33</sup> They said to him, "The disciples of John often fast and pray, and the disciples of the Pharisees do the same. But your disciples eat and drink."

<sup>34</sup> Jesus said to them, "Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them? <sup>35</sup> But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, then in those days they will fast." <sup>36</sup> Then Jesus also spoke a parable to them. "No one tears a piece of cloth from a new garment and uses it to mend an old garment. If he does that, he will tear the new garment, and the piece of cloth from the new garment will not fit with the cloth of the old garment. <sup>37</sup> No one puts new wine into old wineskins. If he does that, the new wine will burst the skins, and the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed. <sup>38</sup> But new wine must be put into fresh wineskins. <sup>39</sup> No one after drinking old wine wants the new, for he says, 'The old is better.'"

---

## Luke 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "You will catch men"

Peter, James, and John were fishermen. When Jesus told them that they would catch men, he was using a metaphor to tell them he wanted them to help people believe the good news about him.

#### Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

#### Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Irony

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees. This passage includes "people in good health" and "righteous people." This does not mean that there are people who do not need Jesus. There are no "righteous people." Everybody needs Jesus. (See: and [Luke 5:31-32](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

In several parts of this chapter the author left out some implicit information that his original readers would have understood and thought about. Modern readers might not know some of those things, so they might have trouble understanding all that the author was communicating. The UDB often shows how that information can be presented so that modern readers will be able to understand those passages.

#### Past Events

Parts of this chapter are sequences of events that have already happened. In a given passage, Luke sometimes writes as if the events have already happened while other events are still in progress (even though they are complete at the time he writes). This can cause difficulty in translation by creating an illogical order of events. It may be necessary to make these consistent by writing as if all the events have already happened.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---



**Luke 5****5:1-11****Why were the people coming to Jesus?**

[5:1]

Luke said that many people went Jesus to hear the “word”(λόγος/g3056) of God. That is, they wanted to hear the things that God told Jesus to say. These were often instructions, warnings, or prophecies. Jesus did this from a boat. Luke said Jesus asked Peter to take him out into the water on Peter’s boat. Jesus sat down in the boat and began to speak the word of God to the people. Teachers often sat when giving instruction during the time of Jesus.

See: [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#)

**Why did Simon not want to fish in the deep water?**

[5:5]

Simon did not want to fish in deeper water because he knew that people fished in deep water at night, not in the day. Simon fished all night the previous night in the deep water. Simon knew this was not a good way to fish. Some scholars think he thought he knew more about fishing than Jesus knew. Other scholars think he tired and was discouraged from fishing all night and not catching anything. In any case, some scholars say Simon respected Jesus because he was a great teacher. He called him “master”(ἐπιστάτης/g1988). Simon finally did what Jesus asked of him. Other scholars say he did what Jesus asked because he knew Jesus could do things that only God could do.

See Map: Capernaum

**Why did Simon bow down to Jesus?**

[5:8]

When Simon Peter saw how many fish he caught, he bowed down to Jesus. This miracle showed Simon that Jesus was more than his master or leader. Jesus has power that only God has. Simon called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). Simon knew himself to be a “sinful man” (ἁμαρτωλός/g0268). In the Old Testament, people often bowed down and did not look at God because they feared God and knew how great he is (see: Isaiah 6:5). Simon and all the people with him were “amazed”(θαμβος/g2285) at what Jesus did.

**Advice to translators:** When someone “bows down” to another person, they either bend at the waist or lie down on the ground. When they did this, they were not as tall as the other person and they did not look at them. This was a way to show respect to people who were greater.

See: [Miracle](#)

**What did Jesus do because Simon was amazed?**

[5:9]

Jesus told Simon to not “fear”(φοβέω/g5399). He told Simon that he will be catching people now, not fish. This was a metaphor. In the same way Peter gathered fish for his work by fishing, Jesus wanted Peter to gather people into the kingdom of God (see: Acts 2:38-42). After Jesus spoke, Simon, James, and John left “everything”(πᾶς/g3956) and followed him.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

**5:12-16****Why did Luke say that the man was “full of leprosy”?**

[5:12]

Some scholars think Luke used the medical term “full of leprosy” because this meant a severe case of leprosy. Luke described a man who was “completely covered”(πλήρης/g4134) with a skin disease called “leprosy”(λέπρα/g3014). A person full of leprosy was unable to be healed.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **What did the leper do when he saw Jesus coming?**

[5:12]

The man with leprosy came to Jesus and “dropped to the ground”(πίπτω/g4098). Some scholars think he heard about Jesus healing many people (see: Luke 4:37). The man called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). He told Jesus that if Jesus wanted him to be healed, he would be healed. He knew that Jesus had the ability to heal him from leprosy. But he knew he had no power to make Jesus do this if Jesus did not want to heal him. However, Jesus said he wanted to heal the man. Jesus told the man to “be cleansed”(καθαρίζω/g2511). The leprosy healed immediately.

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

### **Why did Jesus tell the leper not to tell anyone but go to the priest immediately?**

[5:14]

Jesus told the man he healed to immediately go to the priest. Some scholars think that Jesus did not want to bring attention to himself. Other scholars think Jesus wanted the man to go to the priest and have the priest say that this man was clean. That is, he wanted the Priest to prove he was clean before the man began speaking with other people in the town. If a man with leprosy went into the town, he broke the Law of Moses. The priest had to say he was clean.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Sin](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **What other things did Jesus tell the man with leprosy to do?**

[5:14]

Jesus also told the man to make an offering in the same way the Law of Moses commanded (see: Leviticus 4-7). Jesus said giving this offering showed the man’s healing and cleansing of leprosy. Some scholars think this showed only the priest and those at the temple his healing. Other scholars think this showed all people his healing. For both of these reasons, Jesus wanted the man to obey the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did Jesus go to the wilderness to pray?**

[5:16]

Scholars say Jesus prayed alone in the wilderness (See: Luke 5:16) because he did not want other people to see him. He did not want other people to give him attention for praying. Jesus prayed alone many times. People gave Jesus a lot of attention when he healed people and got rid of their demons. God gave Jesus the strength not to want attention when he prayed. Jesus showed his disciples that he obeyed God in everything he did. God guided him when he prayed.

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#)

## **5:17-26**

### **What was the “power of the Lord” in Jesus?**

[5:17]

Many scholars think that the “power of the Lord” in Jesus was the Holy Spirit (see: Luke 4:18) This made Jesus able to heal people. Some scholars think Luke wanted people to know that God the Father was also with Jesus. That is, all of God’s power gave Jesus the ability to heal people.

### **How did the paralyzed man get to Jesus?**

[5:18]

Luke said the paralyzed man was taken to Jesus on a “bed”(κλίνη/g2825). Most scholars think this was a poor man’s bed. That is, it was a mat or mattress filled with straw. The men carrying the mat went up onto the roof. They took the tiles off the roof of the house and lowered the bed to Jesus in the house (see: Mark 2:3-4).

### **Who believed in Jesus?**

[5:19, 5:20]

Some scholars think it was the men who helped the paralyzed man who believed in Jesus. They did anything they needed to do in order to get their friend to Jesus. They had no doubt that Jesus was able to heal their friend. Other scholars think Jesus also spoke about the paralyzed man who believed in Jesus. The paralyzed man gave permission to his friends to lower him down to Jesus through the roof. He knew Jesus had the ability to heal him.

### **Why did the Pharisees and Scribes say that Jesus insulted God?**

[5:21]

The Pharisees and Scribes said Jesus “insulted God”(βλασφημία/g0988) because Jesus told the paralyzed man that he forgave his sins. The Pharisees and Scribes understood that only God can forgive sin (see: Isaiah 43:25; Psalm 32:5; Psalm 51:4). They did not understand that Jesus is God, and he can forgive sins also.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **How did Jesus know what the Scribes and Pharisees were thinking?**

[5:22]

Scholars say Jesus showed the people that he is God because he knew what the Scribes and Pharisees were thinking.

### **How did Jesus show that he had the power to forgive sins?**

[5:24]

To show that he was able to forgive sins, Jesus healed the paralyzed man. The Jews knew that only God forgives sins and only God heals people. Jesus also knew this. Jesus showed that he was God by healing this man and forgiving his sins.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **5:27-32**

#### **Who was Levi?**

[5:27]

Luke said that Levi was a tax collector. Many scholars think Levi was this man’s name in the Aramaic language. The Book of Matthew said that this tax collector was also called Matthew. Jesus called Matthew one of the first of the twelve apostles. (see: Matthew 10:2-4).

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#); [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

### **How did Jesus respond to the Pharisees when they asked why he ate with sinners?**

[5:31]

Jesus said that “healthy”(ὕγιαινον/g5198) people do not need a doctor. Jesus used the metaphor of someone needing a doctor to talk about people who thought they were at peace with God because they did the right things. They thought they did not need God’s forgiveness for their sins. The Pharisees thought they were at peace with God because they did the right things. They closely followed the Jewish Law. Jesus said to his disciples and to the Pharisees that he had come for the “sick”(κακῶς/g2560). “Sick” was a metaphor talking about sinners.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **Why did Jesus say he “called people to repentance”?**

[5:32]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **What did it mean to fast?**

[5:33]

See: [Fasting](#)

### **Who were the wedding guests and the bridegroom?**

[5:34]

Jesus used the metaphor of wedding guests to speak about all the people who followed him. He used the metaphor of a bridegroom to speak about himself. Many scholars think that much feasting and rejoicing happened at a wedding, not fasting. Jesus spoke clearly that the time for fasting comes when the bridegroom leaves the wedding. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the future when he was going to be crucified.

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#); [Wedding](#); [Fasting](#); [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus talk about old and new clothes?**

[5:36]

Jesus used the metaphor of “old clothes” to speak about a person who was living by Jewish traditions made from their law. Jesus used the metaphor of “new clothes” to speak about those who believed in Jesus. That is, they are changed into something new because of Jesus. Someone cannot become new by just adding new ideas to their old idea. That is, they cannot simply “patch” themselves. Becoming a new person is to be changed into someone completely different. The Holy Spirit inside the Christian makes these changes.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### **Why did Jesus talk about old and new wineskins?**

[5:37]

The old wineskin spoke about the person in their old way of living. That is, they lived in the same way all sinners live. The new wineskin spoke about a person who believed in Jesus. The old wineskin cannot hold the life of Jesus. God works to make a person new when Jesus comes to live in the new person through faith in Jesus.

Many scholars think this last part of the parable spoke directly to the Pharisees. These scholars think Jesus told them they did not want this new idea, that is, believing in Jesus. That is, they found comfort with the old works of the Law of Moses. **Advice to Translators:** A wineskin was a leather sac used to hold wine.

## Luke 5:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus preaches from Simon Peter's boat at the lake of Gennesaret.

### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### listening to the word of God

Possible meanings are 1) "listening to the message God wanted them to hear" or 2) "listening to Jesus's message about God"

### the lake of Gennesaret

These words refer to the Sea of Galilee. Galilee was on the west side of the lake, and the land of Gennesaret was on the east side, so it was called by both names. Some English versions translate this as the proper name of the body of water, "the Lake of Gennesaret."

## Luke 5:2

### washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

## Luke 5:3

**one of the boats, which was Simon's, and**  
"the boat belonging to Simon and"

**asked him to put it out in the water**  
"asked Simon to move the boat"

**he sat down and taught the people**  
Sitting was the normal position for a teacher.

**taught the people out of the boat**  
"taught the people while he sat in the boat." Jesus was in the boat a short distance from the shore and he was speaking to the people who were on the shore.

## Luke 5:4

**When he had finished speaking**  
"When Jesus had finished teaching the people"

## Luke 5:5

**at your word**  
"because you have told me to do this"

## Luke 5:6

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 5:7

### motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

### they began to sink

"the boats began to sink." The reason could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the boats began to sink because the catch of fish was so heavy" or "the boats began to sink because there were so many fish"

## Luke 5:8

### fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

### sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

## Luke 5:9

**the catch of fish**  
"the large number of fish"

## Luke 5:10

### partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in his fishing business"

### you will catch men

The image of catching fish is being used as a metaphor for gathering people to follow Christ. Alternate translation: "you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples"

## Luke 5:11

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 5:12

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a leper in a different city that is not named.

### It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

### a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." This introduces a new character in the story.

**he fell on his face**

Here "fell on his face" is an idiom that means to bow down. Alternate translation: "he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

**if you are willing**

"if you want to"

**you can make me clean**

It is understood that he was asking Jesus to heal him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able"

**make me clean**

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "heal me from leprosy so I will be clean"

**Luke 5:13**

**Be clean**

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Be healed"

**the leprosy left him**

"he no longer had leprosy"

**Luke 5:14**

**He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way"**

Jesus's instruction can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way'"

**to tell no one**

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to not tell anyone that he had been healed"

**sacrifice for your cleansing**

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean, and able to again participate in religious rituals.

**for a testimony**

"as proof of your healing"

**to them**

Possible meanings are 1) "to the priests" or 2) "to all the people."

**Luke 5:15**

**the report about him**

"the news about Jesus." This could mean either "the report about Jesus's healing the man with leprosy" or "the report about Jesus's healing people."

**the report about him spread even farther**

"the report about him went out even farther." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people kept telling the news about him in other places"

**Luke 5:16**

**the deserted places**

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

**Luke 5:17**

**Connecting Statement:**

One day when Jesus was teaching in a building, some men brought a paralyzed man for Jesus to heal.

**It came about**

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

**Luke 5:18**

**Now some men came**

These are new people in the story. Your language may have a way of showing that these are new people.

**mat**

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

**was paralyzed**

"could not move himself"

**Luke 5:19**

**They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so**

In some languages it might be more natural to reorder this. Alternate translation: "But because of the crowd of people, they could not find a way to bring the man inside. So"

**because of the crowd**

It is clear that the reason they could not enter was that the crowd was so large that there was no room for them.

**they went up to the housetop**

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

**right in front of Jesus**

"directly in front of Jesus" or "immediately in front of Jesus"

**Luke 5:20**

**Seeing their faith, Jesus said**

It is understood that they believe Jesus can heal the paralyzed man. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him"

**Man**

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

**your sins are forgiven you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

**Luke 5:21**

**question this**

"discuss this" or "reason about this." What they questioned can be stated. Alternate translation: "discuss whether or not Jesus had authority to forgive sins"

**Who is this who speaks blasphemies?**

This question shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

**Who can forgive sins but God alone?**

The implied information is that if a person claims to forgive sins he says he is God. This can be written as a clear statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

**Luke 5:22**

**Why are you questioning this in your hearts?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

**in your hearts**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings.

**Luke 5:23**

**Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say 'Get up and walk'?**

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said 'Your sins are forgiven you.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

**easier to say**

The unspoken implication is that one thing is "easier to say because no one will know what has happened," but the other thing is "harder to say because everyone will know what has happened." People could not see if the man's sins were forgiven, but they would all know he was healed if he got up and walked.

**Luke 5:24**

**you may know**

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees. The word "you" is plural.

**the Son of Man**

Jesus was referring to himself.

**I tell you**

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man. The word "you" is singular.

**Luke 5:25**

**Immediately he got up**

"At once he got up" or "Right away he got up"

**he got up**

It may be helpful to clearly say that he was healed. Alternate translation: "the man was healed! He got up"

**Luke 5:26**

**filled with fear**

"very afraid" or "filled with awe"

**extraordinary things**

"amazing things" or "strange things"

**Luke 5:27**

**Connecting Statement:**

When Jesus leaves the house, he calls Levi, the Jewish tax collector, to follow him.

**After these things happened**

The phrase "these things" refers to what happened in the previous verses. This signals a new event.

**saw a tax collector**

"looked at a tax collector with attention" or "looked carefully at a tax collector"

**Follow me**

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple. Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

**Luke 5:28**

**followed him, leaving everything behind**

"followed him and left his work as a tax collector"

**Luke 5:29**

**in his house**

"in Levi's house"

**reclining at the table**

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "eating together" or "eating at the table"

**Luke 5:30**

**to his disciples**

"to Jesus's disciples"

**Why do you eat ... sinners?**

The Pharisees and scribes ask this question to express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

**sinners**

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

**you eat and drink with ... sinners**

The Pharisees and scribes believed that religious people should separate themselves from people they consider to be sinners. The word "you" is plural.

**Luke 5:31**

**Connecting Statement:**

At the meal, Jesus speaks with the Pharisees and scribes.

**People who are well ... sick**

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

**physician**

"doctor"

**only those who are sick**

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted. Alternate translation: "only those who are sick need a physician"

**Luke 5:32**

**I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance**

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees because they think of themselves as righteous. Anyone who wants to follow Jesus has to think of himself as a sinner, not as righteous. Jesus does not mean that he thinks there are righteous people who do not need to repent.

**the righteous**

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "righteous people"

**Luke 5:33**

**They said to him**

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

**Luke 5:34**

**Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?**

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about a situation that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

**wedding attendants**

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

**the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast**

Fasting is a sign of sadness. The religious leaders understood that the wedding attendants would not fast while the bridegroom was with them.

**Luke 5:35**

**the days will come when**

"soon" or "some day"

**the bridegroom will be taken away from them**

Jesus is comparing himself to the bridegroom, and the disciples to the wedding attendants. He does not explain the metaphor, so the translation should explain it only if necessary.

**Luke 5:36**

**General Information:**

Jesus tells a story to the scribes and pharisees who were at Levi's house.



**No one tears ... uses it ... he ... he**

"No one rips ... uses it ... he ... he" or "People never tear ... use it ... they ... they"

**mend**  
repair

**will not fit with**

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

### Luke 5:37

**new wine**

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

**wineskins**

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "bags made of skin."

**the new wine will burst the skins**

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out. Jesus's audience would have understood how wine expands when it ferments.

**the wine will be spilled**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the wine will spill out of the bags"

### Luke 5:38

**fresh wineskins**

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to new wineskins, unused.

### Luke 5:39

**drinking old wine ... wants the new**

This metaphor contrasts the old teaching of the religious leaders against the new teaching of Jesus. The point is that people who are used to the old teaching are not willing to listen to the new things that Jesus is teaching.

**for he says, 'The old is better.'**

It may be helpful to add the implicit information. Alternate translation: "for he says, 'The old is better,' and he is therefore not willing to try the new wine."

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 5:4

**After using Simon's boat as a place to teach the people, what did Jesus ask Simon to do with his boat?**

Take the boat out to deeper water and let his nets down into the water to catch some fish.

### Luke 5:5

**Even though Peter had caught nothing the previous night, what did he do?**

He obeyed and let down the nets.

### Luke 5:6

**What happened when they let down the nets?**

They gathered a very large number of fish, so much that their nets were breaking.

### Luke 5:8

**What did Simon then want Jesus to do? Why?**

Simon wanted Jesus to go away from him because Simon knew that he (Simon) was a sinful man.

### Luke 5:10

**What did Jesus say to Simon about his future work?**

Jesus said that from now on he would be catching men.

### Luke 5:15

**At this time, how many people were coming to hear Jesus teach and to be healed of their sicknesses?**

Great crowds of people were coming to Jesus.

### Luke 5:20

**What did Jesus say to the paralyzed man whose friends let him down through the housetop?**

Man, your sins are forgiven you.

### Luke 5:21

**Why did the scribes and the Pharisees think that this statement was blasphemy?**

Because God alone can forgive sins.

### Luke 5:24

**Jesus healed the paralytic man in this way to demonstrate that he had authority on earth to do what?**

Jesus healed the man to demonstrate that he had authority on earth to forgive sins.

### Luke 5:32

**When Jesus was eating and drinking at Levi's house, what did Jesus say that he came to do?**

He came to call sinners to repentance.

**Luke 5:35**

**When did Jesus say that his disciples would fast?**

His disciples would fast after Jesus was taken away from them.

**Luke 5:36**

**In Jesus' parable, what would happen if a new piece of cloth is used to mend an old garment?**

The new cloth would tear, and would not fit the old garment.

**Luke 5:37**

**In Jesus' second parable, what would happen if new wine is put into old wine skins?**

The old wine skins would burst and the new wine would be spilled.

**Luke 5:38**

**What did Jesus say must be done to keep new wine properly?**

New wine must be put into fresh wine skins.

---

## Chapter 6

<sup>1</sup> Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grainfields, and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. <sup>2</sup> But some of the Pharisees said, "Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?"

<sup>3</sup> Answering them, Jesus said, "Have you not even read what David did when he was hungry, he and the men who were with him? <sup>4</sup> He went into the house of God and took the bread of the presence and ate some of it, and also gave some to the men who were with him to eat, even though it was only lawful for the priests to eat it." <sup>5</sup> Then he said to them, "The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

<sup>6</sup> It happened on another Sabbath that he went into the synagogue and taught the people there. A man was there whose right hand was withered. <sup>7</sup> The scribes and the Pharisees were watching him closely to see whether he would heal someone on the Sabbath, so that they might find a reason to accuse him. <sup>8</sup> But he knew what they were thinking and he said to the man whose hand was withered, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone." So the man got up and stood there. <sup>9</sup> Jesus said to them, "I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?" <sup>10</sup> Then he looked around at them all and said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He did so, and his hand was restored. <sup>11</sup> But they were filled with senseless rage, and they talked to each other about what they might do to Jesus.

<sup>12</sup> It happened in those days that he went out to the mountain to pray. He continued all night in prayer to God. <sup>13</sup> When it was day, he called his disciples to him, and he chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles. <sup>14</sup> The names of the apostles were Simon (whom he also named Peter) and his brother Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, <sup>15</sup> Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Simon who was called the Zealot, <sup>16</sup> Judas son of James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a traitor. <sup>17</sup> Then Jesus came down the mountain with them and stood on a level place with a large crowd of his disciples and a large number of the people from Judea and Jerusalem and the seacoast of Tyre and Sidon. <sup>18</sup> They had come to listen to him and to be healed of their diseases. People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed. <sup>19</sup> Everyone in the crowd kept trying to touch him because power to heal was coming out from him, and he healed them all.

<sup>20</sup> Then he looked at his disciples and said,

"Blessed are you who are poor,  
for yours is the kingdom of God.

<sup>21</sup> Blessed are you who hunger now,  
for you will be filled.  
Blessed are you who weep now,  
for you will laugh.

<sup>22</sup> Blessed are you when people hate you,  
and when they exclude you and insult you  
and reject your name as evil,  
because of the Son of Man.

<sup>23</sup> Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, because you will surely have a great reward in heaven, for their ancestors treated the prophets in the same way.

<sup>24</sup> But woe to you who are rich,  
for you have already received your comfort.

<sup>25</sup> Woe to you who are full now,  
for you will be hungry later.  
Woe to you who laugh now,  
for you will mourn and weep later.

<sup>26</sup> Woe to you when all men speak well of you,  
for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets.

<sup>27</sup> "But I say to you who are listening, love your enemies and do good to those who hate you. <sup>28</sup> Bless those who curse you and pray for those who mistreat you. <sup>29</sup> To him who strikes you on the one cheek, offer him also the other. If someone takes away your coat, do not withhold your tunic either. <sup>30</sup> Give to

everyone who asks you. If someone takes away something that belongs to you, do not ask him to give it back to you. <sup>31</sup> As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them. <sup>32</sup> If you only love people who love you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners love those who love them. <sup>33</sup> If you do good only to people who do good to you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners do the same. <sup>34</sup> If you only lend to people from whom you hope to be repaid, what reward is there for you? Even sinners lend to sinners, to receive back the same amount. <sup>35</sup> But love your enemies and do good to them. Lend, expecting nothing in return, and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, for he himself is kind toward unthankful and evil people. <sup>36</sup> Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful. <sup>37</sup> Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive others, and you will be forgiven. <sup>38</sup> Give, and it will be given to you. A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap. For with the measure you use, it will be measured back to you."

<sup>39</sup> Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not? <sup>40</sup> A disciple is not greater than his teacher, but everyone when he is fully trained will be like his teacher. <sup>41</sup> Why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye? <sup>42</sup> How can you say to your brother, 'Brother, let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,' when you yourself do not even see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in your brother's eye. <sup>43</sup> For there is no good tree that produces rotten fruit, nor is there a rotten tree that produces good fruit. <sup>44</sup> For each tree is known by the kind of fruit it produces. For people do not gather figs from a thornbush, nor do they gather grapes from a briar bush. <sup>45</sup> The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

<sup>46</sup> "Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say? <sup>47</sup> Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like. <sup>48</sup> He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock. When a flood came, the torrent of water flowed against that house but could not shake it, because it had been well built. <sup>49</sup> But the person who hears my words and does not obey them, he is like a man who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation. When the torrent of water flowed against that house, it immediately collapsed, and the ruin of that house was complete."

## Luke 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Luke 6:20-49 contains many blessings and woes that appear to correspond to Matthew 5-7. This part of Matthew has traditionally been called the "Sermon on the Mount." In Luke, they are not as connected to a teaching on the kingdom of God as they are in Matthew's gospel. (See: [kingdomofgod](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Eating the grain"

When the disciples plucked and ate the grain in a field they were walking through on the Sabbath ([Luke 6:1](#)), the Pharisees said that they were breaking the law of Moses. The Pharisees said that the disciples were doing work by picking the grain and so disobeying God's command to rest and not work on the Sabbath.

The Pharisees did not think the disciples were stealing. That is because the law of Moses required farmers to allow travelers to pluck and eat small amounts of grain from plants in fields they traveled through or near. (See: [lawofmoses](#) and [works and sabbath](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. Jesus used a metaphor of a generous grain merchant to teach his people to be generous

### Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are questions to which the speaker already knows the answer. The Pharisees scolded Jesus by asking him a rhetorical question when they thought he was breaking the Sabbath

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Luke wrote that the disciples were rubbing the heads of grain between their hands, he expected his reader to know that they were separating the part they would eat from what they would throw away

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

## Luke 6

### 6:1-5

#### Why did the Pharisees not want Jesus and his disciples to pick grain?

[6:1, 6:2]

The Pharisees did not want Jesus and his disciples to pick grain on the Sabbath. The Law of Moses said that people cannot harvest grain on the Sabbath. But, the religious teachers said that picking grain on the Sabbath and harvesting grain on the Sabbath were the same activity. They said that both broke the Law of Moses. But, the Law of Moses says that it is good for a person to pick grain if they are hungry. However, they cannot use a tool to cut the grain (see: Deuteronomy 23:25).

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#); [Law of Moses](#)

#### How did Jesus respond to the Pharisees?

[6:3, 6:4]

Jesus told the Pharisees about when David went to the house of God and “received”(λαμβάνω/g2983) the bread from the priest. The priest made new bread every Sabbath day. The Law gave the old bread to the priest for food. The Law of Moses always said to do good things, even on the Sabbath. The priest did a good thing by giving David and his men the bread because they were hungry.

See: 1 Samuel 21:6

See: [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#)

#### Why did Jesus say that the “Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath”?

[6:5]

Jesus said that the “Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath” because he is God, and God made the laws in the Law of Moses about the Sabbath. That is, because he made the Sabbath, he can say what can and cannot be done on the Sabbath (see: Genesis 2:3; Exodus 20:8-11). Genesis said that “God” (אלהים/h0430) created heaven and earth (see: Genesis 1:1). The Hebrew word for God is in the plural form. Also, God said in the plural, “Let us make” (see: Genesis 1:26). This means that God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit helped create heaven and earth. That is, God the Son, Jesus, created heaven and earth and also created the laws about the Sabbath (see: John 1:1-5; Colossians 1:15-18).

See: [Trinity](#); [Son of Man](#); [Sabbath](#); [Trinity](#)

## 6:6-11

### Why did the Scribes and Pharisees become angry when Jesus healed a person?

[6:11]

The Scribes and Pharisees said giving medical help on the Sabbath was work. The Scribes and Pharisees said the things they taught must be obeyed in the same way people obeyed the Law of Moses. However, nothing in the Law of Moses said giving medical help on the Sabbath day was wrong. The Old Testament made it clear that it was always lawful to do good everyday of the week (see: Deuteronomy 22:1-4).

See: Luke 13:10-17

See: [Miracle](#); [Pharisees](#); [Sabbath](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Miracle](#)

## 6:12-16

### Why did Jesus go to the mountain to pray?

[6:12]

Perhaps Jesus went to the mountain to talk with God about the apostles. That is, he was about to choose those to be his special disciples. Luke does not say how many disciples Jesus had when he called them to be apostles. Later in Luke’s gospel, he spoke about his having seventy other disciples (see: Luke 10:1).

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Pray \(Prayer\)](#)

### Why did Jesus choose twelve of the disciples to be apostles?

[6:13]

Some scholars think that in the same way there were twelve tribes of Israel, Jesus chose twelve disciples to be apostles. They think Jesus chose the twelve apostles to be the new spiritual leaders of Israel. They think Jesus wanted these apostles to lead Israel based on the promises of the New Covenant (see: Jeremiah 31:31-33). Other scholars think Jesus chose the twelve apostles to be the spiritual leaders of the church, and not the new leaders of Israel. The Apostle Paul spoke about apostles and prophets being the foundation of God’s household. They held up the church with the truth of the gospel in the same way a house is held up by its foundation. That is, they lead the church, told others about the gospel, and protected the gospel from false teachers. The household of God consisted of both Christian Jews and Christian Gentiles (see: Ephesians 2:19-20; 3:1-7).

See: [Church](#); [Gospel](#); [Tribes of Israel](#); [Disciple](#); [Apostle](#); [New Covenant](#); [Church](#)

## 6:17-19

### Why did the crowds wait for Jesus and his disciples?

[6:17, 6:18]

The crowds waited for Jesus because they wanted to hear him teach. Also, they wanted him to heal them from their sicknesses. These people never heard anyone teach in the way Jesus taught. No one ever healed others in the same way that Jesus healed. Many people went to Jesus so they could touch him and be healed. They wanted to touch him because healing power was coming from him. Jesus healed people

who were attacked by evil, unclean spirits. Many more of Jesus' disciples were in the crowds that came to Jesus.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

See Map: Jerusalem; Judea; Tyre; Sidon

## 6:20-23

### To whom did Jesus teach?

[6:20]

Luke wrote that Jesus looked at his disciples when he taught. This was the twelve apostles who came down the mountain with him. Also, it was the larger crowd of Jesus' disciples waiting for him to come down from the mountain (see: Luke 6:17).

See: [Apostle](#); [Apostle](#)

### What four things did Jesus teach that God approved?

[6:20, 6:21, 6:22, 6:23]

1. Jesus taught that God approved of those who were "poor" (πτωχός/g4434). Some scholars think Jesus spoke of people who did not have food, clothing, or shelter. Other scholars think Jesus spoke of the spiritually poor (see: Matthew 5:3). That is, they knew their great need for God, or people treated them badly (see: Matthew 5:10).
2. Jesus taught that God approved of those who were hungry. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about people who did not have food. These scholars think when God promised to feed people who were hungry, he was thinking about a feast held in heaven (see: Luke 13:29). Other scholars think Jesus spoke using a metaphor. He wanted to say that those who were hungry and thirsty really wanted to do the things that God wanted them to do (see: Matthew 5:6). These scholars think the words, "you will be filled" spoke about God's promise to approve those who hungered for him in this way.
3. Jesus taught that God approved those who "weep" (κλαίω/g2799). God promised them that their weeping will change to laughter. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about people being sorry for their sin or for the sins of other people. This sorrow caused them to weep. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about the evil of the world. This also caused Christians to weep. These scholars think Jesus spoke about the day when God gathers his people into his kingdom. There will be no weeping in the kingdom of God. There, all weeping will be changed to laughter (see: Jeremiah 31:13; Revelation 7:17; 21:4).
4. Jesus taught that God approves the disciples when people hate them for following Jesus. That is, when others treat Christians badly for following Jesus, Jesus told them to "rejoice" (χαίρω/g5463). Their reward will be in heaven when they die (see: Romans 5:3-5; 1 Peter 4:13).

See: Matthew 5:3; Ephesians 2:1-5

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

## 6:24-26

### What four things did Jesus teach that God did not reward?

[6:24, 6:25, 6:26]

1. Jesus said "woe" (οὐαί/g3759) to rich people. That is, disaster comes for people who trust in the things they own or in what they know. Jesus said these people received their reward here on this earth. No reward is given to them in heaven (see: Luke 12:16-21).
2. Jesus said "woe" to the "full" (ἐμπλήρη/g1705) people. That is, they do not think they needed God because they meet their own needs. However, Jesus warned them and said they will hunger. That is, spiritual hunger destroys them after their death (see: Luke 16:19-30; Isaiah 65:13-14).

3. God warned those who “laugh”(γελάω/g1070) now. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a certain type of laughing. That is, he warned those who do not take care of the needs of others. Jesus said these people will one day weep and mourn.
4. Jesus said “woe” to you if people only say good things about you. Many people said evil things about Jesus because they hated his message. Jesus told the crowd that their fathers spoke good things which were said by false prophets (see: Jeremiah 5:31).

See: [Reward](#); [Reward](#)

## 6:27-36

### Why did Jesus talk to those “who hear”?

[6:27]

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking to his disciples when he said, “I say to you who hear”(ἀκούω/g0191) (see: 6:20-26). Jesus only spoke to the whole crowd around him after he spoke to the disciples. Other scholars think that when Jesus said, “I say to you who hear,” he was speaking to those who listened and obeyed his words. That is, they obeyed because they heard.

See: [Disciple](#)

### What three things did Jesus tell his disciples to do?

[6:27, 6:28, 6:29]

1. Jesus told his disciples to “love”(ἀγαπάω/g0025) their enemies. That is, they needed to be respectful to those who hated them and do good to those who hated them. Jesus said the world hated him, it will also hate people who believe in Jesus (see: John 15:18). God rewards those who give this type of love to others (see: 6:32,35).
2. Jesus told his disciples to “do good”(καλῶς/g2573) to those who hate them. That is, they need to be kind to those who hate them. In the same way Jesus taught about love, Christians are not to want to be treated kindly simply because they treated others kindly (see: Luke 6:33, 35). Christians show kindness in two ways. First, they speak good about a person who speaks evil of them. Second, they pray for the people who treat them badly.
3. Jesus told his disciples to give to those who ask to borrow something from them. In the same way Christians are to love and do good without wanting anything for this, they are to give whatever is asked of them without wanting to get anything back from the one who asked (see: Luke 6:34-35).

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

### How did God the Father show mercy to people?

[6:36]

Some scholars think Jesus said God the Father shows mercy to people by not getting angry quickly. He also gives approval and unchanging love to them (see: Psalm 103:8). Luke later said that Jesus told a story of a man who showed the same type of mercy that the Father shows (see: Luke 10:30-37).

## 6:37-38

### How did Jesus tell Christians to treat others?

[6:37]

Jesus told Christians not to “judge”(κρίνω/g2919). Only God can judge a person because he knows what a person really wants, even if they do not tell anyone or do not know themselves. Also, Jesus told believers not to “condemn”(καταδικάζω/g2613) others. Only God can condemn.



Jesus told Christians to forgive others. That is, Christians are to forgive others when they do something wrong to them. This is not the same forgiveness for disobeying God. Only God can forgive those sins. Also, Jesus told Christians to freely “give”(δίδωμι/g1325) to others. That is, to meet the needs of others.

### **What was a “good measure?”**

[6:38]

Jesus said the metaphor “good measure” to tell Christians about how valuable it was to give a lot to others. In the days of Jesus, the shop owners measured and sold their grain by pouring it into a person’s lap. The people wore a robe with a fold between their legs. A seller measured the grain and filled the fold of the robe. The fold was then pressed together and shaken. This made space for more grain. The seller then poured more grain into the fold of the robe until it went over the top of the fold.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### **6:39-42**

#### **Why did Jesus tell this parable?**

[6:39]

Jesus used this parable to say that his disciples needed to be “fully trained”(καταρτίζω/g2675). Once they become fully trained, they will teach others. A fully trained disciple is one who understands God’s word fully. That is, because he understands God’s word fully, he does what God wants him to do (see: Hebrews 5:12-14). A fully trained disciple is one who knows when they hear a false teacher. Jesus said these false teachers were blind. That is, they were blind to true things about God. He told his disciples to not follow the teachings of a blind, false teacher.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### **6:43-45**

#### **What was the “treasure” of a person’s heart?**

[6:45]

Jesus used the word “treasure” to say how valuable the works were from a person’s “heart”(καρδία/g2588). When the Bible wrote about a person’s “heart,” it meant a person’s inner self. A person who did not believe in Jesus was under the control of the devil (see: Ephesians 2:1-3). But a person who believed in Jesus was a new creation. The Holy Spirit controlled them (see: 2 Corinthians 5:17; Ephesians 1:13-14).

In the same way a tree grew only one type of fruit, a person spoke what was in their heart. This was not both good and evil.

See: [Sanctify \(Sanctification\)](#); [Sanctify \(Sanctification\)](#)

### **6:46-49**

#### **Why did Jesus say that being his disciple was like building a house?**

[6:48]

Jesus said that in the same way a house was built on a solid foundation, a Christian needed to trust Jesus so that they were able to withstand the devil. Jesus’s words were their solid foundation. Jesus said that he was the cornerstone of the house (see: Ephesians 2:19-21). That is, he is the cornerstone of the church. In the same way a house with a solid foundation will not be destroyed during a severe storm, so a Christian who follows Jesus’s words will not be destroyed when the devil attacks them.

Also, in the same way a house without a solid foundation is easily destroyed when a severe storm comes, someone who does not follow Jesus’ words will be destroyed by the works of the enemy, the devil.

**Advice to translators:** A foundation is the base or bottom part of a house. If a foundation is not made well, then the whole house cannot be made well. A cornerstone is the first stone put in place in a house or

building. After this stone is put into place, it affects the rest of the house. If it is put into crooked, then the whole house will be crooked.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

---

## Luke 6:1

### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are walking through grainfields, some Pharisees begin to question the disciples about what they are doing on the Sabbath, which, in God's law, has been set aside for God.

### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you can consider using it here.

### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. It holds the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

### grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating

They did this to separate the grain seeds. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "grain. They rubbed them in their hands to separate the grains from the husks and ate"

## Luke 6:2

### General Information:

The word "you" here is plural, and refers to the disciples.

### Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

They asked this question to accuse the disciples of breaking the law. It can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Picking grain on the Sabbath is against God's law!"

### doing something

The Pharisees considered even the small action of rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "doing work"

## Luke 6:3

### Have you not even read ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read ... him!" or "Certainly you have read ... him!"

## Luke 6:4

### the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of Yahweh's presence" or "the bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread"

## Luke 6:5

### The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

### is Lord of the Sabbath

The title "Lord" here emphasizes his authority over the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath!"

## Luke 6:6

### General Information:

It is now another Sabbath day and Jesus is in the synagogue.

### Connecting Statement:

The scribes and Pharisees watch as Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath.

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event in the story.

### A man was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

### hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It was probably almost bent into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

## Luke 6:7

### were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

### so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

## Luke 6:8

### in the middle of everyone

"in front of everyone." Jesus wanted the man to stand where everyone there could see him.

## Luke 6:9

**to them**  
"to the Pharisees"

**I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?**  
Jesus asks this question to force the Pharisees to admit that he was right to heal on the Sabbath. The intent of the question is thus rhetorical: to get them to admit what they all know is true rather than to obtain information. However, Jesus says, "I ask you," so this question is not like other rhetorical questions that might need to be translated as statements. This should be translated as a question.

**to do good or to do harm**  
"to help someone or to harm someone"

## Luke 6:10

**Stretch out your hand**  
"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

**restored**  
healed

## Luke 6:11

**General Information:**  
This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 6:12

**General Information:**  
Jesus chooses twelve apostles after he prays all night.

**It happened in those days**  
This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

**in those days**  
"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

**he went out**  
"Jesus went out"

## Luke 6:13

**When it was day**  
"When it was morning" or "The next day"

**he chose twelve of them**  
"he chose twelve of the disciples"

**whom he also named apostles**  
"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

## Luke 6:14

**The names of the apostles were**  
Luke wrote a list of the names of the apostles. The ULB uses these words to introduce the list.

**his brother Andrew**  
"Simon's brother, Andrew"

## Luke 6:15

**the Zealot**  
Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that indicates he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that indicates he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

## Luke 6:16

**became a traitor**  
It may be necessary to explain what "traitor" means in this context. Alternate translation: "betrayed his friend" or "turned his friend over to enemies"

## Luke 6:17

**Connecting Statement:**  
Though Jesus especially addresses his disciples, there are many people around who listen.

**with them**  
"with the twelve he had chosen" or "with his twelve apostles"

## Luke 6:18

**to be healed**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Jesus to heal them"

**People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits"

**troubled with unclean spirits**  
"bothered by unclean spirits" or "controlled by evil spirits"

## Luke 6:19

**power to heal was coming out from him**  
"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

## Luke 6:20

### **Blessed are you**

Jesus speaks this phrase three times. Each time, it indicates that God gives favor to certain people or that their situation is positive or good.

### **Blessed are you who are poor**

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

### **for yours is the kingdom of God**

Languages that do not have a word for kingdom might say, "for God is your king" or "because God is your ruler."

### **yours is the kingdom of God**

"the kingdom of God belongs to you." This could mean 1) "you belong to God's kingdom" or 2) "you will have authority in God's kingdom."

## Luke 6:21

### **you will laugh**

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

## Luke 6:22

### **Blessed are you**

"You receive God's favor" or "You benefit" or "How good it is for you"

### **exclude you**

"reject you"

### **because of the Son of Man**

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject the Son of Man"

## Luke 6:23

### **in that day**

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

### **leap for joy**

This idiom means "be extremely joyful"

### **a great reward**

"a large payment" or "good gifts"

## Luke 6:24

### **woe to you**

"how terrible it is for you." Jesus speaks this phrase three times. It is the opposite of "blessed are you." Each time, it indicates that God's anger is directed at the people, or that something negative or bad awaits them.

### **woe to you who are rich**

"how terrible it is for you who are rich" or "trouble will come to you who are rich"

### **your comfort**

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

## Luke 6:25

### **who are full now**

"whose stomachs are full now" or "who eat much now"

### **who laugh now**

"who are happy now"

## Luke 6:26

### **Woe to you**

"How terrible it is for you" or "How sad you should be"

### **when all men speak**

Here "men" is used in the generic sense the includes all people. Alternate translation: "when all people speak" or "when everyone speaks"

### **that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets**

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

## Luke 6:27

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples and the crowd who is listening to him as well.

### **to you who are listening**

Jesus now begins to speak to the entire crowd, rather than just to his disciples.

### **love ... do good**

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

### **love your enemies and**

This does not mean those listening were to only love their enemies and not their friends. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "love your enemies, not only your friends, and"

## Luke 6:28

### **Bless ... pray**

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

### **Bless those**

God is the one who blesses. This can made explicit. Alternate translation: "Ask God to bless those"

**those who curse you**  
 "those who habitually curse you"

**those who mistreat you**  
 "those who habitually mistreat you"

#### Luke 6:29

**To him who strikes you**  
 "If anyone hits you"

**on the one cheek**  
 "on one side of your face"

**offer him also the other**  
 It may be helpful to state what the attacker will do to the person. Alternate translation: "turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also"

**do not withhold**  
 "do not prevent him from taking"

#### Luke 6:30

**Give to everyone who asks you**  
 "If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

**do not ask him to give**  
 "do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

#### Luke 6:31

**As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them**  
 In some languages it may be more natural to reverse the order. Alternate translation: "You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people the way you want them to treat you"

#### Luke 6:32

**what reward is there for you?**  
 "what reward will you receive?" or "what praise will you receive for doing that?" This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that." or "God will not reward you for that."

#### Luke 6:33

**General Information:**  
 This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 6:34

**people from whom you hope to be repaid**  
 Here the word "hope" means to confidently expect that what one desires will happen. The person who hopes in this way believes that what he desires will happen. The verb "to be repaid" can be expressed

with an active form. Alternate translation: "people whom you expect will repay you" or "people whom you believe will repay you"

**to receive back the same amount**  
 The law of Moses commanded the Jews not to receive interest on money they loaned to other Jews.

#### Luke 6:35

**expecting nothing in return**  
 "not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

**your reward will be great**  
 "you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

**you will be sons of the Most High**  
 It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

**sons of the Most High**  
 Make sure that the word "sons" is plural so it is not confused with Jesus's title "The Son of the Most High."

**unthankful and evil people**  
 "people who do not thank him and who are evil"

#### Luke 6:36

**your Father**  
 This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 6:37

**Do not judge**  
 "Do not judge people" or "Do not harshly criticize people"

**and you**  
 "and as a result you"

**you will not be judged**  
 Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

**Do not condemn**  
 "Do not condemn people"

**you will not be condemned**  
 Jesus does not say who will not condemn. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not condemn you" or 2) "no one will condemn you"

**you will be forgiven**

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

**Luke 6:38**

**it will be given to you**

Jesus does not say exactly who will give. Possible meanings are 1) "someone will give it to you" or 2) "God will give it to you"

**A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap**

Jesus speaks either of God or of people giving generously as if he were speaking of a generous grain merchant. Alternate translation: "God will pour into your lap a generous amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over" or "Like a generous grain merchant who presses down the grain and shakes it together and pours in so much grain that it spills over, they will give generously to you"

**A good amount**

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

**it will be measured back to you**

Jesus does not say exactly who will measure. Possible meanings are 1) "they will measure things back to you" or 2) "God will measure things back to you"

**Luke 6:39**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus includes some examples to make his point.

**Can a blind person guide another blind person?**

Jesus used this question to get the people to think about something that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We all know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

**blind person**

The person who is "blind" is a metaphor for a person who has not been taught as a disciple.

**If he did**

Some languages might prefer, "if one did."

**they would both fall into a pit, would they not?**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "both of them would fall into a hole."

**Luke 6:40**

**A disciple is not greater than his teacher**

"A disciple does not surpass his teacher." Possible meanings are 1) "A disciple does not have more knowledge than his teacher" or 2) "A disciple does not have more authority than his teacher."

**everyone when he is fully trained**

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every disciple whose teacher has fully taught him"

**Luke 6:41**

**Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?**

Jesus uses this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

**the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye**

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

**tiny piece of straw**

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

**brother**

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

**do not notice the log that is in your own eye**

"do not notice that you have a log in your own eye"

**the log that is in your own eye**

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

**log**

"beam" or "plank"

**Luke 6:42**

**How can you say ... eye?**

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... eye."

**Luke 6:43**

**General Information:**

People can tell if a tree is good or bad, and what type of tree it is, by the fruit it produces. Jesus uses this as an unexplained metaphor—we know what kind of person someone is when we see his actions.

**For there is**

"This is because there is." This indicates that what follows is the reason why we should not judge our brother.

**good tree**  
"healthy tree"

**rotten fruit**  
fruit that is decaying or bad or worthless

#### **Luke 6:44**

**each tree is known**  
People recognize the kind of tree by the fruit it bears. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people know the type of a tree" or "people recognize a tree"

**thornbush**  
a plant or shrub that has thorns

**briar bush**  
a vine or shrub that has thorns

#### **Luke 6:45**

**General Information:**  
Jesus compares the thoughts of a person to his good or evil treasure. When a good person has good thoughts, he engages in good actions. When an evil person thinks evil thoughts, he engages in evil actions.

**The good man**  
The word "good" here means righteous or moral.

**good man**  
The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female. Alternate translation: "good person"

**the good treasure of his heart**  
Here the good thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were treasures stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the good things he values very intensely"

**produces what is good**  
Producing what is good is a metaphor for doing what is good. Alternate translation: "does what is good"

**the evil treasure of his heart**  
Here the evil thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were evil things stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the evil things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the evil things he values very intensely"

**out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks**  
Here "heart" represents the person's mind or inner being. The phrase "his mouth" represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his

mouth" or "a person will speak aloud what truly values inside of himself"

#### **Luke 6:46**

**Lord, Lord**  
Here the repetition of these words is used as an exclamation. People repeat a name or title in this way when trying to find someone or to get someone's attention.

#### **Luke 6:47**

**General Information:**  
In verse 47-48 Jesus compares the person who obeys his teaching to a man who builds a house on rock where it will be safe from floods.

**Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like**  
It may be clearer to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

#### **Luke 6:48**

**dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock**  
"dug down deep into the ground until he found a large, solid rock. Then he built his house on that rock so that it would be strong and stable." Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a house and may need to use another image for a stable foundation.

**torrent of water**  
"fast-moving water" or "river"

**flowed against**  
"crashed against"

**shake it**  
Possible meanings are 1) "cause it to shake" or 2) "destroy it."

**because it had been well built**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the man had built it well"

#### **Luke 6:49**

**General Information:**  
Jesus compares the person who hears but does not obey his teaching to a man who builds a house that has no foundation and so will collapse when the flood comes.

**But the person**  
"But" shows a strong contrast to the previous person who built with a foundation.

**on top of the ground without a foundation**

Some cultures may not know that a house with a foundation is stronger. Additional information may be helpful. Alternate translation: "but he did not dig down and build first a foundation"

**torrent of water**

"fast-moving water" or "river"

**flowed against**

"crashed against"

**collapsed**

fell down or came apart

**the ruin of that house was complete**

"that house was completely destroyed"

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 6:1

**What were Jesus' disciples doing on the Sabbath that the Pharisees said was against the law?**

They were picking heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain.

### Luke 6:5

**What title did Jesus claim for himself that gave him the authority to say what was lawful to do on the Sabbath?**  
Jesus claimed the title, Lord of the Sabbath.

### Luke 6:11

**When Jesus healed the man with the shriveled hand on the Sabbath, how did the scribes and Pharisees react?**  
They were filled with anger, and talked about what they might do to Jesus.

### Luke 6:13

**What was the name given to the twelve men that Jesus chose on the mountain?**  
Jesus called them "apostles."

### Luke 6:20

**What kind of people did Jesus say were blessed?**  
Those who are poor, hungry, weeping, and hated for the Son of Man's sake are blessed.

### Luke 6:21

**What kind of people did Jesus say were blessed?**  
Those who are poor, hungry, weeping, and hated for the Son of Man's sake are blessed.

### Luke 6:23

**According to Jesus, why should such people rejoice and leap for joy?**  
Because they will have a great reward in heaven.

### Luke 6:27

**How did Jesus say his disciples should treat their enemies and those who hate them?**

They should love their enemies and do good to those who hate them.

### Luke 6:35

**What is the Most High Father's attitude toward unthankful and evil people?**  
He is kind and merciful toward them.

### Luke 6:36

**What is the Most High Father's attitude toward unthankful and evil people?**  
He is kind and merciful toward them.

### Luke 6:42

**Before removing the speck from our brother's eye, what did Jesus say we must do first?**  
First, we must remove the log from our own eyes so that we are not hypocrites.

### Luke 6:45

**What comes forth from the good treasure in a good man's heart?**  
What comes forth from a good man's heart is good.

**What comes forth from the evil treasure in an evil man's heart?**

What comes forth from an evil man's heart is evil.

### Luke 6:47

**The man who builds a house on the solid rock does what with Jesus' words?**  
He hears Jesus' words and obeys them.

### Luke 6:49

**The man who builds a house without a foundation does what with Jesus' words?**  
He hears Jesus' words and does not obey them.



## Chapter 7

<sup>1</sup> After Jesus had finished everything he was saying in the hearing of the people, he entered Capernaum.

<sup>2</sup> Now a centurion had a slave who was highly regarded by him, and he was sick and about to die. <sup>3</sup> When the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent to him elders of the Jews, asking him to come and heal his servant. <sup>4</sup> When they had come to Jesus, they asked him earnestly, saying, "He is worthy to have you do this for him, <sup>5</sup> because he loves our nation, and he is the one who built the synagogue for us."

<sup>6</sup> So Jesus continued on his way with them. But when he was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to say to him, "Lord, do not trouble yourself, because I am not worthy for you to come under my roof. <sup>7</sup> For this reason I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you, but just say a word and my servant will be healed. <sup>8</sup> For I also am a man who is under authority, with soldiers under me. I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."

<sup>9</sup> When Jesus heard this, he was amazed at him, and turning to the crowd following him said, "I say to you, not even in Israel have I found such faith." <sup>10</sup> When those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the servant was healthy.

<sup>11</sup> Soon after that, Jesus went to a town called Nain, and his disciples and a great crowd went with him.

<sup>12</sup> As he came near to the gate of the town, behold, a man who had died was being carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd from the town was with her. <sup>13</sup> When the Lord saw her, he was deeply moved with compassion for her and said to her, "Do not cry." <sup>14</sup> Then he went up and touched the wooden frame on which they carried the body, and those carrying it stood still. He said, "Young man, I say to you, arise." <sup>15</sup> The dead man sat up and began to speak, and Jesus gave him to his mother.

<sup>16</sup> Then fear overcame all of them, and they kept praising God, saying, "A great prophet has been raised among us" and "God has looked upon his people." <sup>17</sup> This news about Jesus spread throughout the whole of Judea and all the neighboring regions.

<sup>18</sup> John's disciples told him about all these things. Then John called two of his disciples <sup>19</sup> and sent them to the Lord to say, "Are you the one who is to come, or should we look for another?"

<sup>20</sup> When they had come near to Jesus, the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'"

<sup>21</sup> In that hour he healed many people from sicknesses and afflictions and from evil spirits, and to many blind people he gave sight. <sup>22</sup> Jesus answered and said to them, "After you have gone on your way, report to John what you have seen and heard. Blind people are receiving sight, lame people are walking, lepers are being cleansed, deaf people are hearing, people who have died are being raised back to life, and the poor are being told good news. <sup>23</sup> The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed."

<sup>24</sup> After John's messengers had gone away, Jesus began to say to the crowds about John, "What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? <sup>25</sup> But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes? Look, those who wear splendid clothing and who live in luxury are in kings' palaces. <sup>26</sup> But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet. <sup>27</sup> This is he of whom it is written,

'See, I am sending my messenger before your face,  
who will prepare your way before you.'

<sup>28</sup> I say to you, among those born of women none is greater than John. Yet the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is." <sup>29</sup> (When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John. <sup>30</sup> But the Pharisees and the experts in the law rejected God's purpose for themselves, because they had not been

baptized by John.) <sup>31</sup> "To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like? <sup>32</sup> They are like children playing in the marketplace, who sit and call to one another and say,

'We played a flute for you,  
and you did not dance.

We sang a funeral song,

and you did not cry.' <sup>33</sup> For John the Baptist came eating no bread and drinking no wine, and you say, 'He has a demon.' <sup>34</sup> The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' <sup>35</sup> But wisdom is justified by all her children."

<sup>36</sup> Now one of the Pharisees invited Jesus to eat with him. So after Jesus entered into the Pharisee's house, he reclined at the table to eat. <sup>37</sup> Behold, there was a woman in the city who was a sinner. When she found out that he was reclining at the table in the Pharisee's house, she brought an alabaster jar of perfumed oil. <sup>38</sup> As she stood behind him near his feet, weeping, she began to wet his feet with her tears, and she wiped them with her hair and kissed them and anointed them with perfumed oil. <sup>39</sup> When the Pharisee who had invited Jesus saw this, he thought to himself, saying, "If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner."

<sup>40</sup> Jesus responded and said to him, "Simon, I have something to say to you."

He said, "Say it, Teacher!"

<sup>41</sup> Jesus said, "A certain moneylender had two debtors. The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty. <sup>42</sup> When they could not pay him, he forgave them both. Therefore, which of them will love him more?"

<sup>43</sup> Simon answered him and said, "I suppose the one whom he forgave the most."

Jesus said to him, "You have judged correctly." <sup>44</sup> Jesus turned to the woman and said to Simon, "You see this woman. I have entered into your house. You gave me no water for my feet, but she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair. <sup>45</sup> You did not give me a kiss, but from the time I came in she did not stop kissing my feet. <sup>46</sup> You did not anoint my head with oil, but she has anointed my feet with perfumed oil. <sup>47</sup> For this reason I say to you, her sins, which were many, have been forgiven—for she loved much. But the one who is forgiven little, loves little." <sup>48</sup> Then he said to her, "Your sins are forgiven."

<sup>49</sup> Those reclining together began to say among themselves, "Who is this that even forgives sins?"

<sup>50</sup> Then Jesus said to the woman, "Your faith has saved you. Go in peace."

---

## Luke 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 7:27.

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Centurion

The centurion who asked Jesus to heal his slave ([Luke 7:2](#)) was doing many unusual things. A Roman soldier would almost never go to a Jew for anything, and most wealthy people did not love or care for their slaves. (See: centurion and faith)

### **John's Baptism**

John baptized people to show that those he was baptizing knew they were sinners and were sorry for their sin. (See: repent and sin)

### **"Sinners"**

Luke refers to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders considered these people to be hopelessly ignorant of the law of Moses, and so called them "sinners." In reality, the leaders were sinful. This situation can be taken as irony.

### **"Feet"**

The feet of the people in the ancient Near East were very dirty because they wore sandals and the roads and trails were dusty and muddy. Only slaves washed other people's feet. The woman who washed Jesus's feet was showing him great honor.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **"Son of Man"**

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---

## **Luke 7**

### **7:1-10**

#### **Where is Capernaum?**

[7:1]

See Map: Capernaum

#### **What was a centurion?**

[7:2]

A centurion was a type of Roman soldier. They led 100 soldiers.

See: [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#)

#### **Why did the centurion send two groups of people to Jesus?**

[7:3, 7:6]

The centurion sent two groups of people to Jesus because he was a Gentile. Perhaps he thought the leaders of the Jews had more influence than he did to ask Jesus to heal his servant. So he sent the leaders of the Jews to Jesus. Scholars think the centurion was humble because he felt unworthy for Jesus to come to his house and instead he sent his friends to speak with Jesus.

See: [Gentile](#)

#### **Why did Matthew write that the centurion himself spoke to Jesus?**

Matthew also wrote about this story, but he did not say the centurion sent people to Jesus (see: Matthew 8:5-13). Many scholars think the centurion spoke through his friends. That is, their words were the same as his words.

#### **Why did the message of the centurion amaze Jesus?**

[7:9]

Scholars think the centurion's message amazed Jesus for three reasons.

1. Though the centurion led many people, he showed humility before Jesus. He believed in Jesus' ability and power to heal his servant. The centurion felt unworthy for Jesus to come to his home because of his respect for Jesus.
2. The centurion understood the ability to give commands. Luke wrote about how the soldiers were given permission to give commands to other people they lead. He understood that Jesus had the ability to heal his servant from a distance.
3. Jesus never saw people in Israel believe in him so strongly. This Gentile military leader showed that he believed in Jesus more than the people of Israel. That is, God's chosen people did not show this much faith.

See: [People of God](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [People of God](#)

## **7:11-17**

### **Why did Jesus raise the young man from the dead?**

[7:14]

Scholars think Jesus raised the young man from the dead for two reasons.

1. Jesus had compassion for the young man's mother. His mother was also a widow, and she did not have any other sons. In ancient times, a widow's sons helped their mother and without them, the mother would be very poor.
2. Jesus wanted people to know that he controlled death and uncleanness.

### **Why did Jesus not become unclean when he touched the dead body?**

[7:14]

The Old Testament spoke about uncleanness coming over someone who touches a dead body (see: Number 19:11-6). However, when Jesus raised the widow's son back to life, he made the man clean. Because he raised the boy, Jesus never became unclean under the Law of Moses.

See: [Sin](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sin](#)

### **Why did all the people say Jesus was a "great prophet"?**

[7:16]

The people said Jesus was a "great prophet" because he raised a young man from the dead. Only two other prophets raised people from the dead. Elijah raised a widow's son (see: 1 Kings 17:17-18), and Elisha raised the son of a Shunammite woman (see: 2 Kings 4:18-37).

See: [Prophet](#)

## **7:18-23**

### **Why did John send two of his disciples to ask Jesus if he was the "Coming One"?**

[7:19]

Scholars give two reasons why John sent his disciples to ask Jesus if he is the "Coming One." That is, if Jesus was the messiah whom God promised to come.

1. John wanted to strengthen the faith of his disciples.
2. John wanted to know himself that Jesus is the "Coming One." God gave John a message to preach that spoke of a coming judgment. John expected Jesus to bring judgment on sinners quickly (see: Luke 3:8,16-17). When John was put in prison, Jesus said others will also be put in prison before the judgment of God comes on the world (see: Luke 21:10-22).

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **Why might people “fall away” because of Jesus?**

[7:23]

Some scholars think Jesus’ words spoke about people in general. They think people “fall away” because they expected the Messiah to be someone different than who he really is. Other scholars think Jesus spoke to John specifically. They think Jesus’ words told John not to stop believing in Jesus because judgment did not happen at the time John thought it was going to happen.

See: [Judge \(Judgment\)](#)

### **7:24-28**

### **Why did Jesus ask the crowds about going into the wilderness?**

[7:24]

Jesus asked the crowds three questions about going into the wilderness to speak about the serious message of John. Jesus did not want the crowds to answer the questions, but he wanted to use the questions to teach the truth about John. The first question spoke about a reed shaken by the wind. The wind easily bent reeds back and forth, and this was a common sight. People did not travel to the wilderness to see reeds bending in the wind. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that John was not a man who was easily swayed. Rather he was a solid man who believed in the coming Messiah.

Jesus then asked the people if they went to the wilderness to see a man dressed in soft, fancy clothes. The people knew that a person in soft, fancy clothes did not live in the wilderness. The third question Jesus asked was whether the people went out to the wilderness to see a prophet. Jesus told the crowds that John was more than just a prophet.

See: [Parable](#); [Parable](#)

### **Why did Jesus say John was more than a prophet?**

[7:26]

Many scholars think Jesus said John was “more than a prophet” because John spoke about the coming of the Messiah. The Old Testament prophet, Malachi, spoke about a prophet coming to tell people about the Messiah before the messiah came. Malachi spoke about the prophet John. John not only told people about the coming of the messiah, he also saw the messiah. He witnessed God’s words about Jesus happen (see: John 1:32-34). Jesus even spoke about John the prophet being the same as Elijah, the prophet promised to come (see: Matthew 17:11-13).

See: Malachi 4:5-6

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say the least in the kingdom was actually greater than John?**

[7:28]

Scholars think Jesus said the least in the kingdom was actually greater than John because John lived in the time before Jesus began his ministry. That is, John did not live to see Jesus die and become alive again because he was in prison. Also, the ones Jesus called “the least” of his followers saw many believers filled with the Holy Spirit. John the Baptist did not see any. However, John will be in the kingdom in heaven with all of God’s prophets (see: Luke 13:28).

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Minister \(Ministry\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

## 7:29-30

### Why did Luke write that the people declared God to be right?

[7:29]

After the people heard Jesus speak, those John baptized said that God was right. Some scholars think because John spoke about repentance and the Messiah, it showed that John taught God's message. However, the Pharisees refused to believe that Jesus is the Messiah and they refused to repent. They believed following the Law of Moses was right and made them be at peace with God.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Law of Moses](#)

## 7:31-35

### Who were the people of that generation?

[7:31]

Many scholars think Jesus spoke about the Pharisees, the teachers of the Law of Moses and all those who followed them. These scholars think Jesus spoke about the things the people of Israel did in the past (see: Acts 7:51-53). Jesus said that in the same way children made up games with rules, so did the Pharisees and teachers of the law of Moses criticized anyone who did not play by their rules.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### What did Jesus say about the accusations of the Pharisees?

[7:34, 7:35]

Jesus spoke about the things the Pharisees accused them of. They did this by saying wisdom was shown to be true by her children. This meant those who trusted in God and obeyed his commands were wise people. The Pharisees rejected the things John said that God gave him to tell the people. The Pharisees also rejected Jesus the messiah. They rejected him because he was a friend of sinners. Because the Pharisees rejected both John and Jesus, they were not considered to be children of wisdom.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## 7:36-50

### How did Jesus recline at the table?

[7:36]

Jesus reclined at the table by lying on his side and facing the table. His feet went away from the table. The woman was then able to touch his feet. This reclining at a table was common in the days of Jesus.

### How did Luke describe the unnamed woman?

[7:37]

Luke wrote the unnamed woman was a sinner. Luke did not say how she sinned. Some scholars think she was a prostitute. Fewer scholars think she committed adultery or her husband dishonored God in his work.

See: [Adultery](#); [Adultery](#)

### What was an alabaster jar?

[7:37]

An alabaster jar was a glass or soft-stone jar with a long neck that held perfume. Both the jar and the perfume were very expensive. A woman broke the long neck of the jar to pour out the perfume. Why was the woman crying? Some scholars think the woman's tears showed her humility and a deep sense of

repentance. Other scholars think she felt sad because she sinned. Or she felt joy because Jesus forgave her sins. So, she showed she loved Jesus very much by pouring out her tears on his feet, wiping them with her hair, kissing them, and anointing them with perfume from her alabaster jar.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **Why did Simon the Pharisee think Jesus was not a prophet?**

[7:39]

Simon the Pharisee thought Jesus did not know the woman was a sinner. So, he must not be a prophet. The Pharisees always kept away from any contact with sinners. Simon thought that Jesus, if he were a prophet, would also keep away from sinners.

See: [Prophet](#)

### **How did Jesus “answer” Simon?**

[7:40]

Simon did not ask his question for others to be able to hear him. He only thought the question. However, Jesus knew Simon’s inner thoughts and was able to answer Simon’s question. Then people knew Jesus was a prophet.

See: [Prophet](#)

### **How much was a denarius?**

[7:41]

A denarius was a fair wage for a day of labor (see: Matthew 20:2). Scholars say the man with the large debt needed one and three-quarters years to earn what he owed. The man with the small debt needed two months to earn what he owed. This story was a metaphor. In the story to Simon, the moneylender who “forgave”(χαρίζομαι/g5483) the debts of denarii was Jesus who “forgives”(ἀφίημι/g0863) people who sinned.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **Why did Jesus speak about water for his feet to Simon?**

[7:44]

Jesus spoke to Simon about what was good and polite to do for a guest. That is, to provide water for the washing of feet, a kiss of greeting to welcome a guest into their home, and oil to anoint the guest’s head. Simon failed to provide any of these common greetings to Jesus. But, the sinful woman washed the feet of Jesus with her own tears, kissed the feet of Jesus, and anointed his feet with expensive perfume. The sinful woman went far beyond Simon but others thought Simon was a man who honored God.

See: Genesis 18:4; 43:24

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus forgive the woman?**

[7:47, 7:48]

Jesus forgave the woman because she believed in him. Jesus said her faith saved her (see: 7:50). The woman showed great love toward Jesus because of her awareness of her great sin. She knew only Jesus saved her. Her acts of love came from her desire to repent.

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

## What did the other guests think about Jesus forgiving the woman who sinned?

[7:49]

The other guests thought Jesus was not able to forgive people who sinned. They knew that only God is able to forgive people who sin. The other guests at the table continued to reject Jesus the Messiah. That is, they did not think he was equal with God.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### Luke 7:1

#### General Information:

Jesus enters Capernaum, where he heals a centurion's servant.

#### in the hearing of the people

The idiom "in the hearing" emphasizes that he wanted them to hear what he said. Alternate translation: "to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were present" or "for the people to hear"

#### he entered Capernaum

This begins a new event in the story.

### Luke 7:2

#### who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

### Luke 7:3

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Luke 7:4

#### asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

#### He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

### Luke 7:5

#### our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

### Luke 7:6

#### continued on his way

"went along"

#### not far from the house

"near the house"

#### do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by

coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

#### come under my roof

This phrase is an idiom that means "come into my house." If your language has an idiom that means "come into my house," think about whether it would be good to use here.

### Luke 7:7

#### just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Here "word" refers to a command. Alternate translation: "just give the order"

#### my servant will be healed

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young or show the centurion's affection for him.

### Luke 7:8

#### I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

#### under me

"under my authority"

#### to my servant

The word that is translated here as "servant" is the typical word for a servant.

### Luke 7:9

#### he was amazed at him

"he was amazed at the centurion"

#### I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

#### not even in Israel have I found such faith.

The implication is that Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. You may need to add this implied information. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"



## Luke 7:10

### those who had been sent

It is understood that these were the people the centurion sent. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

## Luke 7:11

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus goes to the city of Nain, where he heals a man who had died.

### Nain

This is the name of a city.

## Luke 7:12

### behold, a man who had died

The word "behold" alerts us to the introduction of the dead man into the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a dead man who"

### a man who had died was being carried out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

### carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd." This is background information about the dead man and his mother.

### widow

a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried

## Luke 7:13

### was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

## Luke 7:14

### he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

### the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed used to move the body to the burial place. It did not have to be something in which the body was buried. Other translations may have the less common "bier" or "funeral couch."

### I say to you, arise

Jesus says this to emphasize that the young man needs to obey him. "Listen to me! Arise"

## Luke 7:15

### The dead man

The man was not still dead; he was now alive. It may be necessary to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

## Luke 7:16

### Connecting Statement:

This tells what happens as a result of Jesus healing the man who had died.

### fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they all became very afraid"

### A great prophet has been raised among us

They were referring to Jesus, not to some unidentified prophet. "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to become." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has caused one of us to become a great prophet"

### looked upon

This idiom means "cared for"

## Luke 7:17

### This news about Jesus spread

"This news" refers to the things people were saying in verse 16. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People spread this report about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

### This news

"This report" or "This message"

## Luke 7:18

### John's disciples told him about all these things

This introduces a new event in the story.

### told him

"told John"

### all these things

"all the things Jesus was doing"

## Luke 7:19

### Connecting Statement:

John sends two of his disciples to question Jesus.

## Luke 7:20

### the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be rewritten so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men

said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

### Luke 7:21

**In that hour**  
"At that time"

**from evil spirits**

It may be helpful to restate the healing. Alternate translation: "he healed them from evil spirits" or "he set people free from evil spirits"

### Luke 7:22

**said to them**  
"said to John's messengers" or "said to the messengers that John sent"

**report to John**  
"tell John"

**people who have died are being raised back to life**  
"dead people are being caused to live again"

**the poor**  
This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "poor people"

### Luke 7:23

**The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

**The person who does not ... is blessed**  
"People who do not ... are blessed" or "Anyone who does not ... is blessed" or "Whoever does not ... is blessed." This is not a specific person.

**does not stop believing in me because of**  
"continues to believe in me despite"

**believing in me**  
"trusting me completely"

### Luke 7:24

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks rhetorical questions to lead them to think about what John the Baptist is really like.

**What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?**  
This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or

"Surely you did not go out to see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

**A reed shaken by the wind**

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) a person who easily changes his mind, as reeds are easily moved by the wind, or 2) a person who talks a lot but does not say anything important, as reeds rattle when the wind blows.

### Luke 7:25

**But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?**

This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

**dressed in soft clothes**

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing expensive clothing"

**kings' palaces**

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

### Luke 7:26

**But what did you go out to see? A prophet?**

This expects a positive answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a prophet? Of course you did!" or "But you actually went out to see a prophet!"

**Yes, I say to you**

Jesus says this to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

**more than a prophet**

This phrase means that John was indeed a prophet, but that he was even greater than a typical prophet. Alternate translation: "not just an ordinary prophet" or "much more important than a normal prophet"

### Luke 7:27

**This is he of whom it is written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John is the one the prophets wrote about long ago"

**See, I am sending**

In this verse, Jesus is quoting the prophet Malachi and saying that John is the messenger of which Malachi spoke.

**before your face**

This idiom means "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

**your**

The word "your" is singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

**Luke 7:28**

**I say to you**

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" is plural. Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the truth of the surprising thing he is about to say next.

**among those born of women**

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This is a metaphor that refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

**none is greater than John**

"John is the greatest"

**the one who is least in the kingdom of God**

This refers to anyone who is part of the kingdom that God will establish.

**is greater than he is**

The spiritual state of people in the kingdom of God will be higher than that of the people before the kingdom was established. Alternate translation: "has higher spiritual status than John"

**Luke 7:29**

**General Information:**

Luke, the author of this book, comments on how people responds to John and Jesus.

**When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John**

This verse could be reordered to be more clear. Alternate translation: "When all the people who had been baptized by John, including the tax collectors, heard this, they declared that God is righteous"

**they declared that God is righteous**

"they said that God had shown himself to be righteous" or "they declared that God had acted righteously"

**because they had been baptized with the baptism of John**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

**Luke 7:30**

**rejected God's purpose for themselves**

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

**they had not been baptized by John**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

**Luke 7:31**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

**To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?**

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

**I compare ... What are they like**

These are two ways of saying that this is a comparison.

**the people of this generation**

The people living when Jesus spoke.

**Luke 7:32**

**They are like**

These words are the beginning of Jesus's comparison. Jesus is saying that the people are like children who are never satisfied with the way other children act.

**marketplace**

a large, open-air area where people come to sell their goods

**and you did not dance**

"but you did not dance to the music"

**and you did not cry**

"but you did not cry with us"

**Luke 7:33**

**eating no bread**

Possible meanings are 1) "frequently fasting" or 2) "not eating normal food."

**you say, 'He has a demon.'**

Jesus was quoting what people were saying about John. This can be stated without the direct quote. Alternate translation: "you say that he has a demon." or "you accuse him of having a demon."

**Luke 7:34**

**The Son of Man came**

Jesus expected the people to understand that he was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

**you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'**

This can be translated as an indirect quote. If you translated "The Son of Man" as "I, the Son of man," you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: "you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

**he is a gluttonous man**

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

**a drunkard**

"a drunk" or "he continually drinks too much alcohol"

### Luke 7:35

**wisdom is justified by all her children**

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

### Luke 7:36

**General Information:**

It was a custom in that time for onlookers to attend dinners without eating.

**Connecting Statement:**

A Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

**Now one of the Pharisees**

The marks the beginning of a new part of the story and introduces the Pharisee into the story.

**reclined at the table to eat**

"sat down at the table for the meal." It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

### Luke 7:37

**Behold, there was a woman**

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

**who was a sinner**

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life." She may have been a prostitute.

**an alabaster jar**

"a jar made of soft stone." Alabaster is a soft, white rock. People stored precious things in alabaster jars.

**of perfumed oil**

"with perfume in it." The oil had something in it that made it smell nice. People rubbed it on themselves or sprinkled their clothing with it in order to smell nice.

### Luke 7:38

**anointed them with perfumed oil**

"poured perfume on them"

### Luke 7:39

**he thought to himself, saying**

"he said to himself"

**If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner**

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him. Alternate translation: "Apparently Jesus is not a prophet, because a prophet would know that this woman who is touching him is a sinner"

**that she is a sinner**

Simon assumed that a prophet would never allow a sinner to touch him. This part of his assumption can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that she is a sinner, and he would not allow her to touch him"

### Luke 7:40

**Simon**

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

### Luke 7:41

**General Information:**

To emphasize what he is going to tell Simon the Pharisee, Jesus tells him a story.

**A certain moneylender had two debtors**

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

**five hundred denarii ... fifty**

"500 days' wages ... 50." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius." A "denarius" was a silver coin.

**the other fifty**

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the other debtor owed fifty denarii" or "the other debtor owed 50 days' wages"

### Luke 7:42

**he forgave them both**

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

### **Luke 7:43**

#### **I suppose**

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

#### **You have judged correctly**

"You are right"

### **Luke 7:44**

#### **Jesus turned to the woman**

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

#### **You gave me no water for my feet**

It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

#### **You ... but she**

Jesus twice uses these phrases to contrast Simon's lack of courtesy with the woman's extreme actions of gratitude.

#### **she has wet my feet with her tears**

The woman used her tears in place of the missing water.

#### **wiped them with her hair**

The woman used her hair in place of the missing towel.

### **Luke 7:45**

#### **You did not give me a kiss**

A good host in that culture would greet his guest with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

#### **did not stop kissing my feet**

"has continued to kiss my feet"

#### **kissing my feet**

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

### **Luke 7:46**

#### **You did not ... but she**

Jesus continues to contrast Simon's poor hospitality with the actions of the woman.

#### **anoint my head with oil**

"put oil on my head." This was the custom to welcome an honored guest. Alternate translation: "welcome me by anointing my head with oil"

#### **anointed my feet**

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

### **Luke 7:47**

#### **I say to you**

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

#### **her sins, which were many, have been forgiven**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has forgiven her many sins"

#### **for she loved much**

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her" or "for she loves God very much"

#### **the one who is forgiven little**

"anyone who is forgiven only a few things." In this sentence Jesus states a general principle. However, he expected Simon to understand that he showed very little love for Jesus.

### **Luke 7:48**

#### **Then he said to her**

"Then he said to the woman"

#### **Your sins are forgiven**

"You are forgiven." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I forgive your sins"

### **Luke 7:49**

#### **reclining together**

"reclining together around the table" or "eating together"

#### **Who is this that even forgives sins?**

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins and did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably intended to be an accusation. Alternate translation: "Who does this man think he is? Only God can forgive sins!" or "Why is this man pretending to be God, who alone can forgive sins?"

### **Luke 7:50**

#### **Your faith has saved you**

"Because of your faith, you are saved." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "Because you believe, you are saved"

#### **Go in peace**

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 7:3

**What did the centurion first ask Jesus to do when he sent the Jewish elders to Jesus?**  
He asked Jesus to come to his house and to heal his slave.

### Luke 7:6

**Why did the centurion then send friends to tell Jesus that he did not have to come to the house?**  
The centurion said he was not worthy that Jesus should come to his house.

### Luke 7:7

**How did the centurion then want Jesus to heal the slave?**  
The centurion then wanted Jesus to heal the slave by just saying a word.

### Luke 7:9

**What did Jesus say about the faith of the centurion?**  
Jesus said that not even in Israel had he found anyone with so much faith.

### Luke 7:13

**What was Jesus' attitude toward the widow who's only son had died?**  
He was deeply moved with compassion.

### Luke 7:16

**What did the people say about Jesus after he raised the widow's son from the dead?**  
They said that a great prophet had been raised among them, and that God had looked upon his people.

### Luke 7:22

**How did Jesus demonstrate to John's disciples that he was the Coming One?**  
Jesus healed the blind, lame, lepers, and deaf, and he raised the dead.

### Luke 7:26

**Who did Jesus say that John was?**  
Jesus said John was much more than a prophet.

### Luke 7:30

**What did the Pharisees and the experts in Jewish law do to themselves when they refused to be baptized by John?**  
They rejected God's counsel for themselves.

### Luke 7:33

**What accusation was made against John the Baptizer because he did not eat bread or drink wine?**  
They said, "He has a demon."

### Luke 7:34

**What accusation was made against Jesus because he came eating and drinking?**  
They said, "He is a gluttonous man and a drunkard."

### Luke 7:38

**What did the woman of the city do to Jesus in the Pharisee's house?**  
She wet Jesus' feet with her tears, wiped them with her hair, kissed his feet, and anointed his feet with perfume.

### Luke 7:47

**Jesus said that because she was forgiven many sins, she would do what?**  
She would love much.

### Luke 7:49

**How did those reclining at the table react when Jesus told the woman that her sins were forgiven?**  
They asked, "Who is this that even forgives sins?"

## Chapter 8

<sup>1</sup> It happened soon afterward that Jesus began traveling around to different cities and villages, preaching and proclaiming the good news about the kingdom of God. The twelve were with him, <sup>2</sup> as well as certain women who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases: Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out; <sup>3</sup> Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager; Susanna; and many others, who, out of their possessions, provided for their needs.

<sup>4</sup> While a large crowd of people was gathering, and people were coming to him from town after town, he told a parable: <sup>5</sup> "A farmer went out to sow his seed. As he sowed, some fell beside the road and it was trampled underfoot, and the birds of the sky devoured it. <sup>6</sup> Some fell on the rock, and as soon as it grew up, it withered away, because it had no moisture. <sup>7</sup> Some fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up together with the seed and choked it. <sup>8</sup> But some fell on good soil and produced a crop that was a hundred times greater." After Jesus had said these things, he called out, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear."

<sup>9</sup> His disciples asked him what this parable meant. <sup>10</sup> He said, "The knowledge of the secrets of the kingdom of God has been given to you, but for others I speak in parables, so that

'seeing they may not see,

and hearing they may not understand.' <sup>11</sup> Now this is the meaning of the parable: The seed is the word of God. <sup>12</sup> The ones along the road are those who have heard, but then the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts so they may not believe and be saved. <sup>13</sup> The ones on the rock are those who, when they hear the word, receive it with joy. But they have no root; they believe for a while, and in a time of testing they fall away. <sup>14</sup> The seeds that fell among the thorns are people who hear the word, but as they go on their way, they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature. <sup>15</sup> But the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones who, hearing the word with an honest and good heart, hold it securely and bear fruit with patient endurance.

<sup>16</sup> "No one lights a lamp and covers it with a bowl or puts it under a bed. Rather, he puts it on a lampstand so that everyone who enters may see the light. <sup>17</sup> For nothing is hidden that will not be made known, nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light. <sup>18</sup> So listen carefully, for to the one who has, more will be given to him, but the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him."

<sup>19</sup> Then his mother and brothers came to him, but they could not get near him because of the crowd. <sup>20</sup> He was told, "Your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to see you." <sup>21</sup> But Jesus answered and said to them, "My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it."

<sup>22</sup> Now one day he got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." They set sail. <sup>23</sup> But as they sailed he fell asleep. A terrible windstorm came down on the lake, and their boat was filling with water, and they were in danger. <sup>24</sup> Then Jesus' disciples came over to him and woke him up, saying, "Master! Master! We are about to die!"

He awoke and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water, and they ceased, and there was a calm. <sup>25</sup> Then he said to them, "Where is your faith?"

But they were afraid and amazed, and they asked one another, "Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?"

<sup>26</sup> They sailed to the region of the Gerasenes, which is across the lake from Galilee. <sup>27</sup> When Jesus stepped on the land, he was met by a certain man from the city who had demons. For a long time he had worn no clothes, and he did not live in a house but among the tombs. <sup>28</sup> When he saw Jesus, he cried out and fell down before him and he said with a loud voice, "What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you, do not torment me." <sup>29</sup> For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and though he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness.

<sup>30</sup> Then Jesus asked him, "What is your name?"

He said, "Legion," for many demons had entered into him. <sup>31</sup> They kept begging him not to command them to go away into the abyss. <sup>32</sup> Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside. The demons begged him to let them go into them, and he gave them permission. <sup>33</sup> So the demons came out of the man and went into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep slope into the lake and was drowned. <sup>34</sup> When those tending the pigs saw what had happened, they ran off and told about it in the city and countryside. <sup>35</sup> So the people went out to see what had happened, and they came to Jesus and found the man from whom the demons had gone out. He was sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid. <sup>36</sup> Then those who had seen it told them how the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed. <sup>37</sup> Then all the people of the region of the Gerasenes asked Jesus to depart from them, for they were overwhelmed with great fear. So he got into the boat and returned.

<sup>38</sup> The man from whom the demons had gone out begged him to let him go with him, but Jesus sent him away, saying, <sup>39</sup> "Return to your home and give a full account of what God has done for you." The man went on his way, proclaiming throughout the whole city what Jesus had done for him.

<sup>40</sup> Now when Jesus returned, the crowd welcomed him, for they were all expecting him. <sup>41</sup> Behold, a man named Jairus, who was one of the leaders of the synagogue, came and fell down at Jesus' feet, and he begged him to come to his house <sup>42</sup> because his only daughter, a girl of about twelve years of age, was dying. As Jesus was on his way, the crowds of people pressed together around him.

<sup>43</sup> Now a woman was there who had been bleeding for twelve years <sup>[1]</sup> and could not be healed by anyone. <sup>44</sup> She came behind Jesus and touched the edge of his coat, and immediately her bleeding stopped. <sup>45</sup> Jesus said, "Who was it who touched me?"

When all denied it, Peter said, "Master, the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you."

<sup>46</sup> But Jesus said, "Someone did touch me, for I know that power has gone out from me." <sup>47</sup> When the woman saw that she could not escape notice, she came trembling and fell down before him. In the presence of all the people she declared why she had touched him and how she had been immediately healed. <sup>48</sup> Then he said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace."

<sup>49</sup> While he was still speaking, someone came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Do not trouble the teacher any longer."

<sup>50</sup> But when Jesus heard this, he answered Jairus, "Do not be afraid; only believe, and she will be healed."

<sup>51</sup> When he came to the house, he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter and John and James, and the father of the child and her mother. <sup>52</sup> Now all were mourning and wailing for her, but he said, "Do not weep; she is not dead but asleep." <sup>53</sup> But they began to mock him, knowing that she was dead. <sup>54</sup> But he took her by the hand and called out, saying, "Child, get up!" <sup>55</sup> Her spirit returned, and she rose up immediately. He ordered them to get her something to eat. <sup>56</sup> Her parents were astonished, but he ordered them to tell no one what had happened.

---

## Footnotes

8:43 <sup>[1]</sup>Scholars are divided whether the phrase

---

## Luke 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.



## Special concepts in this chapter

### Miracles

Jesus made a storm stop by speaking to it, he made a dead girl alive by speaking to her, and he made evil spirits leave a man by speaking to them. (See: miracle)

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Luke 8:4-15](#)).

## Luke 8

### 8:1-3

#### Why did Luke write 8:1-3?

[8:1, 8:2, 8:3]

Luke wanted his readers to know two things when he wrote 8:1-3. The other gospel writers did not write about these two things.

1. Luke wanted his readers to know that Jesus “preached”(κηρύσσω/g2784) and “proclaimed” the (εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) the gospel. The gospel is about the “kingdom of God.” Luke used the word “preached.” He used this word to write about how God gave Jesus permission to speak about the kingdom of God. Luke also used the words, “proclaimed the gospel.” He wrote this because the things Jesus spoke about were good for the people to know.
2. Luke also wanted readers to know women served Jesus. Some scholars think these women served in the same way the disciples served Jesus. Other scholars think these women served Jesus in a different way.

See: [Disciple](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Disciple](#)

#### Who was Mary Magdalene?

[8:2]

Mary Magdalene was a woman from a small village called Magdala. Some scholars think the village was near the west side of the Sea of Galilee. Other scholars think they do not know where Magdala was located. The apostle John wrote that Mary Magdalene witnessed the resurrection of Jesus (see: John 20:11-18).

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

See Map: Sea of Galilee

#### Why did Luke write about Joanna?

[8:3]

Luke wrote about Johanna. Johanna was a person who worked for Herod. John wanted his readers to know that even the people working for Herod heard about the gospel. Some scholars think her husband, Chuza, also served Herod.

See: [Gospel](#)

## 8:4-15

### What was a “parable”?

[8:4]

See: [Parable](#)

### How did people sow seeds when Jesus lived on earth?

[8:5]

When Jesus was on the earth, people sowed seeds by having a seed bag over their shoulders. They threw seeds from the bag onto the ground. They did this in late fall or early winter. The seeds began to grow out of the ground in spring. Then they gathered what was grown in summer. Many times a dirt road or pathway went through the field where they sowed seeds.

**Advice to Translators:** Spring, Summer, Winter, and fall are words used to talk about the changing seasons in an area of the world. Many places in the world do not have these four seasons. They may have only two of these seasons or they may have what is called wet and dry seasons. Overall, these words are used to talk about different times of the year due to changes in the weather in that particular area.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Hebrew Calendar \(Seasons in Israel\)](#); [Metaphor](#)

### Why did Jesus tell the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed?

[8:5, 8:6, 8:7, 8:8]

Jesus told the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed. He wanted people to know four different ways people heard the word of God.

See: [Word of God](#); [Gospel](#); [Word of God](#)

### Why did Jesus say, “Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[8:8]

Scholars think Jesus said, “Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear,” because he wanted people to listen to what he said. That is, people needed to not only know what he taught, but also they needed to do the things he taught. He did not say this because he was angry. How was the seed the word of God in the parable? Scholars do not agree about how the seed was the word of God in the parable. Some scholars think it was about God ruling (see: 8:1). Other scholars think it was about people needing to obey what Jesus taught (see: 8:21).

See: [Word of God](#); [Parable](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Word of God](#)

### Why did Jesus speak about the seed beside the road?

[8:12]

Jesus spoke about the seed beside the road because he wanted his listeners to know how Satan tries to take away the word of God from people. That is, Satan took the word of God from people in the same way birds ate seeds from a road. Satan did not want people to know the word of God. He also did not want God to save people from the punishment of sinning.

See: 2 Corinthians 4:3-4

See: [Word of God](#); [Sow \(Plant\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Word of God](#)

### What did Jesus say about the seed that fell on the rock?

[8:13]

Jesus said some seed fell on the rock. He used this to talk about how some people rejoice when they hear the word of God. However, they stop believing in it when they begin to suffer because of it. Seeds that were thrown over rocks did only grew for a short time. This is because it did not have any water or deep roots.

See: [Eternal Security](#); [Parable](#); [Rejoice \(Joy, Joyful\)](#); [Word of God](#); [Sow \(Plant\)](#); [Eternal Security](#)

### **What happened to the seed that fell among the thorns?**

[8:14]

Jesus said that thorns grew with the good plants. Thorns took the things from the soil that the good plants needed to grow. Therefore, nothing could grow around the thorns. These thorns “choked” the life from the good plants. In the same way, people were “choked”(συμπνίγω/g4846) by the “cares, and riches, and pleasures of this life.” Jesus said these people were never able to do the things that honored God (see: 3:8-9).

**Advice to translators:** A “thorn” was a plant with thorns. It was a type of weed. It was a plant that grew quickly and hamre other plants. It did not do anything good.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **How did Jesus speak about the seed that fell on good soil?**

[8:15]

Scholars think there were two ways Jesus spoke about the seed that fell on good soil. Some scholars think Jesus wanted Christians to know that more people believed in Jesus (see: Acts 6:7; Colossians 1:5-6). Other scholars think Jesus wanted Christians to know that there were many people who trusted in God and Jesus more than they did before. Perhaps Jesus meant both.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

## **8:16-18**

### **Why did Jesus tell the parable of the lamp?**

[8:16]

Jesus told the parable of the lamp to talk about how God wanted the disciples to listen very carefully to what Jesus said. Matthew and Mark also wrote about the parable of the lamp.

See: Matthew 5:14-16; Mark 4:21-25

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### **How did Jesus speak about the “light”?**

[8:16, 8:17]

Scholars think different things about how Jesus spoke about the “light.”

1. Some scholars think it was a metaphor for the things Jesus taught. Jesus taught that God wanted people to believe in the word of God (see: 8:11-15).
2. Some scholars think it was a metaphor for the people who followed Jesus. It taught the word of God to other people (see: 24:44-48).
3. Some scholars think it was a metaphor for what people thought about the things Jesus taught.

See: [Word of God](#); [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#); [Word of God](#)

### **What did God give or take away?**

[8:18]

Scholars think God either told people more things about himself or he made the things that they already knew about him leave them. This was because of how people listened to Jesus (see: 8:11-15). Some scholars say a person who did not believe in the word of God was wrong to think he knew anything about God.

See: 11:33; 12:2

See: [Word of God](#)

## 8:19-21

### Why did Luke tell this story about Jesus and his family?

[8:19]

Luke told this story about Jesus and his family so people would know how great was the message Jesus taught. He wanted people to hear, believe, and obey the word of God (see: 8:11,15,21). Matthew and Mark also wrote about this.

See: Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35

See: [Family of Jesus](#); [Family of Jesus](#)

### Why did Jesus say his family were the people who heard and did the word of God?

[8:21]

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about his “mother and brothers” as a metaphor. He wanted to say that everyone who heard his word and did the things his word said to do were a member of his family. Many scholars think Jesus did not reject his mother and brothers, but he made other people able to become members of his family. On the other hand, some scholars think Jesus spoke against family when they wanted people to stop obeying God’s word (see: Luke 14:26; 18:29-30).

See: [Word of God](#); [Children of God](#); [Word of God](#)

## 8:22-25

### Why did Luke write about Jesus stopping the storm?

[8:24]

When Luke wrote about Jesus stopping the storm, he wanted Christians to know that Jesus controlled the winds and the seas. In ancient times, people did not think these things could be controlled. These miracles came near the time when Peter said Jesus is the Messiah (see: Luke 9:20). Matthew and Mark also wrote about this.

See: Matthew 8:23-27; Mark 4:35-41

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

See Map: Sea of Galilee

### Why did the disciples call Jesus “Master”?

[8:24]

The disciples called Jesus “master”(ἐπιστάτης/g1988) because they honored Jesus. They called him “master” twice because they honored Jesus in the same way they honored God.

### How did Jesus “rebuke” the wind and water?

[8:24]

Jesus “rebuked”( ἐπιτιμάω/g2008) the wind and water with his own power. He did not pray to God. That is, Jesus wanted his disciples to know he has the same power God has (see: Psalm 89:9). Scholars think that the wind and water immediately settled down after Jesus spoke.

### **Why did the disciples not have faith?**

[8:25]

Scholars think there were two reasons the disciples did not have faith. That is, they did not fully trust Jesus.

1. The disciples did not have faith because they did not think Jesus was able to stop the storm.
2. They also did not have faith because they feared they were going to die.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **8:26-39**

### **Where was the “region of the Gerasenes”?**

[8:26]

See Map: Sea of Galilee; Gerasenes

### **Why did the demon possessed man fall down in front of Jesus?**

[8:28]

Scholars think the demon possessed man fell down in front of Jesus because the demons feared Jesus. The demons gave power to the possessed man, but they had no power compared to Jesus. They did not want Jesus to punish them. However, here the demons were not worshipping Jesus.

See: [Worship](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Worship](#)

### **What was meant by the words, “Most High God”?**

[8:28]

Some scholars think the words “Most High God” were used to talk about God being more powerful and greater than any other god. Other scholars think the demon possessed man called God the “Most High” because that was what Gentiles called the God of the Jews. They were in a place where the Gentiles lived.

**Advice to translators:** Although this talks about God being greater than other gods, this does not mean that the other gods are real. The other gods are not real and have never lived.

See: [Gentile](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Gentile](#)

### **Why did the demon possessed man call Jesus “Son of the Most High God”?**

[8:28]

Scholars think the demon possessed man called Jesus “Son of the Most High God” because Jesus rules over everything, including demons. He gave permission for Satan to rule the demons. The demons did not want Jesus to punish or harm them. Gabriel, the angel of God, also called Jesus the “Son of the Most High God” (see: 1:32).

See: [Angel](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Angel](#)

### **Why did Jesus ask the demon possessed man his name?**

[8:30]

Scholars think there were several reasons why Jesus asked the demon possessed man his name.

1. Jesus wanted people to know that thousands of demons controlled the man. "Legion" was a name for a group of about 6,000 Roman soldiers.
2. Jesus wanted people to know that he has power over the demons. Jesus had power over demon possessed people without asking their names (see: 4:33-36).
3. Jesus wanted people to know that the man was a person even though the demons controlled him. It was a way Jesus wanted people to know that he had compassion for him.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **What was the abyss?**

[8:31]

See: [Abyss \(Bottomless Pit\)](#)

### **Why did the demons ask Jesus to send them into the pigs?**

[8:32]

Scholars think there are several reasons why the demons wanted to go into the pigs.

1. The demons did not want Jesus to make them go into the abyss.
2. The demons knew that Jesus did not want the demons to go into other people.
3. The demons wanted to control animals if they were no longer able to control people.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Abyss \(Bottomless Pit\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus allow the demons to go into the pigs?**

[8:32]

Jesus allowed the demons to go into the pigs. Scholars think he did this for many reasons.

1. Jesus wanted people to know that God will judge demons. This will happen when the known world ends and is recreated. He will send them into the abyss.
2. The demons went into the abyss when the pigs went into the sea.
3. Jesus created everything. Therefore, he has the ability to do anything he wants with his creation.

Jesus cared more about the man than about the pigs.

1. It made people know that the man was really free from the demons.

See: [Spiritual Warfare](#); [World](#); [Day of Judgment](#); [Abyss \(Bottomless Pit\)](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Spiritual Warfare](#)

### **Why did the people ask Jesus to leave?**

[8:37]

Scholars think there are several reasons why the people asked Jesus to leave.

1. They cared more about losing the pigs than about Jesus rescuing the man from the demons.
2. They were afraid because Jesus has the same power over demons that God has.
3. They were afraid of Jesus. They did not want him to interfere with Roman rule over the Jews.

See: [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#); [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#)

## 8:40-56

### Who was Jairus?

[8:41]

Jairus was the leader of a synagogue. He read Old Testament Scriptures in the synagogue meetings. He also was a leader in the community. Some scholars think that his name was the same as, "God will awaken." He was different from other synagogue leaders. He bowed down at Jesus' feet and asked Jesus to heal. He did not argue with Jesus.

See: [Synagogue](#)

### How did the woman suffer?

[8:43]

Scholars think the woman suffered in three ways.

1. She had a bleeding illness for twelve years.
2. Because of her bleeding, she was unclean according to the law of Moses (see: Leviticus 15:25-33). That is, she had to be separated from people. That is, because they would be unclean if they touched her or if she touched them. She could not worship in the temple. The people in the crowd did not have compassion for her or even look at her.
3. She was poor. The Gospel of Mark said she spent all her money on doctors but she only got more sick (see: Mark 5:26).

See: [Gospel](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Worship](#); [Temple](#); [Gospel](#)

### Why did the woman want to touch the edge of Jesus' coat?

[8:44]

Some scholars think the woman wanted to touch the edge of Jesus' coat because she believed in magic. More scholars say she believed Jesus was able to heal her (see: 8:48). That is, she did not believe in magic. Jesus healed other people when they touched him (see: 6:19).

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

### Why did Jesus ask who touched him?

[8:45]

Jesus asked who touched him because he wanted all the people to know he healed the woman. Scholars think Jesus already knew who touched him before he asked. He wanted the woman to talk about what had happened to her. Some scholars think this was so others would know that Jesus had the power to heal the woman completely. Also, Jesus wanted others would know that the woman was now clean. That is, she was able to go back into the community and no longer needed to be separated from people.

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

### Why did Jesus call the woman "daughter"?

[8:48]

Scholars think there are three reasons Jesus called the woman "daughter."

1. Jesus wanted people to know he had compassion for her.
2. Jesus wanted people to know she came back into the community. That is, she was no longer unclean.

3. Luke wanted his readers to know that this story happened at the same time Jesus made another person's daughter alive again.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **Why did Jesus tell Jairus to not fear?**

[8:50]

Scholars think Jesus told Jairus not to fear because his daughter's death made him fear. Jairus was afraid it was too late for Jesus to heal her. However, Jesus wanted Jairus to trust him that his daughter would be healed.

### **Why did Jesus use the word "sleep"?**

[8:52]

The word "sleep" was a metaphor used to talk about someone who was dead. Some scholars think Jesus told the crowd that the girl was not dead. She was only sleeping because he knew he was going to heal her and make her alive again.

See: John 11:11-14

See: [Sleep \(Metaphor\)](#)

### **Why did all the crying people start laughing?**

[8:53]

Scholars think there are two reasons why they quickly changed from crying to laughing.

1. Someone paid these people to mourn for the girl. Therefore, they were not really sad about the girl's death.
2. They did not think Jesus had the power to make the girl alive again. Perhaps they did not know Jesus made a man alive again in Nain (see: 7:11-16).

See Map: Nain

### **Why did Jesus tell the parents not to tell anyone that he made their daughter alive again?**

[8:56]

Scholars think there are several reasons why Jesus told the parents not to tell anyone that Jesus made their daughter alive again.

1. Jesus wanted people to know that following him caused suffering, not comfort and miracles.
2. Jesus judged the people who laughed.
3. Jesus did not want those who did not believe to know about what he was doing.
4. Jesus wanted them to care for their daughter.
5. Jesus also did not want all of his disciples to see the miracle (see: Luke 8:51).
6. Jesus wanted to help his disciples understand who was Jesus (see: Luke 9:20).
7. Jesus wanted to wait until after he became alive again for people to know he has power to make people alive again.

See: Matthew 9:26

See: [Messianic Secret](#); [Disciple](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Messianic Secret](#)



## Luke 8:1

### General Information:

These verses give background information about Jesus's preaching while traveling.

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

## Luke 8:2

### who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

### Mary

One of the "certain women."

### Mary who was called Magdalene ... seven demons had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, whom people called Magdalene ... Jesus had driven out seven demons"

## Luke 8:3

### Joanna ... Susanna

Two of the "certain women"

### Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager. "Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza"

### provided for their needs

"financially supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

## Luke 8:4

### General Information:

Jesus tells the parable of the soils to the crowd. He explains its meaning to his disciples in 8:11:15.

### coming to him

"coming to Jesus"

## Luke 8:5

### A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

### some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

### it was trampled underfoot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

### birds of the sky

This idiom can be translated simply as "birds" or as "birds flew down and" to keep the sense of "sky."

### devoured it

"ate it all" or "ate them all"

## Luke 8:6

### it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

### it had no moisture

"it was too dry" or "they were too dry." The cause can also be stated. Alternate translation: "the ground was too dry"

## Luke 8:7

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable to the crowd.

### choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

## Luke 8:8

### produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

### a hundred times greater

This means a hundred times more than the seeds that were sown.

### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" or "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

## Luke 8:9

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 8:10

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to his disciples.

### The knowledge of ... God has been given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has given to you the knowledge of ... God" or "God has made you able to understand ... God"

### the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but that Jesus is now revealing them.

### for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

### seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

### hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth"

## Luke 8:11

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parable that he told in [Luke 8:5-8](#).

### The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

## Luke 8:12

### The ones along the road are those

"The seeds that fell along the path are those." Jesus tells what happens to the seeds as it relates to people. Alternate translation: "The seeds that fell along the road represent people" or "In the parable, the seeds that fell along the road represent people"

### are those who

Jesus speaks of the seeds showing something about people as if the seeds were the people. Alternate translation: "show what happens to people who"

### the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "the devil

comes and takes away the message of God from their inner thoughts"

### takes away

In the parable this was a metaphor of a bird snatching away the seeds. Try to use words in your language that keep that image.

### hearts so they may not believe and be saved.

This is the devil's purpose. Alternate translation: "hearts because the devil thinks, 'They must not believe and they must not be saved.'" or "hearts so it will not be that they believe and God saves them."

## Luke 8:13

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 8:14

### The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people" or "In the parable the seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

### cares

things that people worry about

### pleasures of this life

"the things in this life that people enjoy"

### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature

This metaphor refers to the way weeds cut off light and nutrients from plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares, riches, and pleasures of this life keep these people from becoming mature"

### their fruit does not mature

"they do not bear ripe fruit." Mature fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "so like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

## Luke 8:15

### the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people" or "in the parable the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

### hearing the word

"hearing the message"

**with an honest and good heart**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "with an honest and good desire"

**bear fruit with patient endurance**

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort." Fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

**Luke 8:16**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues with another parable.

**No one**

This marks the beginning of another parable.

**Luke 8:17**

**nothing is hidden that will not be made known**

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "everything that is hidden will be made known"

**nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light**

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

**Luke 8:18**

**to the one who has, more will be given to him**

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

**the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him**

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever does not have understanding will lose even what understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

**Luke 8:19**

**brothers**

These were Jesus's younger brothers—the sons of Mary and Joseph who were born after Jesus. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was

Joseph, they were technically his half-brothers. This detail is not normally translated.

**Luke 8:20**

**He was told**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People told him" or "Someone told him"

**wanting to see you**

"and they want to see you"

**Luke 8:21**

**My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it**

This metaphor expresses that the people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

**the word of God**

"the message God has spoken"

**Luke 8:22**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus and his disciples use a boat to cross Lake Genneseret. The disciples learn more about Jesus's power through the storm that arises.

**the lake**

This is the lake of Genneseret, which is also called the Sea of Galilee.

**They set sail**

This expression means they began to travel across the lake in their sailboat.

**Luke 8:23**

**as they sailed**

"as they went"

**fell asleep**

"began to sleep"

**A terrible windstorm came down**

"A storm of very strong winds began" or "Very strong winds suddenly began to blow"

**their boat was filling with water**

The strong winds caused high waves which pushed water over the sides of the boat. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the winds caused high waves that started to fill up their boat with water"

## Luke 8:24

**rebuked**  
spoke sharply to

**the raging of the water**  
"the violent waves"

**they ceased**  
"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

## Luke 8:25

**Where is your faith?**  
Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

**Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?**  
This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

## Luke 8:26

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus and his disciples come ashore at Gerasa, where Jesus removes many demons from a man.

**the region of the Gerasenes**  
Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

**across the lake from Galilee**  
"on the other side of the lake from Galilee"

## Luke 8:27

**a certain man from the city**  
"a man from the city of Gerasa"

**a certain man from the city who had demons**  
The man had demons; it was not the city that had demons. Alternate translation: "a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

**who had demons**  
"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

**For a long time he had worn no clothes ... but among the tombs**  
This is background information about the man who had demons.

**he had worn no clothes**  
"he had not worn clothes"

**tombs**

These are places where people put dead bodies, possibly caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

## Luke 8:28

**When he saw Jesus**  
"When the man who had the demon saw Jesus"

**he cried out**  
"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

**fell down before him**  
"lay down on the ground before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

**he said with a loud voice**  
"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

**What have you to do with me**  
This idiom means "Why are you bothering me?"

**Son of the Most High God**  
This is an important title for Jesus.

## Luke 8:29

**many times it had seized him**  
"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

**though he was bound ... and kept under guard**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

**he would be driven by the demon**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the demon would make him go"

## Luke 8:30

**Legion**  
Translate this with a word that refers to a large number of soldiers or people. Some other translations say "Army." Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade"

## Luke 8:31

**kept begging him**  
"kept begging Jesus"

## Luke 8:32

**Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside**  
This is supplied as background information to introduce the pigs.

**was there feeding on the hillside**  
 "was nearby eating grass on a hill"

### Luke 8:33

**So the demons came out**  
 The word "so" is used here to explain that the reason the demons came out the man was because Jesus had told them that they could go into the pigs.

**rushed**  
 ran very fast

**the herd ... was drowned**  
 "the herd ... drowned." No one caused the pigs to drown once they were in the water.

### Luke 8:34

**General Information:**  
 This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Luke 8:35

**found the man from whom the demons had gone out**  
 "saw the man whom the demons had left"

**in his right mind**  
 "sane" or "behaving normally"

**sitting at the feet of Jesus**  
 "sitting at the feet" here is an idiom that means "sitting humbly nearby" or "sitting in front of."  
 Alternate translation: "sitting on the ground in front of Jesus"

**they were afraid**  
 It may be helpful to state explicitly that they were afraid of Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of Jesus"

### Luke 8:36

**those who had seen it**  
 "those who had seen what had happened"

**the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

### Luke 8:37

**the region of the Gerasenes**  
 "that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26 Luke 8:26

**they were overwhelmed with great fear**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were very afraid"

**and returned**  
 This is not the last thing that Jesus did in that place, so this can also be stated as "in order to return" or "to go back."

**returned**  
 The destination can be stated. Alternate translation: "returned across the lake"

### Luke 8:38

**The man**  
 The events in these verses happened before Jesus left in the boat. It may be helpful to state this clearly at the beginning. Alternate translation: "Before Jesus and his disciples left, the man" or "Before Jesus and his disciples set sail, the man"

### Luke 8:39

**your home**  
 "your household" or "your family"

**give a full account of what God has done for you**  
 "tell them everything about what God has done for you"

### Luke 8:40

**Connecting Statement:**  
 When Jesus and his disciples return to Galilee on the other side of the lake, he heals the 12-year-old daughter of the ruler of the synagogue as well as a woman who has been bleeding for 12 years (8:43-48).

**the crowd welcomed him**  
 "the crowd joyfully greeted him"

### Luke 8:41

**one of the leaders of the synagogue**  
 "one of the leaders at the local synagogue" or "a leader of the people who met at the synagogue in that city"

**fell down at Jesus' feet**  
 Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

### Luke 8:42

**was dying**  
 "was about to die"

**As Jesus was on his way**

Some translators may need to first say that Jesus had agreed to go with Jairus. Alternate translation: "So Jesus agreed to go with him. As he was on his way"

**the crowds of people pressed together around him**  
"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

**Luke 8:43**

**a woman was there**

This introduces a new character in the story.

**had been bleeding**

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

**and could not be healed by anyone**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but no one could heal her"

**Luke 8:44**

**touched the edge of his coat**

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes as a part of their ceremonial dress as commanded in God's Law. This is likely what she touched.

**Luke 8:45**

**the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you**

By saying this, Peter was implying that anyone could have touched Jesus. This implicit information can be made explicit if necessary. Alternate translation: "there are many people crowding around you and pressing in against you, so any one of them might have touched you"

**Luke 8:46**

**Someone did touch me**

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional "touch" from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

**I know that power has gone out from me**

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I felt my power heal someone"

**Luke 8:47**

**that she could not escape notice**

"that she could not keep secret what she had done." It may be helpful to state what she did. Alternate

translation: "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

**she came trembling**

"she came trembling with fear"

**fell down before him**

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

**In the presence of all the people**

"In the sight of all the people"

**Luke 8:48**

**Daughter**

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

**your faith has made you well**

"because of your faith, you have become well." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "because you believe, you are healed"

**Go in peace**

This idiom is a way of saying, "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

**Luke 8:49**

**While he was still speaking**

"While Jesus was still speaking to the woman"

**synagogue leader**

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

**Do not trouble the teacher**

This statement implies that Jesus will not be able to do anything to help now that the girl is dead.

**the teacher**

This refers to Jesus.

**Luke 8:50**

**she will be healed**

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

**Luke 8:51**

**When he came to the house**

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

**he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter ... mother**

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom Jesus allowed to enter. This could be stated positively. Alternate translation: "he allowed only Peter ... mother to enter with him"

**the father of the child**  
This refers to Jairus.

#### **Luke 8:52**

**all were mourning and wailing for her**

This was the normal way of showing grief in that culture. Alternate translation: "all the people there were showing how sad they were and crying loudly because the girl had died"

#### **Luke 8:53**

**began to mock him, knowing that she**  
"laughed at him because they knew the girl"

#### **Luke 8:54**

**he took her by the hand**  
"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

#### **Luke 8:55**

**Her spirit returned**

"Her spirit returned to her body." The Jews understood that life was the result of the spirit coming into a person. Alternate translation: "She started breathing again" or "She came back to life" or "She became alive again"

#### **Luke 8:56**

**to tell no one**  
This could be stated differently. Alternate translation: "not to tell anyone"

---

## **ULB Translation Questions**

#### **Luke 8:3**

**What did a large group of women do for Jesus and his disciples?**

The women provided for them from their own material resources.

#### **Luke 8:11**

**In Jesus' parable, what is the seed that is sown?**  
The seed is the word of God.

#### **Luke 8:12**

**Who are the seeds that fall by the wayside, and what happens to them?**

They are people who hear the word, but then the devil comes and takes it away, so that they may not believe and be saved.

#### **Luke 8:13**

**Who are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground, and what happens to them?**

They are people who receive the word with joy, but then stop believing during a time of testing.

#### **Luke 8:14**

**Who are the seeds that fall among the thorns, and what happens to them?**

They are people who hear the word, but then it is choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and they bring no fruit to maturity.

#### **Luke 8:15**

**Who are the seeds that fall on the good ground, and what happens to them?**

They are people who hear the word, hold onto it, and produce fruit with perseverance.

#### **Luke 8:21**

**Who did Jesus say his mother and brothers are?**  
They are people who hear the word of God and obey it.

#### **Luke 8:25**

**What did the disciples say when Jesus calmed the winds and water?**

They said, "Who is this that commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?"

#### **Luke 8:29**

**What did the demons cause the man from the region of the Gerasenes to do?**

They made him live without clothes in the tombs, they made him break chains and shackles, and they often drove him into the wilderness.

#### **Luke 8:33**

**Where did the demons go after Jesus commanded them to leave the man?**

The demons entered into a herd of pigs, which rushed into a lake and drowned.

**Luke 8:39**

**What did Jesus tell the man to go and do?**

Jesus told him to go to his house and recount all the great things God had done for him.

**Luke 8:48**

**According to Jesus, what had caused the woman with bleeding to be healed?**

She was healed because of her faith in Jesus.

**Luke 8:55**

**What did Jesus do at Jairus' house?**

Jesus raised Jairus' daughter from the dead.

---



## Chapter 9

<sup>1</sup> He called the twelve together and gave them power and authority to drive out all demons and to cure diseases. <sup>2</sup> He sent them out to preach the kingdom of God and to heal the sick. <sup>3</sup> He said to them, "Take nothing for your journey—no staff, no wallet, no bread, no money, and no extra tunic. <sup>4</sup> Whatever house you enter, stay there until you leave. <sup>5</sup> Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave that town, shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them." <sup>6</sup> Then they departed and went through the villages, proclaiming the gospel and healing everywhere.

<sup>7</sup> Now Herod the tetrarch heard about all that was happening, and he was perplexed, because it was said by some that John had risen from the dead, <sup>8</sup> and others said that Elijah had appeared, and still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen. <sup>9</sup> Herod said, "I beheaded John. Who is this about whom I hear such things?" And so he tried to see him.

<sup>10</sup> When the apostles returned, they told him everything they had done. Then he took them with him, and they went away privately to a town called Bethsaida. <sup>11</sup> But when the crowds heard about this, they followed him. He welcomed them and spoke to them about the kingdom of God, and he cured those who needed healing. <sup>12</sup> Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food, because we are here in an isolated place."

<sup>13</sup> But he said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people."

<sup>14</sup> (There were about five thousand men.) He said to his disciples, "Have them sit down in groups of about fifty each." <sup>15</sup> So they did this, and made the people sit down. <sup>16</sup> Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, he blessed them and broke them into pieces, and he gave them to the disciples to set before the crowd. <sup>17</sup> They all ate and were satisfied, and what was left over was picked up—twelve baskets of broken pieces.

<sup>18</sup> It came about while Jesus was praying by himself, the disciples were with him. He questioned them, saying, "Who do the crowds say that I am?"

<sup>19</sup> They answered, "John the Baptist. But others say Elijah, and others say that one of the prophets from long ago has risen."

<sup>20</sup> Then he said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter answered, "The Christ of God."

<sup>21</sup> But he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one, <sup>22</sup> saying, "The Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes, and he will be killed and on the third day be raised." <sup>23</sup> Then he said to them all, "If anyone wants to come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow me. <sup>24</sup> Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it. <sup>25</sup> What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself? <sup>26</sup> Whoever is ashamed of me and my words, of him will the Son of Man be ashamed when he comes in his own glory and the glory of the Father and of the holy angels. <sup>27</sup> But truly I say to you, there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God."

<sup>28</sup> Now about eight days after Jesus said these words, he took with him Peter and John and James and went up on the mountain to pray. <sup>29</sup> As he was praying, the form of his face was changed, and his clothes became brilliant white. <sup>30</sup> Behold, two men were talking with him, Moses and Elijah, <sup>31</sup> who appeared in glory, talking with him about his departure, which he was about to bring to completion in Jerusalem. <sup>32</sup> Now Peter and those who were with him were heavy with sleep, but when they became fully awake, they saw his glory and the two men who were standing with him. <sup>33</sup> As they were going away from Jesus, Peter said to him, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." (He did not know what he was saying.) <sup>34</sup> As he was saying this, a cloud came and

overshadowed them, and they were afraid as they entered into the cloud. <sup>35</sup> A voice came out of the cloud, saying, "This is my Son, the one who is chosen; listen to him." <sup>36</sup> When the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone. They kept silent and told no one in those days anything of what they had seen.

<sup>37</sup> Now on the next day, when they came down from the mountain, a large crowd met him. <sup>38</sup> Behold, a man from the crowd cried out, saying, "Teacher, I beg you to look at my son, for he is my only child. <sup>39</sup> You see, a spirit takes control over him and he suddenly screams; it causes him to have convulsions so that he foams at the mouth. It hardly ever leaves him and it bruises him badly. <sup>40</sup> I begged your disciples to force it out, but they could not."

<sup>41</sup> Jesus answered and said, "You unbelieving and perverse generation, how long must I be with you and put up with you? Bring your son here." <sup>42</sup> While the boy was coming, the demon threw him to the ground and shook him with convulsions. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit and healed the boy, and gave him back to his father. <sup>43</sup> Then they were all amazed at the greatness of God. While they all were marveling at everything he was doing, he said to his disciples, <sup>44</sup> "Let these words go deeply into your ears: The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men." <sup>45</sup> But they did not understand this statement. It was hidden from them, so they could not know its meaning, and yet they were afraid to ask about this statement.

<sup>46</sup> Then an argument started among them about which of them would be the greatest. <sup>47</sup> But Jesus, knowing the reasoning in their hearts, took a little child and put him by his side <sup>48</sup> and said to them, "Whoever welcomes this child in my name, welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me, welcomes the one who sent me. For whoever is least among you all is the one who is great."

<sup>49</sup> John answered, "Master, we saw someone forcing out demons in your name and we prevented him, because he does not follow along with us." <sup>50</sup> "Do not stop him," Jesus said, "because whoever is not against you is for you."

<sup>51</sup> When the days drew near for him to be taken up, he set his face to go to Jerusalem. <sup>52</sup> He sent messengers on ahead of him, and they went and entered into a Samaritan village to prepare everything for him. <sup>53</sup> But the people there did not welcome him because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem. <sup>54</sup> When the disciples James and John saw this, they said, "Lord, do you want us to command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them?" <sup>55</sup> But he turned and rebuked them, <sup>56</sup> and they went on to another village.

<sup>57</sup> As they were going along the road, someone said to him, "I will follow you wherever you go."

<sup>58</sup> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and birds in the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." <sup>59</sup> Then he said to another, "Follow me."

But he said, "Lord, first let me go and bury my father."

<sup>60</sup> But he said to him, "Leave the dead to bury their own dead. But as for you, go and proclaim far and wide the kingdom of God."

<sup>61</sup> Then someone else said, "I will follow you, Lord, but first let me say goodbye to those in my home."

<sup>62</sup> Jesus replied to him, "No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back is fit for the kingdom of God."

## Luke 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "To preach the kingdom of God"

No one knows for sure what the words "kingdom of God" here refer to. Some say it refers to the reign of God on earth, and others say it refers to the gospel message that Jesus died to pay for his people's sins. It is best to translate this as "to preach about the kingdom of God" or "to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king."

### **Elijah**

God had promised the Jews that the prophet Elijah would return before the Messiah came, so some people who saw Jesus do miracles thought Jesus was Elijah ([Luke 9:9](#), [Luke 9:19](#)). However, Elijah did come to earth to speak with Jesus ([Luke 9:30](#)). (See: prophet and christ and elijah)

### **"Kingdom of God"**

The term "kingdom of God" is used in this chapter to refer to a kingdom that was still in the future when the words were spoken. (See: kingdomofgod)

### **Glory**

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Luke says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

## **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

### **Paradox**

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. An example in this chapter is: "Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it." ([Luke 9:24](#)).

### **"Son of Man"**

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

### **"Receiving"**

This word appears several times in this chapter and means different things. When Jesus says, "If someone receives a little child like this in my name, he also is receiving me, and if someone receives me, he is also receiving the one who sent me" ([Luke 9:48](#)), he is speaking of people serving the child. When Luke says, "the people there did not receive him" ([Luke 9:53](#)), he means that the people did not believe in or accept Jesus. (See: believe)

## **Luke 9**

### **9:1-6**

#### **Who were the twelve?**

[9:1]

The twelve Luke wrote about were the twelve disciples.

See: [Disciple](#)

#### **Why did Luke wrote, "power and authority"?**

[9:1]

Luke wrote that Jesus gave the disciples "power," he wanted people to know that Jesus gave them the ability to do something. Luke wrote that Jesus gave the disciples "authority." That is, Jesus gave them permission to do something.

See: [Disciple](#)

#### **What did it mean to have power and authority "over all the demons"?**

[9:1]

Jesus gave the disciples power and authority "over all the demons." He gave them permission and power to make the demons to leave people and to stop controlling people.

See: [Disciple](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Disciple](#)

**What did it mean to “preach the kingdom of God”?**

[9:2]

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

**Why was shaking dust off feet a testimony against people who did not receive the twelve?**

[9:5]

The disciples shook the dust off of their feet because people did not believe the things they said about Jesus. This was a symbol. In ancient Israel, people did this when they left places where Gentiles lived because the Gentiles were unclean. Because people did not believe in Jesus, they were unclean. This is why the disciples shook the dust off of their feet. Perhaps this was a warning that God will reject these people.

See: Acts 13:48-51

See: [Symbol](#); [Gentile](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Symbol](#)

**9:7-9**

**Who was Herod the tetrarch?**

[9:7]

Herod the tetrarch was Herod Antipas. Sometimes people called him the tetrarch because he reigned over one fourth of the territory his father reigned over before him. Sometimes people called him a king (see: Mark 6:14).

See: [King Herod](#)

**Why did some people say Elijah appeared rather than became alive again?**

[9:8]

Some people said Elijah appeared rather than become alive again because Elijah did not die (see: 2 Kings 2:11). Instead, he went to heaven without dying. People expected Elijah to appear before the coming of the messiah (see: Malachi 4:5-6).

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

**9:10-17**

**Where was Behsaida?**

[9:10]

See Map: Bethsaida

**How many people were in the crowd?**

[9:14]

Luke wrote there were five thousand men in the crowd. However, scholars say there were also women and children in the crowd. In ancient times, people often counted only men in a crowd (see: Matthew 14:21). Perhaps there were about twenty thousand people in the crowd.

**How did Jesus “bless” the food?**

[9:16]

Jesus blessed the food. Some scholars say Jesus “consecrated” the food. That is, Jesus asked God to bless the people who were going to eat the food. More scholars think Jesus “thanked God” for the food.

See: John 17:1

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

## 9:18-22

### What did it mean that Jesus was “praying by himself”?

[9:18]

Luke wrote that Jesus was “praying by himself”. Jesus and the disciples were away from the crowd. Perhaps the disciples came and joined Jesus while he was praying.

See: [Disciple](#)

### Why did Peter know that Jesus is the “Christ of God”?

[9:20]

Peter thought that Jesus was “the Christ of God”. In Matthew’s gospel, Jesus told Peter that God the Father revealed to him that Jesus is the Christ (see: Matthew 16:16-17).

See: [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Gospel](#); [God the Father](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#)

### Why did Jesus warn the disciples not to tell people he is the Christ of God?

[9:21]

See: [Messianic Secret](#)

### Why did Jesus have to suffer?

[9:22]

Jesus had to suffer. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about certain prophecies about things that will happen to the messiah (see: Luke 24:45-46; Isaiah 53). Others scholars think Jesus was preparing the disciples for what was going to happen.

See: Luke 24:47; Ephesians 1:7; 2 Corinthians 5:21)

See: [Disciple](#) ; [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Disciple](#)

### Why did Jesus call himself the “Son of Man?”

[9:22]

See: [Son of Man](#)

## 9:23-27

### What did it mean that a Christian “must deny himself”?

[9:23]

Luke wrote that a Christian must deny himself. Scholars think Jesus meant that a Christian must do what God wants him to do. That is, a Christian must give up the right to do what they want to do and instead do what God wants them to do.

### What did it mean for a Christian to “take up his cross daily”?

[9:23]

Some scholars think Jesus used a metaphor when he said that a Christian must “take up his cross daily.” This meant that anyone who wanted to be a disciple of Jesus had to be prepared to suffer for being a

Christian. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about Christians doing things God wanted and not the things they wanted to do (see: Galatians 2:20).

See: [Suffer](#); [Cross](#); [Suffer](#)

**What did Jesus mean by saying, “whoever would save his life will lose it”?**

[9:24]

The person who wanted to “save his life” was a person that was willing to do what God wanted him to do. When they do this, they will suffer. Scholars think Jesus was talking about a person’s soul when he spoke about their life.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Soul](#); [Metaphor](#)

**What did Jesus mean by saying, “whoever loses his life for my sake will save it”?**

[9:24]

A person who “loses his life” is a person who gave up his right to live in the way he wants to live. He did this so he could follow Jesus. This person did this to honor God because they were at peace with God.

**What was meant by the words, “gain the whole world”?**

[9:25]

Someone who gained the whole world was someone who owned the world and everything in it. It was hyperbole to speak in this way. They were very rich and powerful.

See: [Hyperbole](#)

**What did it mean to be “ashamed” of Jesus and his words?**

[9:26]

Jesus talked about someone who was ashamed of him and the things he said. This person refused to be a disciple because he felt “ashamed” and afraid of being embarrassed in front of other people. That is, he was afraid that other people would insult or mock him for following Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

**When does Jesus come in “his own glory and the glory of the Father, and the angels”?**

[9:26]

See: [Angel](#); [Glory \(Glorify\)](#); [God the Father](#); [Angel](#)

**What did Jesus mean by saying that some “will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God”?**

[9:27]

When someone tasted death, this was a way of saying that they died. Jesus said that some people will not die before they see the kingdom of God. Scholars think different things about what it meant to “see the kingdom of God”.

1. Some scholars think Jesus was talking about the disciples who would see the form of Jesus change on the mountain (see: Luke 9:28-36).
2. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about people seeing him when God made him alive again (see: Mark 15:33-16:13).
3. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about people seeing the Holy Spirit do great things (see: Acts 2:1-4).

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

## 9:28-36

### Where did Jesus take Peter, John, and James?

[9:28]

Luke did not write the name of the mountain where Jesus took Peter, John, and James. Scholars think it was Hermon, Tabor, or Meron. Peter wrote the mountain was holy (see: 2 Peter 1:18).

See: [Holy \(Holiness, Set Apart\)](#)

See Map: Mt. Hermon; Mt. Tabor; Mt. Meron

### How was “the form of his face” changed?

[9:29]

Luke wrote that the form of Jesus’ face changed. Jesus’ face looked different in some way. Perhaps this was because Jesus’ face began to shine with a glory from heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### How did Moses and Elijah appear in “glorious splendor”?

[9:30, 9:31]

Moses and Elijah appeared in “glorious splendor.” Like Jesus, they shone brightly with glory from heaven. That is, they were surrounded with very bright light.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### What was the “departure” about which Jesus, Moses, and Elijah spoke?

[9:31]

When Moses and Elijah spoke to Jesus about his “departure,” they were speaking about Jesus dying. This happened in Jerusalem.

### Why did Peter want to “make three shelters”?

[9:33]

Peter wanted to make three shelters. Scholars think Peter was thinking about the shelters that were used to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles when people lived in shelters for seven days (see: Leviticus 23:33-42). They think Peter was wanted to stay on the mountain with Jesus, Moses, and Elijah.

**Advice to translators:** A shelter is a type of tent.

See: [Festival of Shelters](#)

### What was the cloud that came and overshadowed them?

[9:34]

Luke wrote about a cloud. Some scholars think the cloud was like the pillar of cloud that led the people of Israel in the wilderness (see: Exodus 14:19-20). They think the cloud appeared and cast a shadow over Jesus, Moses, Elijah, and the disciples. Other scholars think the cloud came close to the ground and surrounded Jesus, Moses, Elijah, and the disciples.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Who spoke out of the cloud?**

[9:35]

When Luke wrote about someone speaking out of the cloud, it was God who was speaking.

**What did it mean that Jesus was found alone?**

[9:36]

Luke wrote that Jesus was found alone. He wanted people to know that the disciples no longer saw Moses and Elijah. They only saw Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

**9:37-45****When speaking about a child, what did it mean that “a spirit takes control over him”?**

[9:39]

Luke was writing about an evil spirit or demon taking possession of the child. That is, the demon controlled the boy’s body and caused him to shake violently and to cry out.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**Why did Jesus call the people an “unbelieving and depraved generation”?**

[9:41]

Jesus called people an “unbelieving and depraved generation.” Some scholars think Jesus was telling the people that they were just like their ancestors, who also rejected God (see: Deuteronomy 32:5-6, 20). These people rejected Jesus.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\)](#)

**What did it mean that Jesus “rebuked the unclean spirit”?**

[9:42]

Luke wrote that Jesus “rebuked” the unclean spirit. Jesus commanded the evil spirit to leave the boy. That is, he made the demon stop controlling the boy.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**What did it mean that the Son of Man will be betrayed?**

[9:44]

Luke wrote that the Son of Man was going to be betrayed. That is, someone Jesus trusted would help Jesus’ enemies arrest Jesus.

See: [Son of Man](#)

**How was Jesus’ statement “hidden” from the disciples?**

[9:45]

Scholars think that God caused Jesus’ statement to be “hidden.” That is, people did not understand what Jesus wanted to say. This is because it was not the right time for the meaning of what Jesus said to be revealed. God planned for a time in the future for the disciples to understand what Jesus said.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)



**9:46-48****What did it mean that the disciples were arguing about who would be “greatest”?**

[9:46]

The disciples were arguing about who would be the greatest. Some scholars think the disciples were arguing about which of them was the greatest disciple at that present time. More scholars think the disciples were arguing about which of them was to be the greatest disciple in God’s kingdom. They wanted to be more honored than other people.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Pride](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

**What did Jesus mean when he said “whoever welcomes this child in my name”?**

[9:48]

Jesus put a “little child” next to him to teach the disciples a lesson about being great. Someone needed to help or care for a child. Because of this, someone must welcome a child. Jesus wanted the disciples to know that in the kingdom of God, they too needed someone greater than themselves to help them.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Pride](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

**What did it mean that “whoever is least among you all is the one who is great”?**

[9:48]

Luke wrote, “whoever is least among you all is the one who is great.” Some scholars think Jesus meant that whoever was a humble person was the one who was truly great. Others scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to know that God thought certain people were great who other people did not think they were great.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Pride](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

**9:49-50****Why did John say, “he does not follow along with us”?**

[9:49]

When John said these words to Jesus, he meant that the person who was forcing out demons was not one of the disciples.

See: [Disciple](#); [Demon](#); [Disciple](#)

**9:51-56****What did it mean for Jesus to be “taken up”?**

[9:51]

Jesus would be “taken up.” That is, God was going to take Jesus back up to heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**What was meant by the words, “he set his face to go to Jerusalem”?**

[9:51]

Luke wrote, “he set his face to go to Jerusalem.” Jesus decided to go to Jerusalem. That is, he was determined to start his journey to Jerusalem.

**Who were the Samaritans?**

[9:52]

See: [Samaria](#)

See Map: Samaria

**Why did the people of Samaria not welcome Jesus?**

[9:53]

The people of Samaria did not welcome Jesus because he was going to Jerusalem. The people of Samaria worshipped on Mount Gerizim. They did not like people traveling through Samaria to get to Jerusalem.

See Map: Mount Gerizim

**Why did rebuke the disciples?**

[9:55]

Scholars think that Jesus rebuked the disciples for wanting to see Samaria destroyed. This meant that Jesus told the disciples they were thinking in a wrong way. That is, they did not treat people the way God wanted them to treat other people.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

See Map: Samaria

**9:57-62****Why did Luke write, “the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head”?**

[9:58]

Luke wrote, “the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” Foxes and birds had places where they lived. However, Jesus was always traveling and did not live in one place.

See: [Son of Man](#)**What did Jesus mean by saying, “leave the dead to bury their own dead”?**

[9:60]

Jesus said, “leave the dead to bury their own dead.” Some scholars think the first use of the word “dead” was speaking about those who were spiritually dead. That is, all those who did not know Jesus or had rejected him as the messiah. Because of this, they were separated from God. In ancient Israel, people often spoke about this as a type of death.

He said those who were spiritually dead can take care of burying those who were physically dead. His command saying, “follow me” meant he wanted that person to immediately go out and tell people about the kingdom of God.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#)**Someone wanted to say goodbye to people at home before they followed Jesus. How did Jesus use a metaphor to answer them?**

[9:62]

Someone wanted to say goodbye to people at home before they followed Jesus. Jesus answered them with a metaphor about plowing a field and then looking back. People used an animal to pull a plow. The farmer held a handle on the plow to make a straight trench in the ground. If the farmer looked back the trench

was not straight. Just as the farmer should not look behind him, so a disciple should keep his eye on following Jesus.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

---

## Luke 9:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus reminds his disciples not to depend on money and their things, gives them power, and then sends them out to various places.

### power and authority

These two terms are used together to show that the twelve had both the ability and the right to heal people. Translate this phrase with a combination of words that include both of these ideas.

### all demons

Possible meanings are 1) "every demon" or 2) "every kind of demon."

### diseases

sicknesses

## Luke 9:2

### sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

## Luke 9:3

### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve." It may be helpful to state that this happened before they went out. Alternate translation: "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

### Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

### staff

large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against attackers

### wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

### bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

## Luke 9:4

### Whatever house you enter

"Any house you enter"

### stay there

"remain there" or "temporarily live in that house as a guest"

### until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

## Luke 9:5

### Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where people do not receive you: When you leave"

### shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

To "shake off the dust from your feet" was an expression of strong rejection in that culture. It showed they did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

## Luke 9:6

### they departed

"they left the place where Jesus was"

### healing everywhere

"healing wherever they went"

## Luke 9:7

### General Information:

Verses 7-9 interrupt the story to give information about Herod.

### Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Herod.

### Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

### perplexed

unable to understand, confused

### it was said by some

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some people said"

## Luke 9:8

### still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

The word "said" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

**Luke 9:9****I beheaded John. Who is this**

Herod assumes that it is impossible for John to rise from the dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

**I beheaded John**

Herod's soldiers would have carried out executions. Alternate translation: "I commanded my soldiers to cut off John's head"

**Luke 9:10****Connecting Statement:**

Though the disciples return to Jesus and they go to Bethsaida to spend time together, the crowds follow Jesus for healing and to listen to his teaching. He performs a miracle to provide bread and fish to the crowds as they return home.

**apostles returned**

"apostles came back to where Jesus was"

**everything they had done**

This refers to the teaching and healing that they did when they went to the other cities.

**Bethsaida**

This is the name of a city.

**Luke 9:11****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:12****the day was about to come to an end**

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day." The end of the day was at sunset. Alternate translation: "it was almost sunset"

**an isolated place**

This was a place far away from where people lived. Alternate translation: "a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

**Luke 9:13****five loaves of bread**

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

**two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people**

If "unless" is difficult to understand in your language, you could make a new sentence. "two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

**Luke 9:14****about five thousand men**

"about 5,000 men." This number does not include the women and children who might have been present.

**Have them sit down**

"Tell them to sit down"

**fifty each**

"50 each"

**Luke 9:15****So they did this**

"This" refers to what Jesus told them to do Luke 9:14. They told the people to sit down in groups of about fifty people.

**Luke 9:16****Taking the five loaves**

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

**up to heaven**

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky.

**he blessed them**

This refers to the loaves of bread and the fish.

**to set before**

"to pass out to" or "to give to"

**Luke 9:17****were satisfied**

This idiom means they ate enough food so they were not hungry. Alternate translation: "they had as much as they wanted to eat"

**Luke 9:18****Connecting Statement:**

Jesus is praying, with only his disciples near him, and they begin to talk about who Jesus is. Jesus tells them that he will soon die and resurrect and urges them to follow him even if it becomes very hard to do that.

**It came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

**praying by himself**

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying personally and privately by himself.

**Luke 9:19****John the Baptist**

It may be helpful to restate part of the question here. Alternate translation: "The crowds say you are John the Baptist"

**that one of the prophets from long ago has risen**

It may be helpful to clarify how this answer relates to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen"

**has risen**

"has come back to life"

**Luke 9:20****Then he said to them**

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

**Luke 9:21****he warned and instructed them**

The combination of "warned" and "instructed" is a hendiadys that means "strongly warned" or "strictly instructed." Alternate translation: "he strongly warned them" or he strictly instructed them"

**them to tell this to no one.**

"not to tell anyone." or "that they should not tell anyone." This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "them, 'Do not tell anyone.'"

**Luke 9:22****The Son of Man must suffer many things**

"People will cause the Son of Man to suffer greatly"

**The Son of Man ... and he will**

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... and I will"

**be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

**he will be killed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will kill him"

**on the third day**

"three days after he dies" or "on the third day after his death"

**be raised**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

**Luke 9:23****he said**

"Jesus said"

**to them all**

This refers to the disciples who were with Jesus.

**come after me**

Coming after Jesus represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

**must deny himself**

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

**take up his cross daily and follow me**

"carry his cross and follow me every day." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. To follow Jesus represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "must obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

**Luke 9:24****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:25****What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?**

The implied answer to this question is that it is not good. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

**to gain the whole world**

"to get everything in the world"

**lose or forfeit himself**

"ruin himself or give up his life"

**Luke 9:26****my words**

"what I say" or "what I teach"

**of him will the Son of Man be ashamed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

**the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory**

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

**the Father**

This is an important title for God.

**Luke 9:27****But truly I say to you**

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

**there are some standing here who will not taste death**  
"some of you who are standing here will not taste death"

**before they see**

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "before you see"

**will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God**  
"Taste death" is an idiom that means "die." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

**Luke 9:28****Connecting Statement:**

Eight days after Jesus tells his disciples that some would not die before they saw the kingdom of God, Jesus goes up the mountain to pray with Peter, James, and John, who all fall asleep while Jesus is changed to a dazzling appearance.

**these words**

This refers to what Jesus said to his disciples in the preceding verses.

**Luke 9:29****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:30****Behold**

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

**Luke 9:31****who appeared in glory**

This phrase gives information about how Moses and Elijah looked. Some languages would translate it as a separate clause. Alternate translation: "and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

**his departure**

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world."  
This was a polite way of talking about his death.  
Alternate translation: "his death"

**Luke 9:32****Now**

This word is used here to mark a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells about Peter, James, and John.

**heavy with sleep**

This idiom means "very sleepy."

**they saw his glory**

This refers to the brilliant light that surrounded them. Alternate translation: "they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

**the two men who were standing with him**

This refers to Moses and Elijah.

**Luke 9:33****As they were going away**

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

**shelters**

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

**Luke 9:34****As he was saying this**

"While Peter was saying these things"

**they were afraid**

These adult disciples were not afraid of clouds. This phrase indicates that some kind of unusual fear came over them with the cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

**they entered into the cloud**

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

**Luke 9:35****A voice came out of the cloud**

It is understood that the voice could only have belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud"

**Son**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

**the one who is chosen**

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "the one I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

**Luke 9:36****They kept silent ... what they had seen**

This is information that tells what happened after the story as a result of the events in the story itself.

**kept silent ... told no one**

The first phrase refers to their immediate response, and the second refers to what they did in the following days.

**Luke 9:37****Connecting Statement:**

The next day after Jesus's dazzling appearance, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy that the disciples were unable to make better.

**Luke 9:38****Behold, a man from the crowd**

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There was a man in the crowd who"

**Luke 9:39****You see, a spirit**

The phrase "You see" introduces us to the evil spirit in the man's story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There is an evil spirit that"

**he foams at the mouth**

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

**Luke 9:40****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:41****Jesus answered and said**

"Jesus answered by saying"

**You unbelieving and perverse generation**

Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered, and not to his disciples.

**perverse generation**

"corrupt generation"

**how long must I be with you and put up with you?**

Here "you" is plural. Jesus uses these questions to express his sadness that the people do not believe. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

**Bring your son here**

Here "your" is singular. Jesus is speaking directly to the father who addressed him.

**Luke 9:42****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:43****they were all amazed at the greatness of God**

Jesus performed the miracle, but the crowd recognized that God was the power behind the healing.

**everything he was doing**

"everything Jesus was doing"

**Luke 9:44****Let these words go deeply into your ears**

This is an idiom that means they should pay attention. Alternate translation: "Listen carefully and remember" or "Do not forget this"

**The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men**

This can be stated with an active clause. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men"

**The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men**

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. The word "hands" is a synecdoche for the people whose hands they are or a metonym for the power that uses those hands. You may need to make explicit who these men are. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men" or "The Son of Man will be betrayed into the power of his enemies" or "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed to my enemies"

**Luke 9:45****It was hidden from them**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God hid the meaning from them"

**Luke 9:46****General Information:**

The disciples begin to argue about who will be the most powerful among them.

**among them**

"among the disciples"

**Luke 9:47****knowing the reasoning in their hearts**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for their minds. Alternate translation: "knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

**Luke 9:48****in my name**

This refers to a person doing something as a representative of Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me"

**in my name, welcomes me**

This metaphor could also be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "in my name, it is like he is welcoming me"

**the one who sent me**

"God, who sent me"

**the one who is great**

"the one whom God considers to be most important"

**Luke 9:49****John answered**

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus." John was responding to what Jesus had said about being the greatest. He was not answering a question.

**we saw**

John speaks of himself but not Jesus, so "we" here is exclusive.

**in your name**

This means the person was speaking with the power and authority of Jesus.

**Luke 9:50****Do not stop him**

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Allow him to continue"

**whoever is not against you is for you**

Some modern languages have sayings that mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "if a person does not keep you from working, it is as if he were helping you" or "if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

**Luke 9:51****General Information:**

It is now obvious that Jesus has decided to go to Jerusalem.

**When the days drew near for him to be taken up**

Here "be taken up" implies that Jesus will be taken up to heaven. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the time was coming for him to go up heaven" or "When it was almost time for him to leave this world"

**set his face**

This idiom means he "firmly decided." Alternate translation: "made up his mind" or "decided"

**Luke 9:52****to prepare everything for him**

This means to make arrangements for his arrival there, possibly including a place to speak, a place to stay, and food.

**Luke 9:53****did not welcome him**

"did not want him to stay"

**because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem**

The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other. Therefore the Samaritans would not help Jesus on his journey to Jerusalem, the Jewish capital.

**Luke 9:54****saw this**

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

**command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them**

James and John suggested this method of judgment because they knew that this was how the prophets such as Elijah had judged people who rejected God.

**Luke 9:55****he turned and rebuked them**

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John." Jesus did not condemn the Samaritans as the disciples expected.

**Luke 9:56****General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 9:57****someone**

This was not one of the disciples.

**Luke 9:58****Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head**

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being Jesus's disciple. Jesus implies that if the man were to follow him, that man too might not have a home. Alternate translation: "Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head. So do not expect that you will have a home"

**Foxes**

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.



**birds in the sky**  
"birds that fly in the air"

**the Son of Man has ... his head**  
Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.  
Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

**nowhere to lay his head**  
"nowhere to rest my head" or "nowhere to sleep."  
Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that he has no permanent home and that people did not often invite him to stay with them.

#### Luke 9:59

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus continues to talk with the people along the road.

**Follow me**  
By saying this Jesus is asking the person to become his disciple and to go with him.

**first let me go and bury my father**  
It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

**first let me go**  
"before I do that, let me go"

#### Luke 9:60

**Leave the dead to bury their own dead**  
Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead" are 1) it is a metaphor for those who will

soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

**the dead**  
This refers to dead people in general. Alternate translation: "the dead people"

#### Luke 9:61

**I will follow you**  
"I will join you as a disciple" or "I am ready to follow you"

**first let me say goodbye to those in my home**  
"before I do that, let me tell my people at my home that I am leaving"

#### Luke 9:62

**No one ... fit for the kingdom of God**  
Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being his disciple. Jesus means that a person is not suitable for the kingdom to God if he focuses on people in his past instead of following Jesus.

**No one who puts his hand to the plow**  
Here "puts his hand to" something is an idiom that means the person starts to do something. Alternate translation: "No one who starts to plow his field"

**looks back**  
Anyone who is looking back while plowing cannot guide the plow where it needs to go. That person must focus on looking forward in order to plow well.

**fit for the kingdom of God**  
"useful for the kingdom of God" or "suitable for the kingdom of God"

## ULB Translation Questions

#### Luke 9:2

**What did Jesus send the twelve out to do?**  
Jesus sent them out to preach the kingdom of God and to heal the sick.

#### Luke 9:7

**Herod heard from some people three possible explanations of who Jesus was. What were they?**  
Some said Jesus was John the Baptizer risen from the dead, some said Elijah had appeared, and some said an ancient prophet had risen.

#### Luke 9:8

**Herod heard from some people three possible explanations of who Jesus was. What were they?**  
Some said Jesus was John the Baptizer risen from the dead, some said Elijah had appeared, and some said an ancient prophet had risen.

#### Luke 9:13

**What food did the disciples have to feed the crowd?**  
They had five loaves of bread and two fish.

**Luke 9:14**

**How many men were following Jesus in the crowd that was in the desert place?**

About five thousand men were there.

**Luke 9:16**

**What did Jesus do with the five loaves and two fish?**

He looked up to heaven, blessed them, broke them into pieces, and gave them to the disciples to give to the crowd.

**Luke 9:17**

**How many baskets of leftover food were there?**

There were twelve baskets full of leftover food.

**Luke 9:20**

**When Jesus asked the disciples who he was, what did Peter answer?**

He said, "The Christ from God."

**Luke 9:23**

**Jesus said that if anyone wants to come after him, he must do what?**

He must deny himself, take up his cross daily, and follow Jesus.

**Luke 9:29**

**What happened to Jesus' appearance on the mountain?**

The appearance of his face changed and his clothing became white and dazzling.

**Luke 9:30**

**Who appeared with Jesus?**

Moses and Elijah appeared with Jesus.

**Luke 9:35**

**What did the voice say from the cloud that overshadowed them?**

The voice said, "This is my chosen son; listen to him."

**Luke 9:39**

**Before Jesus cast out the demon, what did it cause the man's son to do?**

The demon caused him to scream and have convulsions with foaming at the mouth.

**Luke 9:44**

**What statement did Jesus make to the disciples that they did not understand?**

He said, "The Son of Man will be delivered over into the hands of men."

**Luke 9:48**

**Who did Jesus say is the one who is great among the disciples?**

The one who is least among them is the one who is great.

**Luke 9:51**

**As the days were approaching when Jesus would go up to heaven, what did he do?**

He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.

**Luke 9:62**

**To be fit for the kingdom of God, what must a person not do once he has "put his hand to the plow?"**

The person must not look back.

## Chapter 10

<sup>1</sup> Now after these things, the Lord appointed seventy <sup>[1]</sup> others, and sent them out two by two ahead of him to every town and place where he himself was about to go. <sup>2</sup> He said to them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out laborers into his harvest. <sup>3</sup> Go on your way. See, I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves. <sup>4</sup> Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals, and greet no one on the road. <sup>5</sup> Whatever house you enter, first say, 'May peace be on this house!' <sup>6</sup> If a son of peace is there, your peace will rest upon him, but if not, it will return to you. <sup>7</sup> Remain in that same house, eating and drinking what they provide, for the laborer is worthy of his wages. Do not move around from house to house. <sup>8</sup> Whatever town you enter, and they receive you, eat what is set before you <sup>9</sup> and heal the sick that are there. Say to them, 'The kingdom of God has come close to you.' <sup>10</sup> Whenever you enter a town and they do not receive you, go out into its streets and say, <sup>11</sup> 'Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you! But know this: The kingdom of God is near.' <sup>12</sup> I say to you that on that day it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town. <sup>13</sup> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. <sup>14</sup> But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you. <sup>15</sup> You, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades. <sup>16</sup> The one who listens to you listens to me, and the one who rejects you rejects me, and the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me."

<sup>17</sup> The seventy returned with joy, saying, "Lord, even the demons submitted to us in your name."

<sup>18</sup> Jesus said to them, "I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning. <sup>19</sup> See, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing will in any way hurt you. <sup>20</sup> Nevertheless do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven."

<sup>21</sup> At that same hour he rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit and said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you concealed these things from the wise and understanding and revealed them to those who are untaught, like little children. Yes, Father, for so it was well pleasing in your sight. <sup>22</sup> "All things have been entrusted to me from my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him." <sup>23</sup> Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately, "Blessed are those who see the things that you see. <sup>24</sup> I say to you, many prophets and kings desired to see the things you see, and they did not see them, and to hear the things that you hear, and they did not hear them."

<sup>25</sup> Behold, an expert in the law stood up so that he might test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

<sup>26</sup> Jesus said to him, "What is written in the law? How do you read it?"

<sup>27</sup> He gave an answer and he said, "You will love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself."

<sup>28</sup> Jesus said to him, "You have answered correctly. Do this, and you will live." <sup>29</sup> But he, desiring to justify himself, said to Jesus, "Who is my neighbor?"

<sup>30</sup> Jesus answered him and said, "A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho. He fell among robbers, who stripped him of his belongings, and beat him, and left him half dead. <sup>31</sup> By chance a certain priest was going down that way, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. <sup>32</sup> In the same way, a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side. <sup>33</sup> But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came to where he was. When he saw him, he was moved with compassion. <sup>34</sup> He approached him and bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them. He set him on his own animal, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. <sup>35</sup> The next day he took out two denarii, and gave them to the host, and said, 'Take care of him, and whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you.' <sup>36</sup> Which of these three do you think was a neighbor to him who fell among the robbers?"

<sup>37</sup> He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

Jesus said to him, "Go and do the same."

<sup>38</sup> Now as they were traveling along, he entered into a certain village, and a certain woman named Martha welcomed him into her house. <sup>39</sup> She had a sister named Mary, who sat at the Lord's feet and heard his word. <sup>40</sup> But Martha was overly busy with preparing to serve a meal. She came up to Jesus and said, "Lord, do you not care that my sister left me to serve alone? Therefore tell her to help me."

<sup>41</sup> But the Lord answered and said to her, "Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things, <sup>42</sup> but only one thing is necessary. Mary has chosen what is best, which will not be taken away from her."

---

## Footnotes

---

10:1 <sup>[1]</sup>Many of the best ancient copies read

---

## Luke 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Harvest can also refer to the food that is gathered. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: harvest and faith)

#### Neighbor

A neighbor is anyone who lives nearby. The Jews helped their Jewish neighbors who needed help, and they expected their Jewish neighbors to help them. Jesus wanted them to understand that people who were not Jews were also their neighbors, so he told them a parable

---

## Luke 10

### 10:1-12

#### Why did Jesus send out people in groups of two?

[10:1]

Jesus sent out people in groups of two. In ancient times, people often traveled with other people. Perhaps he did this because in the Law of Moses, two people were needed to be a witness of something. These two people were witnesses of Jesus (see: Deuteronomy 19:15).

See: [Law of Moses](#)

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, "the harvest is plentiful"?

[10:2]

Jesus said "the harvest is plentiful." This is a metaphor. A farmer's field was full of grain and was ready to be harvested. Jesus was saying there are many people ready to believe in him. The farmer needed people to harvest the grain. Jesus also needed his disciples to tell people about him. Jesus wanted people to pray to God, and ask him to have more people serve God.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

**How were the disciples like lambs being sent out “in the midst of wolves”?**

[10:3]

Jesus used a metaphor when speaking about his disciples. When he spoke about sheep, he was speaking about his disciples. Sheep need a shepherd to defend them and to watch over them. Wolves were wild animals that killed sheep. There were many people who rejected Jesus and tried to harm the disciples.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

**Advice to Translators:** A wolf is large type of dog that does not live with people.

**Why did Jesus tell his disciples not to “carry a money bag, or a traveler’s bag, or sandals”?**

[10:4]

Jesus told his disciples not to carry certain things. Scholars disagree about why told his disciples not to bring anything with them.

1. Some scholars think Jesus was telling the disciples not to carry extra money or clothing for their journey. He wanted them to trust that God would give them what they needed to serve these people.
2. Other scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to leave immediately.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus command the disciples not to greet anyone on the road?**

[10:4]

In ancient times, greetings often took a long time. Perhaps Jesus want people to hurry.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus instruct the disciples to say, “May peace be on this house”?**

[10:5]

Jesus wanted his disciples to say, “may peace be on this house.” Some scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to greet people the way the Jews greeted one another when they entered someone’s home. They wanted people to be at peace with God.

**What was a person of peace?**

[10:6]

A person of peace accepted the peace from Jesus. Scholars think they were ready to receive peace or God prepared them to receive peace. This person wanted to be at peace and welcomed people who followed Jesus into their house.

**Why did Jesus say that peace will return to you?**

[10:6]

Jesus said that peace will return to you. He wanted people to know that God’s peace would not rest on that home. It would be like the disciples never even spoke the blessing.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “the laborer is worthy of his wages”?**

[10:7]

In ancient times, people often said “the laborer is worthy of his wages.” Anyone who did work had the right to receive money for the things he did. In the same way, Jesus wanted his disciples to know it was right for them to receive food and a place to sleep because they were teaching people about Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **How had the kingdom of God come close?**

[10:9]

Luke wrote that the kingdom of God came close. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about his disciples, whom he sent out, healing and telling people about the kingdom of God. In this way, the kingdom had come near to them. Other scholars think Jesus was saying that because he was among them, the kingdom of God was now in the world. However, scholars think it will only be completed in the future. Other scholars think Jesus was offering to rule and be king, but he did not because people rejected him.

See: [Justify \(Justification\)](#)

### **What did Jesus mean with the words, “we wipe off against you” when speaking about the dust on the disciple’s feet?**

[10:11]

See: Luke 9:5

### **Why did Jesus say it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for the town that rejected the followers of Jesus?**

[10:12]

Jesus said that it would be better for the people of Sodom than for those who rejected him. The people of Sodom sinned more than other people and God punished them (see: Genesis: 18:20; 19:24). God will punish people more if they reject Jesus.

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#)

See Map: Sodom

## **10:13-20**

### **What was a woe?**

[10:13]

See: [Woe](#)

### **Where were Chorazin and Bethsaida?**

[10:13]

Chorazin and Bethsaida were cities in Israel. The people in these cities were Jews.

See Map: Chorazin and Bethsaida

### **Where were Tyre and Sidon?**

[10:13]

Tyre and Sidon were cities outside of Israel. The people in these cities were Gentiles.

See: [Gentile](#)

See Map: Tyre and Sidon

**What were the “mighty works” about which Jesus spoke?**

[10:13]

The “mighty works” or “miracles” about which Jesus spoke were the healings, making people alive again, and forcing out demons.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#) ; [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**What did it mean to repent?**

[10:13]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

**When will Jesus judge these cities?**

[10:14]

Jesus will judge these cities after he returns at the end of the earth.

See: [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#)

**Where was Capernaum?**

[10:15]

Capernaum was a city in Israel near the Sea of Galilee. Jesus stayed there often and did many miracles and taught people.

See: [Miracle](#)

See Map: Capernaum; Sea of Galilee

**How was a city exalted to “heaven?”**

[10:15]

A city “exalted to heaven” was a metaphor. This city was more honored than other cities. A city was exalted to “heaven” or the “sky” when God honored it. In ancient Israel, people thought that nothing was higher than the sky.

See: [Heaven;Heaven](#)

**What is Hades?**

[10:15]

See: [Hades \(Sheol\)](#)

**Jesus said, “whoever listens to you.” Who was he talking about?**

[10:16]

When Jesus said “whoever listens to you,” he was talking about the disciples he sent. He gave them permission to say the things he wanted them to say. If the people listen to the disciples, it was as if they listened to Jesus. If people did not listen to the disciples, they rejected Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Why did the demons submit to the disciples in the name of Jesus?**

[10:17]

The demons submitted to the disciples in the name of Jesus. Scholars think the demons knew that Jesus gave the disciples permission to do things for him. Because of this, the demons obeyed the disciples.

See: [Disciple](#); [Submit \(Submission\)](#); [Disciple](#)

### **What did Jesus mean when he said he was “watching Satan fall from heaven”?**

[10:18]

Jesus said that Satan fell from heaven. This is a metaphor.

1. Some scholars think Jesus was talking about when God cast Satan out of heaven (see: Isaiah 14:12-15; Ezekiel 28:12-19). That is, God made Satan live in hell, not heaven.
2. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about Jesus defeating Satan when he was tempted (see: Matthew 4: 1-11).
3. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jesus and God defeating Satan.

See: [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#); [Heaven](#); [Metaphor](#); [Tempt \(Temptation\)](#)

### **What was meant when Jesus said, “I have given you authority”?**

[10:19]

Scholars think Jesus gave his disciples the permission to do things for him. He gave them the power to do things they could not do without him (see: Mark 16:17-18). They think Jesus gave his disciples power over the enemy, Satan.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **What was meant by the words, “your names are engraved in heaven”?**

[10:20]

Some scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to rejoice that they were joined together in some way with other Christians. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about God’s book of life (see: Revelation 3:5).

See: [Heaven](#); [Rejoice \(Joy, Joyful\)](#); [Heaven](#)

## **10:21-24**

### **How did Jesus rejoice in the Holy Spirit?**

[10:21]

Jesus rejoiced in the Holy Spirit because the Holy Spirit filled him and led him (see: 3:22;4:1). The Holy Spirit wanted Jesus to pray these things (see: 10:21-22). This brought joy to Jesus.

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#)

### **Who is the Lord of heaven and earth?**

[10:21]

God the Father is the Lord of heaven and earth. That is, God the Father made heaven and earth. This is why he is Lord over heaven and earth.

See: Genesis 1:1-25; John 1:1-5

See: [Lord](#); [Heaven](#); [Create \(Creation, Creature\)](#); [Lord](#)

### **What did God conceal and reveal?**

[10:21]



Scholars say God concealed and revealed things about the kingdom of God. At this time, he wanted people to know certain things about the kingdom of God. At this time, he also wanted people not to know certain things about the kingdom of God.

See: [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#)

### **Who were the little children?**

[10:21]

Jesus spoke about little children. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think he was speaking about people who did not know much about the Bible (see: Hebrews 5:13). Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people who believed the right things about God even when the Jewish teachers did not believe the right things.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### **What did it mean that the Father entrusted Jesus with all things?**

[10:22]

God the Father entrusted Jesus with all things. Scholars think that when the Father entrusted all things to Jesus, he gave Jesus all knowledge. That is, Jesus knew everything that God the Father was going to do. He also gave Jesus permission to give eternal life to other people (see: Matthew 28:18; John 17:2).

See: [Eternal Life](#); [Eternal Life](#)

### **Why did no one know who the Son was except the Father and no one knew who the Father was except the Son?**

[10:22]

No one knew who the Son was except the Father and no one knew who the Father was except the Son. This is because only the Father and the Son know each other fully. The Father and the Son know each other from eternity.

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

### **How did Jesus reveal God the Father to people?**

[10:22]

Jesus revealed God the Father to people by telling them about God and what God wanted. He also revealed God the Father by doing God's will.

See: [Will of God](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Will of God](#)

### **What did it mean that the disciples were "blessed"?**

[10:23]

Jesus said that the disciples were blessed. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a person who had received great favor from God. God favored them because they witnessed the things Jesus said and did.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

## **10:25-29**

### **What was a teacher of the Jewish laws?**

[10:25]

See: [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did this man want to test Jesus?**

[10:25]

This man tried to test Jesus. Scholars disagree about why this man did this.

1. He wanted to know the things Jesus taught about the Law of Moses.
2. He wanted to trick Jesus into saying something that would make people angry.
3. He thought he knew more about the Law of Moses than Jesus.

See: Test; [Law of Moses](#)

### **How did the teacher of the law answer Jesus?**

[10:27]

The teacher of the Law of Moses said what was written in the Law of Moses when he answered Jesus' question (see: Deuteronomy 6:5; Leviticus 19:18).

See: [Law of Moses](#)

### **How did the teacher of the law wanted to justify himself?**

[10:29]

The teacher of the Law of Moses wanted to justify himself. Some scholars think that when the teacher wanted to make people think he was right. That is, he wanted to make people think that he was wise. Other scholars say this man wanted to justify himself because he did evil things to other people.

See: [Wise \(Wisdom, Fool\)](#); [Justify \(Justification\)](#); [Wise \(Wisdom, Fool\)](#)

## **10:30-37**

### **Where was Jericho?**

[10:30]

See Map: Jericho

### **How did someone “fall among robbers”?**

[10:30]

When someone “fell among robbers,” the robbers violently attacked him. They took his clothes and beat him. Some scholars think the robbers surrounded him. Other scholars think he fought the robbers and they used clubs or sticks to beat him. Other scholars think the robbers also took his money. The robbers left him half dead. That is, he was about to die if no one helped him.

### **What was a Samaritan?**

[10:33]

See: [Samaria](#)

See Map: Samaria

### **What did it mean that the Samaritan was “moved with compassion”?**

[10:33]

The Samaritan was moved with “compassion.” He felt sorry for the injured man.

See: [Mercy](#); [Mercy](#)

See Map: Samaria

### Why did the Samaritan pour oil and wine on the injured man's wounds?

[10:34]

In ancient times, people often used oil and wine for wounds. The oil and wine cleaned the wound and made it feel better.

**Advice to translators:** A wound is a place on someone's skin that has been hurt.

### What was a denarius?

[10:35]

A denarius was the amount of money someone typically made in one day.

See: [Denarius](#)

### 10:38-42

### Why did Mary "sat at the Lord's feet and heard his word"?

[10:39]

In ancient Israel, a student often sat on the floor to listen to their teacher while he sat on a box or chair to teach. She did this because she was humble and wanted to learn from Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### How did Mary choose what was best?

[10:42]

Mary choose what was best by doing the one thing that she needed to do. That is, she needed to learn from Jesus more than she needed to help prepare a meal. Perhaps Martha needed to spend less time preparing for a meal and spend more time listening to Jesus.

### How will the best not be taken away from Mary?

[10:42]

Luke wrote that the best will not be taken away from Mary. Some scholars think that Mary would always remember sitting at Jesus' feet and hearing him teach. She would especially remember these things after Jesus was crucified, buried, and became alive again.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### Luke 10:1

#### General Information:

Jesus sends out 70 more people ahead of him.

#### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

#### seventy

"70." Some versions say "seventy-two" or "72." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

#### sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

### Luke 10:2

#### He said to them

This was before the men actually went out.  
Alternate translation: "He had said to them" or "Before they went out he told them"

**The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few**  
 "There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go teach and help the people.

### Luke 10:3

**Go on your way**  
 "Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

**I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves**  
 Wolves attack and kill sheep. This metaphor therefore means that there are people who would attempt to harm the disciples that Jesus is sending out. The names of other animals could be substituted. Alternate translation: "when I send you out, people will want to harm you, as wolves attack sheep"

### Luke 10:4

**Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals**  
 "Do not take with you a bag, a traveler's bag, or sandals"

**greet no one on the road**  
 "do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was emphasizing that they should go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

### Luke 10:5

**May peace be on this house**  
 This was both a greeting and a blessing. Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

### Luke 10:6

**a son of peace**  
 The phrase "son of peace" here is a metaphor for a person who wants peace with God and with people. Alternate translation: "a peaceful person"

**your peace will rest upon him**  
 Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose where to stay. Alternate translation: "he will have the peace you blessed him with"

**if not**  
 It may be helpful to restate the entire phrase. Alternate translation: "if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

**it will return to you**  
 Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose to leave. Alternate translation: "you will

have that peace" or "he will not receive the peace you blessed him with"

### Luke 10:7

**Remain in that same house**  
 Jesus was not saying that they should stay in the house all day, but that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

**for the laborer is worthy of his wages**  
 This is a general principle that Jesus was applying to the men he was sending out. Since they would be teaching and healing the people, the people should provide them with a place to stay and with food.

**Do not move around from house to house**  
 Moving around from house to house means going to different houses. It can be made clear that he was talking about staying overnight at different houses. "Do not go sleep at a different house each night"

### Luke 10:8

**and they receive you**  
 "if they welcome you"

**eat what is set before you**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "eat whatever food they give you"

### Luke 10:9

**the sick**  
 This refers to sick people in general. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

**The kingdom of God has come close to you**  
 The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." Possible meanings are 1) the kingdom of God will begin soon. Alternate translation: "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or 2) the activities of kingdom of God are happening all around you. Alternate translation: "The proof that God is reigning is all around you"

### Luke 10:10

**and they do not receive you**  
 "and the people of the city reject you"

### Luke 10:11

**Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you**  
 This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we thoroughly reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

**we wipe off**

Since Jesus was sending these people out in groups of two, it would be two people saying this. So languages that have a dual form of "we" would use it.

**But know this: The kingdom of God is near**

The phrase "But know this" emphasizes the importance of what is said next. Alternate translation: "But be aware that the kingdom of God is near" or "But be sure of this: The kingdom of God is near"

**The kingdom of God is near**

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." See how you translated a similar sentence in [Luke 10:8]

**Luke 10:12**

**I say to you**

Jesus was saying this to the 70 people he was sending out. He said this to show that he was about to say something very important.

**that day**

The disciples would have understood that this refers to the time of final judgment of sinners. Alternate translation: "judgment day"

**it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town**

"God will not judge Sodom as severely as he will judge that town." Alternate translation: "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

**Luke 10:13**

**Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!**

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida are there listening to him, but they are not.

**If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon**

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past but did not. Alternate translation: "If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

**they would have repented long ago, sitting**

"the wicked people who lived there would have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting"

**sitting in sackcloth and ashes**

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes"

**Luke 10:14**

**But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you**

It may be helpful to clearly state the reason for their judgment. Alternate translation: "But because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles, God will judge you more severely than he will judge the people of Tyre and Sidon"

**at the judgment**

"on that final day when God judges everyone"

**Luke 10:15**

**You, Capernaum**

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they are listening to him, but they are not.

**do you think you will be exalted to heaven?**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. The expression "exalted to heaven" means "greatly exalted" or "honored." Alternate translation: "you will certainly not go up to heaven!" or "God will not honor you!"

**you will be brought down to Hades**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

**Luke 10:16**

**The one who listens to you listens to me**

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

**the one who rejects you rejects me**

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

**the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me**

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting the one who sent me"

**the one who sent me**

This refers to God the Father, who appointed Jesus for this special task. Alternate translation: "God, who sent me"

**Luke 10:17**

**The seventy returned**

Some languages will need to say that the seventy actually went out first, as the UDB does. This is implicit information that can be made explicit.

**seventy**

You may want to add a footnote: "Some versions have '72' instead of '70.'"

**in your name**

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

**Luke 10:18**

**I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning**

Jesus used a simile to compare how God was defeating Satan when his 70 disciples were preaching in the towns to the way lightning strikes.

**fall from heaven as lightning**

Possible meanings are 1) fall as quickly as lightning strikes, or 2) fall down from heaven as lightning strikes downward. Since both meaning are possible, it may be best to keep the image.

**Luke 10:19**

**authority to tread on serpents and scorpions**

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions." Possible meanings are 1) snakes and scorpions are a metaphor for evil spirits. Alternate translation: "the right to defeat evil spirits" or 2) this refers to actual snakes and scorpions.

**tread on serpents and scorpions**

This implies that they would do this and not be injured. Alternate translation: "walk on snakes and scorpions, which will not hurt you,"

**scorpions**

Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail.

**over all the power of the enemy**

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

**Luke 10:20**

**do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven**

"do not rejoice only because the spirits submit to you" can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "rejoice that your names are written in heaven even more than you rejoice that the spirits submit to you"

**your names are engraved in heaven**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of people who are citizens of heaven"

**Luke 10:21**

**that same hour**

"that same time"

**Father**

This is an important title for God.

**Lord of heaven and earth**

The phrase "heaven" and earth" represents everything that exists. Alternate translation: "Master over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

**these things**

This refers to Jesus's previous teaching about the authority of the disciples. It may be best to simply say "these things" and let the reader determine the meaning.

**the wise and understanding**

The words "wise" and "understanding" are nominal adjectives that refer to people with these qualities. Because God had concealed truth from them, these people were not actually wise and understanding, even though they thought they were. Alternate translation: "from people who think they are wise and have understanding"

**those who are untaught, like little children**

This refers to those who may not have much education but who are willing to accept Jesus's teachings in the same way that little children willingly listen to those they trust. Alternate translation: "people who may have little education, but who listen to God as little children do"

**for so it was well pleasing in your sight**

"for it pleased you to do this"

**Luke 10:22**

**All things have been entrusted to me from my Father**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has handed everything over to me"

**Father ... Son**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

**no one knows who the Son is except the Father**

This double negative emphasizes that the Father is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

**knows ... knows**

The word that is translated as "knows" means to know from personal experience. God the Father knows Jesus in this way.

**the Son**

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

**no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him**

This double negative emphasizes that the Son is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son"

**those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him**  
"whoever the Son desires to show the Father to"

## Luke 10:23

**Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately**

The word "privately" indicates that he was alone with his disciples. Alternate translation: "Later, when he was alone with his disciples, he turned to them and said"

**Blessed are those who see the things that you see**  
This probably refers to the good works and miracles that Jesus was doing. Alternate translation: "How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

## Luke 10:24

**and they did not see them**

This implies that Jesus was not yet doing those things. Alternate translation: "but they could not see them because I was not doing them yet"

**the things that you hear**

This probably refers to the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "the things that you have heard me say"

**and they did not hear them**

This implies that Jesus was not yet teaching. Alternate translation: "but they could not hear them because I had not yet started to teach"

## Luke 10:25

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus replies with a story to a Jewish teacher who wants to test Jesus.

**Behold, an expert in the law**

This alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

**stood up**

This is an idiom that probably here means "began to act." Your language may have a different way of showing that the expert in the law had been present, listening to Jesus, and was now beginning to act. He was not necessarily sitting before he "stood up" and began to speak.

**test him**

"challenge Jesus"

## Luke 10:26

**What is written in the law? How do you read it?**

Jesus is not seeking information. He uses these questions to test the Jewish teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

**What is written in the law?**

This can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What did Moses write in the law?"

**How do you read it?**

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

## Luke 10:27

**You will love ... neighbor as yourself**

The man is quoting what Moses wrote in the law.

**with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind**

Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

**your neighbor as yourself**

This simile can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

## Luke 10:28

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 10:29

**But he, desiring to justify himself, said**

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

**Who is my neighbor?**

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Whom should I consider to be my neighbor and love as I love myself?" or "Which people are my neighbors that I should love?"

## Luke 10:30

**Jesus answered him and said**

Jesus answers the man by telling a parable. Alternate translation: "In response, Jesus told him this story"

**A certain man**

This introduces a new character in the parable.

**He fell among robbers, who**

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

**stripped him of his belongings**

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

**half dead**

This idiom means "almost dead."

**Luke 10:31**

**By chance**

This was not something that any person had planned.

**a certain priest**

This expression introduces a new person in the story, but does not identify him by name.

**and when he saw him**

"and when the priest saw the injured man." A priest is a very religious person, so the audience would assume that he would help the injured man. Since he did not, this phrase could be stated as "but when he saw him" to call attention to this unexpected result.

**he passed by on the other side**

It is implied that he did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the injured man but instead walked past him on the other side of the road"

**Luke 10:32**

**a Levite ... the other side**

The Levite served in the temple. He would be expected to help his fellow Jewish man. Since he did not, it may be helpful to state that. Alternate translation: "a Levite ... the other side and did not help him"

**Luke 10:33**

**But a certain Samaritan**

This introduces a new person in the story without giving his name. We know only that he was from Samaria.

**a certain Samaritan**

The Jews despised the Samaritans and would have assumed that he would not help the injured Jewish man.

**When he saw him**

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

**he was moved with compassion**

"he felt sorry for him"

**Luke 10:34**

**bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them**

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

**pouring oil and wine on them**

Wine was used to clean the wound, and oil was probably used to prevent infection. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "pouring oil and wine on them to help heal them"

**his own animal**

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It was probably a donkey.

**Luke 10:35**

**two denarii**

"two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

**the host**

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

**whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you**

This could be reordered. Alternate translation: "when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

**Luke 10:36**

**Which of these three do you think ... robbers?**

This could be written as two questions. Alternate translation: "What do you think? Which of these three men ... robbers?"

**was a neighbor**

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

**to him who fell among the robbers**

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

**Luke 10:37**

**He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."**

"The expert in the law said, 'The one who showed mercy to him.'"

**Go and do the same**

Here "do the same" refers to showing mercy to others. Alternate translation: "In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help" or "In the same way, go and help everyone you can"

**Luke 10:38**

**General Information:**

Jesus comes to Martha's house, where her sister Mary listens to Jesus with great attention.



**Now**

This word is used here to mark a new event.

**as they were traveling along**

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

**a certain village**

This introduces the village as a new location, but does not name it.

**a certain woman named Martha**

This introduces Martha as a new character. Your language may have a way of introducing new people.

**Luke 10:39**

**sat at the Lord's feet**

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

**heard his word**

This refers to everything that Jesus taught while at Martha's house. Alternate translation: "listened to the Lord teach"

**Luke 10:40**

**overly busy**

"very busy" or "too busy"

**do you not care ... alone?**

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. She respects the Lord, so she uses a rhetorical question to make her complaint more polite. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

**Luke 10:41**

**Martha, Martha**

Jesus repeats Martha's name for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Dear Martha" or "You, Martha"

**Luke 10:42**

**only one thing is necessary**

Jesus is contrasting what Mary is doing with what Martha is doing. It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "the only thing that is really necessary is to listen to my teaching" or "listening to my teaching is more necessary than preparing a meal"

**which will not be taken away from her**

Possible meanings are 1) "and I will not take this opportunity away from her" or 2) "and she will not lose what she has gained as she was listening to me"

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 10:4**

**What did Jesus tell the seventy not to carry with them?**

They must not carry any bag of money, any traveler's bag, or any sandals.

**Luke 10:9**

**What did Jesus tell the seventy to do in each city?**

He told them to heal the sick and to say to the people, "The kingdom of God has come near to you."

**Luke 10:12**

**If a city did not receive those whom Jesus sent to them, what would the judgment be like for that city?**

It would be worse than the judgment on Sodom.

**Luke 10:20**

**When the seventy returned and reported with joy that they were able to cast out demons, what did Jesus say to them?**

He said, "Rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven."

**Luke 10:21**

**Jesus said it was well-pleasing to the Father to reveal the kingdom of God to whom?**

It was well-pleasing to the Father to reveal the kingdom of God to those who are untaught, like little children.

**Luke 10:27**

**According to Jesus, what does the Jewish law say a person must do to inherit eternal life?**

You must love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself.

**Luke 10:31**

**In Jesus' parable, what did the Jewish priest do when he saw the half dead man on the road?**

He passed by on the other side.

**Luke 10:32**

**What did the Levite do when he saw the man?**  
He passed by on the other side.

**Luke 10:34**

**What did the Samaritan do when he saw the man?**  
He bound up his wounds, put him on his animal,  
brought him to an inn, and took care of him.

**Luke 10:37**

**After telling the parable, what did Jesus tell the teacher of the Jewish law to go and do?**  
Go and show mercy like the Samaritan in the parable.

**Luke 10:39**

**What did Mary do at the same time?**  
She sat at Jesus' feet and listened to him.

**Luke 10:40**

**What did Martha do when Jesus came to her house?**  
She was overly busy with preparing to serve a meal.

**Luke 10:42**

**Who did Jesus say had chosen the better thing to do?**  
He said that Mary had chosen the better thing to do.

---

## Chapter 11

<sup>1</sup> It happened one day that Jesus was praying in a certain place. When he had finished, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

<sup>2</sup> Jesus said to them, "When you pray say,

'Father, may your name be honored as holy.

May your kingdom come.

<sup>3</sup> Give us our daily bread each day.

<sup>4</sup> Forgive us our sins,  
as we forgive everyone who is in debt to us.  
Do not lead us into temptation.'"

<sup>5</sup> Jesus said to them, "Which of you will have a friend, and will go to him at midnight, and say to him, 'Friend, lend to me three loaves of bread,' <sup>6</sup> since a friend of mine just came in from the road, and I do not have anything to set before him'? <sup>7</sup> Then the one inside who answered him may say, 'Do not bother me. The door is already shut, and my children, along with me, are in bed. I am not able to get up and give bread to you.' <sup>8</sup> I say to you, even if he does not get up and give bread to you because you are his friend, yet because of your shameless persistence, he will get up and give you as many loaves of bread as you need. <sup>9</sup> I also say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. <sup>10</sup> For every asking person receives; and the seeking person finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened. <sup>11</sup> Which father among you, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead of a fish? <sup>12</sup> Or if he asks for an egg, will you give a scorpion to him? <sup>13</sup> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him?"

<sup>14</sup> Now Jesus was driving out a demon that was mute. When the demon had gone out, the man who had been mute spoke, and the crowd was amazed. <sup>15</sup> But some of the people said, "By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons." <sup>16</sup> Others tested him and sought from him a sign from heaven.

<sup>17</sup> But Jesus knew their thoughts and said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and a house divided against itself falls. <sup>18</sup> If Satan is divided against himself, how will his kingdom stand? For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul. <sup>19</sup> If I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your followers drive them out? Because of this, they will be your judges. <sup>20</sup> But if I drive out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come to you. <sup>21</sup> When a strong man who is fully armed guards his own palace, his possessions are safe, <sup>22</sup> but when a stronger man overcomes him, the stronger man takes away the armor in which the man trusted and plunders the man's possessions. <sup>23</sup> The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters. <sup>24</sup> When an unclean spirit has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places and looks for rest. Finding none, it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' <sup>25</sup> Having returned, it finds the house had been swept clean and put in order. <sup>26</sup> Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first."

<sup>27</sup> It happened that, as he said these things, a certain woman raised her voice above the crowd and said to him, "Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you."

<sup>28</sup> But he said, "Rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it."

<sup>29</sup> As the crowds were increasing, Jesus began to say, "This generation is an evil generation. It seeks a sign, though no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah. <sup>30</sup> For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, so too the Son of Man will be a sign to this generation. <sup>31</sup> The Queen of the South will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and see, someone greater than Solomon is here. <sup>32</sup> The men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation of people and will condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and see, someone greater than Jonah is here."

<sup>33</sup> No one, after lighting a lamp, puts it in a hidden place or under a basket, but on a lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light. <sup>34</sup> Your eye is the lamp of the body. When your eye is good, the whole body is filled with light. But when your eye is bad, your body is full of darkness. <sup>35</sup> Therefore, watch out that the light in you is not darkness. <sup>36</sup> If then your whole body is full of light, not having any member in darkness, then your whole body will be like when a lamp shines its brightness on you."

<sup>37</sup> When he had finished speaking, a Pharisee asked him to eat with him at his house, so Jesus went in and reclined. <sup>38</sup> The Pharisee was surprised that Jesus did not first wash before dinner. <sup>39</sup> But the Lord said to him, "Now then, you Pharisees clean the outside of cups and bowls, but the inside of you is filled with robbery and evil. <sup>40</sup> You senseless men! Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside? <sup>41</sup> Give what is inside as alms, and then all things will be clean for you."

<sup>42</sup> "But woe to you Pharisees, because you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb, but you neglect justice and the love of God. It is necessary to act justly and love God, without failing to do the other things also. <sup>43</sup> Woe to you Pharisees, for you love the front seats in the synagogues and respectful greetings in the marketplaces. <sup>44</sup> Woe to you, for you are like unmarked graves that people walk over without knowing it."

<sup>45</sup> One of the experts in the law said to him, "Teacher, what you say insults us too." <sup>46</sup> Jesus said, "Woe to you, teachers of the law! For you put people under burdens that are hard to carry, but you do not touch the burdens with one of your own fingers. <sup>47</sup> Woe to you, because you build tombs for the prophets, and it was your ancestors who killed them. <sup>48</sup> So you are witnesses and you consent to the works of your ancestors, for they indeed killed them and you build their tombs. <sup>49</sup> For this reason also, God's wisdom said, 'I will send to them prophets and apostles, and they will persecute and kill some of them.' <sup>50</sup> As a result, this generation will be charged for all the blood of the prophets shed since the foundation of the world, <sup>51</sup> from Abel's blood to the blood of Zechariah, who was killed between the altar and the temple. Yes, I say to you, this generation will be held responsible. <sup>52</sup> Woe to you experts in the law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering."

<sup>53</sup> After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, <sup>54</sup> lying in wait to catch him in something he might say.

---

## Footnotes

11:11 <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies have the shorter reading. Some ancient copies have a longer reading, which also is found in Matthew 7:9:

---

## Luke 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB sets the lines in 11:2-4 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are a special prayer.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Lord's Prayer

When Jesus's followers asked him to teach them how to pray, he taught them this prayer. He did not expect them to use the same words every time they prayed, but he did want them to know what God wanted them to pray about.

#### Jonah

Jonah was an Old Testament prophet who was sent to the Gentile city of Nineveh to tell them to repent. When he told them to repent, they repented. (See: prophet and sin and repent)

### **Light and darkness**

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

### **Washing**

The Pharisees would wash themselves and the things they ate with. They would even wash things that were not dirty. The law of Moses did not tell them to wash these things, but they would wash them anyway. This was because they thought that if they obeyed both the rules that God had made and some rules that God had not made, God would think that they were better people. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

---

## **Luke 11**

### **11:1-13**

#### **How did Jesus want his disciples to pray this prayer?**

[11:2]

Some scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to pray this prayer by saying the same words he said. Other scholars think Jesus wanted them to pray in the same way he prayed, but not say the same words he said. Other scholars think both ways of praying honored God.

See: Matthew 6:9-13

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Pray \(Prayer\)](#)

#### **What did Jesus mean when he told the disciples to pray “may your name be sanctified”?**

[11:2]

Jesus told the disciples that the name of God the Father was to “sanctified”(ἀγιάζω/g0037). He wanted the disciples to know that the name of God the Father was holy and different than every other name. They were to honor the name of God.

See: [Holy \(Holiness, Set Apart\)](#); [Holy \(Holiness, Set Apart\)](#)

#### **What was meant by the words, “may your kingdom come”?**

[11:2]

When Jesus prayed “may your kingdom come,” he wanted the kingdom of God to begin.

See: [Kingdom of God](#)

#### **What was “daily bread”?**

[11:3]

To the people of Jesus’ day, people needed to eat bread to live. Some scholars think Jesus was not speaking about bread, but he was speaking about all food. Other scholars think bread was a metaphor. He was speaking about everything the disciple needed to live. Still other scholars think Jesus was teaching the disciples that bread represented spiritual food (see: John 6:32-35).

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

#### **Why did Jesus want the disciples to pray “forgive us our sins”?**

[11:4]

Jesus prayed, “forgive us our sins.” He told the disciples to pray this way. God had already forgiven the sins of the disciples. He wanted them to pray that they would forgive other people when these people

sinned against them. God did not forgive the disciples' sins because of the things they do. God forgave them because of his mercy.

See: [Forgive \(Forgiveness, Pardon\)](#); [Forgive \(Forgiveness, Pardon\)](#)

### **How did Jesus use the word "temptation"?**

[11:4]

Jesus spoke about temptation. Some scholars say Jesus was thinking about sin. Other scholars say Jesus was thinking about testing. That is, the persecution or suffering the disciples experienced.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Test](#); [Sin](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#) ; [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

### **What was meant by the words, "shameless persistence"?**

[11:8]

Scholars think Jesus used "shameless persistence"(ἀναίδεια/g0335) in two different ways.

1. Some scholars think Jesus used "shameless persistence" to speak about the friend on the outside who boldly kept knocking on the door of the house until his friend gave him what he wanted.
2. Other scholars think Jesus used "shameless persistence" to speak about the friend on the inside of the house who gave his friend what he wanted because he was worried about what people thought about him.

### **Why did Jesus tell the disciples to ask, seek, and knock?**

[11:8, 11:9, 11:10]

Jesus told the disciples to ask, seek, and knock. Scholars think these words were metaphors. Jesus was speaking about asking God in prayer, seeking God's wisdom in prayer, and constantly praying.

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Pray \(Prayer\)](#)

### **What did Luke write in verse 11?**

[11:11]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words, "if your son asks for a loaf of bread, will you give him a stone?" Other ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. When Matthew wrote about these same things, he said these words (see: Matthew 7:9). Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words.

### **What did Jesus mean by saying, "you who are evil"?**

[11:13]

Jesus said, "you who are evil." Scholars think Jesus was comparing people's fathers with God the Father. Everyone's father has sinned. However, God the Father has never sinned. He is holy and righteous.

See: [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#); [Sin](#); [Holy \(Holiness, Set Apart\)](#); [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#)

### **Who is the Holy Spirit?**

[11:13]

See: [Holy Spirit](#)

## 11:14-26

### How was Jesus “driving out a demon”?

[11:14]

Jesus drove out the demon by the power of God. That is, Jesus commanded the spirit to leave which stopped the demon from controlling the man. Jesus had total control over demons (see: 4:33-36).

See: [Demon](#); [Demon](#)

### What was a demon that was mute?

[11:14]

A mute demon cannot talk. This caused the man to not be able to speak.

See: [Demon](#)

### Who was Beelzebul?

[11:15]

Beelzebul was the name of a pagan god. Pagans called their gods Ba'al (see: 2 Kings 1:2). The New Testament used the name Beelzebul as a name for Satan.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [False gods](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### What did it mean that others tested Jesus?

[11:16]

Others tested Jesus. Some scholars do not know why other people tested Jesus, but they wanted a sign from heaven. Some scholars think they wanted Jesus to prove he is the messiah by doing a sign. Some scholars think these were people trying to make other people think the wrong things about Jesus. That is, they wanted people to think that Jesus was not the Messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Sign](#); [Heaven](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### What did it mean that a kingdom “is made desolate”?

[11:17]

A kingdom that “is made desolate” is a kingdom that was destroyed.

### What was Satan’s kingdom?

[11:18]

Satan’s kingdom was made of demons. Satan ruled over the demons. Jesus defeated Satan in the wilderness when Satan was not able to make Jesus sin. Jesus also defeated Satan at the cross. The final defeat of Satan will be at the end of the world.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Demon](#); [Sin](#); [Cross](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### What was the “finger of God”?

[11:20]

The finger of God was a metaphor for God’s power. Some scholars think it was easy for Jesus to drive out demons. Other scholars think the metaphor spoke about God not moving his finger very much to drive out demons. God did it easily. Jesus said he drove out demons by the Spirit of God (see: Matthew 12:28).

See: [Holy Spirit](#); [Demon](#); [Holy Spirit](#)

### **How did the kingdom of God come to these people?**

[11:20]

The kingdom of God came to these people when Jesus came and cast out demons. That was one way God began to reign. God will fully reign at the end of the earth.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### **What was a “strongman”?**

[11:21]

Here, a strongman is a soldier or a warrior. That is, he is a man who is able to fight well. Perhaps this strongman was also Satan.

### **What did it mean to “plunder the man’s possessions”?**

[11:22]

When someone plundered a man’s possessions, the man’s possessions were divided and then given to other people. What did Jesus mean when he said, “the one who is not with me is against me”? Jesus said, “the one who is not with me is against me.” Jesus wanted to say that anyone who was not his friend was his enemy. Here, Jesus spoke about a fight between good and evil (see: Luke 11:14-22). Anyone who was not Jesus’ friend was a friend of Satan.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, “the one who does not gather with me scatters”?**

[11:23]

Jesus said, “the one who does not gather with me scatters.” He wanted to say that anyone who did not serve with him was fighting against him in some way. People made a decision to either serve with Jesus or fight against him. He spoke about this using a metaphor. Some scholars think this metaphor was about a shepherd who gathered his sheep. Satan tried to scatter the sheep. Other scholars think this metaphor was about a farmer who gathered his crop at harvest time. Christians helped Jesus gather the harvest.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Shepherd](#); [Harvest](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **What was an unclean spirit?**

[11:24]

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **What were waterless places?**

[11:24]

Waterless places were the dry deserts and wilderness. People did not live in these places. Demons and unclean spirits wandered through the wilderness, but they did not find a place to stay. The demons then try to go back to the person from whom they were driven.

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#); [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

### **What was meant by the words, “house swept out and put in order”?**

[11:25]

Jesus spoke about a “house swept out and put in order.” This was a metaphor. He compared the heart of a man to a clean and tidy house. A clean house was ready for someone to live in it. Jesus spoke about a person who was not living in the right way and was ready to have many spirits live in him (see: Matthew 12:44).



**11:27-32**

**Why did the woman say, “blessed is the womb that bore you”?**

[11:27]

When the woman spoke the words, “blessed is the womb that bore you,” she was speaking about Jesus’ mother. The woman said that his mother is blessed.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

**How did someone “hear the word of God and keep it”?**

[11:28]

Jesus spoke about someone hearing the word of God and keeping it. Scholars think that Jesus wanted people to know that there was a greater blessing for people who believed in him and obeyed him, than his mother received.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

**How did Jesus speak about an “evil generation”?**

[11:29]

When Jesus spoke about an “evil generation” he was speaking about the people living when he was on the earth. They were “evil” because they refused to believe that God sent Jesus. They only wanted Jesus to do miracles.

See: Luke 11:16

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

**What was the “sign of Jonah”?**

[11:29]

Jesus said that “no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah.” Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a future sign. Matthew also wrote about the sign of Jonah and that Jonah was in the stomach of a big fish for three days and nights (see: Matthew 12:40). Scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jesus being crucified and being dead for three days. Just as Jonah was released from the stomach of fish, so Jesus became alive again.

See: Jonah 1:17-2:10

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

**Who was the queen of the south?**

[11:31]

The queen of the south was the queen of Sheba who visited King Solomon of Israel (see: 1 Kings 10:1-13). Some scholars think she was from southern Arabia. Other scholars think she was from modern Yemen.

See Map: Arabia; Yemen

**How will the queen of the south condemn that generation at God’s judgment?**

[11:31]

Luke wrote about the queen of the south condemning a certain generation. Scholars think that when the queen of the south rises at the judgment, people will know she did things that pleased God. The Jewish people who lived at the time of Jesus, and rejected him, did not do what pleased God. They will be condemned when God judges them.

See: [Day of Judgment](#); [Generation](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Day of Judgment](#)

**How will the Queen of the South come from the ends of the earth?**

[11:31]

Luke wrote that the queen of the south “came from the ends of the earth.” He wanted to say that she came from very far away.

**How will the men of Nineveh condemn that generation at God’s judgment?**

[11:32]

Luke wrote that the men of Nineveh will condemn people. The men of Nineveh will not be acting as judges. However, they will rise and people will know that when Jonah spoke God’s word to them, they “repented” (see: Jonah 3:4-10). Their repentance pleased God. The Jewish people who lived at the time when Jesus was on the earth did not repent when Jesus spoke God’s word. This did not please God.

See: [Word of God](#); [Generation](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Day of Judgment](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Word of God](#)

See Map: Nineveh

**How did Jesus say something greater than Solomon and Jonah was there?**

[11:32]

Jesus said something greater than Solomon and Jonah was there when he said that Solomon’s great wisdom did not compare to Jesus’ greater wisdom. Also, Jonah’s great preaching did not compare to Jesus’ greater preaching. Solomon and Jonah did not always do what God wanted (see: 1 Kings 11:1-9; Jonah 4:5-10). Jesus always did what God wanted him to do.

See: [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#)

**11:33-36**

**How was the eye the lamp of the body?**

[11:34]

The eye is the lamp of the body. This is a metaphor. The eye sees light. Scholars think Jesus used a metaphor in speaking about the eye. He wanted people to believe the things he taught and to live in a way that honors God.

See: [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#); [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#)

**11:37-54**

**What was a Pharisee?**

[11:37]

See: [Pharisees](#)

**Why did Jesus recline when he ate?**

[11:37]

In ancient Israel, people often laid on cushions around a low table for a meal. The people leaned on one elbow while they ate.

**Why was the Pharisee surprised that Jesus did not wash his hands?**

[11:38]

The Pharisee was surprised Jesus did not wash his hands. They taught people that they needed to wash their hands in a certain way to be clean. They expected Jesus to follow the rules the Jewish teachers made. Jesus obeyed the Law of Moses, not the rules made by the Jewish teachers.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Clean and Unclean](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### **Why did Jesus say the Pharisees cleaned “the outside of cups and bowls”?**

[11:39]

When Jesus spoke about the “outside of cups and bowls” he used a metaphor. People clean the “outside of cups and bowls”. That is, people did certain things so that other people thought they lived in a way that honored God. However, the inside of the cup was still dirty. That is, these people did not live in a way that honored God.

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Metaphor](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

### **What was a woe?**

[11:42]

See: [Woe](#)

### **What was a tithe?**

[11:42]

See: [Tithe](#)

### **What was a synagogue?**

[11:43]

See: [Synagogue](#)

### **What did it mean when Jesus said the Pharisees were “like unmarked graves”?**

[11:44]

An unmarked grave looked just like ordinary ground, because there was nothing to mark it as a grave. People could walk over these graves without knowing there were dead bodies underneath them. This was a metaphor. People did not see what happened inside an unmarked grave when they walked on it and people did not see the evil inside of the Pharisees.

**Advice to translators:** A grave is a hole in the ground where people put a dead person’s body. They cover it with dirt. It is often marked with a stone. This stone has the name of the person who died on it.

See: [Tomb](#); [Pharisees](#); [Tomb](#)

### **What was a “teacher of the law”?**

[11:45, 11:46]

A “teacher of the law” was an expert in the Law of Moses. They were often Pharisees.

See: [Pharisees](#); [Pharisees](#)

### **Why did Jesus criticize the teachers of the law for building tombs for the dead prophets?**

[11:47]

Jesus criticized the teachers of the Law of Moses. The Pharisees wanted to honor the prophets who died long before they were born. Scholars think Jesus wanted the Pharisees to honor the prophets by obeying what they taught, not by building them tombs. Because the ancestors of these teachers killed the

prophets, scholars think Jesus was saying the teachers were only honoring the prophets for dying, but not living in a way that honors God.

See: [Tomb](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Pharisees](#); [Tomb](#)

### Why was that generation responsible for so much?

[11:50]

Scholars give several reasons why that generation was responsible for so much.

1. That generation approved of their ancestors killing God's prophets.
2. That generation was about to kill God's apostles.
3. The Old Testament prophesied about the time of that generation. When that generation rejected prophets and apostles, they also rejected all the prophets from earlier times.
4. That generation rejected and killed Jesus.

See: [Generation](#); [Prophet](#); [Generation](#)

### Why did Jesus talk about the deaths of Abel and Zechariah?

[11:51]

Jesus talked about the deaths of Abel and Zechariah because Abel was the first person killed in the Old Testament (see: Genesis 4:8) and Zechariah was the last person killed for obeying God in the Old Testament (see: 2 Chronicles 24:20-21).

### What was the "key of knowledge"?

[11:52]

Jesus spoke about the "key of knowledge." Scholars think Jesus was using a metaphor. A key was used to lock a door. The Jewish leaders stopped people from knowing God. They stopped people from knowing that Jesus is the messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### What was a scribe?

[11:53]

See: [Scribe](#)

## Luke 11:1

### General Information:

The is the beginning of the next part of the story. Jesus teaches his disciples to pray.

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

## Luke 11:2

### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

### Father

Jesus is commanding the disciples to honor the name of God the Father by addressing him as "Father" when praying to him. This is an important title for God.

### may your name be honored as holy

"cause everyone to honor your name." "Name" often refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "may all people honor you"

### May your kingdom come

The action of God ruling over everyone is spoken of as if it were God himself. Alternate translation: "May you come and rule over everyone"

### Luke 11:3

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples how to pray.

#### Give us

This is an imperative, but it should be translated as a request, rather than as a command. It may be helpful to add something such as "please" to it to make this clear. Alternate translation: "Please give us"

#### our daily bread

Bread was an inexpensive food that people ate every day. It is used here to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: "the food we need each day"

### Luke 11:4

#### Forgive us ... Do not lead us

These are imperatives, but they should be translated as requests, rather than as commands. It may be helpful to add something such as "please" to them to make this clear. Alternate translation: "Please forgive us ... Please do not lead us"

#### Forgive us our sins

"Forgive us for sinning against you" or "Forgive our sins"

#### as we forgive

"since we also forgive"

#### who is in debt to us

"who has sinned against us" or "who has done wrong things to us"

#### Do not lead us into temptation

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Lead us away from temptation"

### Luke 11:5

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about prayer.

#### lend to me three loaves of bread

"let me borrow three loaves of bread" or "give me three loaves of bread and I will pay you later." The host does not have any food ready to give to his guest.

#### three loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "some food"

### Luke 11:6

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking a question that begins in verse 5.

#### since a friend ... to set before him'

Jesus finishes asking the question that begins with the words "Which of you will have a friend" in verse 5. The whole question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Suppose you have a friend and will go to him at midnight and say to him, 'Friend, lend to me three loaves of bread, since a friend ... to set before him.'"

#### just came in from the road

It is implied that the visitor has come far from his home. Alternate translation: "was traveling and just came to my house"

#### anything to set before him

"any food ready to give him"

### Luke 11:7

#### I am not able to get up

"It is not convenient for me to get up"

#### give bread to you

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "give you some food"

### Luke 11:8

#### I say to you

Jesus was speaking to the disciples. The word "you" is plural.

#### give bread to you ... give you as many loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "give you some food ... give you as much food"

#### give bread to you because you are ... your ... you ... you need

Jesus addresses the disciples as if they were the ones asking for bread. Alternate translation: "give bread to him because he is ... his ... him ... he needs"

#### because of your shameless persistence

The phrase can be reworded to eliminate the abstract noun "persistence." Alternate translation: "because you persist shamelessly" or "because you boldly continue to ask him"

## Luke 11:9

### **ask ... seek, and you will find ... knock**

Jesus gives these commands to encourage his disciples to pray continually. Some languages may also require more information with these verbs. Use the form of "you" that would be most appropriate in this context. Alternate translation: "keep asking for what you need ... keep seeking what you need from God, and you will find it ... keep knocking on the door"

### **it will be given to you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give it to you" or "you will receive it"

### **knock**

To knock at a door is to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. It can also be translated using the way people in your culture show that they have arrived, such as "call out" or "cough" or "clap." Here, it means a person should keep praying to God until he answers.

### **it will be opened to you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will open the door for you" or "God will welcome you inside"

## Luke 11:10

### **General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 11:11

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about prayer.

### **Which father among you ... will ... a fish?**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you fathers ... would ... a fish."

## Luke 11:12

### **Or ... egg, will you give a scorpion to him?**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "And you would never give him a scorpion ... egg."

### **scorpion**

A scorpion is similar to a spider, but it has a tail with a poisonous sting. If scorpions are not known where you are, you could translate this as "poisonous spider" or "spider that stings"

## Luke 11:13

### **if you who are evil know**

"since you who are evil know" or "even though you are sinful, you know"

### **how much more will ... give ... him?**

Jesus again uses a question to teach his disciples. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you can be sure that ... will give ... him."

## Luke 11:14

### **Now**

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

### **Jesus was driving out a demon**

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: "Jesus was driving a demon out of a person" or "Jesus was making a demon leave a person"

### **demon that was mute**

The demon has power to prevent people from speaking. Alternate translation: "demon that caused the man to be unable to speak"

### **Now**

This word is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. When the demon comes out of the man, some of the people criticize Jesus, and that leads to Jesus teaching about evil spirits.

### **When the demon had gone out**

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: "When the demon had gone out of the man" or "When the demon left the man"

### **the man who had been mute spoke**

"the man who had been unable to speak now spoke"

## Luke 11:15

### **General Information:**

Jesus is accused of using Satan's power to drive a demon out of a mute man.

### **By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons**

"He is driving out demons by the power of Beelzebul, the ruler of demons"

### **Beelzebul**

another name for Satan

## Luke 11:16

### Others tested him

"Other people tested Jesus." They wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

### and sought from him a sign from heaven

"and asked him to give a sign from heaven" or "by demanding that he give a sign from heaven." This was how they wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

## Luke 11:17

### General Information:

Jesus begins to respond to the crowd.

### Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

"kingdom" here refers to the people in it. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If people of a kingdom fight among themselves, they will destroy their kingdom"

### a house divided against itself falls

Here "house" refers to a family. Alternate translation: "if family members fight each other, they will ruin their family"

### falls

"crashes down and is destroyed." This image of the house collapsing refers to the destruction of a family when the members fight each other.

## Luke 11:18

### If Satan is divided against himself

"Satan" here is referring to the demons who follow Satan as well as to Satan himself. Alternate translation: "If Satan and members of his kingdom are fighting among themselves"

### If Satan ... how will his kingdom stand?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If Satan ... his kingdom will not last." or "If Satan ... his kingdom will fall apart."

### For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul

"For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people." The next part of his argument can be stated explicitly: Alternate translation: "For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people. That would mean that Satan is divided against himself"

## Luke 11:19

### If I ... by whom do your followers drive them out?

"If I ... by whose power do your followers force demons to leave people?" Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The meaning of Jesus's question can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "If I ...

then we must agree that your followers also drive out demons by Beelzebul's power. But you do not believe that it is true."

### they will be your judges

"your followers who cast out demons by God's power will judge you for saying that I cast out demons by Beelzebul's power"

## Luke 11:20

### by the finger of God

The "finger of God" refers to God's power.

### then the kingdom of God has come to you

"this shows that God's kingdom has come to you"

## Luke 11:21

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins a parable about a strong man who is defeated by a stronger man.

### When a strong man ... are safe

The "strong man" here is a metaphor for Satan.

### his own palace

Possible meanings of the word "palace" are 1) the entire premises of the "strong man" or 2) it refers to the courtyard of a palace and is a synecdoche for the palace. If you have a word for the house and other areas close to it that the strong man can constantly guard, you may want to use it here.

### his possessions are safe

"no one can steal his things"

## Luke 11:22

### a stronger man

The stronger man in the parable is a metaphor for Jesus, who is stronger than Satan.

### takes away the armor

"removes the weapons and protection"

### plunders the man's possessions

"steals his possessions" or "takes away anything that he wants"

## Luke 11:23

### The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters

This refers to any person or any group of people. "Anyone who is not with me is against me, and anyone who does not gather with me scatters" or "Those who are not with me are against me, and those who do not gather with me scatter"

### one who is not with me

"one who does not support me" or "one who does not work with me"

**is against me**  
"works against me"

**the one who does not gather with me scatters**  
Jesus is referring to gathering disciples who follow him. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "anyone who does not cause people to come and follow me causes them to go away from me"

#### Luke 11:24

**waterless places**  
This refers to "desolate places" where the evil spirits wander.

**Finding none**  
"If the spirit does not find any rest there"

**my house from which I came**  
This refers to the person in which he used to live. Alternate translation: "the person in whom I used to live"

#### Luke 11:25

**finds the house had been swept clean and put in order**  
This metaphor speaks about the person as if he were a house that is swept clean, with things put in their places. It is implied that the house is still empty. This can be stated in active form with that information made explicit. Alternate translation: "finds that the person is like a house that someone has swept clean and organized by putting everything where it belongs, but has left empty" or "finds that the person is like a house that is clean and organized, but empty"

#### Luke 11:26

**worse than the first**  
The word "first" refers to the condition of the man while he had the unclean spirit before it left him. Alternate translation: "worse than his condition was before the spirit left"

#### Luke 11:27

**General Information:**  
This is a break in Jesus's teachings. A woman speaks a blessing and Jesus responds.

**It happened that**  
This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**raised her voice above the crowd**  
This idiom means "spoke loudly above the noise of the crowd"

**Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you**  
The parts of a woman's body are used to refer to the whole woman. Alternate translation: "How good it is for the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts" or "How happy the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts must be"

#### Luke 11:28

**Rather, blessed are they**  
"It is even better for those"

**hear the word of God**  
"hear the message God has spoken"

**and keep it**  
"and obey it"

#### Luke 11:29

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

**As the crowds were increasing**  
"As more people were joining the crowd" or "As the crowd was growing larger"

**This generation is an evil generation. It seeks ... to it**  
Here "generation" refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: "The people living at this time are evil people. They seek ... to them" or "You people living at this time are evil people. You seek ... to you"

**It seeks a sign**  
The information about what kind of sign it seeks can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "It wants me to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God"

**no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah**  
This double negative emphasizes that the sign of Jonah is the only sign that will be given. Alternate translation: "The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"

**no sign will be given to it**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not give it a sign"

**the sign of Jonah**  
"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

#### Luke 11:30

**For just as Jonah became a sign ... so too ... this generation**  
This means that Jesus will serve as a sign from God for the Jews of that day in exactly the same way as Jonah served as a sign from God to the people of Nineveh.



**Son of Man will**

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

**this generation**

"the people living today"

**Luke 11:31**

**Queen of the South**

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a kingdom south of Israel.

**will rise up**

"will appear"

**she came from the ends of the earth**

This idiom means that she came from very far away. Alternate translation: "she came a very great distance" or "she came from a place very far away"

**someone greater than Solomon is here**

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, who am greater than Solomon, am here"

**Luke 11:32**

**The men of Nineveh**

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this refers to the ancient city of Nineveh. Alternate translation: "The men who lived in the ancient city of Nineveh"

**The men**

This includes both men and woman. Alternate translation: "The people"

**this generation of people**

"the people of this time"

**for they repented**

"for the people of Nineveh repented"

**someone greater than Jonah is here**

Jesus is speaking about himself. It may be helpful to explicitly state that they have not listened to him. Alternate translation: "even though I am greater than Jonah, you still have not repented"

**Luke 11:33**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins a parable in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others.

**puts it in a hidden place or under a basket**

"hides it or puts in under a basket"

**but on a lampstand**

The understood subject and verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "but a person

places it on a lampstand" or "but a person puts it on a table"

**Luke 11:34**

**General Information:**

Jesus continues his parable, in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

**Your eye is the lamp of the body**

In this part of the metaphor, the things they saw Jesus do provided understanding just as an eye provides light for the body. Alternate translation: "Your eye is like the lamp of the body"

**Your eye**

The eye is a metonym for vision.

**the body**

The body is a synecdoche for a person's life.

**When your eye is good**

Here "eye" here is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation: "When your vision is good" or "when you see well"

**the whole body is filled with light**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the light will fill your whole body" or "you will be able to see everything clearly"

**when your eye is bad**

Here "eye" is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation: "When your vision is bad" or "when you see poorly"

**your body is full of darkness**

"you will not be able to see anything"

**Luke 11:35**

**General Information:**

Jesus continues his parable, in which he speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

**watch out that the light in you is not darkness**

"look carefully to make sure that what you think is light is not actually darkness"

**Luke 11:36**

**General Information:**

Jesus ends his parable.

**If then your whole body is full of light, not having any member in darkness**

Jesus speaks of his teaching as light that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He

speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in darkness.

**not having any member in darkness**  
"with none of its parts in darkness"

**then your whole body will be like when a lamp shines its brightness on you**  
Jesus states the same truth he has just presented as a metaphor, but this time he uses a simile. He speaks of people who are full of truth as if they are a lamp that shines brightly.

#### **Luke 11:37**

**General Information:**  
Jesus finishes teaching the crowd, and a Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

**When he had finished speaking**  
The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

**at his house**  
This refers to the Pharisee's house.

**reclined**  
It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table. You might want to translate using the word your language uses for the way people's bodies are when they eat. Alternate translation: "sat down at the table"

#### **Luke 11:38**

**wash**  
The Pharisees had a rule that people must wash their hands in order to be ceremonially clean before God. Alternate translation: "wash his hands" or "wash his hands in order to be ritually clean"

#### **Luke 11:39**

**General Information:**  
Jesus begins to speak to the Pharisee using a metaphor. He compares the way they clean cups and bowls to how they clean themselves.

**the outside of cups and bowls**  
Washing of the outside of containers was a part of the ritual practices of the Pharisees.

**but the inside of you is filled with robbery and evil**  
This part of the metaphor contrasts the careful way they clean the outside of the dishes with the way they ignore their own internal condition.

#### **Luke 11:40**

**You senseless men**  
This expression can refer to men or women, even though all of the Pharisees to whom Jesus was speaking to here were men.

**Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees for not understanding that what is in their hearts matters to God. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The one who made the outside also made the inside!"

#### **Luke 11:41**

**Give what is inside as alms**  
This refers to what they should be doing with their cups and bowls. Alternate translation: "Give what is inside your cups and bowls as alms" or "Be generous to the poor"

**all things will be clean for you**  
"you will be completely clean" or "you will be clean both inside and outside"

#### **Luke 11:42**

**you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb**  
"you give God one tenth of your mint and rue and other herbs from your garden." Jesus was giving an example of how extreme the Pharisees were in giving a tenth of their income.

**mint and rue**  
These are herbs. People put just a little bit of these leaves into their food to give it flavor. If people do not know what mint and rue are, you can use the name of herbs they know or a general expression such as "herbs."

**every other garden herb**  
Possible meanings are 1) "every other vegetable" 2) "every other garden herb" or 3) "every other garden plant."

**the love of God**  
"to love God" or "love for God." God is the one who is loved.

**without failing to do the other things also**  
"without failing" emphasizes that this should always be done. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "and to always do the other good things as well"

#### **Luke 11:43**

**the front seats**  
"the best seats"

**respectful greetings**  
"you like people to greet you with special honor"

#### **Luke 11:44**

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus finishes speaking to the Pharisees.

**you are like unmarked graves that people walk over without knowing it**

The Pharisees are like unmarked graves because they look ceremonially clean, but they cause people around them to become unclean.

**unmarked graves**

These graves were holes dug in the ground where a dead body was buried. They did not have the white stones that people normally place over graves so that others would see them.

**without knowing it**

When the Jews walked over a grave, they would become ceremonially unclean. These unmarked graves caused them to accidentally do that. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "without realizing it and become ceremonially unclean"

#### **Luke 11:45**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to respond to a Jewish teacher.

**One of the experts in the law**

This introduces a new character into the story.

**what you say insults us too**

Jesus's comments about the Pharisees also seemed to apply to the teachers of the Jewish laws.

#### **Luke 11:46**

**Woe to you, teachers of the law!**

Jesus makes it clear that he intended to condemn the actions of the teachers of the law along with the Pharisees.

**you put people under burdens that are hard to carry**

"you put burdens on people that are too heavy and they cannot carry them." Jesus speaks about someone giving people many rules as if the person were giving them heavy things to carry. Alternate translation: "you burden people by giving them too many rules to follow"

**touch the burdens with one of your own fingers**

Possible meanings are 1) "do anything at all to help people carry those burdens" or 2) "make any effort to carry those burdens yourselves."

#### **Luke 11:47**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### **Luke 11:48**

**So you are witnesses and you consent**

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees and teachers of the law. They know about the murder of the prophets, but do not condemn their ancestors for killing

them. Alternate translation: "So, rather than denouncing them, you confirm and agree"

#### **Luke 11:49**

**For this reason**

This refers back to the previous statement that the teachers of the law burdened people with rules.

**God's wisdom said**

"wisdom" is treated as if it was able to speak for God. Alternate translation: "God in his wisdom said" or "God wisely said"

**I will send to them prophets and apostles**

"I will send prophets and apostles to my people." God had declared beforehand that he would send prophets and apostles to the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking.

**they will persecute and kill some of them**

"my people will persecute and kill some of the prophets and apostles." God had declared beforehand that the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking would persecute and kill the prophets and apostles.

#### **Luke 11:50**

**this generation will be charged for all the blood of the prophets shed since the foundation of the world**

God will hold the people to whom Jesus is speaking responsible for the murder of the prophets by their ancestors. Alternate translation: "God will hold this generation responsible for the deaths of all the prophets whom people have killed since the foundation of the world"

**for all the blood of the prophets shed**

The "blood ... shed" refers to the blood that was spilled when the prophets were killed. Alternate translation: "for all the murders of the prophets"

**since the foundation of the world**

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

#### **Luke 11:51**

**Zechariah**

This was probably the priest in the Old Testament who rebuked the people of Israel for idolatry. This was not the Father of John the Baptist.

**who was killed**

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the people killed"

#### **Luke 11:52**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes responding to the Jewish teacher.

**you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering**

Jesus speaks about life in God's kingdom as if it were in a house that the teachers will neither enter nor allow others to enter. This means the teachers do not truly know God, and they prevent others from knowing him as well by teaching about scripture things that are not true. Alternate translation: "you have made it impossible for people to know how to live in God's kingdom; you do not want to live in it yourselves, and you keep others from knowing"

**the key of knowledge**

Possible meanings are 1) "the key that opens the door to knowledge," in which case "knowledge" is what is behind the door, or 2) "the key, which is the knowledge of how to open the door," in which case Jesus is not telling what is behind the door.

**you do not enter in yourselves**

"you yourselves do not go in to get knowledge"

**Luke 11:53**

**General Information:**

This is the end of the part of the story where Jesus eats at the Pharisee's house.

**After Jesus left there**

"After Jesus left the Pharisee's house"

**argued with him about many things**

The scribes and Pharisees did not argue in order to defend their views, but to try to trap Jesus so they could accuse him of breaking the law of God.

**Luke 11:54**

**lying in wait to catch him in something he might say**

The scribes and Pharisees hoped Jesus would say something wrong so that they could accuse him of breaking God's law. They did not want to learn from him.

**lying in wait to catch him**

The writer speaks of the Pharisees as if they were thieves hiding by the side of a road waiting for someone to come by whom they could overpower and rob. In this case, they were waiting for Jesus to say something for which they could accuse him. Alternate translation: "waiting and hoping to accuse him"

## ULB Translation Questions

**Luke 11:3**

**What prayer did Jesus teach his disciples to pray?**

He prayed, "Father, sanctify your name. Let your kingdom come. Give us each day our daily bread and forgive us our sins, for we ourselves forgive everyone who is in debt to us. And do not lead us into temptation."

**Luke 11:4**

**What prayer did Jesus teach his disciples to pray?**

He prayed, "Father, sanctify your name. Let your kingdom come. Give us each day our daily bread and forgive us our sins, for we ourselves forgive everyone who is in debt to us. And do not lead us into temptation."

**Luke 11:8**

**In Jesus' parable, why did the man get up and give his friend bread at midnight?**

Because of the friend's shameless persistence.

**Luke 11:13**

**What will the Father in heaven give to those who ask him?**

He will give the Holy Spirit.

**Luke 11:15**

**When they saw him drive out demons, what did some accuse Jesus of doing?**

They accused him of driving out demons by Beelzebul, the ruler of demons.

**Luke 11:20**

**Jesus answered that he drove out demons by what power?**

He drove out demons by the finger of God.

**Luke 11:26**

**If an unclean spirit leaves a man but then later returns, what will be the final condition of the man?**

The final condition of the man will be worse than the first condition.

**Luke 11:28**

**When the woman cried out, blessing Jesus' mother, who did Jesus say was blessed?**

Those who hear the word of God and keep it.

**Luke 11:32**

**Jesus said that he was greater than which two Old Testament men?**  
Solomon and Jonah.

**Luke 11:39**

**What did Jesus say the Pharisees were filled with on the inside?**  
He said they were filled with greed and evil.

**Luke 11:42**

**What did Jesus say the Pharisees neglected?**  
They neglected justice and the love of God.

**Luke 11:46**

**What did Jesus say the teachers of the law were doing to other people?**  
They were making people carry burdens that were too heavy, but they were not helping people carry those burdens even a little bit.

**Luke 11:50**

**Jesus said this generation would be held responsible for what?**  
They would be held responsible for all the blood of the prophets that has been shed since the world began.

**Luke 11:54**

**What did the scribes and Pharisees do after hearing Jesus' words?**  
They opposed him and argued with him, trying to trap him in his own words.

---

## Chapter 12

<sup>1</sup> In the meantime, when many thousands of the people were gathered together so much that they trampled on each other, he began to say to his disciples first of all, "Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy. <sup>2</sup> But there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known. <sup>3</sup> So whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light, and what you have spoken in the ear in the inner rooms will be proclaimed upon the housetops. <sup>4</sup> I say to you, my friends, do not be afraid of those who kill the body, and after that they have no more that they can do. <sup>5</sup> But I will warn you about whom to fear. Fear the one who, after he has killed, has authority to throw you into hell. Yes, I say to you, fear him. <sup>6</sup> Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins? Yet not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God. <sup>7</sup> But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. Do not fear. You are more valuable than many sparrows. <sup>8</sup> I say to you, everyone who confesses me before men, the Son of Man will also confess before the angels of God, <sup>9</sup> but he who denies me before men will be denied before the angels of God. <sup>10</sup> Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him, but to him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven. <sup>11</sup> When they bring you before the synagogues, the rulers, and the authorities, do not worry about how you will speak in your defense, or what you will say, <sup>12</sup> for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that hour what you should say."

<sup>13</sup> Then someone from the crowd said to him, "Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me."

<sup>14</sup> Jesus said to him, "Man, who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?" <sup>15</sup> He said to them, "Watch that you keep yourselves from all greedy desires, because a person's life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions." <sup>16</sup> Then Jesus told them a parable, saying, "The field of a rich man yielded abundantly, <sup>17</sup> and he reasoned with himself, saying, 'What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?' <sup>18</sup> He said, 'This is what I will do. I will tear down my barns and build bigger ones, and there I will store all of my grain and other goods. <sup>19</sup> I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have many goods stored up for many years. Rest easy, eat, drink, be merry."' <sup>20</sup> But God said to him, 'Foolish man, tonight your soul is required of you, and the things you have prepared, whose will they be?' <sup>21</sup> That is what someone is like who stores up treasure for himself and is not rich toward God."

<sup>22</sup> Jesus said to his disciples, "Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear. <sup>23</sup> For life is more than food, and the body is more than clothes. <sup>24</sup> Think about the ravens, that they do not sow or reap. They have no storeroom or barn, but God feeds them. How much more valuable you are than the birds! <sup>25</sup> Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan? <sup>26</sup> If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest? <sup>27</sup> Think about the lilies—how they grow. They do not labor, neither do they spin. Yet I say to you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these. <sup>28</sup> If God so clothes the grass in the field, which exists today, and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, O you of little faith! <sup>29</sup> Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not be anxious. <sup>30</sup> For all the nations of the world seek these things, and your Father knows that you need them. <sup>31</sup> But seek his kingdom, and these things will be added to you. <sup>32</sup> Do not fear, little flock, because your Father is very pleased to give you the kingdom. <sup>33</sup> Sell your possessions and give alms. Make for yourselves purses which will not wear out—treasure in the heavens that does not run out, where no thief comes near, and no moth destroys. <sup>34</sup> For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also."

<sup>35</sup> "Keep your loins girded and your lamps lit, <sup>36</sup> and be like people waiting expectantly for their master when he returns from the marriage feast, so that when he comes and knocks, they may immediately open the door for him. <sup>37</sup> Blessed are those servants whom the master will find watching when he comes. Truly I say to you, he will gird himself to serve and have them sit down at the table, and he will come and serve them. <sup>38</sup> If the master comes in the second watch of the night, or if even in the third watch, and finds them ready, blessed are those servants. <sup>39</sup> But understand this, that if the master of the house had known the hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into. <sup>40</sup> You also must be ready, because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect."

<sup>41</sup> Peter said, "Lord, are you telling this parable only to us, or also to everyone?"

<sup>42</sup> The Lord said, "Who then is the faithful and wise manager whom his lord will set over his other servants to give them their portion of food at the right time? <sup>43</sup> Blessed is that servant whom his lord finds doing that when he comes. <sup>44</sup> Truly I say to you that he will set him over all his property. <sup>45</sup> But if that servant says in his heart, 'My lord delays his return,' and begins to beat the male servants and female servants and to eat and drink and to become drunk, <sup>46</sup> the lord of that servant will come in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know and will cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful. <sup>47</sup> That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows. <sup>48</sup> But the one who did not know and did what deserved a beating, he will be beaten with a few blows. But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required, and the one who has been entrusted with much, even more will be asked.

<sup>49</sup> "I came to cast fire upon the earth, and how I wish that it were already kindled. <sup>50</sup> But I have a baptism to be baptized with, and how I am distressed until it is completed! <sup>51</sup> Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division. <sup>52</sup> For from now on there will be five in one house divided—three people against two, and two people against three. <sup>53</sup> They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against her daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law."

<sup>54</sup> Jesus was saying to the crowds also, "When you see a cloud rising in the west, immediately you say, 'A shower is coming,' and so it happens. <sup>55</sup> When a south wind is blowing, you say, 'There will be a scorching heat,' and it happens. <sup>56</sup> Hypocrites, you know how to interpret the appearance of the earth and the heavens, but how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time? <sup>57</sup> Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves? <sup>58</sup> For when you go with your adversary before the magistrate, on the way make an effort to be reconciled with him so that he does not drag you to the judge, and so that the judge does not deliver you to the officer, and the officer does not throw you into prison. <sup>59</sup> I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the very last bit of money."

## Luke 12 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

#### Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

#### Division

Jesus knew that those who did not choose to follow him would hate those who did choose to follow him. He also knew that most people love their families more than they love anyone else. So he wanted his followers to understand that following and pleasing him had to be more important to them than having their family love them ([Luke 12:51-56](#)).

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

## **Luke 12**

### **12:1-12**

#### **What was the yeast of the Pharisees?**

[12:1]

When Jesus spoke about the yeast of the Pharisees, this was a metaphor. A little yeast spread through the whole lump of dough. It affected all of the dough. In the same way, the things the Pharisees did affected many people.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Pharisees](#); [Metaphor](#)

#### **How will God reveal concealed things?**

[12:2]

Jesus was speaking about God concealing things. Jesus was speaking about God knowing why people did things. Even though people wanted to conceal why they did things, but God will reveal the truth. Scholars think God will reveal the truth about why people do things when he returns to judge the earth.

See: [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#)

#### **Why did Jesus say “do not be afraid of those who kill the body”?**

[12:4]

Jesus told people not to be afraid of those who can kill their body. Jesus did not want Christians to be afraid of people who were only able to kill the body because those people cannot kill a Christian's soul (see: Matthew 10:28). People can kill Christians, but they cannot stop them from living with God in heaven forever.

See: [Heaven](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#) ; [Heaven](#)

#### **Who has permission to throw people into hell?**

[12:5]

Only God can throw people into hell. He does not give permission to anyone else to do this.

See: [Day of Judgment](#); [Day of Judgment](#)

#### **Why did Jesus speak about sparrows and two small coins?**

[12:6]

Sparrows were a common bird poor people ate in ancient Israel. Someone could buy five sparrows for two small coins. This was the amount of money someone earned for working for about one hour. People did not value the sparrow. Yet God does not forget even one sparrow. Jesus wanted his disciples to know that God will never forget them. Indeed, they were worth far more than birds.

See: [Disciple](#)

#### **What did it mean to confess Jesus before men?**

[12:8]

Jesus spoke about people confessing him before men. Jesus wanted to say that a person declared to the other people that he was a disciple of Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)



### **Who is the Son of Man?**

[12:8]

See: [Son of Man](#)

### **What will Jesus confess about people before the angels?**

[12:8]

Jesus will confess certain things about people before the angels. Scholars think that Jesus will stand before the angels of God and tell them that a person is at peace with God.

See: [Angel](#); [Angel](#)

### **How did people deny Jesus?**

[12:9]

People denied Jesus by rejecting him in front of other people. They did not believe he is the messiah and Son of God.

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

### **What did it mean to blaspheme against the Holy Spirit?**

[12:10]

To “blaspheme”(βλασφημέω/g0987) the Holy Spirit meant to dishonor, insult, or even reject the work of the Holy Spirit. Matthew wrote about people who blasphemed the Holy Spirit (see: Matthew 12:22-32).

Jesus said that every sin could be forgiven except one. That was blasphemy of the Holy Spirit. Scholars disagree about how someone blasphemes the Holy Spirit.

1. Jesus spoke about rejecting him. If someone does not believe in Jesus, then they will not be forgiven of their sins.
2. Jesus spoke about someone seeing Jesus do miracles and saying that Satan gave him the power to do this. Therefore, people today cannot blaspheme the Holy Spirit.
3. Jesus spoke about people who said that the Holy Spirit did not do the things that he did.

See: [Miracle](#); [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Miracle](#)

### **What did Jesus mean when he said the Holy Spirit will teach you what you should say?**

[12:12]

Jesus said that the Holy Spirit will teach the disciples what they should say. Jesus wanted his disciples to know that when they spoke to certain leaders, the Holy Spirit will cause them to know what they should say. That is, the Holy Spirit will tell them what is the right thing to say.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### **12:13-21**

### **What was an inheritance?**

[12:13]

See: [Inherit \(Inheritance, Heir\)](#)

**What was a judge or mediator?**

[12:14]

See: [Mediator](#); [Mediator](#)

**What did Jesus mean when he said, “life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions”?**

[12:15]

Jesus said, “life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions.” Jesus wanted people to know that owning many things did not make a person’s life more valuable or more important. He wanted them to do things that honored God.

**What was meant by the words, “your soul is required of you”?**

[12:20]

The words, “your soul is required of you” meant that the man’s life would be taken from him. That is, he was to die on that night.

See: [Soul](#)

**Who was a person that was “not rich toward God”?**

[12:21]

A person who was “not rich toward God” was a person did not trust God. He did not do the things that God wanted him to do. He did not use the things he had to serve God.

**12:22-34**

**Why did Jesus tell the disciples not to worry about their lives?**

[12:22]

Jesus told his disciples not to “worry”(μεριμνάω/g3309). He wanted them not to think too much about whether they will have enough food to eat or clothes to wear. Jesus spoke about food, clothing, and birds of the sky because he wanted the disciples to know that God will take care of them and give them what they need.

See: [Disciple](#)

**What was a cubit?**

[12:25]

See: [Cubit](#)

**How did someone seek the kingdom of God?**

[12:31]

When someone seeked the kingdom of God, they wanted to live in a way that honors God. They did things to serve God. They do not seek the things of the world. That is, they do not do the evil things that people in the world do.

See: [Disciple](#); [World](#); [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus call his disciples a “little flock”?**

[12:32]

Jesus called his disciples a “little flock.” This was a metaphor. In the Old Testament, Israel was a flock. Jesus cared for his flock in the same way a shepherd cared for his sheep. They were little because they were few in number. They were helpless in the same way sheep were helpless. Jesus told them to not fear persecution or not having food and clothes.

**Advice to translators:** A flock is a group of sheep.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Shepherd](#); [People of God](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus tell his disciples to sell their possessions?**

[12:33]

Scholars give several ways of how Jesus wanted his disciples to sell everything they owned. Jesus wanted them to know that trusting in what they owned prevented them from trusting in God. Jesus did not want them to spend a lot of time thinking about what they owned. Jesus wanted them to be ready to sell everything they owned. Jesus did not want Christians to use the things they owned to help other people.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **What was “treasure in the heavens”?**

[12:33]

Jesus spoke about “treasures in heaven.” Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about blessings from God. Jesus was not talking about money. Fewer scholars think that Jesus was speaking about wanting people to think about the kingdom of God. This is because being in the kingdom of God is the greatest reward.

See: [Reward](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Reward](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, “where your treasure is, there your heart will be also”?**

[12:34]

Jesus said, “where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.” Treasure was a metaphor for what people valued. When people valued God their hearts, they did not want the things of the world.

See: [World](#); [Metaphor](#); [World](#)

## **12:35-40**

### **How did someone keep their “loins girded”?**

[12:35]

Jesus spoke about someone keeping their “loins girded”. That is, they tucked in their long clothing. When someone did this, they were ready to work very hard. Some scholars think Christians must be ready for action. That is, they must be ready to serve God.

### **Why did Jesus tell those who served him to keep their lamps lit?**

[12:35]

In ancient Israel, servants kept lamps burning at night when they knew their master would be returning. In the same way, Jesus wanted those who served him to be ready for him to return. He was speaking about his second coming.

See: [Serve](#); [Serve](#)

### **What was a wedding feast?**

[12:36]

See: [Wedding](#)

### **What did it mean to be blessed?**

[12:37]

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

### **What were the second and third watches?**

[12:38]

The second and third watches were time periods of the night in which guards had duty. Typically, the watch periods were from 6:00 in the evening until 6:00 in the morning. The Jews and Romans divided the watches. The Romans divided the watches into four periods of three hours each. The Jews divided the watches into three periods of four hours each.

### **Why did Jesus talk about a thief?**

[12:39]

When Jesus spoke about the owner of a home knowing a thief was coming, he was saying it was wise to keep alert and watch. By doing this, the owner would prevent the thief from breaking into his home. In the same way, Jesus wanted Christians to be alert and watching for him to return. He wanted them to do this even though they did not know the time of his return.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### **Who is the son of man?**

[12:40]

Jesus is the Son of Man.

See: [Son of Man](#)

### **12:41-48**

### **How did Jesus answer Peter?**

[12:42]

Jesus did not answer Peter's question directly. However, Jesus answered him using a parable.

See: [Parable](#)

### **How will the Lord come to the unfaithful servant and "cut him in pieces"?**

[12:46]

Jesus spoke about a master coming to the unfaithful servant and cutting him into pieces. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think he wanted people to know that the unfaithful servant would be severely punished. Other scholars think he wanted Christians to separate themselves from their community. That is, he would have to live outside of the town.

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#)

### **12:49-59**

### **Why did Jesus speak about "cast fire upon the earth"?**

[12:49]

Jesus spoke about casting fire on the earth. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about God judging people on the earth. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about God removing evil from the world.

See: [Purify \(Pure\)](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Purify \(Pure\)](#)

### What baptism was Jesus talking about?

[12:50]

The baptism Jesus was talking about was a baptism of suffering and death. That is, he was speaking about his death as a type of baptism.

See: [Baptize \(Baptism\)](#)

### What did Jesus mean by saying he came to bring "division"?

Jesus said that he came to divide people. Jesus divided people. Some people believed in him. Other people rejected him. People have to choose whether they believe in Jesus or reject Jesus. They must choose to follow Jesus, or to follow Satan.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### Why did Jesus say that people did "not know how to interpret the present time"?

[12:56]

Jesus said that people did "not know how to interpret the present time." Jesus was saying that people did not know how to interpret what Jesus was doing. That is, they did not understand that God sent Jesus, and did not understand what God was going to do through Jesus. The "present time" meant the time in which Jesus was living on earth.

### What was a magistrate?

[12:58]

A magistrate was a ruler, or a person who had permission to make legal decisions when two people disagreed with one another.

## Luke 12:1

### General Information:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples in front of thousands of people.

### In the meantime

This is probably while the scribes and Pharisees were looking for a way to trap him. The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

### when many thousands of the people ... they trampled on each other

This is background information that tells the setting of the story.

**many thousands of the people**  
"a very great crowd"

### they trampled on each other

This is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that so many people were crowded close together that they would step on each other. Alternate

translation: "they were stepping on each other" or "they were stepping on one another's feet"

### he began to say to his disciples first of all

"Jesus first started speaking to his disciples, and said to them"

### Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy

Just as yeast spreads through a whole lump of bread dough, their hypocrisy was spreading through the whole community. Alternate translation: "Guard yourself against the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, which is like yeast" or "Be careful that you do not become hypocrites like the Pharisees. Their evil behavior influences everyone just as yeast affects a lump of dough"

## Luke 12:2

### But there is

The word "But" connects this verse to the previous verse about the hypocrisy of the Pharisees.

**there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed**  
 "everything that is hidden will be shown." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will find out about everything that people do secretly"

**nothing hidden that will not be known**  
 This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence in order to emphasize its truth. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will learn about everything that others try to hide"

### Luke 12:3

**whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light**  
 Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private. And "light" is a metonym for "day" which is a metonym for "public. The phrase "will be heard" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whatever you have said privately at night, people will hear it in the daylight"

**spoken in the ear**  
 whispered

**in the inner rooms**  
 "in a closed room." This refers to private speech. Alternate translation: "in privacy" or "secretly"

**will be proclaimed**  
 "will be shouted loudly." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will proclaim"

**upon the housetops**  
 Houses in Israel had flat roofs, so people could go up and stand on top of them. If readers would be distracted trying to imagine how people would get up on the house tops, this could also be translated with a more general expression, such as "from a high place so that everyone will be able to hear."

### Luke 12:4

**I say to you, my friends**  
 Jesus readdresses his disciples to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about not being afraid.

**they have no more that they can do**  
 "they cannot cause any more harm"

### Luke 12:5

**Fear the one who, after ... has authority**  
 The phrase "the one" refers to God. This could be reworded. Alternate translation: "Fear God who, after ... has authority" or "Fear God, because after ... he has authority"

**after he has killed**  
 "after he kills you"

**has authority to throw you into hell**  
 This is a general statement about God's authority to judge people. It does not mean this will happen to the disciples. Alternate translation: "has authority to throw people into hell"

### Luke 12:6

**Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins?**  
 Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "You know that five sparrows are sold for only two small coins."

**sparrows**  
 very small, seed-eating birds

**not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God**  
 This could be stated in active form and in positive form. Alternate translation: "God never forgets any of them" or "God indeed remembers every sparrow"

### Luke 12:7

**even the hairs of your head are all numbered**  
 This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

**Do not fear**  
 The reason for the fear is not stated. Possible meanings are 1) "Do not be afraid of what will happen to you" or 2) "So do not be afraid of people who could hurt you."

**You are more valuable than many sparrows**  
 "You are worth more to God than many sparrows"

### Luke 12:8

**I say to you**  
 Jesus readdresses his audience to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about confession.

**everyone who confesses me before men**  
 What is confessed can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "whoever tells others that he is my disciple" or "anyone who acknowledges before others that he is loyal to me"

**the Son of Man**  
 Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

### Luke 12:9

**he who denies me before men will be denied**  
 "I will deny before the angels of God that I know anyone who denies me" or "I, the Son of Man will

deny before the angels of God that I know anyone who denies me"

**denies me**

"claims that he does not know me" or "claims that he is not my disciple"

**before men**

where people can hear

**will be denied**

"will be treated as though I do not know him" or "will be treated as if he is not my disciple"

**Luke 12:10**

**Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man**

"Everyone who says something bad about the Son of Man"

**it will be forgiven him**

"he will be forgiven." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive him for that"

**blasphemes against the Holy Spirit**

"speaks evil against the Holy Spirit"

**but to him ... it will not be forgiven**

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "but he ... God will not forgive him" or "but he ... God will consider him guilty forever"

**Luke 12:11**

**When they bring you**

It is not stated who brings them into judgment.

**before the synagogues**

"into the synagogues to question you before the religious leaders"

**rulers ... authorities**

It may be necessary to combine these into one statement. Alternate translation: "other people who have power in the country"

**Luke 12:12**

**in that hour**

"at that time" or "then"

**Luke 12:13**

**General Information:**

This is a break in Jesus's teachings. A man asks Jesus to do something and Jesus responds to him.

**divide the inheritance with me**

In that culture, inheritances came from the father, usually after the father had died. You may need to make explicit that the speaker's father had

probably died. Alternate translation: "share my father's property with me now that our father is dead"

**Luke 12:14**

**Man**

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a way to address a stranger or 2) Jesus is rebuking the man. Your language might have a way of addressing people in either of these ways. Some people do not translate this word at all.

**who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate translation: "no one appointed me a judge or mediator over you." or "I am not your judge or mediator."

**you**

This word refers to the man and his brother and so is plural.

**Luke 12:15**

**He said to them**

The word "them" here probably refers to the whole crowd of people. Alternate translation: "And Jesus said to the crowd"

**keep yourselves from all greedy desires**

"guard yourself from every form of greed." Alternate translation: "do not allow yourself to love having things" or "do not let the urge to have more things control you"

**a person's life**

This is a general statement of fact. It does not refer to any specific person. Some languages have a way of expressing that.

**the abundance of his possessions**

"how many things he owns" or "how much wealth he has"

**Luke 12:16**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues his teaching by telling a parable.

**Then Jesus told them**

Jesus was probably still speaking to the entire crowd.

**yielded abundantly**

"grew a very good harvest"

**Luke 12:17**

**What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?**

This question reflects what the man was thinking to himself. Alternate translation: "I do not know what

to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops!"

### Luke 12:18

#### **barns**

buildings where farmers store the crops they have harvested

#### **all of my grain and other goods**

"all of my grain and the other good things that I own"

### Luke 12:19

**I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have ... years. Rest ... merry."**

"I will say to myself, 'I have ... years. Rest ... merry.'" or "I will tell myself that I have ... years, so I can rest ... merry."

#### **many goods**

"many good things" or "many possessions"

### Luke 12:20

#### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus quotes how God responds to the rich man, as he finishes telling his parable.

#### **tonight your soul is required of you**

The "soul" refers to the life of a person. Alternate translation: "you will die tonight" or "I will take your life from you tonight"

#### **the things you have prepared, whose will they be?**

"who will own what you have stored up?" or "who will have what you prepared?" God uses a question to make the man realize that he would no longer possess those things. Alternate translation: "the things that you have prepared will belong to someone else!"

### Luke 12:21

#### **stores up treasure**

"saves up valuable things"

#### **is not rich toward God**

has not used his time and possessions for the things that are important to God

### Luke 12:22

#### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues teaching his disciples in front of the crowd.

#### **Therefore**

"For that reason" or "Because of what this story teaches"

#### **I say to you**

"I want to tell you something important" or "you need to listen carefully to this"

#### **about your body, what you will wear**

"about your body and what you will wear" or "about having enough clothes to put on your body"

### Luke 12:23

#### **life is more than food**

This is a general statement of value. Alternate translation: "life is more important than the food you eat"

#### **the body is more than clothes**

"your body is more important than the clothes you wear"

### Luke 12:24

#### **ravens**

This refers either to 1) crows, a kind of bird that eats mostly grain, or 2) ravens, a kind of bird that eats the flesh of dead animals. Jesus's audience would have considered the ravens worthless since the Jewish people could not eat these types of birds.

#### **storeroom ... barn**

These are places where food is stored.

#### **How much more valuable you are than the birds!**

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes the fact that people are much more valuable to God than birds.

### Luke 12:25

#### **Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?**

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "None of you can make your life any longer by being anxious!"

#### **add a cubit to his lifespan**

This is a metaphor because a cubit is a measure of length rather than of time. The image is of a person's life stretched out as if it were a board, a rope, or some other physical object.

#### **cubit**

the length from a man's elbow to the end of his fingers

### Luke 12:26

#### **If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest?**

Jesus uses another question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "Since you cannot do even this small thing, you should not worry about the other things."



## Luke 12:27

**Think about the lilies—how they grow**  
 "Think about how the lilies grow."

### **lilies**

Lilies are beautiful flowers that grow wild in the fields. If your language does not have a word for lily, you can use the name of another flower like that or translate it as "flowers"

### **neither do they spin**

The process of making thread or yard for cloth is called "spinning." It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "neither do they make thread in order to make cloth" or "and they do not make yarn"

### **Solomon in all his glory was**

"Solomon, who had great wealth, was" or "Solomon, who wore beautiful clothes, was"

## Luke 12:28

### **If God so clothes the grass in the field, which**

"If God clothes the grass in the field like that, and it" or "If God gives the grass in the field such beautiful clothing, and it." God making the grass beautiful is spoken of as if God were putting beautiful clothes on the grass. Alternate translation: "If God makes the grass in the field beautiful like this, and it"

### **is thrown into the oven**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone throws it into a fire"

### **how much more will he clothe you**

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes that he will certainly take care of people even better than he does the grass. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "he will certainly clothe you even better"

## Luke 12:29

### **Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink**

"Do not focus on what you will eat and drink" or "Do not greatly desire more to eat and drink"

## Luke 12:30

### **all the nations of the world**

Here "nations" refers to "unbelievers." Alternate translation: "all people of other nations" or "all the unbelievers in the world"

### **your Father**

This is an important title for God.

## Luke 12:31

### **seek his kingdom**

"focus on God's kingdom" or "greatly desire God's kingdom"

### **these things will be added to you**

"these things also will be given to you." "These things" refers to food and clothing. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will also give you these things"

## Luke 12:32

### **little flock**

Jesus is calling his disciples a flock. A flock is a group of sheep or goats that a shepherd cares for. As a shepherd cares for his sheep, God cares for Jesus's disciples. Alternate translation: "small group" or "dear group"

### **your Father**

This is an important title for God.

## Luke 12:33

### **give alms**

It may be helpful to state what they receive. Alternate translation: "give alms from the money you earn from the sales"

### **Make for yourselves purses ... treasure in the heavens**

The purses and treasure in the heavens are the same thing. They both represent God's blessing in heaven.

### **Make for yourselves**

This is the result of giving to the poor. Alternate translation: "In this way you will make for yourselves"

### **purses which will not wear out**

"money bags that will not get holes in them"

### **does not run out**

"does not diminish" or "does not become less"

### **no thief comes near**

"thieves do not come near"

### **no moth destroys**

"moths do not destroy"

### **moth**

A "moth" is a small insect that eats holes in fabric. You may need to use a different insect, such as an ant or termite.

## Luke 12:34

**where your treasure is, there your heart will be also**  
"your heart will be focused on where you store your treasure"

### your heart

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts.

## Luke 12:35

### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable.

### Keep your loins girded

These words are a metaphor for being ready to do hard work. People in Jesus's culture wore long flowing robes. They would tuck these robes into their belts to keep them out of the way while they worked. Alternate translation: "Always be ready to serve" or "Be dressed and ready to serve"

### and your lamps lit

This is a metaphor or metonym for staying awake at night and another metaphor for always being ready to work, even when it would otherwise be time to rest. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "keep your lamps burning"

## Luke 12:36

### be like people waiting expectantly for their master

Jesus commands the disciples to be ready for him to return the same way servants should be ready for their master to return.

### waiting expectantly

If your language has a word for one person waiting and looking for someone he expects will come soon, you may want to use it here.

### returns from the marriage feast

"returns home from a marriage feast"

### open the door for him

This refers to the door of the master's house. It was the responsibility of his servants to open it for him.

## Luke 12:37

### Blessed are

"How good it is for"

### whom the master will find watching when he comes

"whose master finds them waiting for him when he returns" or "who are ready when the master returns"

### he will gird himself to serve and have them sit down

Because the servants have been faithful and ready to serve their master, the master will now reward them by serving them.

### he will gird himself to serve

"he will tuck in his robe to serve." If people are not familiar with robes, this can also be translated in a more general way. Alternate translation: "he will dress himself to serve"

## Luke 12:38

### in the second watch of the night

The second watch was between 9:00 p.m. and midnight. Alternate translation: "late at night" or "just before midnight"

### or if even in the third watch

The third watch was from midnight to 3:00 a.m. Alternate translation: "or if he comes very late at night"

## Luke 12:39

### had known the hour

"had known when"

### he would not have let his house be broken into

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he would not have let the thief break into his house"

## Luke 12:40

### because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect

The similarity between a thief (Luke 12:39) and the Son of Man is that people do not know when either one will come, so they need to be ready. Jesus is not saying that he himself is a thief.

### the Son of Man is coming

Jesus is talking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am coming"

## Luke 12:41

### General Information:

Here there is a stop in the story as Peter asks Jesus a question about the previous parable.

## Luke 12:42

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell another parable.

### Who then is ... right time?

Jesus uses a question to answer Peter's question indirectly. He expected those who wanted to be faithful managers to understand that the parable was about them. Alternate translation: "I said it for everyone who is ... right time."

**the faithful and wise manager**

Jesus tells another parable about how servants should be faithful while they wait for their master to return.

**whom his lord will set over his other servants**

"whom his lord puts in charge of his other servants"

**Luke 12:43**

**Blessed is that servant**

"How good it is for that servant"

**whom his lord finds doing that when he comes**

"if his lord finds him doing that work when he comes back"

**Luke 12:44**

**Truly I say to you**

This expression means they should pay special attention to what he is about to say.

**will set him over all his property**

"will put him in charge of all his property"

**Luke 12:45**

**that servant**

This refers to the servant whose lord has put him in charge of the other servants.

**says in his heart**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "thinks to himself"

**My lord delays his return**

"My master will not return soon"

**male servants and female servants**

The words that are translated here as "male servants and female servants" are normally translated as "boys" and "girls." They may indicate that the servants were young or that they were dear to their master. If your language can shorten this phrase to "male and female servants," you may want to do so here.

**Luke 12:46**

**in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know**

The words "day" and "hour" form a merism of time that refers to any time, and the words "expect" and "know" have similar meanings, so the two phrases here are parallel to emphasize that the coming of the lord will be a total surprise to the servant. However, the phrases should not be combined unless your language has no different words for "know" and "expect" or "day" and "hour." Alternate translation: "at a time when the servant is not expecting him"

**cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful**

Possible meanings are 1) this is an exaggeration for the master dealing out harsh punishment toward the slave, or 2) this describes the manner in which the servant will be executed and buried as punishment.

**Luke 12:47**

**That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "But as for the servant who knows his lord's will does not prepare or do according to it, the master will beat him with many blows"

**his lord's will ... according to his will**

"what his master wanted him to do ... it"

**Luke 12:48**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes telling the parable.

**But the one ... few blows**

Both the servant who knows the master's will and the servant who does not know it are punished, but the words that begin with "That servant" (verse 47) show the servant who intentionally disobeyed his master was punished more severely than the other servant.

**But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will require more of anyone who has received much" or "The master will require more of everyone he has given much to"

**the one ... much, even more will be asked**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the master will ask even more of the one ... much" or "the master will require even more of the one ... much"

**the one who has been entrusted with much**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one to whom the master has given much property to take care of" or "the one to whom the master has given much responsibility"

**Luke 12:49**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

**I came to cast fire upon the earth**

"I came to throw fire on the earth" or "I came to set the earth on fire." Possible meanings are 1) Jesus has come to judge people or 2) Jesus has come to

purify believers or 3) Jesus has come to cause division among people.

**how I wish that it were already kindled**

This exclamation emphasizes how much he wants this to happen. Alternate translation: "I wish very much that it was already lit" or "how I wish that it had already begun"

**Luke 12:50**

**I have a baptism to be baptized with**

Here "baptism" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "I must go through a baptism of terrible suffering" or "I must be overwhelmed by suffering as a person being baptized is covered by water"

**But**

The word "but" is used to show that he cannot cast the fire on the earth until after he goes through his baptism.

**how I am distressed until it is completed**

This exclamation emphasizes how distressed he was. Alternate translation: "I am terribly distressed and will be so until I complete this baptism of suffering"

**Luke 12:51**

**Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division**

Jesus asks a question to let them know that he is going to correct their wrong understanding. You may need to supply the words "I came" that are omitted in the second sentence. Alternate translation: "You think that I came to bring peace on the earth, but I tell you I did not. Instead, I came to bring division"

**division**

"hostility" or "discord"

**Luke 12:52**

**there will be five in one house**

It may be helpful to state that this refers to people. Alternate translation: "there will be five people in one house"

**against ... against**

"will oppose ... will oppose"

**Luke 12:53**

**against**

"will oppose"

**Luke 12:54**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd.

**When you see a cloud rising ... happens**

This condition normally meant rain was coming in Israel.

**A shower is coming**

"Rain is coming" or "It is going to rain"

**Luke 12:55**

**When a south wind is blowing**

This condition normally meant hot weather was coming in Israel.

**Luke 12:56**

**the earth and the heavens**

"the earth and the sky"

**how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Jesus uses this question to convict them. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you should know how to interpret the present time."

**Luke 12:57**

**Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You yourselves should discern what is right."

**for yourselves**

"on your own initiative"

**Luke 12:58**

**For when you go ... prison**

Jesus presents a situation here that continues through verse 59. This may be a parable to teach Jesus's hearers that they need to repent of their sins before God condemns them on the day of judgment. Alternate translation: "If when you go ... prison"

**when you go**

Though Jesus is talking to a crowd, the situation he is presenting is something that a person would go through alone. So in some languages the word "you" would be singular.

**be reconciled with him**

"be reconciled with your adversary"

**the judge**

This refers to the magistrate, but the term here is more specific and threatening.

**does not deliver you**  
"does not take you"

**Luke 12:59**

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of the situations that begins in verse 58.

**the very last bit of money**

"the entire amount of money that your adversary demands"

## ULB Translation Questions

**Luke 12:3**

**According to Jesus, what will happen to everything you say in darkness?**  
It will be heard in the light.

**Luke 12:5**

**Who did Jesus say that you should fear?**  
You should fear the one who has authority to throw you into hell.

**Luke 12:8**

**What will Jesus do for everyone who confesses Jesus' name before men?**  
Jesus will confess that person's name before the angels of God.

**Luke 12:15**

**According to Jesus, our life does not consist of what?**  
Our life does not consist in the abundance of our possessions.

**Luke 12:18**

**In Jesus' parable, what was the rich man going to do because his fields yielded abundantly?**  
He was going to pull down his barns and build bigger ones, and then rest easy, eat, drink, and be merry.

**Luke 12:19**

**In Jesus' parable, what was the rich man going to do because his fields yielded abundantly?**  
He was going to pull down his barns and build bigger ones, and then rest easy, eat, drink, and be merry.

**Luke 12:20**

**What did God say to the rich man?**  
He said, "Foolish man, tonight your soul is required of you; and the things you have prepared, whose will they be?"

**Luke 12:31**

**Instead of being anxious about the things of life, what did Jesus say we should do?**  
We should seek the kingdom of God.

**Luke 12:33**

**Where did Jesus say we should store our treasures, and why?**  
We should store our treasures in the heavens, because that is where no thief comes and no moth destroys.

**Luke 12:37**

**According to Jesus, which servants of God are blessed?**  
Those are blessed who are found watching and ready when Jesus comes.

**Luke 12:40**

**Do we know the hour when Jesus will come?**  
We do not know the hour when Jesus will come.

**Luke 12:46**

**What happens to the servant who abuses the other servants and is not ready for his master's return?**  
The master will cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful.

**Luke 12:48**

**What is required of those to whom much is given?**  
Much is required of them.

**Luke 12:52**

**According to Jesus, what kinds of divisions will he bring on the earth?**  
There will be people in the same house divided against each other.

**Luke 12:53**

**According to Jesus, what kinds of divisions will he bring on the earth?**

There will be people in the same house divided against each other.

**Luke 12:58**

**According to Jesus, what should we do before we go with our adversary before the magistrate?**

We should make an effort to settle the matter beforehand.

---

## Chapter 13

<sup>1</sup> At that time, some people there told him about the Galileans whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices. <sup>2</sup> Jesus answered and said to them, "Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful than all the other Galileans because they suffered in this way?" <sup>3</sup> No, I tell you. But if you do not repent, all of you will perish in the same way. <sup>4</sup> Or those eighteen people in Siloam on whom a tower fell and killed them, do you think they were worse sinners than other men in Jerusalem?" <sup>5</sup> No, I say. But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

<sup>6</sup> Jesus told this parable, "Someone had a fig tree planted in his vineyard and he came and looked for fruit on it but found none. <sup>7</sup> The man said to the gardener, 'Look, for three years I have come and tried to find fruit on this fig tree and found none. Cut it down. Why let it waste the ground?'"

<sup>8</sup> "The gardener answered and said, 'Sir, leave it alone this year while I dig around it and put manure on it. <sup>9</sup> If it bears fruit next year, good; but if it does not, cut it down!'"

<sup>10</sup> Now Jesus was teaching in one of the synagogues during the Sabbath. <sup>11</sup> Behold, a woman was there who for eighteen years had a spirit of weakness. She was bent over and was not able to straighten up completely. <sup>12</sup> When Jesus saw her, he called to her and said, "Woman, you are freed from your weakness." <sup>13</sup> He placed his hands on her, and immediately she was made straight again and glorified God.

<sup>14</sup> But the synagogue ruler was indignant because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath. So the ruler answered and said to the crowd, "There are six days in which it is necessary to labor. Come and be healed then, not on the Sabbath day."

<sup>15</sup> The Lord answered him and said, "Hypocrites! Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?" <sup>16</sup> So too this daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound for eighteen long years, should her bonds not be untied on the Sabbath day?" <sup>17</sup> As he said these things, all those who opposed him were ashamed, but the whole crowd was rejoicing over all the glorious things he did.

<sup>18</sup> Then Jesus said, "What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?" <sup>19</sup> It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden, and it grew into a big tree, and the birds of heaven built their nests in its branches."

<sup>20</sup> Again he said, "To what can I compare the kingdom of God?" <sup>21</sup> It is like yeast that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the flour was leavened."

<sup>22</sup> Then Jesus traveled through the towns and villages, teaching and making his way toward Jerusalem. <sup>23</sup> Someone said to him, "Lord, are only a few people to be saved?"

So he said to them, <sup>24</sup> "Struggle to enter through the narrow door, because, I say to you, many will try to enter, but will not be able to enter. <sup>25</sup> Once the owner of the house gets up and locks the door, then you will stand outside and pound the door and say, 'Lord, Lord, let us in.'

"He will answer and say to you, 'I do not know you or where you are from.'

<sup>26</sup> "Then you will say, 'We ate and drank in front of you and you taught in our streets.'

<sup>27</sup> "But he will reply, 'I say to you, I do not know where you are from. Get away from me, all you workers of unrighteousness!' <sup>28</sup> There will be crying and the grinding of teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the prophets in God's kingdom, but you are thrown out. <sup>29</sup> They will come from the east, west, north, and south, and be seated at a table in the kingdom of God. <sup>30</sup> Know this, those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last."

<sup>31</sup> In that same hour, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."

<sup>32</sup> Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox, 'Look, I cast out demons and perform healings today and tomorrow, and the third day I will reach my goal.' <sup>33</sup> In any case, it is necessary for me to continue on today, tomorrow, and the following day, since it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem. <sup>34</sup> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. How often I desired to gather your children the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings, but you did not desire this. <sup>35</sup> See, your house is abandoned. I say to you, you will not see me until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

---

## Luke 13 General Notes

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Unknown events

The people and Jesus speak about two events that they knew about but about which no one today knows anything except what Luke has written ([Luke 13:1-5](#)). Your translation should tell only what Luke tells.

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last" ([Luke 13:30](#)).

---

## Luke 13

### 13:1-5

#### How was the blood of Galileans mixed with their own sacrifices?

[13:1]

Luke wrote about the blood of Galileans mixed with their sacrifices. Scholars think that at the Passover, Pilate ordered some of the Jews in Galilee to be killed while they were offering sacrifices. Their blood was mixed with the blood of the animal sacrifices for the Passover in some way.

See: [Offer \(Offering\)](#); [Sacrifice](#); [Offer \(Offering\)](#)

See Map: Galilee

#### Where was the tower of Siloam?

[13:4]

Luke wrote about the tower of Siloam. Scholars think the tower in Siloam was a tower on the walls around Jerusalem near the pool of Siloam. Luke did not say why the tower fell.

See Map: Jerusalem; Pool of Siloam

#### Why did it mean to "repent"?

[13:5]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### 13:6-9

#### What was a parable?

[13:6]

See: [Parable](#)



**What was a fig tree?**

[13:6]

A fig tree was a tree that was very common in Israel. The tree produced a small fruit called a fig.

**What was a vineyard?**

[13:6]

A vineyard was a farm where grapes and olives were grown. In this man's vineyard, there was also a fig tree planted.

See: [Vine \(Vineyard\)](#)

**13:10-17**

**What was a synagogue?**

[13:10]

See: [Synagogue](#)

**What was the Sabbath?**

[13:10]

See: [Sabbath](#)

**What was a "spirit of weakness"?**

[13:11]

A "spirit of weakness" was an evil spirit or demon. The evil spirit caused the woman to have a "weakness." Some scholars say the "spirit of weakness" always kept the woman sick. Other scholars say it disabled the woman in some way.

See: [Demon](#)

**Why was the synagogue ruler mad that Jesus "healed on the Sabbath"?**

[13:14]

See: Luke 6:6-11

See: [Synagogue](#); [Synagogue](#)

**Why did Jesus cry out "hypocrites"?**

[13:15]

Jesus said that the rulers of the synagogue were "hypocrites." He said this because of the things they taught about the Law of Moses and the Sabbath. The ruler and other religious leaders said they could help their own animals on the Sabbath, but they could not help other people on the Sabbath.

See: [Sabbath](#); [Hypocrisy \(Hypocrite\)](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Sabbath](#)

**How did Satan bind "bound" the woman?**

[13:16]

When Jesus spoke about the woman being bound for eighteen years, he was using a metaphor. Animals were tied, or bound with a rope. They could not move. The bound woman could not move because she was sick.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### 13:18-21

#### How is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?

[13:19]

Jesus told a parable about a mustard seed. He wanted people to know that the kingdom of God will be very large. In Israel, the mustard tree had the smallest seed. However, this seed grew into a big tree. In the same way, the kingdom of God started among a small group of people but it will grow large in some way. It will include all people of the world.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#)

#### Why did Jesus tell the parable of yeast?

[13:21]

Jesus told a parable about yeast. He wanted people to know that the kingdom of God will spread into the whole world. When a woman mixed a small amount of yeast with a big amount of flour the flour raised. Three measures of flour fed 150 people. In the same way, the kingdom of God started among a small group of people but it will become very large. It will include all people of the world.

See: [Yeast \(Leaven\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Yeast \(Leaven\)](#)

### 13:22-30

#### What did it mean to be “saved”?

[13:23]

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

#### What was the narrow door?

[13:24]

Jesus spoke about a narrow door. This was a metaphor. Scholars think Jesus spoke about the “narrow door” because it was difficult to enter a house through a narrow door. In the same way, it was difficult to enter the kingdom of God. Someone could only enter the kingdom of God if they repented.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

#### Why will many not be able to enter the kingdom of God?

[13:24]

Many people will not be able to enter the kingdom of God. The owner of the house gets up and locks the door. This was a metaphor. Scholars think there will be a time when Jesus will not allow people to enter the kingdom of God. Perhaps this will happen at the second coming of Jesus.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

#### What did Jesus mean by saying “there will be crying and the grinding of teeth”?

[13:28]

Jesus said that there will be “crying and the grinding of teeth”. Some scholars think he was saying that people will be greatly disappointed, angry, and filled with worry because they thought they should be in heaven with God. Other scholars think there will be “crying and the grinding of teeth” because people will know they are guilty, and they will be very sad.

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Hell](#); [Day of Judgment](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#) .

**Who were the least important and the most important?**

[13:30]

Jesus spoke about the least and most important people. Scholars think the least important were the Gentiles and the most important were the Jews.

See: [Gentile](#)

**13:31-35**

**What was a Pharisee?**

[13:31]

See: [Pharisees](#)

**Why did Jesus call Herod a fox?**

[13:32]

Jesus called Herod a fox. Scholars think Jesus was using a metaphor when he called Herod a “fox”. A fox was an animal that was very tricky, sneaky, and often destroyed things. He wanted to say that Herod like this because he was trying to get rid of Jesus. He was being sneaky by having others try to kill Jesus for him.

See: [King Herod](#); [King Herod](#)

**What was casting out demons?**

[13:32]

See: [Demon Possession \(Casting Out Demons\)](#)

**What was Jesus’ goal?**

[13:33]

Jesus spoke about a goal. This was something he wanted to do. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about going to die in Jerusalem. This was when he finished the things God sent him to do.

**Why did Jesus say, “it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem”?**

[13:33]

Jesus said “it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem.” He wanted people to know that more prophets were killed in Jerusalem than in any other place. Jesus is the greatest of all the prophets and God planned for him to be killed in the city where most of the prophets were killed.

See: [Prophet](#)

**Who were the “children” about whom Jesus spoke?**

[13:34]

Jesus spoke about the “children.” He was speaking about people who lived in Jerusalem. Scholars think Jesus was talking about the whole nation of Israel.

**Why did Jesus say, “your house is abandoned”?**

[13:35]

Jesus said, "your house is abandoned". Jesus spoke about something that was going to happen. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jerusalem. Other scholars think Jesus was saying the temple will be abandoned. The Romans destroyed both Jerusalem and the temple about 40 years after Jesus died.

See: [Temple](#)

### When will people say "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord"?

[13:35]

People will say "Blessed is he who come in the name of the Lord". Jesus was speaking about returning to the earth. Perhaps the "name of the Lord" referred to the coming of the Messiah.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

#### Luke 13:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus is still speaking in front of the crowd. Some people in the crowd ask him a question and he begins to respond. This continues the story that begins in Luke 12:1.

##### At that time

This phrase connects this event to the end of chapter 12, when Jesus was teaching a crowd of people.

##### whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Here "blood" refers to the death of the Galileans. They were probably killed while they were offering their sacrifices. This could be stated explicitly as in the UDB.

##### whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Pilate probably ordered his soldiers to kill people rather than doing it himself. Alternate translation: "whom Pilate's soldiers killed as they were sacrificing animals"

#### Luke 13:2

##### Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?

"Were these Galileans more sinful ... way?" or "Does this prove that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?" Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in verse 3.

#### Luke 13:3

##### No, I tell you. But if you do not repent ... same way

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:2. Jesus explains that the Galileans who were killed were not more sinful than other Galileans.

##### No, I tell you

Here "I tell you" emphasizes "no." Alternate translation: "They certainly were not more sinful" or "You are wrong to think that their suffering proves that they were more sinful"

##### all of you will perish in the same way

"all of you also will die." The phrase "in the same way" means they will experience the same result, not that they will die by the same method.

**perish**  
die

#### Luke 13:4

##### Or those

This is Jesus's second example of people who suffered. Alternate translation: "Or consider those" or "Think about those"

**eighteen people**  
"18 people"

##### Siloam

This is the name of an area in Jerusalem.

##### do you think they were worse sinners ... Jerusalem?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in 13:4. Alternate translation: "does this prove that they were more sinful ... Jerusalem?"

##### they were worse sinners

The crowd assumed that they died in this terrible way because they were especially sinful. This could be explicitly stated. Alternate translation: "they died because they were worse sinners"

##### other men

"other people." The word here is the general term for a person.

#### Luke 13:5

##### No, I say

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:4. Alternate translation: "They certainly did not die because they were more sinful"

**perish**  
die

## Luke 13:6

### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell the crowd a parable to explain his last statement, "But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

### Someone had a fig tree planted in his vineyard

The owner of a vineyard had another person plant a fig tree in the vineyard.

### vineyard

Possible meanings are 1) this was a garden where grapes were grown, or 2) this was a garden where fruit trees were grown. Alternate translation: "garden" or "orchard"

## Luke 13:7

### Why let it waste the ground?

The man uses a question to emphasize that the tree is useless and the gardener should cut it down. Alternate translation: "Do not let it waste the ground."

## Luke 13:8

### leave it alone

"do not do anything to the tree" or "do not cut it down"

### put manure on it

"put manure in the soil." Manure is animal dung. People put it in the ground to make the soil good for plants and trees. Alternate translation: "put fertilizer on it"

## Luke 13:9

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his parable. This is the end of the story that began in Luke 12:1.

### If it bears fruit next year, good

It may be helpful to state what will happen. Alternate translation: "If it has figs on it next year, good; we can allow it to keep growing"

### cut it down

The servant was making a suggestion; he was not giving a command to the owner. Alternate translation: "tell me to cut it down" or "I will cut it down"

## Luke 13:10

### General Information:

Verses 10-11 give background information about the setting of this part of the story and about a crippled woman who is introduced into the story.

### Now

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

### during the Sabbath

"on a Sabbath day." Some languages would say "a Sabbath" because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

## Luke 13:11

### Behold, a woman was there

The word "behold" here alerts us to a new person in the story.

### eighteen years

"18 years"

### a spirit of weakness

"an evil spirit that made her weak"

## Luke 13:12

### Woman, you are freed from your weakness

"Woman, you are healed from your disease." This can be expressed with an active verb: Alternate translation: "Woman, I have set you free from your weakness"

### Woman, you are freed from your weakness

By saying this, Jesus healed her. This can be expressed with a sentence that shows that he was causing it to happen, or by a command. Alternate translation: "Woman, I now free you from your weakness" or "Woman, be freed from your weakness"

## Luke 13:13

### He placed his hands on her

"He touched her"

### she was made straight again

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "she was able to stand up straight again"

## Luke 13:14

### was indignant

"was very angry"

### answered and said

"said" or "responded"

### be healed then

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let someone heal you during those six days"

**on the Sabbath day**

"on a Sabbath day." Some languages would say "a Sabbath" because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

**Luke 13:15**

**The Lord answered him**

"The Lord responded to the synagogue ruler"

**Hypocrites**

Jesus speaks directly to the synagogue ruler, but the plural form includes the other religious rulers also. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "You and your fellow religious leaders are hypocrites"

**Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?**

Jesus uses a question to get them to think about something they already knew. Alternate translation: "Every one of you unties his ox or his donkey from the stall and leads it to drink on the Sabbath."

**ox ... donkey**

These are animals that people care for by giving them water.

**on the Sabbath**

"on a Sabbath." Some languages would say "a Sabbath" because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

**Luke 13:16**

**daughter of Abraham**

This is an idiom that means, "descendant of Abraham"

**whom Satan bound**

Jesus compares people tying animals to the way Satan restricted the woman with this disease. Alternate translation: "whom Satan kept crippled by her illness" or "whom Satan bound with this disease"

**eighteen long years**

"18 long years." The word "long" here emphasizes that eighteen years was a very long time for the woman to suffer. Other languages may have other ways of emphasizing this.

**should her bonds not be untied ... day?**

Jesus uses a question to tell the synagogue rulers that they are wrong. Jesus speaks about the women's disease as if it were ropes that bound her. This can be translated as an active statement. Alternate translation: "it is right to release her from the bonds of this illness ... day."

**Luke 13:17**

**As he said these things**

"When Jesus said these things"

**the glorious things he did**

"the glorious things Jesus was doing"

**Luke 13:18**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the synagogue.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?**

Jesus uses two questions to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the kingdom of God is like and what I can compare it to."

**what can I compare it to?**

This is basically the same as the previous question. Some languages can use both questions, and some would use only one.

**Luke 13:19**

**It is like a mustard seed**

Jesus compares the kingdom to a mustard seed. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed"

**a mustard seed**

A mustard seed is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. If this seed is not known, the phrase can be translated with the name of another seed like it or simply as "a small seed."

**threw into his garden**

"planted in his garden." People planted some kinds of seeds by throwing them so that they scattered in the garden.

**a big tree**

The word "big" is an exaggeration that contrasts the tree with the tiny seed. Alternate translation: "a very large shrub"

**birds of heaven**

"birds of the sky." Alternate translation: "birds that fly in the sky" or "birds"

**Luke 13:20**

**To what can I compare the kingdom of God?**

Jesus uses another question to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you another thing to which I can compare to the kingdom of God."

## Luke 13:21

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the people in the synagogue. This is the end of this part of the story.

### It is like yeast

Jesus compares the kingdom of God to yeast in bread dough. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God is like yeast"

### like yeast

Only a little bit of yeast is needed to make a lot of dough rise. This can be made clear, as it is in the UDB.

### three measures of flour

This is a large amount of flour, since each measure was about 13 liters. You may need to use a term that your culture uses to measure flour. Alternate translation: "a large amount of flour"

## Luke 13:22

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 13:23

### are only a few people to be saved?

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will God save only a few people?"

## Luke 13:24

### General Information:

Jesus responds to a question by using a metaphor about entering God's kingdom.

### Struggle to enter through the narrow door

"Work hard to go through the narrow doorway." Jesus is speaking about the entrance to God's kingdom as if it were a small doorway to a house. Since Jesus is talking to a group, the "you" implied in this command is plural.

### the narrow door

The fact that the door is narrow implies that it is difficult to go through it. Translate it in a way to keep this restrictive meaning.

### many will try to enter, but will not be able to enter

It is implied that they will not be able to enter because of the difficulty of entering. The next verse explains the difficulty.

## Luke 13:25

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom.

### Once the owner

"After the owner"

### the owner of the house

This refers to the owner of the house with the narrow door in the previous verses. This is a metaphor for God as the ruler of the kingdom.

### you will stand outside

Jesus was talking to a crowd. The form of "you" is plural. He is addressing them as if they will not enter through the narrow door into the kingdom.

### pound the door

"hit on the door." This is an attempt to gain the owner's attention.

## Luke 13:26

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 13:27

### Get away from me

"Go away from me"

## Luke 13:28

### crying and the grinding of teeth

These actions are symbolic acts, indicating great regret and sadness. Alternate translation: "crying and grinding of teeth because of your great regret"

### when you see

Jesus continues to speak to the crowd as if they will not enter into the kingdom of heaven.

### but you are thrown out

"but you yourselves will have been thrown outside." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but God will have forced you outside"

## Luke 13:29

### from the east, west, north, and south

This means "from every direction."

### be seated at a table in the kingdom of God

It was common to speak of the joy in God's kingdom as a feast. Alternate translation: "they will feast in the kingdom of God"

## Luke 13:30

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom. This is the end of this conversation.

### will be first ... will be last

Being first represents being important or honored. Alternate translation: "will be the most important"

... will be the least important" or "God will honor ...  
God will shame"

### Luke 13:31

#### Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus is still on his way towards Jerusalem when some Pharisees speak to him about Herod.

#### In that same hour

"Right at that time" or "Soon after Jesus finished speaking"

#### Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you

Translate this as a warning to Jesus. They were advising him to go somewhere else and be safe.

#### Herod wants to kill you

Herod would order people to kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "Herod wants to send his men to kill you"

### Luke 13:32

#### that fox

Jesus was calling Herod a fox. A fox is a small wild dog. Possible meanings are 1) Herod was not much of a threat at all 2) Herod was deceptive.

### Luke 13:33

#### In any case

"Nevertheless" or "However" or "Whatever happens"

#### it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem

The Jewish leaders claimed to serve God and that Jerusalem was their holy city, but it was in Jerusalem that their ancestors had killed many of God's prophets, and Jesus knew that they would kill him there also. This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "it is only in Jerusalem that it is acceptable for prophets to be destroyed" or "even though you think you are serving God and Jerusalem is your holy city, you disobey God by killing his prophets, and in doing so you defile Jerusalem"

#### to be destroyed

"to be killed"

### Luke 13:34

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Pharisees. This is the end of this part of the story.

#### Jerusalem, Jerusalem

Jesus speaks as if the people of Jerusalem are there listening to him. Jesus says this twice to show how sad he is for them.

#### who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you

If it would be strange to address the city, you can make it clear that Jesus was really addressing the people in the city: "you people who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you"

#### those sent to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those God has sent to you"

#### How often I desired

"I so often desired." This is an exclamation and not a question.

#### to gather your children

The people of Jerusalem are described as her "children." Alternate translation: "to gather your people" or "to gather the people of Jerusalem"

#### the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings

This describes how a hen protects her young from harm by covering them with her wings.

### Luke 13:35

#### your house is abandoned

This is a prophecy about something that would happen soon. It means that God has stopped protecting the people of Jerusalem, so enemies can attack them and drive them away. Possible meanings are 1) God will abandon them. Alternate translation: "God will abandon you" or 2) their city will be empty. Alternate translation: "your house will be abandoned"

#### you will not see me until you say

"you will not see me until the time comes when you will say" or "the next time you see me, you will say"

#### the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to the Lord's power and authority.



## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 13:1

**What did Jesus say about the Galileans whom Pilate killed?**  
He said that they were not more sinful than the other Galileans.

### Luke 13:2

**What did Jesus say about the Galileans whom Pilate killed?**  
He said that they were not more sinful than the other Galileans.

### Luke 13:3

**What did Jesus say about the Galileans whom Pilate killed?**  
He said that they were not more sinful than the other Galileans.

### Luke 13:4

**What did Jesus say about the people who died when a tower fell on them?**  
He said that they were not worse sinners than other people in Jerusalem.

### Luke 13:5

**What did Jesus say about the people who died when a tower fell on them?**  
He said that they were not worse sinners than other people in Jerusalem.

**What did Jesus say would happen to the people he was talking to if they did not repent?**  
They would die.

### Luke 13:8

**In Jesus' parable, what did the gardener want to do to the fig tree that did not bear fruit after three years?**  
He wanted to dig around the tree and put manure around it to see if it would bear fruit next year.

### Luke 13:9

**In Jesus' parable, what did the gardener want to do to the fig tree that did not bear fruit after three years?**  
He wanted to dig around the tree and put manure around it to see if it would bear fruit next year.

### Luke 13:11

**What caused the woman to be bent over?**  
She had a spirit of weakness.

### Luke 13:14

**Why was the synagogue ruler indignant when Jesus healed the woman?**  
Because Jesus healed her on the Sabbath.

### Luke 13:15

**How did Jesus show that the synagogue ruler was a hypocrite?**  
Jesus reminded him that he would untie his animal on the Sabbath, yet he was indignant when Jesus unbound the woman on the Sabbath.

### Luke 13:19

**How is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?**  
Because it starts small like a seed, but then grows into something large with many places to dwell.

### Luke 13:24

**When asked if many would be saved, what did Jesus answer?**  
He said, "Struggle to enter through the narrow door, because many will try and will not be able to enter."

### Luke 13:28

**What will the people do who are thrown outside, and are not able to enter God's kingdom?**  
They will cry and grind their teeth.

**Who will gather to relax at the dinner table in the kingdom of God?**  
Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, the prophets, and many from the east, west, north, and south.

### Luke 13:29

**Who will gather to relax at the dinner table in the kingdom of God?**  
Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, the prophets, and many from the east, west, north, and south.

### Luke 13:33

**Where did Jesus say that he must be killed?**  
He must be killed in Jerusalem.

### Luke 13:34

**What did Jesus desire to do with the people of Jerusalem?**  
He desired to gather them the way a hen gathers her brood of chicks.

**How did the people of Jerusalem respond to Jesus' desire for them?**  
They rejected it.

**Luke 13:35**

**Therefore, what did Jesus prophesy about Jerusalem and its people?**

Their house is abandoned, and they will not see Jesus again until they said, "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."

---

## Chapter 14

<sup>1</sup> It happened one Sabbath, when he went into the house of one of the leaders of the Pharisees to eat bread, that they were watching him closely. <sup>2</sup> Behold, there in front of him was a man who was suffering from edema. <sup>3</sup> Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?" <sup>4</sup> But they kept silent. So Jesus took hold of him, healed him, and sent him away. <sup>5</sup> He said to them, "Which of you who has a son or an ox that falls into a well on the Sabbath day will not immediately pull him out?" <sup>6</sup> They were not able to give an answer to these things.

<sup>7</sup> When Jesus noticed how those who were invited chose the seats of honor, he spoke a parable, saying to them, <sup>8</sup> "When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not sit down in the place of honor, because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you. <sup>9</sup> When the person who invited both of you arrives, he will say to you, 'Give this other person your place,' and then in shame you will proceed to take the lowest place. <sup>10</sup> But when you are invited, go and sit down in the lowest place, so that when the one who has invited you comes, he may say to you, 'Friend, go up higher.' Then you will be honored in the presence of all who sit at the table with you. <sup>11</sup> For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted."

<sup>12</sup> Jesus also said to the man who had invited him, "When you give a dinner or a banquet, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or your rich neighbors, as they may also invite you in return, and you will be repaid. <sup>13</sup> But when you give a banquet, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame, and the blind, <sup>14</sup> and you will be blessed, because they cannot repay you. For you will be repaid in the resurrection of the just."

<sup>15</sup> When one of them who sat at the table with Jesus heard these things, he said to him, "Blessed is he who will eat bread in the kingdom of God!"

<sup>16</sup> But Jesus said to him, "A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many. <sup>17</sup> At the dinner hour, he sent his servant to say to those who were invited, 'Come, because everything is now ready.'

<sup>18</sup> "They all alike began to make excuses. The first said to him, 'I have bought a field, and I must go out and see it. Please excuse me.'

<sup>19</sup> "Another said, 'I have bought five pairs of oxen, and I am going to try them out. Please excuse me.'

<sup>20</sup> "Then another man said, 'I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.'

<sup>21</sup> "The servant came and told his master these things. Then the master of the house became angry and said to his servant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the town and bring in here the poor, the crippled, the blind, and the lame.'

<sup>22</sup> "The servant said, 'Master, what you commanded has been done, and yet there is still room.'

<sup>23</sup> "The master said to the servant, 'Go out into the highways and hedges and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled. <sup>24</sup> For I say to you, none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner.'"

<sup>25</sup> Now large crowds were going with him, and he turned and said to them, <sup>26</sup> "If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters, and even his own life, he cannot be my disciple. <sup>27</sup> Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple. <sup>28</sup> For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it? <sup>29</sup> Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who see it will begin to mock him, <sup>30</sup> saying, 'This man began to build and was not able to finish.' <sup>31</sup> Or what king, as he goes to encounter another king in war, will not sit down first and take advice about whether he is able with ten thousand men to fight the other king who comes against him with twenty thousand men? <sup>32</sup> If not, while the other army is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for conditions of peace. <sup>33</sup> So therefore, any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple. <sup>34</sup> Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its taste, how can it be made salty again? <sup>35</sup> It is of no use for the soil or even for the manure pile. It is thrown away. He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

## Luke 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Verse 3 says, "Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?'" Many times, the Pharisees got angry with Jesus for healing on the Sabbath. In this passage, Jesus dumbfounds the Pharisees. It was normally the Pharisees who tried to trap Jesus.

### Changes of subject

Many times in this chapter Luke changes from one subject to another without marking the changes.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Parable

Jesus told the parable in [Luke 14:15-24](#) to teach that the kingdom of God will be something that everyone can enjoy. But people will refuse to be part of it. (See: [and kingdom of God](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "for everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted" ([Luke 14:11](#)).

---

## Luke 14

### 14:1-6

#### What was the Sabbath?

[14:1]

See: [Sabbath](#)

#### What was edema?

[14:2]

Edema was swelling of the arms and legs. It affected the heart and kidneys.

#### Who were the "experts in the Jewish laws"?

[14:3]

The experts of the Jewish laws were people who taught about the Law of Moses. They were also called "scribes."

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

#### Was it lawful for Jesus to heal on the Sabbath?

[14:3]

See: Luke 6:6-11

See: [Sabbath](#)

## **14:7-11**

### **What was a parable?**

[14:7]

See: [Parable](#)

### **What were “seats of honor”?**

[14:8]

The “seats of honor” were the places at a feast where the most important people sat.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Pride](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

## **14:12-24**

### **What is the “resurrection of the just”?**

[14:14]

The “resurrection of the just” is a time in the future when God will cause all righteous people, who have died, to live again.

See: [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#) ; [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#)

### **Why are people blessed who “eat bread in the kingdom of God”?**

[14:15]

People who eat bread in the kingdom of God are blessed. Some scholars think people will be blessed because they will be eating with all those who belong to the kingdom of God. More scholars think that eating in the kingdom of God will happen in heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Heaven](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, “none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner”?**

[14:24]

Jesus said “none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner”. He said this because the men who were invited refused when Jesus first invited them.

## **14:25-35**

### **Why must Christians hate their families?**

[14:26]

Jesus said that Christians must hate their families. This was a hyperbole. He wanted Christians to love him more than they loved their families (see: Matthew 10:37).

See: [Hyperbole](#)

### **What did it mean to be a disciple of Jesus?**

[14:26]

See: [Disciple](#)

### What did it mean for a person to “carry his own cross”?

[14:27]

Jesus told people to carry a cross. This was a metaphor. Someone carried their own cross when they suffered or died for following Jesus. The cross was a metaphor for suffering and death.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### What did it mean to “count the cost”?

[14:28]

When someone counted the cost of something, they would calculate how much money the materials to build a tower would cost. He would also calculate the cost of paying people to construct the tower. He would then know if he had enough to build the tower.

### Why did Jesus say that if a person “does not give up all his possessions (he) cannot be my disciple”?

[14:33]

Jesus said that if a person did not give up everything, then this person cannot be Jesus’ disciple. Jesus was telling people the cost of following him. Some scholars think Jesus was clearly saying that a disciple must give up everything they own to follow Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus was saying that a disciple must not keep anything that would stop him from following Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

### Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[14:35]

Jesus said “he who has an ear, let him hear” because he really wanted people to listen to the things that he just said. Jesus knew that when he spoke, the Holy Spirit spoke too.

See: [Holy Spirit](#)

## Luke 14:1

### General Information:

It is the Sabbath, and Jesus is at a Pharisee's house. Verse 1 gives background information for the event that follows.

### It happened one Sabbath

This indicates a new event.

### to eat bread

"to eat" or "for a meal." Bread was an important part of a meal and is used in this sentence to refer to a meal.

### watching him closely

They wanted to see if they could accuse him of doing anything wrong.

## Luke 14:2

### Behold, there in front of him was a man

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There in front of him was a man"

### was suffering from edema

Edema is swelling caused by water building up in parts of the body. Some languages may have a name for this condition. Alternate translation: "was suffering because parts of his body were swollen with water"

## Luke 14:3

### Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not

"Does the law permit us to heal on the Sabbath, or does it forbid it"

## Luke 14:4

### **But they kept silent**

The religious leaders refused to answer Jesus's question.

### **So Jesus took hold of him**

"So Jesus took hold of the man who suffered from edema"

## Luke 14:5

### **Which of you who has a son or an ox ... will not immediately pull him out?**

Jesus uses a question because he wanted them to admit that they would help their son or ox, even on the Sabbath. Therefore, it was right for him to heal people even on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "If one of you has a son or an ox ... you would surely pull him out immediately."

## Luke 14:6

### **They were not able to give an answer**

They knew the answer and that Jesus was right, but they did not want to admit that he was correct. Alternate translation: "They had nothing to say"

## Luke 14:7

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to speak to the guests at the house of the Pharisee who had invited him to a meal.

### **those who were invited**

It may be helpful to identify these people, and to state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the leader of the Pharisees had invited to the meal"

### **the seats of honor**

"the seats for honored people" or "the seats for important people"

## Luke 14:8

### **When you are invited by someone**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone invites you"

### **When you ... than you**

These occurrences of "you" are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person.

### **because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the host may have invited a person who is more important than you are"

## Luke 14:9

### **say to you ... your place ... you will proceed**

These occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person.

### **both of you**

This occurrence of "you" refers to the two people who want the same seat of honor.

### **in shame**

"you will feel ashamed and"

### **the lowest place**

"the least important place" or "the place for the least important person"

## Luke 14:10

### **Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the people at the Pharisee's house.

### **when you are invited**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone invites you"

### **the lowest place**

"the seat meant for the least important person"

### **go up higher**

"move to a seat for a more important person"

### **Then you will be honored**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the one who invited you will honor you"

## Luke 14:11

### **who exalts himself**

"who tries to look important" or "who takes an important position"

### **will be humbled**

"will be shown to be unimportant" or "will be given an unimportant position." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will humble"

### **humbles himself**

"who chooses to look unimportant" or "who takes an unimportant position"

### **will be exalted**

"will be shown to be important" or "will be given an important position." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will exalt"

## Luke 14:12

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking at the Pharisee's house, but addresses his host directly.

### the man who had invited him

"the Pharisee who had invited him to his house for a meal"

### When you give

"you" is singular because Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisee that invited him.

### do not invite

This probably does not mean they can never invite these people. More likely it means they should invite others as well. Alternate translation: "do not only invite" or "do not always invite"

### as they may

"because they might"

### invite you in return

"invite you to their dinner or banquet"

### you will be repaid

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in this way they will repay you"

## Luke 14:13

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Pharisee who had invited him to his home.

### invite the poor

It may be helpful to add "also" since this statement is probably not exclusive. Alternate translation: "also invite the poor"

## Luke 14:14

### you will be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless you"

### they cannot repay you

"they cannot invite you to a banquet in return"

### you will be repaid

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will repay you"

### in the resurrection of the just

This refers to the final judgment. Alternate translation: "when God brings the righteous people back to life"

## Luke 14:15

### General Information:

One of the men at the table speaks to Jesus and Jesus responds to him by telling a parable.

### one of them who sat at the table

This introduces a new person.

### Blessed is he

The man was not talking about a specific person. Alternate translation: "Blessed is anyone" or "How good it is for everyone"

### he who will eat bread

The word "bread" is used to refer to the whole meal. Alternate translation: "he who will eat at the meal"

## Luke 14:16

### But Jesus said to him

Jesus begins telling a parable.

### A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many

The reader should be able to infer that the man probably had his servants prepare the meal and invite the guests.

### A certain man

This phrase is a way of referring to the man without giving any specific information about his identity.

### invited many

"invited many people" or "invited many guests"

## Luke 14:17

### At the dinner hour

"At the time for the dinner" or "When the dinner was about to begin"

### those who were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those he had invited"

## Luke 14:18

### General Information:

All of the people who were invited gave the servant excuses about why they could not come to the banquet.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling his parable.

### to make excuses

"to say why they could not come to the dinner"



**The first said to him**

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

**Please excuse me**

"Please forgive me" or "Please accept my apology"

**Luke 14:19**

**Another said**

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

**five pairs of oxen**

Oxen were used in pairs to pull farming tools.  
Alternate translation: "10 oxen to work in my fields"

**I am going to try them out**

He wanted to use the oxen and see how well they worked together pulling farm tools.

**Luke 14:20**

**another man said**

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out

**married a wife**

Use an expression that is natural in your language. Some languages may say "gotten married" or "taken a wife."

**Luke 14:21**

**became angry**

"became angry with the people he had invited"

**bring in here**

"invite in here to eat the dinner"

**Luke 14:22**

**The servant said**

It may be necessary to state clearly the implied information that the servant did what the master commanded him. Alternate translation: "After the servant went out and did that, he came back and said"

**what you commanded has been done**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have done what you commanded"

**Luke 14:23**

**the highways and hedges**

This refers to roads and paths outside of the city. Alternate translation: "the main roads and paths outside of the city"

**compel them to come in**

"demand that they come in"

**compel them**

The word "them" refers to anyone the servants find. "compel anyone you find to come in"

**that my house may be filled**

"so that people may fill my house"

**Luke 14:24**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes his parable.

**For I say to you**

The word "you" is plural, so it is unclear to whom it is addressed.

**those men**

The word here for "men" means "male adults" and not just people in general.

**who were invited**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom I invited"

**will taste my dinner**

"will enjoy the dinner I have prepared"

**Luke 14:25**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to teach the crowds that were traveling with him.

**Luke 14:26**

**If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father ... he cannot be my disciple**

Here, "hate" is an exaggeration for the lesser love people are to show to people other than Jesus. Alternate translation: "If anyone comes to me and does not love me more than he loves his father ... he cannot be my disciple" or "Only if a person loves me more than he loves his own father ... can he be my disciple"

**Luke 14:27**

**Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple**

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Only he who carries his own cross and comes after me can be my disciple" or "If anyone wants to be my disciple, he must carry his own cross and follow me"

**carry his own cross**

Jesus does not mean every Christian must be crucified. The Romans often made people carry their own crosses before they crucified them as a sign of their submission to Rome. This metaphor

means they must submit to God and be willing to suffer in any way to be Jesus's disciples.

### Luke 14:28

**General Information:**

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

**For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?**

Jesus uses this question to prove that people count the cost of a project before they begin it. Alternate translation: "If a person wanted to build a tower, he would certainly first sit down and determine if he had enough money to complete it."

**tower**

This may have been a watchtower. "a tall building" or "a high lookout platform"

### Luke 14:29

**Otherwise**

It may be helpful to give more information. Alternate translation: "If he does not first count the cost"

**when he has laid a foundation**

"when he has built a base" or "when he has completed the first part of the building"

**is not able to finish**

It is understood that he was not able to finish because he did not have enough money. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "does not have enough money to be able to finish"

### Luke 14:30

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Luke 14:31

**General Information:**

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

**Or**

Jesus used this word to introduce another situation where people count the cost before making a decision.

**what king ... will not sit down first and take advice ... men?**

Jesus uses another question to teach the crowd about counting the cost. Alternate translation: "you know that a king ... would sit down first and take counsel ... men."

**take advice**

Possible meanings are 1) "think carefully " or 2) "listen to his advisors."

**ten thousand ... twenty thousand**

"10,000 ... 20,000"

### Luke 14:32

**If not**

It may be helpful to restate the information given in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "If he realizes that he will not be able to defeat the other king"

**conditions of peace**

"terms to end the war" or "what the other king wants him to do in order to end the war"

### Luke 14:33

**any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple**

This can be stated with positive verbs. Alternate translation: "only those of you who give up all your possessions can be my disciples"

**give up all his possessions**

"leave behind all that he has"

### Luke 14:34

**Salt is good**

"Salt is useful." Jesus is teaching a lesson about those who want to be his disciple.

**how can it be made salty again?**

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "it cannot be made salty again." or "no one can make it salty again."

### Luke 14:35

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes teaching the crowd.

**manure pile**

People use manure to fertilize gardens and fields. Salt without taste is so useless it is not even worth mixing with manure. Alternate translation: "compost heap" or "fertilizer"

**It is thrown away**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone just throws it away"

**He who has ears to hear, let him hear**

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 8:8]

**He who ... let him**

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 8:8]

---

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 14:3

**With the man suffering from edema standing in front of him, what did Jesus ask the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees?**

Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?

### Luke 14:4

**What was the experts' and Pharisees' answer?**  
They kept silent.

### Luke 14:5

**After healing the man, how did Jesus show that the experts and Pharisees were hypocrites?**  
Jesus reminded them that they would help their own son or ox that fell into a well on the Sabbath.

### Luke 14:11

**What did Jesus say will happen to whoever exalts himself?**  
He will be humbled.

**What did Jesus say will happen to whoever humbles himself?**  
He will be exalted.

### Luke 14:14

**According to Jesus, how will a person be rewarded who invites the poor, crippled, lame, and blind into their home?**  
They will be repaid at the resurrection of the just.

### Luke 14:18

**In Jesus' parable of the dinner, what did the people do who were originally invited?**  
They began to make excuses about why they could not come to the dinner.

### Luke 14:21

**Who did the master then invite to his dinner?**  
The poor, crippled, blind, and lame.

### Luke 14:24

**What did the master then say about those who were first invited to his dinner?**  
None of them would taste his dinner.

### Luke 14:26

**According to Jesus, what must his disciples do?**  
They must hate their own family and life, carry their own cross, come after him, and give up all that they have.

### Luke 14:27

**According to Jesus, what must his disciples do?**  
They must hate their own family and life, carry their own cross, come after him, and give up all that they have.

### Luke 14:28

**In Jesus' example about what it requires to follow him, what must a person do first who desires to build a tower?**  
The person must count the cost.

### Luke 14:33

**According to Jesus, what must his disciples do?**  
They must hate their own family and life, carry their own cross, come after him, and give up all that they have.

### Luke 14:35

**If salt loses its taste, what is done with it?**  
It is thrown away.



## Chapter 15

<sup>1</sup> Now all the tax collectors and other sinners were coming to Jesus to listen to him. <sup>2</sup> Both the Pharisees and the scribes grumbled to each other, saying, "This man welcomes sinners, and even eats with them."

<sup>3</sup> Jesus spoke this parable to them, saying, <sup>4</sup> "Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep and then loses one of them, will not leave the ninety-nine in the wilderness, and go after the lost one until he finds it? <sup>5</sup> Then when he has found it, he lays it across his shoulders and rejoices. <sup>6</sup> When he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors, saying to them, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my lost sheep.' <sup>7</sup> I say to you that even so, there will be joy in heaven over one sinner who repents, more than over ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent."

<sup>8</sup> Or what woman who has ten silver coins, if she were to lose one coin, would not light a lamp, sweep the house, and seek diligently until she has found it? <sup>9</sup> When she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin which I lost.' <sup>10</sup> Even so, I say to you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents."

<sup>11</sup> Then Jesus said, "A certain man had two sons, <sup>12</sup> and the younger of them said to his father, 'Father, give me the portion of the wealth that falls to me.' So he divided his property between them. <sup>13</sup> Not many days later, the younger son gathered together all he owned and went to a country far away, and there he wasted all his wealth by living recklessly. <sup>14</sup> Now when he had spent everything, a severe famine spread through that country, and he began to be in need. <sup>15</sup> He went and hired himself out to one of the citizens of that country, who sent him into his fields to feed pigs. <sup>16</sup> He was longing to eat the carob pods that the pigs ate because no one gave him anything. <sup>17</sup> But when the young son came to himself, he said, 'How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread, and I am here, perishing from hunger! <sup>18</sup> I will get up and leave here and go to my father, and will say to him, "Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. <sup>19</sup> I am no longer worthy to be called your son; make me as one of your hired servants."' <sup>20</sup> So the young son got up and left and came toward his father. While he was still far away, his father saw him and was moved with compassion, and he ran and embraced him and kissed him. <sup>21</sup> The son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.'

<sup>22</sup> "The father said to his servants, 'Bring quickly the best robe, and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand, and sandals on his feet. <sup>23</sup> Then bring the fattened calf and kill it. Let us feast and be merry! <sup>24</sup> For my son was dead, and now he is alive. He was lost, and now he is found.' Then they began to be merry."

<sup>25</sup> "Now his older son was out in the field. As he came and approached the house, he heard music and dancing. <sup>26</sup> He called to one of the servants and asked what these things might be. <sup>27</sup> The servant said to him, 'Your brother has come home and your father has killed the fattened calf because he has received him in good health.'

<sup>28</sup> "The older son was angry and would not go in, and his father came out and pleaded with him. <sup>29</sup> But the older son answered and said to his father, 'Look, these many years I slaved for you, and I never neglected a command of yours, and yet you never gave me a young goat that I might be merry with my friends, <sup>30</sup> but when your son came, who has devoured your living with prostitutes, you killed for him the fattened calf.'

<sup>31</sup> "The father said to him, 'Child, you are always with me, and all that is mine is yours. <sup>32</sup> But it was proper for us to be merry and rejoice, for this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive; he was lost, and has now been found.'"

---

## Luke 15 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

**The parable of the prodigal son**  
[Luke 15:11-32]

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. But Jesus told three parables

---

## Luke 15

### 15:1-10

#### Who were tax collectors and sinners?

[15:1]

Tax collectors were Jews who worked for the Roman government. People in Israel hated the tax collectors. The tax collector paid the Romans so they could collect taxes from other people. If they collected more taxes than they paid the Roman government, then they were allowed to keep it. Because of this, many tax collectors became rich. The Jews thought a Jewish tax collector betrayed the Jewish people because they took money from the Jews and gave it to the Romans. They thought tax collectors were evil because they took money from people who honored God and gave it to people who rejected God.

The sinners Luke wrote about were Jewish people who did not obey the Law of Moses.

See: Luke 5:29-32

See: [Sin](#); [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#), [Sin](#)

#### Who were the scribes?

[15:2]

See: [Scribe](#)

#### What was a parable?

[15:3]

See: [Parable](#)

#### How will there be “joy in heaven”?

[15:7]

Jesus said that there will be “joy in heaven.” Jesus spoke about the joy of God and the joy of the angels. They have joy because a sinner repented.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Sin](#); [Rejoice \(Joy, Joyful\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### 15:11-32

#### What did the younger son mean when he said “the portion of the wealth that falls to me”?

[15:12]

The younger son said “the portion of the wealth that falls to me”. He was speaking about the money of his inheritance.

See: [Inherit \(Inheritance, Heir\)](#)

#### How did the younger son live?

[15:13]

The younger son lived recklessly. That is, he wasted his money on doing things that did not honor God.

**Why did the younger son say that he “sinned against heaven”?**

[15:18]

The younger son said he “sinned against heaven.” This was a metaphor the ancient Jews used to talk about God without saying the word God. That is, the younger son sinned against God.

See: [Heaven](#); [Sin](#); [Heaven](#)

**Why was the young man’s father “moved with compassion”?**

[15:20]

Jesus said the father was “moved with compassion.” Scholars think the father wanted to be compassionate to his son. That is, he had wanted to show mercy to his young, to forgive him, and to love him.

See: [Mercy](#)

**What was the “fattened calf”?**

[15:23]

The fattened calf was not with the other calves in the field. People gave it extra food and then had it prepared for a special celebration.

**How did people believe the younger son was “dead”?**

[15:24]

The father spoke about his son being dead. However, he was not dead. He believed his son was dead in some way. That is, he meant that his son was like someone who was dead, but now had come back to life. The father never expected to see his son again.

**Why did the father say to the older son, “you are always with me”?**

[15:31]

The father told the older son, “you are always with me.” This was because the older son lived with the father all the time. Therefore, there was no need to have a special feast to celebrate his return.

**Luke 15:1**

**General Information:**

We do not know where this takes place; it simply occurs one day when Jesus is teaching.

**Now**

This marks the beginning of a new event.

**all the tax collectors**

This is an exaggeration to stress that there were very many of them. Alternate translation: "many tax collectors"

**Luke 15:2**

**This man welcomes sinners**

"This man lets sinners into his presence" or "This man associates with sinners"

**This man**

They were talking about Jesus.

**even eats with them**

The word "even" shows that they thought it was bad enough that Jesus allowed sinners to come to him, but it was worse that he would eat with them.

**Luke 15:3**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to tell several parables. These parables are situations about things that anyone could experience. They are not about particular people. The first parable is about what a person would do if one of his sheep was lost.

**to them**

Here "them" refers to the religious leaders.

## Luke 15:4

**Which one of you ... will not leave ... until he finds it?**  
 Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if any of them lost one of their sheep, they would certainly go looking for it. Alternate translation: "Each of you ... would certainly leave ... until he finds it."

**Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep ... loses ... he finds it**  
 Since the parable starts with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "Which one of you, if you have a hundred sheep ... lose ... you find it"

**hundred ... ninety-nine**  
 "100 ... 99"

## Luke 15:5

**Then when he has found it, he lays ... rejoices**  
 Since the parable starts in the previous verse with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "Then when you have found it you will lay ... rejoice"

**lays it across his shoulders**  
 This is the way a shepherd carries a sheep. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "lays it across his shoulders to carry it home"

## Luke 15:6

**When he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors**  
 Since the parable starts in the verse 4 with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "When you come home you will call together your friends and your neighbors"

**When he comes to the house**  
 "When the owner of the sheep comes home" or "When you come home." Refer to the owner of the sheep as you did in the previous verse.

## Luke 15:7

**even so**  
 "in the same way" or "as the shepherd and his friends and neighbors would rejoice"

**there will be joy in heaven**  
 "everyone in heaven will rejoice"

**ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent**  
 Jesus uses sarcasm to say that the Pharisees were wrong to think that they did not need to repent. Your language may have a different way to express this idea. Alternate translation: "ninety-nine

persons like you, who think they are righteous and do not need to repent"

**ninety-nine**  
 "99"

## Luke 15:8

**Connecting Statement:**  
 Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a woman with 10 silver coins.

**Or what woman ... would not light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it?**  
 Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if they lost a silver coin, they would certainly look for it diligently. Alternate translation: "Any woman ... would certainly light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it."

## Luke 15:9

**General Information:**  
 This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 15:10

**Even so**  
 "In the same way" or "Just as people would rejoice with the woman"

**over one sinner who repents**  
 "when one sinner repents"

## Luke 15:11

**Connecting Statement:**  
 Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a young man who asks his father for his part of the inheritance.

**A certain man**  
 This introduces a new character in the parable. Some languages might say "There was a man who"

## Luke 15:12

**give me**  
 The son wanted his father to give it to him immediately. Languages that have a command form that means that they want it done immediately should use that form.

**the portion of the wealth that falls to me**  
 "the part of your wealth that you plan for me to receive when you die"

**between them**  
 "between his two sons"



### Luke 15:13

**gathered together all he owned**

"packed his things" or "put his things in his bag"

**living recklessly**

"living without thinking about the consequences of his actions" or "living wildly"

### Luke 15:14

**Now**

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Jesus explains how the younger son went from having plenty to being in need.

**a severe famine spread through that country**

"a drought occurred there and the entire country did not have enough food"

**to be in need**

"to lack what he needed" or "to not have enough"

### Luke 15:15

**He went**

The word "he" refers to the younger son.

**hired himself out to**

"took a job with" or "began to work for"

**one of the citizens of that country**

"a man of that country"

**to feed pigs**

"to give food to the man's pigs"

### Luke 15:16

**was longing to eat**

"wished very much that he could eat." It is understood that this is because he was very hungry. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "he was so hungry that he would have happily eaten"

**carob pods**

These are the husks of beans that grow on the carob tree. Alternate translation: "carob bean pods" or "bean husks"

### Luke 15:17

**came to himself**

This idiom means he realized what the truth was, that he had made a terrible mistake. Alternate translation: "clearly understood his situation"

**How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread**

This is part of an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "All my father's hired servants have more than enough bread to eat"

**bread**

This is a synecdoche for any kind and all kinds of food. Alternate translation: "food"

**perishing from hunger**

This is probably not an exaggeration. Jesus may have meant that the young man in his parable was actually starving then.

**perishing**

"dying" or "being destroyed"

### Luke 15:18

**I will get up**

This is an idiom that means he will begin to act. It does not mean that he was sitting or lying down when he said these words.

**I have sinned against heaven**

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. Alternate translation: "I have sinned against God"

### Luke 15:19

**I am no longer worthy to be called your son**

"I was once worthy to be called your son, but not now." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You called me son in the past, but now I am not worthy for you to call me son"

**make me as one of your hired servants**

"hire me as an employee" or "hire me and I will become one of your servants." This is a request, not a command. It may be helpful to add "please" as the UDB does.

### Luke 15:20

**So the young son got up and left and came toward his father**

"So he left that country and started going back to his father." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the young man was in need and had decided to go home.

**got up**

This is an idiom that means he began to act. It does not mean that he had been sitting or lying down. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 15:18]

**While he was still far away**

"While he was still far away from his home" or "While he was still far away from his father's house"

**was moved with compassion**

"had pity on him" or "loved him deeply from his heart"

**embraced him and kissed him**

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to embrace or hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: "welcomed him affectionately"

**Luke 15:21**

**sinned against heaven**

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. See how you translated this in [Luke 15:18]

**I am no longer worthy to be called your son**

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Luke 15:18]

**Luke 15:22**

**best robe**

"the best robe in the house." Alternate translation: "the best coat" or "the best garment"

**put a ring on his hand**

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

**sandals**

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals. However, in many cultures the modern equivalent would be "shoes."

**Luke 15:23**

**fattened calf**

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. Alternate translation: "the best calf" or "the young animal we have been making fat"

**kill it**

The implied information that they were to cook the meat can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "kill it and cook it"

**Luke 15:24**

**my son was dead, and now he is alive**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were dead. Alternate translation: "it is as if my son were dead and became alive again" or "I felt like my son had died, but he is now alive"

**He was lost, and now he is found**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he had been lost. Alternate translation: "It is as if I had lost my son and now I have found him" or "My son

went to where I could not bring him back, but now he has returned home"

**Luke 15:25**

**Now**

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Jesus starts to tell about the older son in a new part of the story.

**out in the field**

It is implied that he was out in the field because he was working there.

**Luke 15:26**

**one of the servants**

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young.

**what these things might be**

"what was happening"

**Luke 15:27**

**the fattened calf**

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:23]

**he has received him in good health**

"your father has received your brother, and your brother is healthy" or "your brother is well and has returned to your father"

**Luke 15:28**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 15:29**

**these many years**

"for many years"

**I slaved for you**

"I worked extremely hard for you" or "I worked as hard as a slave for you"

**never neglected a command of yours**

"never disobeyed any of your commands" or "always obeyed everything you told me to do"

**a young goat**

A young goat was smaller and less expensive than a fattened calf. Alternate translation: "even a young goat"

### Luke 15:30

**your son**

"that son of yours." The older son refers to his brother this way in order to show how angry he is.

**devoured your living**

Food is a metaphor for money. After one eats food, the food is no longer there and there is nothing to eat. The money that the brother had received was no longer there and there was no more to spend. Alternate translation: "wasted all your wealth" or "thrown away all your money"

**with prostitutes**

Possible meanings are 1) he assumed this is how his brother spent the money or 2) he speaks of prostitutes to exaggerate the sinfulness of his brother's actions in the "country far away"

**fattened calf**

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:23]

### Luke 15:31

**The father said to him**

The word "him" refers to the older son.

**Child**

"My dear child" or "My dear son." The father was addressing his son tenderly.

### Luke 15:32

**this brother of yours**

The father was reminding the older son that the one who just came home was his brother.

**this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive**

This metaphor speaks of the brother being gone as if he were dead. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:24]

**he was lost, and has now been found**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he had been lost. See how you translated this phrase in [Luke 15:24]

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 15:4

**In Jesus' parable, what does the shepherd do who loses one of his hundred sheep?**

He leaves the other ninety-nine and goes and finds the lost sheep, then brings it back, rejoicing.

### Luke 15:5

**In Jesus' parable, what does the shepherd do who loses one of his hundred sheep?**

He leaves the other ninety-nine and goes and finds the lost sheep, then brings it back, rejoicing.

### Luke 15:8

**In Jesus' parable, what does the woman do who loses one of her ten silver coins?**

She diligently searches until she finds it, then rejoices with her friends and neighbors.

### Luke 15:9

**In Jesus' parable, what does the woman do who loses one of her ten silver coins?**

She diligently searches until she finds it, then rejoices with her friends and neighbors.

### Luke 15:10

**What happens in heaven when one sinner repents?**

There is joy in the presence of the angels of God.

### Luke 15:12

**In Jesus' parable, what request did the younger son make to his father?**

Give me now the property I am due to inherit.

### Luke 15:13

**What did the younger son do with his inheritance?**

He wasted the money with wildly extravagant living.

### Luke 15:15

**After his money was gone, what did the younger son do in order to live?**

He hired himself out to feed another man's pigs.

### Luke 15:18

**When he began to think clearly, what did the younger son decide to do?**

He decided to go and confess his sin to his father, and ask to be hired as one of his servants.

### Luke 15:19

**When he began to think clearly, what did the younger son decide to do?**

He decided to go and confess his sin to his father, and ask to be hired as one of his servants.

**Luke 15:20**

**What did the father do when he saw the younger son coming back home?**

He ran and hugged and kissed him.

**Luke 15:22**

**What did the father quickly do for the younger son?**

The father gave him a robe, a ring, and sandals, and arranged a feast.

**Luke 15:23**

**What did the father quickly do for the younger son?**

The father gave him a robe, a ring, and sandals, and arranged a feast.

**Luke 15:28**

**What was the older son's reaction when he was told about the feast for the younger son?**

He was angry and would not go in to the feast.

**Luke 15:29**

**What was the older son's complaint to his father?**

The older son complained that he had followed his father's rules, but had never been given a goat to have a feast with his friends.

**Luke 15:31**

**What was the father's response to the older son?**

He said, "Son, you are always with me, and all that is mine is yours."

**Luke 15:32**

**Why did the father say it was proper to have a feast for the younger son?**

Because the younger son was lost and has now been found.

## Chapter 16

<sup>1</sup> Jesus also said to the disciples, "There was a certain rich man who had a manager, and it was reported to him that this manager was wasting his possessions. <sup>2</sup> So the rich man called him and said to him, 'What is this that I hear about you? Give an account of your management, for you can no longer be manager.'

<sup>3</sup> "The manager said to himself, 'What should I do, since my master is taking away my management job? I do not have strength to dig, and I am ashamed to beg. <sup>4</sup> I know what I will do, so that when I am removed from my management job, people will welcome me into their houses.'

<sup>5</sup> "Then the manager called for each one of his master's debtors, and he asked the first one, 'How much do you owe to my master?' <sup>6</sup> He said, 'A hundred baths of olive oil.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, sit down quickly, and write fifty.'

<sup>7</sup> "Then the manager said to another, 'How much do you owe?' He said, 'A hundred cors of wheat.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, and write eighty.'

<sup>8</sup> "The master then commended the unrighteous manager because he had acted shrewdly. For the sons of this world are more shrewd in dealing with their own people than are the sons of light. <sup>9</sup> I say to you, make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth so that when it is gone, they may welcome you into the eternal dwellings.

<sup>10</sup> "He who is faithful in very little is also faithful in much, and he who is unrighteous in very little is also unrighteous in much. <sup>11</sup> If you have not been faithful in using unrighteous wealth, who will trust you with true wealth? <sup>12</sup> If you have not been faithful in using other people's property, who will give you money of your own?

<sup>13</sup> "No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth."

<sup>14</sup> Now the Pharisees, who were lovers of money, heard all these things, and they ridiculed him. <sup>15</sup> He said to them, "You justify yourselves in the sight of men, but God knows your hearts. That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God. <sup>16</sup> The law and the prophets were in effect until John came. From that time on, the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached, and everyone tries to force their way into it. <sup>17</sup> But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid.

<sup>18</sup> Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and he who marries one who is divorced from her husband commits adultery.

<sup>19</sup> "Now there was a certain rich man who was clothed in purple and fine linen and was enjoying every day his great wealth. <sup>20</sup> A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores, <sup>21</sup> and longing to eat what fell from the rich man's table. Even the dogs came and licked his sores. <sup>22</sup> It came about that the beggar died and was carried away by the angels to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried, <sup>23</sup> and in Hades, being in torment, he lifted up his eyes and saw Abraham far away and Lazarus at his side. <sup>24</sup> So he cried out and said, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue, for I am in anguish in this flame.'

<sup>25</sup> "But Abraham said, 'Child, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things, and Lazarus in like manner evil things. But now he is comforted here, and you are in agony. <sup>26</sup> Besides all this, a great chasm has been put in place, so that those who want to cross over from here to you cannot, and no one can cross over from there to us.'

<sup>27</sup> "The rich man said, 'I beg you, Father Abraham, that you would send him to my father's house— <sup>28</sup> for I have five brothers—in order that he may warn them, so that it may not be that they come into this place of torment.'

<sup>29</sup> "But Abraham said, 'They have Moses and the prophets; let them listen to them.'

**30** "The rich man replied, 'No, Father Abraham, but if someone would go to them from the dead, they will repent.'

**31** "But Abraham said to him, 'If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead.'"

---

## Luke 16 General Notes

---

### Luke 16

#### 16:1-13

##### What was a manager?

[16:1]

A manager took care of a master's house, land, and business. A master gave the manager a ring. This was a symbol that he had permission to do things for the master. Sometimes managers were servants but sometimes they were free people.

See: [Serve](#)

##### What was meant by the words, "to dig"?

[16:3]

Jesus spoke about digging. Some scholars think he was speaking about digging ditches or digging in the fields using a shovel. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about doing any type of hard work.

##### How did the manager change what the debtors owed his master?

[16:6, 16:7]

The manager changed what the debtor owed his master. Scholars do not know how the the manager did this.

1. Some scholars think he wrote that the people owed less money than they owed.
2. Some scholars think he did not make them pay more money than they owed. They think the owner charged them more interest than he should have.
3. Some scholars think he would have made money from these people. However, he chose not to make money from them. The master did not lose any money.

**Advice to translators:** A debtor is someone who owed someone else money. When someone borrows money, they often have to pay more money back. This is called interest.

##### What was an "unrighteous manager"?

[16:8]

See: [Steward](#); [Steward](#)

##### How did the master "commend" the unrighteous manager?

[16:8]

Scholars think that when the master "commended" the manager, he complimented the manager for acting shrewdly.

**Advice to Translators:** The master did not compliment the manager for acting dishonestly. You will need to distinguish acting "shrewdly" from acting dishonestly.

**What did it mean to act “shrewdly”?**

[16:8]

When someone acted “shrewdly”, they acted with wisdom and skill in the face of a coming problem or crisis. Some scholars think it meant to act in a way that was prudent and they planned for things.

See: [Wise \(Wisdom, Fool\)](#)

**What was “unrighteous wealth”?**

[16:9]

Money that was considered “unrighteous wealth” was money gained from doing evil.

See: [Sin](#)

**Why did Jesus tell the disciples to make friends “by means of unrighteous wealth”?**

[16:9]

Jesus told his disciples to use the money they gained on earth in a way that helped people who were in need. Jesus wanted his disciples to help people because those people might become friends of the disciples. Those friends might then believe in Jesus.

See: [Disciple](#)

**Who were the “friends” who will welcome the disciples into eternal dwellings?**

[16:9]

Scholars have different ideas of who the “friends” are who will welcome the disciples into eternal dwellings.

1. These friends were poor people whom the disciples helped. These poor people became Christians and died before the disciples. Then these poor people welcomed the disciples into heaven when the disciples died.
2. These friends were angels. This was a metaphor for God. They spoke about God without saying the name of God. However, the angels will also welcome the disciples into heaven.
3. These friends were God and Jesus. Only God and Jesus will receive people into heaven.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Disciple](#); [Heaven](#); [Angel](#); [Metaphor](#)

**How did Jesus want the disciples to be “faithful”?**

[16:10]

Jesus wanted the disciples to be “faithful”(πιστός/g4103) by being honest with money (see: 16:11). Then God will give them true wealth. This is a metaphor for the treasures and blessings in heaven. This is really valuable and will last forever.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Heaven](#); [Metaphor](#)

**What did Jesus mean when he told the disciples, “you cannot serve God and wealth”?**

[16:13]

Jesus said the disciples were not able to serve God and wealth. This was a metaphor. They could not serve a master other than God. If the disciples served someone or something other than God, they did not serve God. Jesus wanted his disciples to serve God only. Jesus said this more than one time (see: Matthew 6:24).

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

## **16:14-18**

### **What did it mean that the Pharisees were lovers of money?**

[16:14]

Luke wrote that the Pharisees loved money. Scholars think that someone who was described as a lover of money was a person who wanted to get more and more money. This person really wanted to have a lot of money.

See: 1 Timothy 6:10; 2 Timothy 3:2

See: [Pharisees](#)

### **How did the Pharisees justify themselves to other people?**

[16:15]

The Pharisees justified themselves to other people by doing certain things so people could see them doing these things. They gave people money because people saw them give money. They did these things to try to make people think they were righteous. However, that did not justify them to God.

See: [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#); [Justify \(Justification\)](#); [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#)

### **What was meant by the words, “God knows your hearts”?**

[16:15]

God knows someone’s heart. That is, he knows what a person is thinking and what a person wants. God knew these Pharisees loved money rather than God.

See: [Love](#); [Pharisees](#); [Love](#)

### **What did Jesus mean when he said, “that which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God”?**

[16:15]

Jesus said, “that which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God”. Jesus was speaking about the things people thought were valuable or to be admired. These were not the things God wanted them to do.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### **What were the Law and the prophets?**

[16:16]

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

### **What was the gospel of the kingdom of God?**

[16:16]

See: [Preach \(Preacher\)](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Preach \(Preacher\)](#)

### **How do people try to force their way into the kingdom of God?**

[16:16]

Jesus said that people tried to force their way into the kingdom of God. Scholars disagree about what Jesus said.

1. Some scholars think people who believed in Jesus wanted to enter the kingdom of God.



2. Some scholars think both Christians and non-Christians wanted to enter the kingdom of God.
3. Some scholars think non-Christians tried to force their way into the kingdom of God but they were not able to get into it.
4. Some scholars think people tried to fight a war to bring the kingdom of God to earth.
5. Some scholars think Jesus warned people to enter the kingdom of God because not all people will enter into it.
6. Some scholars think the Pharisees tried to stop people from entering into the kingdom of God. Demons also tried to stop people from entering into it. Disciples opposed them.

See: [Disciple](#); [Pharisees](#); [Demon](#); [Disciple](#)

### **What was Jesus talking about when he talked about the Law becoming invalid?**

[16:17]

Jesus talked about the Law of Moses becoming invalid. Some scholars think he was talking about certain parts of the Law of Moses. However, some parts of the Law of Moses still need to be followed. Other scholars think the Law of Moses ended when Jesus became alive again.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#); [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

### **What is adultery?**

[16:18]

See: [Adultery](#)

### **16:19-31**

### **Why was the man described as being “clothed in purple and fine linen”?**

[16:19]

When Jesus spoke about the rich man being “clothed in purple and fine linen,” he wanted people to know that this man was as rich as a king. For only kings and very rich people could buy this type of clothing.

### **What did it mean that Lazarus was laid at the rich man’s gate?**

[16:20]

Lazarus was laid at the rich man’s gate. Some scholars think Lazarus was laid on his mat at the opening to the rich man’s home in hopes that the rich man would give food or money to Lazarus. Other scholars think Lazarus was thrown down or dropped off at the gate to the rich man’s house. They think he was dumped there so he could beg for money from the rich man.

**Advice to Translators:** A beggar was someone who asked people for money because they were poor or because they could not do anything.

### **What did Jesus mean when he said Lazarus was “longing to eat what fell from the rich man’s table”?**

[16:21]

Lazarus was “longing to eat what fell from the rich man’s table.” Scholars think Lazarus was so hungry that he waited every day for the servants of the rich man to toss the food scraps out to the dogs and beggars.

**Advice to translators:** Food scraps were food that was not eaten and thrown away or put in the garbage.

### Why did the dogs lick Lazarus' sores?

[16:21]

The dogs licked Lazarus' sores. Scholars think this was because Lazarus was too sick to stop them. Some scholars also think it helped ease Lazarus' pain from his sores.

### What did it mean that Lazarus was "carried away by the angels to Abraham's side"?

[16:22]

"Abraham's side" is another name for "heaven."

See: [Heaven](#)

### Where is Hades?

[16:23]

See: [Hades \(Sheol\)](#)

### What was a "great chasm"?

[16:26]

Scholars think Jesus used the words "great chasm" to talk about a distance that cannot be crossed.

### Why did the rich man call Abraham "Father Abraham"?

[16:27]

The rich man called Abraham "Father Abraham" because Abraham was the ancestor of all Jewish people.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\)](#)

### What did Abraham mean when he said, "They have Moses and the prophets"?

[16:29]

Many scholars think that "Moses and the prophets" spoke and wrote enough to teach the rich man's brothers about God.

## Luke 16:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a master and the manager of his debtors. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in [Luke 15:3]

### Jesus also said to the disciples

The last section was directed at Pharisees and scribes, though Jesus's disciples may have been part of the crowd listening.

### There was a certain rich man

This introduces a new character in the parable.

### it was reported to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people reported to the rich man"

### wasting his possessions

"foolishly managing the rich man's wealth"

## Luke 16:2

### What is this that I hear about you?

The rich man uses a question to scold the manager. Alternate translation: "I have heard what you are doing."

### Give an account of your management

"Set your records in order to pass on to someone else" or "Prepare the records you have written about my money"

## Luke 16:3

### What should I do ... job?

The manager asks this question of himself, as a means of reviewing his options. Alternate

translation: "I need to think about what I should do ... job."

**my master**

This refers to the wealthy man. The manager was not a slave. Alternate translation: "my employer"

**I do not have strength to dig**

"I am not strong enough to dig the ground" or "I am not able to dig"

**Luke 16:4**

**when I am removed from my management job**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when I lose my management job" or "when my master takes away my management job"

**people will welcome me into their houses**

This implies that those people will provide a job, or other things that he needs to live.

**Luke 16:5**

**his master's debtors**

"the people who were in debt to his master" or "the people who owed things to his master." In this story the debtors owed olive oil and wheat.

**Luke 16:6**

**He said ... He said to him**

"The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

**A hundred baths of olive oil ... fifty**

A bath is about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 2,200 liters of olive oil ... 1,100 liters"

**hundred ... fifty**

"100 ... 50"

**Take your bill**

A "bill" is a piece of paper that tells how much someone owes.

**Luke 16:7**

**the manager said to another ... He said ... He said to him**  
"the manager said to another debtor ... The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

**A hundred cors of wheat**

A cor is about 220 liters. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "I owe 22,000 liters of wheat" or "I owe one hundred large baskets of wheat"

**write eighty**

"write eighty cors of wheat." You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "write 17,600 liters of wheat" or "write eighty large baskets of wheat"

**eighty**

"80"

**Luke 16:8**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes telling the parable about the master and the manager of his debtors. In verse 9, Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

**The master then commended**

The text does not say how the master learned of the manager's action.

**commended**

"praised" or "spoke well of" or "approved of"

**he had acted shrewdly**

"he had acted cleverly" or "he had done a sensible thing"

**the sons of this world**

This refers to those who, like the unrighteous manager, do not know or care about God. Alternate translation: "the people of this world" or "worldly people"

**the sons of light**

Here "light" is a metaphor for everything godly. Alternate translation: "the people of God" or "godly people"

**Luke 16:9**

**I say to you**

"I" refers to Jesus. The phrase "I say to you" marks the end of the story and now Jesus tells the people how to apply the story to their lives.

**make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth**

The focus here is on using the money to help other people. Alternate translation: "make people your friends by helping them with worldly wealth"

**by means of unrighteous wealth**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus uses hyperbole when he calls money "unrighteous" because it has no eternal value. Alternate translation: "by using money, which has no eternal value" or "by using worldly money" or 2) Jesus uses metonymy when he calls money "unrighteous" because people sometimes earn it or use it in unrighteous ways. Alternate translation: "by using even money that you earned dishonestly"

**they may welcome**

Possible meanings are 1) "the friends you helped with your money may welcome" or 2) "God and his angels may welcome"

**eternal dwellings**

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

## Luke 16:10

**He who is faithful ... is also faithful ... he who is unrighteous ... is also unrighteous**  
 "People who are faithful ... are also faithful ... people who are unrighteous ... are also unrighteous." This would include women.

**faithful in very little**  
 "faithful even with small things." Make sure this does not sound like they are not very faithful.

**unrighteous in very little**  
 "unrighteous even in small things." Make sure this does not sound like they are not often unrighteous.

## Luke 16:11

**unrighteous wealth**  
 See how you translated this in [Luke 16:9]

**who will trust you with true wealth?**  
 Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will trust you with true wealth." or "no one will give you true wealth to manage."

**true wealth**  
 This refers to wealth that is more genuine, real, or lasting than money.

## Luke 16:12

**who will give you money of your own?**  
 Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will give you wealth for yourself."

## Luke 16:13

**No servant can**  
 "A servant cannot"

**serve two masters**  
 It is implied that he cannot "serve two different masters at the same time"

**for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other**  
 These two clauses are essentially the same. The only significant difference is that the first master is hated in the first case, but the second master is hated in the second case.

**he will hate**  
 "the servant will hate"

**be devoted to one**  
 "love one very strongly"

**despise the other**  
 "hold the other in contempt" or "hate the other"

**despise**  
 This means essentially the same as "hate" in the previous clause.

**You cannot serve**  
 Jesus was talking to a group of people, so languages that have a plural form of "you" would use that.

## Luke 16:14

**General Information:**  
 This is a break in Jesus teachings, as verse 14 tells us background information about how the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus. In verse 15, Jesus continues teaching and responds to the Pharisees.

**Now**  
 This word marks a shift to the background information.

**who were lovers of money**  
 "who loved having money" or "who were very greedy for money"

**they ridiculed him**  
 "the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus"

## Luke 16:15

**He said to them**  
 "And Jesus said to the Pharisees"

**You justify yourselves in the sight of men**  
 "You make yourselves look good to other people"

**God knows your hearts**  
 Here "hearts" refers to the desires of people. Alternate translation: "God understands your true desires" or "God knows your motives"

**That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Those things that men think are very important are things that God hates"

## Luke 16:16

**The law and the prophets**  
 This refers to all of God's word that had been written up to that time.

**were in effect**  
 "had authority" or "were what people needed to obey"

**John came**  
 This refers to John the Baptist. Alternate translation: "John the Baptist came"

**the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am teaching people about the good news of the kingdom of God"

**everyone tries to force their way into it**

This refers to the people who were listening to and accepting the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "many people are doing everything they can to enter it"

**Luke 16:17**

**it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid**

This contrast could be stated in the reverse order. Alternate translation: "even the smallest stroke of the letter of the law will last longer than heaven and earth will exist"

**than for one stroke of a letter**

A "stroke" is the smallest part of a letter. It refers to something in the law that may seem to be insignificant. Alternate translation: "than for even the smallest detail of the law"

**become invalid**

"disappear" or "cease to exist"

**Luke 16:18**

**Everyone who divorces his wife**

"Anyone who divorces his wife" or "Any man who divorces his wife"

**commits adultery**

"is guilty of adultery"

**he who marries one**

"any man who marries a woman"

**Luke 16:19**

**General Information:**

These verses give background information about the story Jesus begins to tell about the rich man and Lazarus.

**Connecting Statement:**

As Jesus continues teaching the people he begins to tell a story. It is about a rich man and Lazarus.

**Now**

This marks a shift in Jesus's speech as he begins to tell a story that will help people understand what he was teaching them.

**a certain rich man**

This phrase introduces a person in Jesus's story. It is not clear if this is a real person or if it is simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point.

**who was clothed in purple and fine linen**

"who wore clothing made with fine linen and purple dye" or "who wore very expensive clothes." Purple dye and fine linen cloth were very expensive.

**was enjoying every day his great wealth**

"enjoyed eating expensive food every day" or "continued to spend much money, buying whatever he desired"

**Luke 16:20**

**A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People had laid a certain beggar named Lazarus at his gate"

**A certain beggar named Lazarus**

This phrase introduces another person in Jesus's story. It is not clear if this is a real person or simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point.

**at his gate**

"at the gate to the rich man's house" or "at the entrance to the rich man's property"

**covered with sores**

"with sores all over his body"

**Luke 16:21**

**longing to eat what fell**

"wishing he could eat the scraps of food that fell"

**Even the dogs came**

The word "Even" here shows that what follows is worse than what has already been told about Lazarus. Alternate translation: "In addition to that, the dogs came" or "Worse yet, the dogs came"

**dogs**

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Lazarus was too sick and weak to stop the dogs from licking his wounds.

**Luke 16:22**

**It came about that**

This phrase is used here to mark an event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**was carried away by the angels**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the angels carried him away"

**to Abraham's side**

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, which was a customary style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast.

**was buried**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people buried him"

**Luke 16:23**

**at his side**

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, which was the customary style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast.

**in Hades, being in torment**

"he went to Hades, where, suffering in terrible pain"

**he lifted up his eyes**

This idiom means "he looked up"

**Luke 16:24**

**he cried out and said**

"the rich man called out to say" or "he shouted out to Abraham"

**Father Abraham**

Abraham was the ancestor of all the Jews, including the rich man.

**have mercy on me**

"please have pity on me" or "please be merciful to me"

**and send Lazarus**

"by sending Lazarus" or "and tell Lazarus to come to me"

**he may dip the tip of his finger**

This indicates the smallness of the amount requested. Alternate translation: "he may wet the tip of his finger"

**I am in anguish in this flame**

"I am in terrible pain in this flame" or "I am suffering terribly in this fire"

**Luke 16:25**

**Child**

The rich man was one of Abraham's descendants.

**good things**

"fine things" or "pleasant things"

**in like manner evil things**

"in like manner received evil things" or "in like manner received things that caused him to suffer"

**in like manner**

This refers the fact that they both received something while they lived on earth. It is not saying

that what they received was the same. Alternate translation: "while he was living received"

**he is comforted here**

"he is comfortable here" or "he is happy here"

**in agony**

"suffering"

**Luke 16:26**

**Besides all this**

"In addition to this reason"

**a great chasm has been put in place**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has placed a huge ravine between you and us"

**a great chasm**

"a steep, deep and wide valley" or "a big separation" or "a huge ravine"

**those who want to cross over ... cannot**

"those people who want to cross over the chasm ... cannot" or "if anyone wants to cross over ... he cannot"

**Luke 16:27**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 16:28**

**in order that he may warn them**

"so that Lazarus may warn them"

**this place of torment**

"this place where we suffer torment" or "this place where we suffer terrible pain"

**Luke 16:29**

**They have Moses and the prophets**

It is implied that Abraham refused to send Lazarus to the rich man's brothers. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because your brothers have what Moses and the prophets wrote long ago"

**Moses and the prophets**

This refers to their writings. Alternate translation: "what Moses and the prophets wrote"

**let them listen to them**

"your brothers should pay attention to Moses and the prophets"

### Luke 16:30

#### if someone would go to them from the dead

The rich man would like this to happen. Alternate translation: "if a person who has died would go to them" or "if someone who has died would go and warn them"

#### from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

### Luke 16:31

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the story about the rich man and Lazarus.

#### If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets

Here "Moses and the prophets" represent the things that they wrote. Alternate translation: "If they do not pay attention to what Moses and the prophets wrote"

#### neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "neither will a person who comes back from the dead be able to convince them" or "they will not believe even if a person comes back from the dead"

#### rises from the dead

The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them is to become alive again.

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 16:1

#### What report did the rich man hear about his manager?

He heard that the manager was squandering the rich man's possessions.

### Luke 16:5

#### What did the manager do just before he was forced to leave his job?

He called for each one of the rich man's debtors and reduced their debt.

### Luke 16:6

#### What did the manager do just before he was forced to leave his job?

He called for each one of the rich man's debtors and reduced their debt.

### Luke 16:7

#### What did the manager do just before he was forced to leave his job?

He called for each one of the rich man's debtors and reduced their debt.

### Luke 16:8

#### What was the rich man's response to his manager's actions?

He commended the manager because he had acted shrewdly.

### Luke 16:9

#### What did Jesus tell others to do based on this story?

He said, "Make friends for yourselves by means of worldly wealth, so that when it is gone, they may welcome you into the eternal dwellings."

### Luke 16:10

#### Jesus said that a person who is faithful with a little will also be faithful with what else?

The person will also be faithful with much.

### Luke 16:13

#### Which two masters did Jesus say we must choose between to serve?

We must choose between God and wealth.

### Luke 16:16

#### According to Jesus, what two things were in effect until John the Baptizer came?

The law and the prophets were in effect.

#### According to Jesus, what is now being preached?

The gospel of the kingdom of God is now being preached.

### Luke 16:18

#### According to Jesus, what kind of person is one who divorces his wife and marries another?

This person is an adulterer.

**Luke 16:22**

**In Jesus' story, where did the beggar Lazarus go after he died?**

The beggar Lazarus was carried by angels to Abraham's side.

**Luke 16:23**

**Where did the rich man go after he died?**

To torment in hades.

**Luke 16:24**

**What was the first request that the rich man made to Abraham?**

He said, "Please have Lazarus come and bring me a little water because I am in anguish in this flame."

**Luke 16:26**

**What was Abraham's answer to the rich man?**

He said, "There is a great chasm between us that no one can cross."

**Luke 16:27**

**What was the second request that the rich man made to Abraham?**

He said, "Please send Lazarus to warn my brothers about this place."

**Luke 16:28**

**What was the second request that the rich man made to Abraham?**

He said, "Please send Lazarus to warn my brothers about this place."

**Luke 16:29**

**What was Abraham's answer to the rich man?**

He said, "They have Moses and the prophets; let them listen to them."

**Luke 16:31**

**Abraham said that if they would not listen to Moses and the prophets, what else would not persuade them?**

They will not be persuaded even if someone rises from the dead.



## Chapter 17

<sup>1</sup> Jesus said to his disciples, "It is certain there will be stumbling blocks, but woe to that person through whom they come! <sup>2</sup> It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble. <sup>3</sup> Watch yourselves. If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him. <sup>4</sup> If he sins against you seven times in the day, and seven times returns to you, saying, 'I repent,' you must forgive him!"

<sup>5</sup> The apostles said to the Lord, "Increase our faith."

<sup>6</sup> The Lord said, "If you had faith like a mustard seed, you would say to this mulberry tree, 'Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea,' and it would obey you. <sup>7</sup> But which of you, who has a servant plowing or keeping sheep, will say to him when he has come in from the field, 'Come immediately and sit down to eat'? <sup>8</sup> Will he not say to him, 'Prepare something for me to eat, and put a belt around your clothes and serve me until I have finished eating and drinking. Then afterward you will eat and drink'? <sup>9</sup> He does not thank the servant because he did the things that were commanded, does he? <sup>10</sup> Even so you also, when you have done everything that you are commanded, should say, 'We are unworthy servants. We have only done what we ought to do.'"

<sup>11</sup> It came about that as he traveled to Jerusalem, he went along the border between Samaria and Galilee.

<sup>12</sup> As he entered into a certain village, there he was met by ten men who were lepers. They stood far away from him <sup>13</sup> and they lifted up their voices, saying, "Jesus, Master, have mercy on us."

<sup>14</sup> When he saw them, he said to them, "Go and show yourselves to the priests." As they went away they were cleansed. <sup>15</sup> When one of them saw that he was healed, he turned back, with a loud voice glorifying God. <sup>16</sup> He fell on his face at Jesus' feet, giving him thanks. Now he was a Samaritan. <sup>17</sup> Then Jesus said, "Were not the ten cleansed? Where are the nine? <sup>18</sup> Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?" <sup>19</sup> He said to him, "Arise, and go. Your faith has made you well."

<sup>20</sup> Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing. <sup>21</sup> Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or, 'There it is!' For look, the kingdom of God is within you."

<sup>22</sup> He said to the disciples, "The days are coming when you will desire to see one of the days of the Son of Man, but you will not see it. <sup>23</sup> Then they will say to you, 'Look, there! Look, here!' But do not go out or run after them, <sup>24</sup> for as the lightning shines brightly when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. <sup>25</sup> But first he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation. <sup>26</sup> As it happened in the days of Noah, even so will it also happen in the days of the Son of Man. <sup>27</sup> They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage until the day that Noah entered into the ark—and the flood came and destroyed them all. <sup>28</sup> In the same way, even as it happened in the days of Lot—they were eating and drinking, buying and selling, planting and building. <sup>29</sup> But in the day that Lot went out from Sodom, it rained fire and sulfur from heaven and destroyed them all. <sup>30</sup> After the same manner it will be in the day that the Son of Man is revealed. <sup>31</sup> In that day let him who is on the housetop not go down to get his goods out of the house, and in the same way let him who is in the field not return. <sup>32</sup> Remember Lot's wife. <sup>33</sup> Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it. <sup>34</sup> I tell you, in that night there will be two people in one bed. One will be taken, and the other will be left. <sup>35</sup> There will be two women grinding grain together. One will be taken, and the other will be left." <sup>36</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>37</sup> They asked him, "Where, Lord?"

He said to them, "Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together."

---

### Footnotes

17:36 <sup>[1]</sup> Luke 17:36 the best ancient copies do not have verse 36,

## Luke 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Old Testament Examples

Jesus used the lives of Noah and of Lot to teach his followers. Noah was ready for the flood when it came, and they needed to be ready for him to return, because he would not warn them when he came. Lot's wife loved the evil city she had been living in so much that God also punished her when he destroyed it, and they needed to love Jesus more than anything else,

Those who read your translation may need help so they can understand what Jesus was teaching here.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Jesus asked his disciples three questions ([Luke 17:7-9](#)) to teach them that even those who serve him well are righteous only because of his grace. (See: [and grace and righteous](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: "Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it" ([Luke 17:33](#)).

---

## Luke 17

### 17:1-10

#### What is "woe"?

[17:1]

See: [Woe](#)

#### What was a "millstone"?

[17:2]

A millstone was a large, heavy round stone used to grind grain. The grain was ground between two stones. The top stone was the millstone. The millstone was often turned by a large animal.

#### Who were the little ones?

[17:2]

In the Bible, the little ones were often the children (see: Matthew 18:1-22). Here, some scholars think Jesus was speaking about Christians who had recently believed in Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about those people who were poor and needed people to help them.

#### Who was a "brother"?

[17:3]

When Jesus spoke about a brother, he was speaking about Christians.

See: [Family of God](#)

**What did it mean to “rebuke” a brother?**

[17:3]

When someone “rebuked” a brother, he corrected his brother and told him that what he had done was wrong.

**How did someone repent?**

[17:3]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

**What was meant by the words, “if he sins against you seven times in the day”?**

[17:4]

Jesus wanted the disciples to forgive another person as often as they sinned and repented. Some scholars think that when Jesus said to forgive seven times, he was speaking about always forgiving someone. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about seven different kinds of sins and a brother was to forgive all types of sins.

See: [Forgive \(Forgiveness, Pardon\)](#); [Sin](#); [Forgive \(Forgiveness, Pardon\)](#)

**Why did the apostles say, “Increase our faith”?**

[17:5]

The apostles asked Jesus to increase their faith. Scholars think that when the apostles said “increase our faith”, they were asking Jesus to help them. They wanted Jesus to help them have more confidence in God. They wanted Jesus to help them trust and believe in God even more.

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

**What did it mean to have “faith like a mustard seed”?**

[17:6]

Jesus spoke to his disciples about having “faith like a mustard seed”. This was a metaphor. A mustard seed is a very, very small seed. However, this very small seed grows into a large tree (see: Luke 13:18-19). Jesus was telling his disciples that even if a person’s faith is small, it can do great things.

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

**What was a mulberry tree?**

[17:6]

A mulberry tree was a tree where Jesus and the disciples lived. It was a large tree and had many roots.

See: [Disciple](#)

**What did it mean for a servant to “put a belt around his clothes”?**

[17:8]

A servant “put a belt around his clothes”. Some scholars think the servant removed his clothes for working in the field and put on the clothes for serving meals. Other scholars think he put something over his clothes before serving other people food.

See: [Serve](#)

**Why did Jesus want the apostles to say they were “unworthy servants”?**

[17:10]

Jesus wanted the disciples to say that they were “unworthy servants.” They did not think they were greater than other people. They wanted to serve other people. They did not want other people to honor them.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

**17:11-19**

**Where were Jerusalem, Samaria, and Galilee?**

[17:11]

See Map: Jerusalem; Samaria; Galilee

**Why did the lepers say to Jesus, “Jesus, Master, have mercy on us”?**

[17:13]

When the lepers asked Jesus to have mercy on them, they were asking Jesus to have compassion on them. Some scholars think they wanted Jesus to heal them. Other scholars do not think they were asking Jesus to heal them.

See: [Miracle](#); [Mercy](#); [Miracle](#)

**Why did Jesus tell the lepers to go to the priests?**

[17:14]

At this time, only the priests in the temple could say that someone no longer had leprosy. The priest would then declare the person to be clean (see: Leviticus 14:1-32).

See: [Clean and Unclean](#); [Priest \(Priesthood\)](#); [Temple](#); [Clean and Unclean](#)

**How did Jesus cleanse the lepers?**

[17:14, 17:15]

Scholars think Jesus healed the lepers by speaking.

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

**Who were the Samaritans?**

[17:16]

See: [Samaria](#)

**Why did Jesus tell the Samaritan man his faith made him “well”?**

[17:19]

Jesus said, “Your faith has made you well.” Scholars think the leper was healed because he believed that Jesus would heal him. He would not have leprosy anymore.

**17:20-37**

**Why did the Pharisees ask when the kingdom of God will come?**

[17:20]

The Pharisees asked when the kingdom of God will come.

1. Some scholars think the Pharisees tried to make Jesus tell them a specific date when the kingdom of God would come. If he did this, and the kingdom of God did not come, then they could tell people that Jesus is not the messiah.
2. Some scholars think the Pharisees wanted to know how to predict when God's kingdom will come.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Pharisees](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **How was the kingdom of God “within” you?**

[17:21]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God was “within” or “among” (ἐντός/g1787) you.

1. The kingdom of God was “among” the people already because Jesus was among them.
2. The kingdom of God will come suddenly in the future. It will be “among” them. There will be no signs to warn them of its coming.
3. The kingdom of God was “within” the hearts of people who believed in Jesus. That is, when people obeyed God, then God ruled them in a certain way.

See: [Heart \(Metaphor\)](#); [Sign](#); [Heart \(Metaphor\)](#)

### **What was “one of the days of the Son of Man”?**

[17:22]

Jesus spoke about “one of the days of the Son of Man”.

1. Some scholars think this was the days when the Messiah will be ruling over all things.
2. Some scholars think this was the day on which Jesus, the Messiah will return to the earth, at his second coming.
3. Some scholars think the disciples wanted to see the kingdom of the Messiah.

See: [Day of the Lord](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Disciple](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Day of the Lord](#)

### **Why did Jesus talk about lightning flashing from one part of the sky to another part?**

[17:24]

On the day of the Son of Man, there will be lightning in the sky. That is, everyone will see Jesus return in the same way they see the brightness of lightning. Jesus will return suddenly in the same way lightning is sudden.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Day of the Lord](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### **Why did Jesus speak about being “rejected by this generation”?**

[17:25]

Jesus spoke about being rejected by this generation. Jesus was telling his disciples he must first be rejected by the people who were living at this time. That is, he would be rejected by the Jewish people.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### **What were the days of Noah?**

[17:26]

The “days of Noah” were to the days in which Noah lived, before the Flood. Perhaps Jesus was speaking specifically about the days just before the flood (see: Genesis 6:5-13).

**What were the “days of Lot”?**

[17:28]

The “days of Lot” were the days when Lot lived, before God destroyed the city of Sodom (see: Genesis 19:1-25).

See: Map: Sodom

**What was meant by the words, “Lot went out from Sodom”?**

[17:29]

Jesus said, “Lot went out from Sodom.” That is, Lot left the city of Sodom. Just as God waited for Noah to enter the ark before he destroyed the world with a flood, so God waited until Lot left Sodom before he destroyed the city with fire from heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

See: Map: Sodom

**What did Jesus mean when he said, “After the same manner it will be in the day that the Son of man is revealed”?**

[17:30]

Jesus said, “after the same manner.” He wanted to say that people will be living normal lives, just as they were before people were punished in Noah’s day, and before people were punished in Lot’s day. The day that the Son of Man is “revealed” speaks about when Jesus returns to earth.

**Advice to translators:** Noah’s day is the time when Noah lived. Lot’s day is the time when Lot lived.

See: [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Day of the Lord.](#); [Son of Man](#); [Punish \(Punishment\) Reveal \(Revelation\)](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it”?**

[17:33]

See: Luke 9:24

**Why did Jesus say, “one will be taken, and the other will be left”?**

[17:34]

Jesus said that, “one will be taken, and the other will be left.” Some scholars think that the people that will be taken are Christians who are taken to a place of safety with Jesus. The people who are left will be punished. Other scholars think the people who will be taken are the people God punishes, and the ones who are left are people who will not be punished.

See: [Kingdom of God](#); [RaptureKingdom of God](#)

**Why do scholars think Luke did not write the words in verse 36?**

[17:36]

Scholars think Luke did not write the words in verse 36 because most ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not contain the words in verse 36. However, Jesus did say these words in the Book of Matthew (see: Matthew 24:40).

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

## What did Jesus mean by saying, "where there is a body, there will (be) vultures"?

[17:37]

Jesus said, "where there is a body, there will (be) vultures." A vulture is a bird that eats dead animals. They fly over the dead animals before they eat them. Some scholars think Jesus was telling the disciples that punishment comes to wherever evil people are. Other scholars think Jesus was telling his disciples that people would know when Jesus returns to the earth, just as it is obvious there is a dead body because of the vultures flying overhead.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Metaphor](#)

### Luke 17:1

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching, but he directs his attention back to his disciples. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in Luke 15:3.

#### It is certain there will be stumbling blocks

"Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen"

#### to that person through whom they come

"to anyone who causes the temptations to come" or "to any person who causes people to be tempted"

### Luke 17:2

**It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble**  
You may need to make explicit that Jesus is comparing the punishment for causing people to sin to being thrown into the sea. Alternate translation: "It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should suffer the more severe punishment for causing one of these little ones to stumble" or "He would suffer less if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than if he should cause one of these little ones to stumble"

#### if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea

This was a terrible punishment. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea" or "if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and push him into the sea"

#### for him ... his neck ... he were ... he should

The words "him," "his," and "he" refer to "that person" through whom things that cause people to sin come.

#### a millstone

This is a very large, heavy circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

#### these little ones

This here refers to people whose faith is still weak. Alternate translation: "these people whose faith is small"

#### to stumble

This was a way of referring to unintentional sin. Alternate translation: "to sin"

### Luke 17:3

#### If your brother sins

This is a conditional statement that talks about an event that will probably happen in the future.

#### your brother

"brother" is here used in the sense of someone with the same belief. Alternate translation: "a fellow believer"

#### rebuke him

"tell him strongly that what he did was wrong" or "correct him"

### Luke 17:4

#### seven times in the day, and seven times

The number seven in the Bible is a symbol for completeness. Alternate translation: "many times in a day, and each time"

### Luke 17:5

#### General Information:

There is a brief break in Jesus's teachings as the disciples speak to him. Then Jesus continues teaching.

#### Increase our faith

"Please give us more faith" or "Please add more faith to our faith"

### Luke 17:6

#### If you had faith like a mustard seed, you

A mustard seed is a very small seed. Jesus implies that they do not have even a small amount of faith. Alternate translation: "If you had faith that was even as small as a mustard seed, you" or "Your faith is not as big as a mustard seed—but if it were, you"

**mulberry tree**

If this type of tree is not familiar, it may be helpful to substitute another type of tree. Alternate translation: "fig tree" or "tree"

**Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea**

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Uproot yourself and plant yourself in the sea" or "Take your roots out of the ground, and put your roots down into the ocean"

**it would obey you**

"the tree would obey you." This result is conditional. It would happen only if they had faith.

**Luke 17:7**

**But which of you, who ... sheep, will say ... sit down to eat'?**

Jesus asks his disciples a question to help them think about the role of a servant. This could be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But none of you who ... sheep would say ... sit down to eat."

**a servant plowing or keeping sheep**

"a servant that plows your field or takes care of your sheep"

**Luke 17:8**

**Will he not say to him ... eat and drink'?**

Jesus uses a second question explain how the disciples would actually treat a servant. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He would certainly say to him ... eat and drink"

**put a belt around your clothes and serve me**

"tie your clothes at your waist and serve me" or "dress up properly and take care of me." People would tie their clothes closely around their waist so that their clothes would not get in their way while they worked.

**Then afterward**

"Then after you serve me"

**Luke 17:9**

**He does not thank the servant ... commanded, does he?**

Jesus uses this question to show how people treat servants. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He would not thank the servant ... commanded."

**the things that were commanded**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things you commanded him to do"

**does he?**

"right?" or "is this not true?"

**Luke 17:10**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes teaching. This is the end of this part of the story.

**you also**

Jesus was speaking to his disciples, so languages that have a plural form of "you" would use it.

**that you are commanded**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God has commanded you"

**We are unworthy servants**

This is an exaggeration to express that they did not do anything worthy of praise. Alternate translation: "We are ordinary slaves" or "We servants do not deserve your praise"

**Luke 17:11**

**General Information:**

This begins the story of Jesus healing 10 men of leprosy.

**It came about that**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**as he traveled to Jerusalem**

"as Jesus and the disciples were traveling to Jerusalem"

**Luke 17:12**

**General Information:**

This is the beginning of the background information and the setting of the story of Jesus healing the ten lepers.

**a certain village**

This phrase does not identify the village.

**there he was met by ten men who were lepers**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "ten men who were lepers met him" or "ten men who had leprosy met him"

**They stood far away from him**

This was a respectful gesture, because lepers were not allowed to approach other people.

**Luke 17:13**

**General Information:**

This is the end of the background information and the setting of the story of Jesus healing the ten lepers.



**they lifted up their voices**

The idiom "to lift up one's voice" means to speak loudly. Alternate translation: "they called with loud voices" or "they called aloud"

**have mercy on us**

They were specifically asking to be healed. Alternate translation: "please show us mercy by healing us"

**Luke 17:14**

**show yourselves to the priests**

Lepers were required to have the priests verify that their leprosy was healed. Alternate translation: "show yourselves to the priests so they can examine you"

**they were cleansed**

When people were healed, they were no longer ceremonially unclean. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they were healed of their leprosy and so became clean" or "they were cured of their leprosy"

**Luke 17:15**

**saw that he was healed**

"realized that he was healed" or "realized that Jesus had healed him"

**he turned back**

"he went back to Jesus"

**with a loud voice glorifying God**

"and glorified God loudly"

**Luke 17:16**

**He fell on his face at Jesus' feet**

"he knelt down and put his face close to Jesus' feet." He did this to honor Jesus.

**Now he was a Samaritan**

The word "now" is used to mark a break in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about the man who returned to Jesus.

**Luke 17:17**

**Then Jesus said**

Jesus responded to what the man did, but he was speaking to the group of people around him. Alternate translation: "So Jesus said to the crowd"

**Were not the ten cleansed?**

This is the first of three rhetorical questions. Jesus used them to show the people around him how surprised and disappointed he was that only one of the ten men came back to glorify God. Alternate translation: "Ten men were healed." or "God healed ten men."

**Where are the nine?**

"Why did not the other nine come back?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "The other nine men should have come back, too."

**Luke 17:18**

**Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?**

This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "There were no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner!" or "God healed ten men, yet only this foreigner came back to give glory to God!"

**this foreigner**

Samaritans had non-Jewish ancestors and they did not worship God in the same way that the Jews did.

**Luke 17:19**

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus healing the 10 lepers.

**Your faith has made you well**

"Because of your faith you have become well." The idea of "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "Because you believe, you are well again"

**Luke 17:20**

**General Information:**

We do not know where this event takes place; it simply happens one day when Jesus is talking with the Pharisees.

**Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,**

This is the beginning of a new event. Some translations start it with "One day" or "Once." It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "One day the Pharisees asked Jesus, 'When will the kingdom of God come?'"

**The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing**

People thought that they would be able to see signs of the kingdom coming. The idea of signs can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "The kingdom of God does not come with signs that people can observe"

**Luke 17:21**

**the kingdom of God is within you**

The idea of the noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verb "rules." Alternate translation: "God rules within you"

**the kingdom of God is within you**

Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who were hostile to him. Possible meanings are 1) the word "you" refers to people in general. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God is within people" or 2) the word translated "within" means "among." Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God is among you"

**Luke 17:22**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to teach his disciples.

**The days are coming when**

The idea of days days coming represents something being soon. Alternate translation: "A time is coming when" or "Soon"

**you will desire to see**

"you will want very much to see" or "you will wish to experience"

**one of the days of the Son of Man**

This refers to the kingdom of God. Alternate translation: "one of the days when the Son of Man will rule as king"

**the Son of Man**

Jesus is speaking about himself.

**but you will not see it**

"you will not experience it"

**Luke 17:23**

**Look, there! Look, here!**

This refers to seeking the Messiah. Alternate translation: "Look, the Messiah is over there! He is over here!"

**do not go out or run after them**

The purpose of going out can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "do not go with them to look"

**Luke 17:24**

**as the lightning shines brightly ... so will the Son of Man be**

When lightning flashes, people can see it clearly. This is a metaphor for the way the Son of Man will appear: when he does, everyone will see him clearly. Alternate translation: "as the people can see lightning clearly when it flashes ... so they will clearly see the Son of Man"

**so will the Son of Man be in his day**

This refers to the future kingdom of God. Alternate translation: "it will be like that on the day when the Son of Man comes to reign"

**so will the Son of Man be**

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person.

Alternate translation: "so will I, the Son of Man, be"

**Luke 17:25**

**But first he must suffer**

"But first the Son of Man must suffer." Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

**be rejected by this generation**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of this generation must reject him"

**Luke 17:26**

**As it happened ... even so will it also happen**

"As people were doing things ... even so people will be doing the same things"

**in the days of Noah**

The "days of Noah" refers to the time during Noah's life just before God punished the people of the world. Alternate translation: "when Noah was living"

**in the days of the Son of Man**

The "days of the Son of Man" refers to the period just before the Son of Man will come. Alternate translation: "when the Son of Man is about to come"

**Luke 17:27**

**They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage**

People were doing ordinary things. They did not know or care that God was about to judge them.

**they were given in marriage**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "parents were allowing their daughters to marry men"

**the ark**

"the ship" or "the barge"

**destroyed them all**

This does not include Noah and his family who were in the ark. Alternate translation: "destroyed all those who were not in the boat"

**Luke 17:28**

**they were eating and drinking**

"the people of Sodom were eating and drinking"

**Luke 17:29**

**it rained fire and sulfur from heaven**

"fire and burning sulfur fell from the sky like rain"

**destroyed them all**

This does not include Lot and his family. Alternate translation: "destroyed all those who stayed in the city"

**Luke 17:30**

**After the same manner it will be**

"It will be like that." Alternate translation: "In the same way people will not be ready"

**in the day that the Son of Man is revealed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the Son of Man appears" or "when the Son of man comes"

**the Son of Man is revealed**

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am revealed"

**Luke 17:31**

**let him who is on the housetop not go down**

"whoever is on the housetop must not go down" or "if anyone is on his housetop, he must not go down." This is a statement of what people should not do, not a command to the hearers.

**on the housetop**

Their housetops were flat and people could walk or sit on them.

**his goods**

"his possessions" or "his things"

**return**

They are not to go back to the house to get anything. They are to flee quickly.

**Luke 17:32**

**Remember Lot's wife**

"Remember what happened to Lot's wife" This is a warning. She looked back toward Sodom and God punished her along with the people of Sodom. Alternate translation: "Do not do what Lot's wife did"

**Luke 17:33**

**Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it**

"People who try save their lives will lose them" or "Whoever tries to save his old way of life will lose his life"

**but whoever loses his life will save it**

"but people who lose their lives will save them" or "but whoever abandons his old way of life will save his life"

**Luke 17:34**

**I tell you**

As Jesus continues to address his disciples, he emphasizes the importance of what he is telling them.

**in that night**

This refers to what will happen if he, the Son of Man, comes during the night.

**there will be two people in one bed**

The emphasis is not on these two people, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

**bed**

"couch" or "cot"

**One will be taken, and the other will be left**

"One person will be taken and the other person will be left behind." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take one person and leave the other" or "Angels will take one and leave behind the other"

**Luke 17:35**

**There will be two women grinding grain together**

The emphasis is not on these two women or their activity, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

**grinding grain together**

"grinding grain together"

**Luke 17:36**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 17:37**

**General Information:**

The disciples ask Jesus a question about his teaching and he answers them.

**Where, Lord?**

"Lord, where will this happen?"

**Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together**

Apparently this is a proverb that means "It will be obvious" or "You will know it when it happens." Alternate translation: "As vultures gathering shows that there is a dead body, so these things show that the Son of Man is coming"

**vultures**

Vultures are large birds that fly together and eat the flesh of dead animals that they find. You could describe these birds this way or use the word for local birds that do this.

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 17:4

**What did Jesus say we must do if our brother sins against us and returns saying, "I repent?"**  
We must forgive him.

### Luke 17:10

**As servants, what should we say after we have done everything commanded us by our Master?**  
We should say, "We are unworthy servants; we have only done what we ought to do."

### Luke 17:12

**Who did Jesus meet when entering a village in the borderlands of Samaria and Galilee?**  
He met ten lepers.

### Luke 17:13

**What did they say to Jesus?**  
They said, "Jesus, Master, have mercy on us."

### Luke 17:14

**What did Jesus tell them to do?**  
He told them to go and show themselves to the priests.

**What happened to the lepers as they went?**  
They were cleansed.

### Luke 17:15

**How many of the ten lepers returned to thank Jesus?**  
Only one returned.

### Luke 17:16

**From what city was the leper who returned to thank Jesus?**  
He was from Samaria.

### Luke 17:21

**When asked about the coming of the kingdom, where did Jesus say the kingdom of God is?**  
The kingdom of God is within you.

### Luke 17:24

**What did Jesus say it will be like in his day, when he appears again?**  
It will be like the lightning flashing from one part of the sky to another.

### Luke 17:25

**What did Jesus say must happen first?**  
He must suffer many things and be rejected by that generation.

### Luke 17:27

**How will the days of the Son of Man be like the days of Noah and the days of Lot?**  
Many will eat, drink, marry, buy, sell, plant, and build, unaware that the day of destruction has come.

### Luke 17:32

**How must we not be like Lot's wife?**  
We must not turn back to try to keep our earthly life on that day.

### Luke 17:37

**What picture from nature did Jesus use to answer his disciples' question, "Where, Lord?"**  
Where there is a body, there the vultures gather together.

## Chapter 18

<sup>1</sup> Then he spoke a parable to them about how they should always pray and not become discouraged, <sup>2</sup> saying, "In a certain city there was a judge who did not fear God and did not respect people. <sup>3</sup> Now there was a widow in that city, and she came often to him, saying, 'Help me get justice against my opponent.'

<sup>4</sup> For a long time he was not willing to help her, but after a while he said to himself, 'Though I do not fear God or respect man, <sup>5</sup> yet because this widow causes me trouble, I will help her get justice, so that she does not wear me out by her constant coming.'" <sup>6</sup> Then the Lord said, "Listen to what the unjust judge says. <sup>7</sup> Now will not God also bring justice to his chosen ones who cry out to him day and night? Will he delay long over them? <sup>8</sup> I say to you that he will bring justice to them speedily. Even so, when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?"

<sup>9</sup> Then he also spoke this parable to some who trusted in themselves that they were righteous and who despised other people, <sup>10</sup> "Two men went up into the temple to pray—the one was a Pharisee and the other was a tax collector. <sup>11</sup> The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself, 'God, I thank you that I am not like other people—robbers, unrighteous people, adulterers—or even like this tax collector.

<sup>12</sup> I fast two times every week. I give tithes of all that I get.'

<sup>13</sup> But the tax collector, standing at a distance, would not even lift up his eyes to heaven, but hit his breast, saying, 'God, have mercy on me, a sinner.' <sup>14</sup> I say to you, this man went back down to his house justified rather than the other, because everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but everyone who humbles himself will be exalted."

<sup>15</sup> The people were also bringing to him their infants so that he might touch them, but when the disciples saw it, they rebuked them. <sup>16</sup> But Jesus called them to him, saying, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them. For the kingdom of God belongs to such ones. <sup>17</sup> Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it."

<sup>18</sup> A certain ruler asked him, saying, "Good teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

<sup>19</sup> Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good, except God alone. <sup>20</sup> You know the commandments—do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not testify falsely, honor your father and mother."

<sup>21</sup> The ruler said, "All these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

<sup>22</sup> When Jesus heard that, he said to him, "One thing you still lack. You must sell all that you have and distribute it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me."

<sup>23</sup> But when the ruler heard these things, he became extremely sad, for he was very rich. <sup>24</sup> Then Jesus, seeing him <sup>[1]</sup> said, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God! <sup>25</sup> For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

<sup>26</sup> Those hearing it said, "Then who can be saved?"

<sup>27</sup> Jesus answered, "The things which are impossible with people are possible with God."

<sup>28</sup> Peter said, "Well, we have left everything that is our own and have followed you."

<sup>29</sup> Jesus then said to them, "Truly, I say to you that there is no one who has left house, or wife, or brothers, or parents, or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God, <sup>30</sup> who will not receive much more in this time, and in the age to come, eternal life."

<sup>31</sup> After he gathered the twelve to himself, he said to them, "See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and all the things that have been written by the prophets about the Son of Man will be accomplished. <sup>32</sup> For he will be given over to the Gentiles, and will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon. <sup>33</sup> After whipping him, they will kill him, and on the third day he will rise again." <sup>34</sup> They understood none of these things, and this word was hidden from them, and they did not understand the things that were said.

<sup>35</sup> It came about that, as Jesus approached Jericho, a certain blind man was sitting by the road begging, <sup>36</sup> and hearing a crowd going by, he asked what was happening. <sup>37</sup> They told him that Jesus of Nazareth was passing by. <sup>38</sup> So the blind man cried out, saying, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me." <sup>39</sup> The ones who were walking ahead rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me."

<sup>40</sup> Jesus stood still and commanded that the man be brought to him. Then when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, <sup>41</sup> "What do you want me to do for you?"

He said, "Lord, I want to receive my sight."

<sup>42</sup> Jesus said to him, "Receive your sight. Your faith has healed you." <sup>43</sup> Immediately he received his sight and followed him, glorifying God. All the people, when they saw this, gave praise to God.

---

## Footnotes

---

18:24 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient Greek copies have the phrase:

---

## Luke 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Jesus told two parables ([Luke 18:1-8](#) and [Luke 18:9-14](#)) and then taught that his followers were to be humble ([Luke 18:15-17](#)), to use everything they owned to help the poor ([Luke 18:18-30](#)), and to expect him to die soon ([Luke 18:31-34](#)). Then they all began to walk to Jerusalem, and Jesus healed a blind man ([Luke 18:35-43](#)).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Judges

People expected judges always to do what God said was right and to make sure that other people did what was right. But some judges did not care about doing right or making sure others did right. Jesus called this kind of judge unjust. (See: justice)

#### Pharisees and tax collectors

The Pharisees thought that they themselves were the best examples of righteous good people, and they thought that tax collectors were the most unrighteous sinners. (See: righteous and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---

## Luke 18

### 18:1-8

#### What was a parable?

[18:1]

See: [Parable](#)

#### Why did Jesus talk about the judge and the widow?

[18:2, 18:3]

Jesus talked about the judge and the widow so that his disciples will pray again and again for God to bring justice to the earth when Jesus returns. Jesus also wanted the disciples to always know God hears their prayers. Some scholars think God will quickly bring justice for Christians. The unjust judge was slow to bring justice but God will not be slow. Other scholars think God will be slow to bring justice for Christians. God is patient and he does not judge a Christian's sins right away, or he limits the ability of people to persecute Christians. Other scholars think God is slow to bring justice but when Jesus returns he will bring justice quickly.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Disciple](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [People of God](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

### **How does someone fear God?**

[18:4]

See: [Fear of God](#)

### **Who were God's chosen ones?**

[18:7]

God's chosen ones were the disciples or people who followed Jesus.

### **When will the Son of Man come?**

[18:8]

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### **Why did Jesus ask, "will he indeed find faith on the earth"?**

[18:8]

Jesus asked about finding faith on earth. Some scholars think Jesus was asking if people will believe that he is the Messiah. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people believing that God will bring justice quickly. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people believing that he will return to the earth.

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

## **18:9-14**

### **Why did Jesus talk about the Pharisee and the tax collector?**

[18:10]

Jesus talked about the Pharisee and the tax collector because he warned people not to think they were doing something that honored God when they hated other people. The Pharisee listed sins he did not do, but other people did these sins. The Pharisee also fasted more times than the Law of Moses said they needed to fast. They also tithed on everything. He stood in the temple so that other people saw him when he prayed. However, he was not at peace with God. God did not think he did the right things.

On the other hand, the tax collector stood away from people and did not think he was able to look at God. He hit his chest because he was ashamed of his sins. Jesus said he was justified. That is, God forgave his sins.

See: [Tithe](#); [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#); [Fasting](#); [Law of Moses](#); [Tithe](#)

## **18:15-17**

### **Why did people bring infants to Jesus?**

[18:15]

People brought infants to Jesus for him to bless them. The ancient Jews brought infants to their leaders on the Day of Atonement for their leaders to bless the infants.

See: [Matthew 19:13](#)

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

### **Why did the disciples rebuke these people?**

[18:15]

The disciples rebuke these people. Some scholars think the disciples rebuked these people because they thought Jesus was too tired to bless the infants. Other scholars think the disciples thought Jesus did not have time to bless infants.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

### **How did someone receive the kingdom of God?**

[18:16]

Someone received the kingdom of God by believing in Jesus in the same way a child believes in Jesus. Children accepted Jesus and trusted him when he blessed them. People did not honor children. Children are humble. That is, they do not think they are greater than they are. Children also trust and depended on their parents.

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

### **18:18-30**

#### **Who was the “certain ruler”?**

[18:18]

Luke did not write who the “certain ruler” was, but the ruler was young (see: [Matthew 19:22](#)). Some scholars think he was a Jewish leader who may have been the leader of a synagogue. Other scholars think he was too young to do that.

See: [Synagogue](#)

#### **Why did Jesus say no one is good except God?**

[18:19]

Jesus said that no one is good except God.

1. Some scholars think Jesus wanted the young ruler to know that only God is good. That is, he was telling the young ruler that his goodness was the goodness of God working in him.
2. Some scholars think the rich young ruler thought Jesus was only a man. He did not think Jesus was good in the same way that God is good. This was because the young ruler did not do what Jesus said.
3. Other scholars think only God is perfectly holy and righteous. If the rich young ruler wanted to please God he needed to obey God’s Son whom God sent.

See: [Son of God](#); [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#); [Son of God](#)

#### **Why did Jesus repeat some of the Ten Commandments?**

[18:20]

Jesus repeated some of the ten commandments to the young ruler. Some scholars think the young ruler was asking how he could have eternal life through his own power. That is, through doing good things.



However, no one except for Jesus has ever been able to keep all of the commandments perfectly, and therefore have eternal life by keeping them.

See: [Command \(Commandment\)](#); [Eternal Life](#); [Command \(Commandment\)](#)

**Why did Jesus tell the rich young ruler to sell everything and give the money to the poor?**

[18:22]

Jesus told the rich young ruler to sell everything and give the money to the poor because the rich young ruler loved his money and the things he owned. He was not willing to give up everything to follow Jesus. Perhaps Jesus also wanted the young ruler to understand the greater value of being rewarded in heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**Why do some scholars think Luke did not write “seeing that he had become sad” in verse 24?**

[18:24]

Some scholars think Luke did not write “seeing that he had become sad” in verse 24 because some of the oldest Greek copies did not contain them.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

**What was the eye of the needle?**

[18:25]

The eye of the needle was a small circle on one end of a needle used for sewing cloth. It was very small. The camel was a very large animal. Scholars think Jesus was saying that in the same way it was impossible for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle, so it was impossible for a rich man to get into the kingdom of God on his own. That is, he could not be at peace with God without Jesus.

See: [Kingdom of God](#)

**What did Jesus mean by saying, “things which are impossible with people are possible with God”?**

[18:27]

Jesus said, “things which are impossible with people are possible with God.” Scholars think that Jesus was saying that God can do what people cannot do. That is, God makes it possible for a person to be saved, whereas a person cannot possibly save himself.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

**How will Jesus reward people?**

[18:30]

See: [Reward](#)

**18:31-34**

**Who were the twelve?**

[18:31]

When Jesus gathered the twelve, he brought the twelve apostles to him. There was a large crowd of people. Jesus wanted to talk to the twelve alone.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

**Why did Jesus say they are going up to Jerusalem?**

[18:31]

Jesus said they are going up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain. They were going to Jerusalem.

See Map: Jerusalem

**What were the things written by the prophets about the Son of Man?**

[18:31]

Things were written in the prophets about the Son of Man. They said that the Son of Man will suffer (see: Isaiah 53).

See: [Son of Man](#); [Son of Man](#)

**What was meant by the words, “this word was hidden from them”?**

[18:34]

Some scholars think that Jesus did not allow the twelve to understand. Other scholars think that because the disciples expected the Messiah to come in a certain way, they could not understand the words of which Jesus spoke.

**Where was Jericho?**

[18:35]

See Map: Jericho

**Why did the blind man ask Jesus to have mercy on him?**

[18:38]

The blind man asked Jesus for mercy. The man was asking Jesus to show him compassion and help him. He specifically wanted Jesus to be kind to him and heal him (see: Luke 18:41).

See: [Miracle](#); [Miracle](#)

**Why did people rebuke this man for crying out to Jesus?**

[18:39]

People rebuked this man for crying out to Jesus. Some scholars think they believed Jesus was too important to stop for a blind man. Other scholars think these people thought Jesus was in a hurry to get to Jerusalem. Other scholars think these people knew the Jewish leaders would be angry with people calling Jesus the “Son of David”.

See: [Son of David](#)

**How did Jesus heal the blind man?**

[18:42]

Jesus immediately healed the blind man because the blind man believed in him. When Jesus told him his faith healed him, Jesus healed the blind man. Perhaps Jesus also wanted to say that this man’s faith made him have peace with God.

See: 7:48-50

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

## Luke 18:1

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell a parable as he continues to teach his disciples. This is the same part of the story that began in [Luke 17:20]

### Then he

"Then Jesus"

## Luke 18:2

### saying

A new sentence could begin here (if the comma at the end of the previous verse is changed to a period): "He said"

### a certain city

Here "certain city" is a way to let the listener know that the narrative that follows takes place in a city, but the name of the city itself is not important.

### did not respect people

"did not care about other people"

## Luke 18:3

### Now there was a widow

Jesus uses this phrase to introduce a new character to the story.

### widow

A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried. Jesus's hearers would have thought of her as a person who had no one to protect her from those who wanted to harm her.

### she came often to him

The word "him" refers to the judge.

### Help me get justice against

"Give me a just ruling against"

### my opponent

"my enemy" or "the person who is trying to harm me." This is an opponent in a lawsuit. It is not clear whether the widow is suing the opponent or the opponent is suing the widow.

## Luke 18:4

### man

This refers here to "people" in general.

## Luke 18:5

### causes me trouble

"bothers me"

### wear me out

"exhaust me"

### by her constant coming

"by continually coming to me"

## Luke 18:6

### General Information:

Jesus has finished telling his parable and is now commenting about it to his disciples.

### Listen to what the unjust judge says

"Think about what the unjust judge just said."

Translate this in a way that people will understand that Jesus has already told what the judge said.

## Luke 18:7

### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of an explanation of the parable in Luke 18:1-5.

### Now

This word indicates that Jesus has ended the parable and has started explaining its meaning.

### will not God also bring ... night?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "God will also certainly bring ... night!"

### his chosen ones

"the people he has chosen"

### Will he delay long over them?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He will certainly not delay long over them!"

## Luke 18:8

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the explanation of the parable in Luke 18:1-5 that began in Luke 18:7.

### when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?

Jesus asks this question so that his hearers will stop thinking that God is slow to help those who call to him for justice and will understand that the real problem is that they do not truly have faith in God. Alternate translation: "when the Son of Man comes, you need to be sure that he will find that you truly have faith in him." or "when the Son of Man comes, he will find few on earth who believe."

### the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man come, will I indeed find"

## Luke 18:9

### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell another parable to some other people who were persuaded that they themselves were righteous.

### Then he

"Then Jesus"

### to some

"to some people"

### who trusted in themselves that they were righteous

"who had convinced themselves that they were righteous" or "who thought they were righteous"

### despised

strongly disliked or hated

## Luke 18:10

### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard"

## Luke 18:11

### The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself

The meaning of the Greek text of this phrase is not clear. Possible meanings are 1) "The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way" or 2) "The Pharisee stood by himself and prayed."

### robbers

Robbers are people who steal from other people by forcing the other people to give things to them, or by threatening to harm them if they refuse to give what the robbers ask for.

### or even like this tax collector

The Pharisees believed that tax collectors were as sinful as robbers, unrighteous people, and adulterers. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "and I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector, who cheats people"

## Luke 18:12

### all that I get

"everything I earn"

## Luke 18:13

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his parable.

### standing at a distance

"stood away from the Pharisee." This was a sign of humility. He did not feel worthy to be near the Pharisee.

### lift up his eyes to heaven

To "lift up his eyes" means to look at something.

Alternate translation: "look toward heaven" or "look upward"

### hit his breast

This is a physical expression of great sorrow, and shows this man's repentance and humility.

Alternate translation: "hit his breast to show his sorrow"

### God, have mercy on me, a sinner

"God, please be merciful to me. I am a sinner" or

"God, please have mercy on me even though I have committed many sins"

## Luke 18:14

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus comments on what the parable teaches.

### this man went back down to his house justified

He was justified because God forgave his sin.

Alternate translation: "God forgave the tax collector"

### rather than the other

"rather than the other man" or "and not the other man." Alternate translation: "but God did not forgive the Pharisee"

### because everyone who exalts himself

With this phrase, Jesus switches from the story to state the general principle that the story illustrates.

### will be humbled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will humble"

### will be exalted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will greatly honor"

## Luke 18:15

### Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the part of the story which began in Luke 17:20. Jesus welcomes the children and talks about them.

### touch them, but

This could also be translated as separate sentences: "touch them. But"

### they rebuked them

"the disciples tried to stop the parents from bringing their children to Jesus"

## Luke 18:16

### Jesus called them to him

"Jesus told the people to bring their infants to him"

**Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them**

These two sentences have similar meaning and they are combined for emphasis. Some languages emphasize in a different way. Alternate translation: "You must certainly allow the children to come to me"

**belongs to such ones**

This could be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "belongs to people who are like these little children"

#### Luke 18:17

**Truly I say to you**

"Surely I say to you." Jesus used this expression to emphasize the importance of what he was about to say.

**whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it**

God requires people to accept his rule over them with trust and humility. Alternate translation: "whoever wants to enter God's kingdom must receive it with trust and humility like a child"

#### Luke 18:18

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the next event in the part of the story which began in Luke 17:20. Jesus begins to talk with a ruler about entering the kingdom of heaven.

**A certain ruler**

This introduces a new character in the story. It only identifies him by his position.

**what must I do**

"what do I need to do" or "what is required of me"

**inherit eternal life**

"receive life that does not end." The term "inherit" usually refers to the property that a man left to his children when he dies. Therefore, this metaphor may mean he understood himself to be a child of God and desired for God to give him eternal life.

#### Luke 18:19

**Why do you call me good? No one is good, except God alone**

Jesus asks the question because he knows that the ruler will not like Jesus's answer to the ruler's question in verse 18. Jesus does not expect the ruler to answer Jesus's question. Jesus wants the ruler to understand that Jesus's answer to the ruler's question comes from God, who alone is good. Alternate translation: "You know that no one is good, except God alone, so to call me good is to compare me with God"

**No one is good, except God alone**

This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

#### Luke 18:20

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 18:21

**All these things**

"All of these commandments"

#### Luke 18:22

**When Jesus heard that**

"When Jesus heard the man say that"

**he said to him**

"he answered him"

**One thing you still lack**

"You still need to do one more thing" or "There is one thing that you have not yet done"

**sell all that you have**

"sell all your possessions" or "sell everything that you own"

**distribute it to the poor**

"give away the money to the poor people"

**come, follow me**

"come with me as my disciple"

#### Luke 18:23

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 18:24

**How difficult it is ... kingdom of God!**

This is an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "It is so very hard ... kingdom of God!"

#### Luke 18:25

**a camel to go through a needle's eye**

It is impossible for a camel to fit through the eye of a needle. Jesus was probably using hyperbole to mean it is extremely difficult for a rich man to enter God's kingdom.

**needle's eye**

The needle's eye is the hole in a sewing needle through which the thread is passed.

## Luke 18:26

### Those hearing it said

"The people who listening to Jesus said"

### Then who can be saved?

It is possible that they were asking for an answer. But it is more likely that they used the question to emphasize their surprise at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "Then no one can be saved from sin!" or in active form: "Then God will not save anyone!"

## Luke 18:27

### are impossible with people are possible with God

"people cannot do are possible for God to do" or "people cannot do, God can do"

## Luke 18:28

### Well, we

This phrase refers only to the disciples, and contrasts them with the rich ruler.

### we have left

"we have given up" or "we have left behind"

### everything that is our own

"all our wealth" or "all our possessions"

## Luke 18:29

### Truly, I say to you

Jesus uses this expression to stress the importance of what he is about to say.

### there is no one who

This expression is intended to include not only the disciples, but also everyone else who has made the same sacrifices.

## Luke 18:30

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the conversation about entering the kingdom of heaven.

### who will not receive

This could be stated in positive form. First the words "there is not one who" in the previous verse

### in this time

"in this present world"

### in the age to come, eternal life

"he will also receive eternal life in the age to come"

## Luke 18:31

### Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story that began in Luke 17:20. Jesus is talking to his disciples alone.

### gathered the twelve to himself

Jesus took the twelve disciples to a place away from other people where they could be alone.

### See, we are going up to Jerusalem

This indicates a significant change in the ministry of Jesus as he goes to Jerusalem for the final time.

### that have been written by the prophets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the prophets have written"

### the prophets

This refers to the Old Testament prophets.

### Son of Man

Jesus speaks of himself as "the Son of Man." Alternate translation: "me, the Son of Man,"

### will be accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will happen" or "will occur"

## Luke 18:32

### For he will be given over to the Gentiles

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Jewish leaders will give him over to the Gentiles"

### he

Jesus speaks of himself. Alternate translation: "I"

### will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will mock him, treat him shamefully, and spit on him"

## Luke 18:33

### him ... him ... he

Jesus speaks of himself. Alternate translation: "me ... me ... I"

### on the third day

This refers to the third day after his death. However, the disciples did not yet understand this, so it is best not to add this explanation when translating this verse.

## Luke 18:34

### General Information:

This verse is not part of the main story, but rather a comment about this part of the story.

**They understood none of these things**  
 "They did not understand any of these things"

**these things**  
 This refers to Jesus's description of how he would suffer and die in Jerusalem, and that he would rise from the dead.

**this word was hidden from them**  
 This can be stated in active form, but it is not clear whether it is God or Jesus who hid the word from them. Alternate translation: "Jesus hid his message from them" or "God prevented them from understanding the meaning of what Jesus was telling them"

**the things that were said**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Jesus said"

### **Luke 18:35**

**General Information:**  
 Jesus heals a blind man as he approaches Jericho. These verses give background information and information about the setting of the story.

**It came about**  
 This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

**a certain blind man was sitting**  
 "there was a blind man sitting." Here "certain" means only that the man is an important new participant in the story. Luke does not mention his name.

### **Luke 18:36**

**and hearing**  
 and hearing

It may be helpful to start a new sentence here after changing the comma at the end of the previous verse (verse 35) to a period. Alternate translation: "When he heard"

### **Luke 18:37**

**They told him**  
 "People in the crowd told the blind man"

**Jesus of Nazareth**  
 Jesus came from the town of Nazareth, which was located in Galilee.

**was passing by**  
 "was walking past him"

### **Luke 18:38**

**So**  
 This word marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the crowd had told the blind man that Jesus was walking by.

**cried out**  
 "called out" or "shouted"

**Son of David**  
 Jesus was a descendant of David, Israel's most important king.

**have mercy on me**  
 "show me pity" or "show me compassion"

### **Luke 18:39**

**The ones who were walking ahead**  
 "The people who were walking at the front of the crowd"

**to be quiet**  
 "to be silent" or "not to shout"

**cried out all the more**  
 This could mean that he cried out louder or that he cried out more persistently.

### **Luke 18:40**

**that the man be brought to him**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people to bring the blind man to him"

### **Luke 18:41**

**to receive my sight**  
 "to be able to see"

### **Luke 18:42**

**Receive your sight**  
 This is a command, but Jesus is not commanding the man to do anything. Jesus is healing the man by commanding him to be healed. Alternate translation: "You will now receive your sight"

**Your faith has healed you**  
 These words are a metonym. It was because of the man's faith that Jesus healed the man. Alternate translation: "I have healed you because you have believed in me"

### **Luke 18:43**

**glorifying God**  
 "giving glory to God" or "praising God"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 18:1

**What did Jesus want to teach his disciples about prayer from this story?**

He wanted to teach them that they should always pray and not become discouraged.

### Luke 18:3

**What did the widow keep asking for from the unjust judge?**

She asked for justice against her opponent.

### Luke 18:5

**After awhile, what did the unjust judge say to himself?**

He said, "Because this widow causes me trouble and constantly comes to me, I will help her get justice."

### Luke 18:8

**What did Jesus want to teach his disciples about how God answers prayer?**

He wanted to teach them that God will bring justice to those who cry out to him.

### Luke 18:9

**What was the Pharisee's attitude about his own righteousness and about other people?**

He thought he was more righteous than other people.

### Luke 18:10

**In Jesus' story, which two men went up into the temple to pray?**

A Pharisee and a tax collector went up into the temple to pray.

### Luke 18:11

**What was the Pharisee's attitude about his own righteousness and about other people?**

He thought he was more righteous than other people.

### Luke 18:12

**What was the Pharisee's attitude about his own righteousness and about other people?**

He thought he was more righteous than other people.

### Luke 18:13

**What was the tax collector's prayer to God in the temple?**

He prayed, "God, be merciful to me, a sinner."

### Luke 18:14

**Which man went back to his house justified before God?**

The tax collector was justified before God.

### Luke 18:16

**Jesus said that the kingdom of God belongs to whom?**

It belongs to those who are as children.

### Luke 18:17

**Jesus said that the kingdom of God belongs to whom?**

It belongs to those who are as children.

### Luke 18:22

**What one thing did Jesus ask the ruler (the one who had obeyed God's commandments from his youth) to do?**

Jesus asked him to sell all that he had and to distribute it to the poor.

### Luke 18:23

**How did the ruler respond to Jesus' statement and why?**

He became extremely sad, for he was very rich.

### Luke 18:30

**What did Jesus promise those who have left earthly things for the sake of the kingdom of God?**

Jesus promised them much more in this world, and eternal life in the world to come.

### Luke 18:32

**According to Jesus, what had the Old Testament prophets written about the Son of Man?**

That he would be given over to the Gentiles, mocked and shamefully treated, whipped, and killed, but on the third day he would rise again.

### Luke 18:33

**According to Jesus, what had the Old Testament prophets written about the Son of Man?**

That he would be given over to the Gentiles, mocked and shamefully treated, whipped, and killed, but on the third day he would rise again.

### Luke 18:38

**What did the blind man by the road cry out to Jesus?**

He said, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me."

### Luke 18:39

**What did the blind man by the road cry out to Jesus?**

He said, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me."



**Luke 18:43**

**How did the people respond after seeing the blind man healed?**

They glorified and gave praise to God.

---

## Chapter 19

<sup>1</sup> Jesus entered and was passing through Jericho. <sup>2</sup> Behold, there was a man there named Zacchaeus. He was a chief tax collector and was rich. <sup>3</sup> He was trying to see who Jesus was, but could not see over the crowd, because he was small in height. <sup>4</sup> So he ran on ahead of the people and climbed up into a sycamore tree to see him, because Jesus was about to pass that way. <sup>5</sup> When Jesus came to the place, he looked up and said to him, "Zacchaeus, come down quickly, for today I must stay at your house." <sup>6</sup> So he hurried and came down and welcomed him joyfully. <sup>7</sup> When everyone saw this, they all complained, saying, "He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner." <sup>8</sup> Zacchaeus stood and said to the Lord, "Look, Lord, the half of my possessions I give to the poor, and if I have cheated anyone of anything, I will restore four times the amount."

<sup>9</sup> Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. <sup>10</sup> For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the people who are lost."

<sup>11</sup> As they heard these things, he continued speaking and told a parable, because he was near to Jerusalem, and they thought that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately. <sup>12</sup> He said therefore, "A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom and then to return. <sup>13</sup> He called ten of his servants and gave them ten minas and said to them, 'Conduct business until I come back.'

<sup>14</sup> "But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We will not have this man reign over us.' <sup>15</sup> It happened when he returned, having received the kingdom, he commanded the servants to whom he had given the money to be called to him, that he might know what profit they had made by doing business.

<sup>16</sup> "The first came before him, saying, 'Lord, your mina has made ten minas more.'

<sup>17</sup> "The nobleman said to him, 'Well done, good servant. Because you were faithful in very little, you will have authority over ten cities.'

<sup>18</sup> "The second came, saying, 'Your mina, lord, has made five minas.'

<sup>19</sup> "The nobleman said to him, 'You take charge over five cities.'

<sup>20</sup> "Another came, saying, 'Lord, here is your mina, which I kept safely in a cloth, <sup>21</sup> for I was afraid of you, because you are a demanding person. You take up what you did not put in, and you reap what you did not sow.'

<sup>22</sup> "The nobleman said to him, 'By your own words I will judge you, you wicked servant. You knew that I am a demanding person, taking up what I did not put in, and reaping what I did not sow. <sup>23</sup> Then why did you not put my money in the bank, so that when I returned I would have collected it with interest?' <sup>24</sup> The nobleman said to them that stood by, 'Take away from him the mina, and give it to him that has the ten minas.'

<sup>25</sup> "They said to him, 'Lord, he has ten minas.'

<sup>26</sup> "'I say to you, that everyone who has will be given more, but from him that has not, even that which he has will be taken away. <sup>27</sup> But these enemies of mine, those who did not want me to reign over them, bring them here and kill them before me.'"

<sup>28</sup> When he had said these things, he went on ahead, going up to Jerusalem.

<sup>29</sup> It came about that when he came near to Bethphage and Bethany, to the mountain that is called Olives, he sent two of the disciples, <sup>30</sup> saying, "Go into the next village. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. <sup>31</sup> If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say, 'The Lord has need of it.'" <sup>32</sup> Those who were sent went and found the colt just as Jesus had told them.

<sup>33</sup> As they were untying the colt, the owners said to them, "Why are you untying the colt?"

<sup>34</sup> They said, "The Lord has need of it." <sup>35</sup> They brought it to Jesus, and they threw their cloaks upon the colt and set Jesus on it. <sup>36</sup> As he went, they spread their cloaks on the road.

<sup>37</sup> As he was now approaching the place where the Mount of Olives descends, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works which they had seen, saying,

<sup>38</sup> "Blessed is the king who comes in the name of the Lord!  
Peace in heaven and glory in the highest!"

<sup>39</sup> Some of the Pharisees in the multitude said to him, "Teacher, rebuke your disciples."

<sup>40</sup> Jesus answered and said, "I tell you, if these were silent, the stones would cry out."

<sup>41</sup> When Jesus approached the city, he wept over it, <sup>42</sup> saying, "If only you had known in this day, even you, the things which bring you peace! But now they are hidden from your eyes. <sup>43</sup> For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build a barricade around you and surround you and press in on you from every side. <sup>44</sup> They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you. They will not leave one stone upon another because you did not recognize the time of your visitation."

<sup>45</sup> Jesus entered the temple and began to cast out those who were selling, <sup>46</sup> saying to them, "It is written, 'My house will be a house of prayer,' but you have made it a den of robbers."

<sup>47</sup> So Jesus was teaching daily in the temple. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking to destroy him, as were the leaders of the people, <sup>48</sup> but they could not find a way to do it because all the people were listening to him intently.

---

## Luke 19 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

After Jesus helped a man named Zacchaeus repent of his sins

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Sinner"

The Pharisees referred to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders thought these people were sinful, but in reality the leaders were also sinful. This can be taken as irony.

#### Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

#### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULB without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

**Spreading garments and branches**

When a king would enter one of the cities he ruled, people would cut branches from trees and would take off the clothes that they wore to stay warm in cold weather and spread them all on the road so the king would ride over them. They did this to honor the king and show that they loved him.

**The merchants in the temple**

Jesus forced the people who were selling animals in the temple to leave. He did this to show everyone that he had authority over the temple and that only those who were righteous, who did what God said was good, could be in it. (See: righteous)

---

**Luke 19**

**19:1-10**

**Where was Jericho?**

[19:1]

See: Map of Jericho

**What did it mean that Zacchaeus was the “chief tax collector”?**

[19:2]

Zacchaeus was the “chief tax collector.” Scholars think he was the leader of several other tax collectors who worked for him.

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

**Why did Jesus say to Zacchaeus, “today I must stay at your house”?**

[19:5]

Scholars think Jesus told Zacchaeus, “today I must stay at your house” because it was God’s will that Jesus stayed with Zacchaeus. They think God planned for salvation to come to Zacchaeus and his house on that day (see: Luke 19:9).

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

**Why did the people complain that Jesus went to visit a man who was a sinner?**

[19:7]

Scholars think the people complained about Jesus going to the house of Zacchaeus because they thought Zacchaeus was a greater sinner than other sinners. Tax collectors often collected more money than the required taxes for themselves. Zacchaeus was a tax collector. Zacchaeus was also a Jew. Therefore, the Jewish people thought he was a traitor.

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#); [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

**Who was a “son of Abraham”?**

[19:9]

The words “son of Abraham” were used to talk about a descendant of Abraham. Abraham was the ancestor of all Jewish people.

See: Luke 3:7-9; 16:24

See: [Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\)](#)

**What did Jesus mean when he said, “Today salvation has come to this house”?**

[19:9]

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about a certain person within the house who was saved on that day. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about Zacchaeus and his family being saved on that day.

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

**19:11-27**

**What was a parable?**

[19:11]

See: [Parable](#)

**What was a “nobleman”?**

[19:12]

A “nobleman” was a man who had been born to a family people honored. Scholars think a nobleman would rule other people. Perhaps this particular nobleman was on his way to Rome to be made a king of Israel.

**What was a “mina”?**

[19:13]

A mina was a unit of money in the Greek money system. It had the value of 100 “drachmas”. One drachma was what someone was paid for one day’s work during this time. Therefore, it would have taken about four months to earn a mina.

See: [Denarius](#)

**19:28-44**

**Why did Luke write he went up to Jerusalem?**

[19:28]

Luke wrote he went up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain.

See Map: Jerusalem

**Where were Bethpage, and the hill that is called Olivet?**

[19:29]

See Map: Bethpage; Mount of Olives (Olivet)

**Why did Jesus send two of his disciples to go into the village and bring back a colt?**

[19:30]

When Jesus asked for a colt upon which he would ride into Jerusalem, it fulfilled a prophecy (see: Zechariah 9:9). Scholars think the “colt” was a young donkey because of the words written by other gospel writers (see: Matthew 21:2-5; John 12:14-15). People thought the donkey was a symbol of humility and peace (see: 1 Kings 1:33-37).

See: [Symbol](#); [Prophecy \(Prophesy\)](#) ; [Gospel](#); [Symbol](#)

### **Why did the disciples cry out, “Blessed is the king who comes in the name of the Lord”?**

[19:38]

Jesus spoke about those who would cry out “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord” (see: Luke 13:35). Scholars think these people said that Jesus is the messiah.

See: Psalm 118:26-29

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Bless \(Blessing\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What is peace in heaven?**

[19:38]

Some scholars think the peace in heaven spoken about in verse 38 is the peace between God and people. Other scholars think this was the salvation of God’s people. The peace of Jerusalem in verse 42 is the same kind of peace.

See: [People of God](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [People of God](#)

### **What did Jesus mean by saying, “the stones would cry out”?**

[19:40]

Jesus said that the stones would cry out. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that it was no more possible for the disciples to be silent, than it would be possible for stones to cry out. Other scholars think that if the disciples were to keep silent, then the stones would be made to proclaim God’s mighty acts. That is, God would make the stones cry out to tell people about the things he does.

See: [Disciple](#)

### **How was there not “one stone upon another”?**

[19:44]

There was not one stone upon another when a Roman army attacked Jerusalem and forced down almost all its walls in about forty years after Jesus died. Some scholars think that when Jesus spoke the words, “One stone upon another”, he was using hyperbole to say the Romans attacked every part of the city and almost nothing was left. The Roman army also destroyed the temple.

See: [Temple](#); [Temple](#)

## **19:45-48**

### **Why did Jesus say the sellers made the temple a den of robbers?**

[19:46]

Jesus said the sellers made the temple a den of robbers because they cheated people by selling animals and exchanging money. When they did this they made much money from people coming to the temple to worship God. Some scholars think Jesus was saying the same things the prophet Jeremiah wrote about when he spoke those words (see: Jeremiah 7:11). They did that because they were greedy. Isaiah prophesied God will make the temple a place for prayer and worship for all people in the future (see: Isaiah 56:7). However, at that time the Jews themselves did not use it for prayer.

See: [Pray \(Prayer\)](#); [Prophet](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Pray \(Prayer\)](#)

### **What did Luke mean when he said the leaders of the people wanted to kill Jesus?**

[19:47] Scholars think the leaders were looking for a way to kill Jesus that would not upset the people. Many people would be angry if the Jewish leaders killed Jesus.

## Why did the Jewish leaders want to kill Jesus?

[19:47] The Jewish leaders wanted to kill Jesus. Some scholars think they did this because they thought Jesus was trying to rule the temple. Other scholars think they did not like what Jesus taught about the Law of Moses. Other scholars think they were afraid that Jesus was starting a revolution. That is, he was going to fight against the Roman Empire. They did not think he could defeat the Romans.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

---

### Luke 19:1

#### General Information:

Verses 1-2 begin to give background information for the events that follow.

### Luke 19:2

#### Behold, there was a man there

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There was a man who was"

#### He was a chief tax collector and was rich

This is background information about Zacchaeus.

### Luke 19:3

#### General Information:

This verse completes the background information begun in [Luke 19:1-2]

#### He was trying

"Zacchaeus was trying"

#### because he was small in height

"because he was short"

### Luke 19:4

#### So he ran

The author has finished giving the background to the event and now begins to describe the event itself.

#### a sycamore tree

"a sycamore fig tree." It produces small round fruit about 2.5 centimeters across. Alternate translation: "a fig tree" or "a tree"

### Luke 19:5

#### the place

"the tree" or "where Zacchaeus was"

### Luke 19:6

#### So he hurried

"So Zacchaeus hurried"

### Luke 19:7

#### they all complained

The Jews hated the tax collectors and did not think any good person should associate with them.

#### He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner

"Jesus has gone into the house of a sinner to visit him"

#### a sinner

"an obvious sinner" or "a real sinner"

### Luke 19:8

#### the Lord

This refers to Jesus.

#### restore four times the amount

"return to them four times as much as I took from them"

### Luke 19:9

#### salvation has come to this house

It was understood that salvation comes from God. Alternate translation: "God has saved this household"

#### this house

The word "house" here refers to the people living in the house or the family.

#### he too

"this man too" or "Zacchaeus also"

#### son of Abraham

Possible meanings are 1) "descendant of Abraham" and 2) "person who has faith as Abraham did."

### Luke 19:10

#### the Son of Man came

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

#### the people who are lost

"the people who have wandered away from God" or "those who by sinning have wandered away from God"

## Luke 19:11

### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the crowd. This verse gives background information about why Jesus tells the parable.

### that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately

The Jews believed that the Messiah would establish the kingdom as soon as he came to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "that Jesus would immediately begin to rule over God's kingdom"

## Luke 19:12

### A certain nobleman

"A certain man who was a member of the ruling class" or "A certain man from an important family"

### to receive for himself a kingdom

This is the image of a lesser king going to a greater king. The greater king would give the lesser king the right and authority to rule over his own country.

## Luke 19:13

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

### He called

"The nobleman called." It may be helpful to state that the man did this before he left to receive his kingdom. Alternate translation: "Before he left, he called"

### gave them ten minas

"gave each of them one mina"

### ten minas

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work, so ten minas would have been about three years' wages. Alternate translation: "ten valuable coins" or "a large amount of money"

### Conduct business

"Trade with this money" or "Use this money in order to earn more"

## Luke 19:14

### his citizens

"the people of his country"

### a delegation

"a group of people to represent them" or "several messengers"

## Luke 19:15

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### having received the kingdom

"after he had become king"

### to be called to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to come to him"

### what profit they had made

"how much money they had earned"

## Luke 19:16

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

### The first

"The first servant"

### came before him

"came before the nobleman"

### your mina has made ten minas more

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: "I used your mina to make a profit of ten more minas"

### mina

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

## Luke 19:17

### Well done

"You have done well." Your language may have a phrase that an employer would use to show approval, such as "Good job."

### very little

This refers to the one mina, which the nobleman apparently did not consider to be a lot of money.

## Luke 19:18

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

### The second

"The second servant"



**Your mina, lord, has made five minas**

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: "Lord, I used your mina to make a profit of five more minas"

**mina**

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

**Luke 19:19**

**You take charge over five cities**

"You will have authority over five cities"

**Luke 19:20**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

**Another came**

"Another servant came"

**mina**

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

**kept safely in a cloth**

"wrapped in a cloth and stored away"

**Luke 19:21**

**a demanding person**

"a stern man" or "a man who expects a lot from his servants"

**You take up what you did not put in**

This was probably a proverb. A person who takes out of storage or out of a bank things that he did not put in is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "You take out what you did not put in" or "You are like a person who takes out what other people put in"

**you reap what you did not sow**

This was probably a proverb. A person who harvests food that someone else has planted is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "you are like a person who reaps the fruit of what other people sowed"

**Luke 19:22**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

**By your own words**

His "words" refer to all that he had said. Alternate translation: "Based on what you have said"

**You knew that I am a demanding person**

The nobleman was repeating what the servant had said about him. He was not saying that it was true. Alternate translation: "You say that I am a demanding person"

**Luke 19:23**

**why did you not put my money ... interest?**

The nobleman uses a question to rebuke the wicked servant. Alternate translation: "you should have put my money ... interest."

**put my money in the bank**

"lent my money to a bank." Cultures that do not have banks might translate it as "let someone borrow my money."

**bank**

A bank is a business that safely holds money for people. A bank lends that money to others for a profit. Therefore it pays an extra amount, or interest, to the people who keep their money in the bank.

**I would have collected it with interest**

"I could have collected that amount plus the interest it would have earned" or "I would have gained a profit from it"

**interest**

Interest is money that a bank pays people who put their money in the bank.

**Luke 19:24**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

**The nobleman**

The nobleman had become king. See how you translated this in Luke 19:12.

**them that stood by**

"the people who were standing near them"

**mina**

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in [Luke 19:13]

**Luke 19:25**

**he has ten minas.**

"he already has ten minas!"

## Luke 19:26

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

### I say to you

It can be stated clearly that the nobleman is speaking. Alternate translation: "And the nobleman replied, 'I say to you' or "But the nobleman said 'I tell you this"

### everyone who has will be given more

It is implied that what he has is the money he earned by using his mina faithfully. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone who uses well what he has been given, I will give him more" or "to everyone who uses well what I have given him I will give more"

### from him that has not

It is implied that the reason he does not have money is because he did not use his mina faithfully. Alternate translation: "from the person who does not use well what I have given him"

### will be taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take away from him"

## Luke 19:27

### these enemies of mine

Since the enemies were not right there, some languages would say "those enemies of mine."

## Luke 19:28

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the nobleman and his servants. This verse tells us what Jesus does after this part of the story.

### When he had said these things

"When Jesus had said these things"

### going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than Jericho, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

## Luke 19:29

### General Information:

Jesus approaches Jerusalem.

### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### when he came near

The word "he" refers to Jesus. His disciples were also traveling with him.

### Bethphage

Bethphage is a village on the Mount of Olives, which is across the Kidron Valley from Jerusalem.

### the mountain that is called Olives

"the hill that is called the Mount of Olives" or "the hill that is called 'Olive Tree Mountain'"

## Luke 19:30

### a colt

"a young donkey" or "a young riding animal"

### that has never been ridden

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that no one has ever ridden"

## Luke 19:31

### If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say

The inner quote can also be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "If any one asks you why you are untying it, say"

## Luke 19:32

### Those who were sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The two disciples that Jesus sent"

## Luke 19:33

### the owners

"the owners of the colt"

## Luke 19:34

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 19:35

### threw their cloaks upon the colt

"put their robes on the young donkey." Cloaks are outer robes.

### set Jesus on it

"helped Jesus get up on and ride on the colt"

## Luke 19:36

### they spread their cloaks

"people spread their cloaks." This is a sign of giving honor to someone.

## Luke 19:37

### As he was now approaching

"As Jesus was going near." Jesus's disciples were traveling with him.

### where the Mount of Olives descends

"where the road goes down from the Mount of Olives"

### mighty works which they had seen

"great things they had seen Jesus do"

## Luke 19:38

### Blessed is the king

They were saying this about Jesus.

### in the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to power and authority. Also, "Lord" refers to God.

### Peace in heaven

"May there be peace in heaven" or "We want to see peace in heaven"

### glory in the highest

"may there be glory in the highest" or "we want to see glory in the highest." The words "the highest" refer to heaven, which is a metonym for God, who lives in heaven. Alternate translation: "Let everyone give glory to God in the highest heaven"

## Luke 19:39

### in the multitude

"in the large crowd"

### rebuke your disciples

"tell your disciples to stop doing these things"

## Luke 19:40

### I tell you

Jesus said this to emphasize what he would say next.

### if these were silent

Jesus is describing something that could have happened but did not. Some translators may need to make it clear what Jesus was implying when he said this. Alternate translation: "I will not rebuke them, for if these people were to be silent"

### the stones would cry out

"the stones would call out praises"

## Luke 19:41

### the city

This refers to Jerusalem.

### he wept over it

To weep over something means to weep because of something. The word "it" refers to the city of Jerusalem, but it represents the people who lived in that city. Alternate translation: "he cried about the people of Jerusalem"

## Luke 19:42

### If only you had known ... bring you peace

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people of Jerusalem had missed the opportunity to be at peace with God.

### you

The word "you" is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of "you" to refer to the people of the city.

### they are hidden from your eyes

"your eyes" refer to the ability to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can no longer see them"

## Luke 19:43

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking.

### For

What follows is the reason for Jesus's sadness.

### the days will come upon you when your enemies

This indicates that they will experience difficult times. Some languages do not talk about time "coming." Alternate translation: "in the future these things will happen to you: Your enemies" or "soon you will endure troublesome times. Your enemies"

### you ... your

The word "you" is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city as he would to a woman. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of "you" to refer to the people of the city.

### barricade

This refers to a wall to keep the people from getting out of the city.

## Luke 19:44

### They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you

Jesus is speaking to the people of the city as if he were speaking to the city itself as he would speak to a woman. He speaks of the people who live in the city as if they are the woman's children, and thus the city's children. To strike down a city is to destroy its walls and buildings, and to strike down its children is to kill those who live in it. Alternate translation: "They will completely destroy you and

kill all who live in you" or "They will completely destroy your city and kill all of you"

**They will not leave one stone upon another**  
 "They will not leave any of the stones in place."  
 Jesus uses hyperbole here to emphasize the extent of the devastation that enemies will cause in Jerusalem. The enemies will completely destroy the city, which is built of stones. Alternate translation: "They will destroy Jerusalem"

**you did not recognize**  
 "you were not aware of" or "you were not grateful during"

**the time of your visitation**  
 The abstract noun "visitation" can be translated as a verb phrase. Alternate translation: "the time when God visited you" or "the time during which God was with you."

**visitation**  
 This is a "visit" by an overseer to make sure that things are going well with those over whom he is in charge, not a casual social visit.

#### Luke 19:45

**Connecting Statement:**  
 This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus enters the temple in Jerusalem.

**Jesus entered the temple**  
 You may need to make explicit that he first entered Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: "Jesus entered Jerusalem and then went to the temple courtyard"

**entered the temple**  
 Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard"

**cast out**  
 "throw out" or "force out"

#### Luke 19:46

**It is written**  
 This is a quotation from Isaiah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The scriptures say" or "A prophet wrote these words in the scriptures"

**My house**  
 The word "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

**house of prayer**  
 "a place where people pray to me"

**a den of robbers**  
 Jesus speaks of the temple as if it were a place where thieves come together. Alternate translation: "a place where thieves hide"

#### Luke 19:47

**Connecting Statement:**  
 This is the end of this part of the story. Verses 47-48 tell about ongoing action that continues after the main part of the story ends.

**in the temple**  
 "in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

**destroy him**  
 This hyperbole refers to killing Jesus. Alternate translation: "kill him"

#### Luke 19:48

**were listening to him intently**  
 "were paying close attention to what Jesus was saying"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 19:2

**Who climbed up a tree to see Jesus, and what was his occupation and position in society?**  
 He was Zacchaeus, a rich tax collector.

### Luke 19:7

**What complaint did everyone make when Jesus went to Zacchaeus' house?**  
 They said, "Jesus has gone to visit a man who is a sinner."

### Luke 19:9

**What did Jesus say about Zacchaeus after Zacchaeus announced his gifts to the poor?**  
 He said, "Today salvation has come to this house."

### Luke 19:11

**What did the people expect would happen when Jesus reached Jerusalem?**  
 They thought that the kingdom of God would appear immediately.

**Luke 19:12**

**In Jesus' parable, where was the nobleman going to travel?**

He was going to a far country to receive a kingdom, and then he would return.

**Luke 19:16**

**What did the nobleman do for the servant who had been faithful and had made ten more minas?**

He gave the servant authority over ten cities.

**Luke 19:17**

**What did Jesus do for the servant who had been faithful and had made ten more minas?**

He gave the servant authority over ten cities.

**Luke 19:18**

**What did the nobleman do for the servant who had been faithful and had made five more minas?**

He gave the servant authority over five cities.

**Luke 19:19**

**What did Jesus do for the servant who had been faithful and had made five more minas?**

He gave the servant authority over five cities.

**Luke 19:21**

**What kind of man did the wicked servant think the nobleman was?**

He thought the nobleman was a severe man.

**Luke 19:24**

**What did the nobleman do with the wicked servant?**

He took away the wicked servant's mina.

**Luke 19:27**

**What did the nobleman do with those who didn't want him to reign over them?**

The nobleman had them killed while he watched.

**Luke 19:30**

**What kind of animal did Jesus ride on as he went into Jerusalem?**

A colt that had never been ridden.

**Luke 19:38**

**What did the crowd cry out as Jesus descended the Mount of Olives?**

They said, "Blessed is the King who comes in the name of the Lord!"

**Luke 19:40**

**What did Jesus say would happen if the people did not cry out rejoicing?**

He said that the stones would cry out.

**Luke 19:41**

**What did Jesus do as he drew near to the city?**

He wept.

**Luke 19:44**

**What did Jesus then prophesy would happen to the people and the city?**

He said that the people would be struck down and that not one stone would be left upon another.

**Luke 19:47**

**Who wanted to kill Jesus as he was teaching in the temple?**

The chief priests and the scribes and the leaders of the people wanted to kill Jesus.

**Luke 19:48**

**Why could they not kill him at this time?**

Because the people were listening to him intently.

## Chapter 20

<sup>1</sup> It came about one day as Jesus was teaching the people in the temple and preaching the gospel that the chief priests and the scribes came to him with the elders. <sup>2</sup> They spoke, saying to him, "Tell us by what authority you do these things, or who it is who gave you this authority."

<sup>3</sup> He answered and said to them, "I will also ask you a question, and you tell me. <sup>4</sup> The baptism of John: Was it from heaven or from men?"

<sup>5</sup> They reasoned with themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Then why did you not believe him?' <sup>6</sup> But if we say, 'From men,' all the people will stone us, for they are persuaded that John was a prophet." <sup>7</sup> So they answered that they did not know where it came from.

<sup>8</sup> Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

<sup>9</sup> He told the people this parable, "A man planted a vineyard, rented it out to vine growers, and went into another country for a long time. <sup>10</sup> At the appointed time he sent a servant to the vine growers, that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard. But the vine growers beat him, and sent him away empty-handed. <sup>11</sup> He then sent yet another servant and they also beat him, treated him shamefully, and sent him away empty-handed. <sup>12</sup> He also sent yet a third and they also wounded him, and threw him out. <sup>13</sup> So the lord of the vineyard said, 'What will I do? I will send my beloved son. Maybe they will respect him.'

<sup>14</sup> "But when the vine growers saw him, they discussed among themselves, saying, 'This is the heir. Let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours.' <sup>15</sup> They threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them? <sup>16</sup> He will come and destroy these vine growers, and will give the vineyard to others."

When they heard it, they said, "May it never be!"

<sup>17</sup> But Jesus looked at them, and said, "What is the meaning of that which is written:

'The stone that the builders rejected  
has become the cornerstone'?

<sup>18</sup> Every one who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces, and the one on whom it falls will be crushed."

<sup>19</sup> So the scribes and the chief priests sought to lay hands on him in that very hour, for they knew that he had spoken this parable against them. But they were afraid of the people. <sup>20</sup> Watching him carefully, they sent out spies who pretended to be righteous, that they might find fault with his speech, so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor. <sup>21</sup> They asked him, saying, "Teacher, we know that you say and teach rightly, and are not partial to anyone, but you teach the truth about the way of God. <sup>22</sup> Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar, or not?"

<sup>23</sup> But Jesus understood their craftiness, and said to them, <sup>24</sup> "Show me a denarius. Whose image and name is on it?"

They said, "Caesar's."

<sup>25</sup> He said to them, "Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." <sup>26</sup> They were not able to find fault with what he had said in front of the people, but marveling at his answer, they were silent.

<sup>27</sup> When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection, <sup>28</sup> they asked him, saying, "Teacher, Moses wrote to us that if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother. <sup>29</sup> There were seven brothers and the first took a wife, and died childless, <sup>30</sup> and the second as well. <sup>31</sup> The third took her, and in the same way the seven also left no children and died. <sup>32</sup> Afterward the woman also died. <sup>33</sup> In the resurrection then, whose wife will she be? For the seven had her as their wife."

<sup>34</sup> Jesus said to them, "The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage. <sup>35</sup> But those who are regarded as worthy in that age to receive the resurrection from the dead will neither marry nor be given in marriage. <sup>36</sup> Neither can they die anymore, for they are equal to the angels and are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection. <sup>37</sup> But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob. <sup>38</sup> Now he is not the God of the dead, but of the living, because all live to him."

<sup>39</sup> Some of the scribes answered, "Teacher, you have answered well." <sup>40</sup> For they did not dare ask him any more questions.

<sup>41</sup> Jesus said to them, "How do they say that the Christ is David's son? <sup>42</sup> For David himself says in the Book of Psalms,

The Lord said to my Lord,  
'Sit at my right hand,  
<sup>43</sup> until I make your enemies  
your footstool.'

<sup>44</sup> David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,' so how is he David's son?"

<sup>45</sup> In the hearing of all the people he said to his disciples, <sup>46</sup> "Beware of the scribes, who desire to walk in long robes and love special greetings in the marketplaces and chief seats in the synagogues and places of honor at feasts. <sup>47</sup> They also devour widows' houses, and for a show they make long prayers. Men like this will receive greater condemnation."

---

## Luke 20 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 20:17, 42-43, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Using questions to trap people

When Jesus asked the Pharisees who gave John the authority to baptize ([Luke 20:4](#)), they could not answer because any answer they gave would give someone a reason to say that they were wrong ([Luke 20:5-6](#)). They thought that they would be able to say that Jesus was wrong when they asked him if people should pay taxes to Caesar ([Luke 20:22](#)), but Jesus gave them an answer that they had not thought of.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. In this chapter, Jesus quotes a psalm that records David calling his son "Lord," that is, "master." However, to the Jews, ancestors were greater than their descendants. In this passage, Jesus is trying to lead his hearers to the true understanding that the Messiah will himself be divine, and that he himself is the Messiah. ([Luke 20:41-44](#)).

---

## Luke 20

### 20:1-8

#### Why did the Jewish leaders ask Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did?

[20:2]

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did. Some scholars think the Jewish leaders were asking Jesus whether a person or God gave him permission to do these things. Other

scholars think the Jewish leaders were asking Jesus to name the Jewish teacher who taught him. In ancient Israel, a teacher learned from another teacher.

See: [Rabbi](#)

### **What were “these things”?**

[20:8]

The Jewish teachers asked “these things”.

1. Some scholars think they asked about the things Jesus taught.
2. Some scholars think that they asked about when Jesus made people to leave the temple because they were selling things.
3. Some scholars think they asked about Jesus riding into Jerusalem on a colt.
4. Some scholars think they asked about Jesus healing people in the temple (see: Matthew 21:14)

See: [Temple](#)

### **Why did Jesus not answer the Jewish leaders?**

[20:8]

Jesus did not answer the Jewish leaders. Some scholars think that Jesus did not answer the question from the Jewish leaders because they would not answer his question to them. The Jewish leaders knew the answer to Jesus’ question.

## **20:9-19**

### **What was a parable?**

[20:9]

See: [Parable](#)

### **Why did Jesus speak about the vine growers?**

[20:10]

Jesus spoke about the vine growers. Scholars think Jesus told this parable to say that the Jewish leaders were just like the vine growers in the parable. When God sent prophets and apostles to the people of Israel, the prophets were killed, and they would soon be killing the apostles (see: Luke 11:47-51; Matthew 23:37-39).

See: [Apostle](#); [Prophet](#); [Apostle](#)

### **What was the “stone” about which Jesus spoke?**

[20:17]

When Jesus spoke about the “stone” rejected by the builders, he was saying what was written in Psalm 118:22-23. This was a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about himself. That is, the Jewish leaders rejected Jesus.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### **What was the “cornerstone” about which Jesus spoke?**

[20:17]



A “cornerstone” was spoken about in two ways in the days of Jesus. It was used to describe the large stone set in the ground that established the corner from which the foundation of a building was measured. It was also used to describe the stone at the top part of an arch. This stone held the arch together. Jesus used the word “cornerstone” as a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about himself. That is, Jesus himself is the foundation upon which the church, that is the body of Christ, is built. He holds all things together.

See: [Body of Christ](#); [Church](#); [Body of Christ](#)

### **How will people be broken or crushed by the stone about which Jesus spoke?**

[20:18]

When Jesus spoke about people falling on the stone, he was speaking about the people who rejected Jesus. When they rejected him, they are forever broken. This was a metaphor. They cannot be at peace with God. When Jesus spoke about the stone crushing people, he meant that God will judge people who reject Jesus. They will be crushed, that is, they will live forever in hell.

See: Isaiah 8:14-15

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Day of Judgment](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#)

## **20:20-26**

### **How did the Jewish leaders try to trick Jesus?**

[20:20]

When the Jewish leaders asked a question about paying taxes, they tried to trick Jesus. They wanted Jesus to say something that made people angry. If Jesus said that people needed to pay taxes, the Jewish people would be angry and stop following him. If Jesus said that people should not pay taxes, then the Romans would be angry with him.

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

### **What were the things that belonged to Caesar?**

[20:25]

Jesus spoke about things that belonged to Caesar. Some scholars think that because the name and face on the coin showed that it belonged to Caesar, then Caesar had the right to collect taxes from the people. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking very specifically about giving to Caesar what was due to him. That is, taxes and honor.

See: [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#); [Tax \(Tax Collector, Toll\)](#)

### **What are the things that belong to God?**

[20:25]

Jesus spoke about things that belong to God. Scholars think that when Jesus spoke about the things that belong to God he was speaking about how people must worship, love, and obey God.

## **20:27-40**

### **Who were the Sadducees?**

[20:27]

See: [Sadducees](#)

### **What is the “resurrection”?**

[20:27]

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

**What did Jesus mean by saying that people who are resurrected will not “die anymore”?**

[20:36]

The people who follow Jesus and are resurrected will never die again. That is, they will live together in God in heaven.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “they are equal to angels”?**

[20:36]

Jesus said that those who are resurrected are “equal to angels”. He wanted people to know that they will never die. Angels do not die.

**Advice to Translators:** People who are resurrected do not become angels, rather they are like the angels in that they do not die. The translation must be clear to make that distinction.

See: [Angel](#)

**Why did Jesus use the words “sons of God” to describe those who are resurrected?**

[20:36]

People who believe in Jesus are “sons of God.” They are not sons of God in the same way Jesus is the Son of God.

See: [Son of God](#); [Son of God](#)

**Why did Jesus talk about Moses and the bush?**

[20:37]

Jesus talked about Moses and the burning bush. Scholars think that because God revealed himself as the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, these men are still alive in heaven. Jesus used the story of Moses and the bush so that people would know that there is a resurrection of the dead.

See: Exodus 3:6

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

**20:41-44**

**Why did the ancient Jews believe the messiah is the Son of David?**

[20:41]

The ancient Jews believed the messiah is the Son of David because it was written about in the Old Testament (see: Jeremiah 30:9; Ezekiel 34:23-24; 37:24-25; Hosea 3:5). Jesus also believed this.

See: Matthew 22:41-42; Mark 12:35

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Son of David](#); [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

**What was meant by the words, “The Lord said to my Lord”?**

[20:42]

The Hebrew used two words for “Lord” in Psalm 110:1. The first use of the word is also the name Yahweh, which is the name of the God of Israel. The second use of the word “Lord” is translated as Lord and master.

See: [Lord](#); [Lord](#)

### How was Jesus both David's Lord and his son?

[20:41, 20:42]

Jesus was David's "Lord" because Jesus is God. However, Jesus was also David's son because Jesus was a descendant of David.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\)](#); [Jesus is God](#); [Son of David](#); [Ancestor and Descendant \(Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs\)](#)

### 20:45-47

#### Who were the scribes?

[20:46]

See: [Scribe](#)

#### How did the scribes "devour widows' houses"?

[20:47]

The scribes devour widows' houses. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about widows who were wealthy and the scribes were taking a very large donations from those widows. Other scholars think the scribes took the things the widows owned. Other scholars think the scribes, in helping widows, took more from the widows than what they should have taken for helping them.

See: [Scribe](#)

#### Why will the scribes "receive greater condemnation"?

[20:47]

The scribes will receive greater condemnation. Scholars think that God will punish the scribes more severely than other people who will be judged and punished.

See: [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Condemn \(Condemnation\)](#); [Judge \(Judgment\)](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#)

### Luke 20:1

#### Connecting Statement:

The chief priests, scribes, and elders question Jesus in the temple.

#### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

#### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

### Luke 20:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Luke 20:3

#### General Information:

Jesus responds to the chief priests, scribes, and elders.

#### He answered and said to them

"Jesus replied"

#### I will also ask you a question, and you tell me

The words "I will ... ask you a question" are a statement. The words "you tell me" are a command.

### Luke 20:4

#### Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus knows that John's authority comes from heaven, so he is not asking for information. He asks the question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. This question is rhetorical, but you will probably have to translate it as a question. Alternate translation: "Do

you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

**from heaven**

"from God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him.

**Luke 20:5**

**They reasoned**

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

**with themselves**

"among themselves" or "with each other"

**If we say, 'From heaven,' he**

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "If we say that John's authority is from heaven, he"

**From heaven**

"From God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him. See how these words are translated in [Luke 20:4]

**he will say**

"Jesus will say"

**Luke 20:6**

**if we say, 'From men,'**

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "if we say that John's authority is from men,"

**stone us**

"kill us by throwing stones on us." God's Law commanded that his people stone those of his people who mocked him or his prophets.

**Luke 20:7**

**So they answered**

"So the chief priests, scribes and elders answered." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they had reasoned with themselves ([Luke 20:5-6](#)), and they did not have an answer they wanted to say.

**they answered that they did not know where it came from.**

This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

**where it came from**

"where John's baptism came from." Alternate translation: "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

**Luke 20:8**

**Neither will I tell you**

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

**Luke 20:9**

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the temple courtyard.

**rented it out to vine growers**

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

**vine growers**

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

**Luke 20:10**

**the appointed time**

"the time they had agreed to pay him." This would have been at the harvest time.

**of the fruit of the vineyard**

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard." It could also refer to the things they made from grapes or the money they earned by selling the grapes.

**sent him away empty-handed**

An empty hand is a metaphor for "nothing." Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without the grapes"

**Luke 20:11**

**beat him**

"beat that servant"

**treated him shamefully**

"humiliated him"

**sent him away empty-handed**

Having an empty hand is a metaphor for having nothing. Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without any grapes"

**Luke 20:12**

**yet a third**

"even a third servant" or "yet another servant." The word "yet" hints at the fact that the landowner should not have had to send the second servant, but he went beyond that and sent a third servant.

**wounded him**  
"injured that servant"

**threw him out**  
"threw him out of the vineyard"

### **Luke 20:13**

**What will I do?**  
This question emphasizes that the vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do.  
Alternate translation: "Here is what I will do:"

### **Luke 20:14**

**when the vine growers saw him**  
"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

**Let us kill him**  
They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the heir.

### **Luke 20:15**

**They threw him out of the vineyard**  
"The vine growers forced the son out of the vineyard"

**What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?**  
Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do.  
Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

### **Luke 20:16**

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus finishes telling his parable to the crowd.

**May it never be**  
"May it never happen"

### **Luke 20:17**

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

**But Jesus looked at them**  
"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

**What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'?**  
Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

**that which is written**  
"this scripture"

**The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone**  
This is the first of three metaphors in a prophecy from the book of Psalms. This one refers to the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use, but that God made the most important stone.

**The stone that the builders rejected**  
"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

**the builders**  
This refers to the religious rulers who are rejecting Jesus as Messiah.

**the cornerstone**  
"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

### **Luke 20:18**

**Every one who falls ... broken to pieces**  
This second metaphor speaks of people who reject the Messiah as if they fall over a stone and are injured.

**will be broken to pieces**  
This is a result of falling onto the stone. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will break up into pieces"

**the one on whom it falls**  
"the one that stone falls on." This third metaphor speaks about the Messiah judging those who reject him as if he were a large stone that would crush them.

### **Luke 20:19**

**sought to lay hands on him**  
In this verse, to "lay hands on" someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

**in that very hour**  
"immediately"

**they were afraid of the people**  
This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him. Alternate translation: "they did not arrest him because they were afraid of the people"

### **Luke 20:20**

**they sent out spies**  
"the scribes and chief priests sent spies to watch Jesus"

**that they might find fault with his speech**

"because they wanted to accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

**to the rule and to the authority of the governor**

"Rule" and "authority" are two ways of saying that they wanted the governor to judge Jesus. It can be translated with one or both expressions. Alternate translation: "so that the governor would punish Jesus"

## Luke 20:21

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the beginning of the next event in the story. Some time has passed since Jesus was questioned in the temple by the chief priests. The spies are now questioning Jesus.

**They asked him**

"The spies asked Jesus"

**Teacher, we know ... way of God**

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

**we know**

"we" refers only to the spies.

**are not partial to anyone**

Possible meanings are 1) "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or 2) "you do not favor one person over another"

**but you teach the truth about the way of God**

This is part of what the spies were saying that they knew about Jesus.

## Luke 20:22

**Is it lawful ... or not?**

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

**Is it lawful**

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

**Caesar**

Because Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government, they could refer to the Roman government by Caesar's name.

## Luke 20:23

**But Jesus understood their craftiness**

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him." The word "their" refers to the spies.

## Luke 20:24

**a denarius**

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

**Whose image and name is on it?**

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose image and name do you see on it?"

**image and name**

"picture and name"

## Luke 20:25

**He said to them**

"Then Jesus said to them"

**Caesar**

Here "Caesar" refers to the Roman government.

**and to God**

The word "give" is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

## Luke 20:26

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of this event about the spies and the part of the story which began in Luke 20:1.

**They were not able to find fault with what he had said**

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what he said"

**but marveling at his answer, they were silent**

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

## Luke 20:27

**General Information:**

We do not know where this takes place, though it possibly takes place in the temple courtyard. Jesus is talking with some Sadducees.

**the ones who say that there is no resurrection**

This phrase identifies the Sadducees as being the group of Jews that say that no one would rise from the dead. It does not imply that some Sadducees believed that there is a resurrection and some did not.

## Luke 20:28

**if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless**

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children"

**the man should take the brother's wife**

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

**raise up children for his brother**

The Jews considered the first son born to a woman who married her dead husband's brother as if he were the son of the woman's first husband. This son inherited the property of his mother's first husband and carried on his name.

## Luke 20:29

**General Information:**

The Sadducees tell Jesus a short story in verses 29-32. This is a story they made up as an example. In verse 33, they ask Jesus a question about the story they told.

**There were seven brothers**

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that they made up to test Jesus.

**the first**

"brother number one" or "the oldest"

**died childless**

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

## Luke 20:30

**the second as well**

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second married her and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married her and died without having any children"

**the second**

"brother number two" or "the oldest brother who was still alive"

## Luke 20:31

**The third took her**

"The third married her"

**The third**

"Brother number three" or "The oldest brother who was still alive"

**and in the same way the seven also left no children and died**

The speakers kept the story short by omitting details. Alternate translation: "in the same way the

rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

**the seven**

"all seven of the brothers" or "each of the seven brothers"

## Luke 20:32

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 20:33

**Connecting Statement:**

The Sadducees finish asking Jesus their question.

**In the resurrection**

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again." Some languages have a way of showing that the Sadducees did not believe that there would be a resurrection, such as "In the supposed resurrection" or "When dead people are supposedly raised from the dead."

## Luke 20:34

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to answer the Sadducees.

**The sons of this age**

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

**marry and are given in marriage**

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "get married"

## Luke 20:35

**those who are regarded as worthy in that age**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people in that age whom God will consider to be worthy"

**to receive the resurrection from the dead**

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death"

**from the dead**

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To receive resurrection from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**will neither marry nor be given in marriage**

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not marry" or "will not get married." This is after the resurrection.

## Luke 20:36

### Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

### are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has brought them back from the dead"

## Luke 20:37

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes answering the Sadducees.

### But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees might not have been surprised that some scriptures say that the dead are raised, but they did not expect Moses to have written something like that. Alternate translation: "But even Moses showed that dead people rise from the dead"

### the dead are raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God causes the dead to live again"

### in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord

The implied information can be supplied. Alternate translation: "in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being"

### the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

## Luke 20:38

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Jesus explains how this story proves that people rise from the dead.

### he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

These two phrases have similar meaning. They are used together for emphasis. Some languages have different ways of showing emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Lord is the God of living people only"

### but of the living

"but the God of living people." Since these people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually. Alternate translation: "but the God of people whose spirits are alive, even though their bodies may have died"

### because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because their spirits are alive in God's presence"

## Luke 20:39

### Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

## Luke 20:40

### For they

It is unclear if this refers to the scribes, or the Sadducees, or both. It is best to keep the statement general.

### they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." They understood that they did not know as much as Jesus did, but they did not want to say that. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they did not ask him any more tricky questions because they feared that his wise answers would make them appear foolish again"

## Luke 20:41

### General Information:

Jesus asks the scribes a question.

### How do they say ... son?

"Why do they say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

### they say

The prophets, the religious rulers, and the Jewish people in general knew that the Messiah was the son of David. Alternate translation: "everyone says" or "people say"

### David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

## Luke 20:42

### The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord" or "God said to my Lord"

### my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

### Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God.



Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Luke 20:43

**until I make your enemies your footstool**

The Messiah's enemies are spoken of as if they were furniture on which he would rest his feet. This was an image of submission. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you" or "until I conquer your enemies for you"

#### Luke 20:44

**David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'**

In the culture of that time, a father was more respected than a son. David's use of the title 'Lord' for the Christ implies that he was greater than David.

**so how is he David's son?**

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "and this shows that the Christ is not merely David's descendant"

#### Luke 20:45

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus now directs his attention to his disciples and speaks mainly to them.

#### Luke 20:46

**Beware of**

"Be on guard against"

**who desire to walk in long robes**

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

#### Luke 20:47

**They also devour widows' houses**

"They also eat up widows' houses." The scribes are spoken of as if they were hungry animals that eat up the widows' houses. The word "houses" is a synecdoche for both where the widow lives and all the possessions she puts in her home. Alternate translation: "They also take away from widows all their possessions"

**for a show they make long prayers**

"they pretend to be righteous and make long prayers" or "they make long prayers so that people will see them"

**Men like this will receive greater condemnation**

"They will receive a more severe judgment." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them very severely"

## ULB Translation Questions

#### Luke 20:4

**When the Jewish leaders asked Jesus by what authority he taught, what question did Jesus ask them?**  
He asked, "Was the baptism of John from heaven or from men?"

#### Luke 20:5

**If they answered, "from heaven," what did the Jewish leaders think that Jesus would say to them?**  
The Jewish leaders thought that Jesus would say, "Then why did you not believe him?"

#### Luke 20:6

**If they answered, "from men," what did they think that the people would do to them?**  
They thought that the people would stone them.

#### Luke 20:11

**In Jesus' parable, what did the vine dressers do when the lord sent his servants to get the fruit of the vineyard?**  
They beat the servants, treated them shamefully, and sent them away empty-handed.

#### Luke 20:12

**In Jesus' parable, what did the vine dressers do when the lord sent his servants to get the fruit of the vineyard?**  
They beat the servants, treated them shamefully, and sent them away empty-handed.

#### Luke 20:13

**Finally, who did the lord send to the vine dressers?**  
He sent his beloved son.

#### Luke 20:15

**What did the vine dressers do when the son came to the vineyard?**  
They threw him out of the vineyard and killed him.

#### Luke 20:16

**What will the lord of the vineyard do to those vine dressers?**  
He will destroy those vine dressers and give the vineyard to others.

**Luke 20:19**

**Who did Jesus tell this parable against?**

He told this parable against the scribes and the chief priests.

**Luke 20:25**

**How did Jesus answer the question about whether or not it was lawful to pay taxes to Caesar?**

He said to give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's.

**Luke 20:27**

**What event did the Sadducees not believe in?**

They did not believe in the resurrection of the dead.

**Luke 20:34**

**What did Jesus say about marriage in this world and in eternity?**

In this world there is marriage, but there is not marriage in eternity.

**Luke 20:35**

**What did Jesus say about marriage in this world and in eternity?**

In this world there is marriage, but there is not marriage in eternity.

**Luke 20:37**

**What Old Testament story did Jesus recall to prove the truth of the resurrection?**

He recalled the story of Moses and the bush, in which Moses calls the Lord the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob.

**Luke 20:42**

**Which statement of David from the Psalms did Jesus quote in his question to the scribes?**

He quoted, "The Lord said to my Lord, sit at my right hand, until I make your enemies your footstool."

**Luke 20:43**

**Which statement of David from the Psalms did Jesus quote in his question to the scribes?**

He quoted, "The Lord said to my Lord, sit at my right hand, until I make your enemies your footstool."

**Luke 20:47**

**Behind their outwardly righteous actions, what wicked things were the scribes doing?**

They were devouring widows' houses, and pretentiously making long prayers.

**How did Jesus say these scribes would be judged?**

They will receive a greater condemnation.

## Chapter 21

<sup>1</sup> Jesus looked up and saw the rich men who were putting their gifts into the treasury. <sup>2</sup> He saw a certain poor widow putting in two mites. <sup>3</sup> So he said, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all of them. <sup>4</sup> All of these gave gifts out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all she had to live on."

<sup>5</sup> As some spoke of the temple, how it was decorated with beautiful stones and offerings, he said, <sup>6</sup> "As for these things that you see, the days will come when not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down." <sup>7</sup> So they asked him, saying, "Teacher, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when these things are about to happen?" <sup>8</sup> Jesus answered, "Be careful that you are not deceived. For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,' and, 'The time is near.' Do not go after them. <sup>9</sup> When you hear of wars and riots, do not be terrified, for these things must happen first, but the end will not happen immediately."

<sup>10</sup> Then he said to them, "Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. <sup>11</sup> There will be great earthquakes, and in various places famines and plagues. There will be terrifying events and great signs from heaven. <sup>12</sup> But before all of these things, they will lay their hands on you and will persecute you, delivering you over to the synagogues and prisons, bringing you before kings and governors because of my name. <sup>13</sup> It will lead to an opportunity for your testimony. <sup>14</sup> Therefore resolve in your hearts not to prepare your defense ahead of time, <sup>15</sup> for I will give you words and wisdom that all your adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict. <sup>16</sup> But you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends, and they will put some of you to death. <sup>17</sup> You will be hated by everyone because of my name. <sup>18</sup> But not a hair from your head will perish. <sup>19</sup> In your endurance you will gain your lives.

<sup>20</sup> "When you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then recognize that its desolation is near. <sup>21</sup> Then let those in Judea flee to the mountains, let those who are in the city leave it, and those who are out in the country must not enter the city. <sup>22</sup> For these are days of vengeance, so that all the things that are written will be fulfilled. <sup>23</sup> Woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing in those days! For there will be great distress upon the land, and wrath to this people. <sup>24</sup> They will fall by the edge of the sword, and they will be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

<sup>25</sup> "There will be signs in the sun, in the moon, and in the stars, and on the earth. The nations will be in distress, anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves. <sup>26</sup> There will be men fainting from fear and from expectation of the things which are coming upon the world. For the powers of the heavens will be shaken. <sup>27</sup> Then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. <sup>28</sup> But when these things begin to happen, stand up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is coming near."

<sup>29</sup> Jesus told them a parable, "Look at the fig tree, and all the trees. <sup>30</sup> When they sprout buds, you see for yourselves and know that summer is already near. <sup>31</sup> So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that the kingdom of God is near. <sup>32</sup> Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place. <sup>33</sup> Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.

<sup>34</sup> "But pay attention to yourselves, so that your hearts are not burdened with excessive drinking and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day does not close on you suddenly <sup>35</sup> like a trap. For it will come upon everyone living on the face of the whole earth. <sup>36</sup> But be alert at all times, praying that you may be strong enough to escape all these things that will take place, and to stand before the Son of Man."

<sup>37</sup> So during the days he was teaching in the temple, and at night he went out and stayed on the mountain that is called Olives. <sup>38</sup> All of the people came early in the morning to hear him in the temple.

---

## Luke 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Jesus told his disciples much about what would happen before he returned.

### Special concepts in this chapter

**"For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,'"**

Jesus taught that before he returned many people would falsely claim to be him returning. It will also be a time when many people will hate Jesus's followers and even want to kill them.

**"Until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled"**

The Jews spoke of the time between when the Babylonians forced their ancestors to go to Babylon and the time when the Messiah would come as "the times of the Gentiles," the time when the Gentiles would rule over the Jews.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

**"Son of Man"**

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---

## Luke 21

### 21:1-4

#### What were mites?

[21:2]

Mites were a type of coin. They were tiny, copper coins that had very little value (see: Mark 12:42). In ancient times, a person would earn about 100 mites in a day.

See: [Denarius](#)

#### Why did Jesus say the widow gave more than other people?

[21:3]

Jesus said the widow gave more than other people. She did not give as much money as other people. However, Jesus said this because she gave everything she had. However, the rich only gave a small part of what they had.

### 21:5-38

#### Why did Jesus say, "not one stone will be left on another"?

[21:6]

Jesus said "not one stone will be left on another." This was a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about the Romans destroying the temple and many of the walls in Jerusalem. This happened about forty years after Jesus died.

See: [Temple](#); [Temple](#)

#### What were the things which were about to happen?

[21:7]

Certain things were about to happen. Scholars think the disciples were asking when the temple would be destroyed.

See: Matthew 24:3

See: [Temple](#); [Temple](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “the end will not happen immediately”?**

[21:9]

Jesus said, “the end will not happen immediately”. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about the Romans destroying the temple in Jerusalem, but he was also thinking about when he returns.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

**What are the “terrifying events” and the “great signs from heaven”?**

[21:11]

Jesus spoke about “terrifying events” and “great signs from heaven.” Scholars think Jesus was speaking about things that happen in the sky. People have never seen these things before and it caused them to fear greatly. Perhaps they will affect the whole universe. They think Jesus was speaking about comets and meteors, such as have never been seen before.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “they will lay their hands on you”?**

[21:12]

Jesus told the disciples “they will lay their hands on you.” He wanted them to know that some of them will be arrested, imprisoned, and tortured.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Laying on of Hands](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#).

**How will Jesus give “words and wisdom” to the disciples?**

[21:15]

When Jesus told the disciples he would give them “words and wisdom,” he wanted them to know that the Holy Spirit would help the disciples know how to live in a way that honors God.

See: [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Reveal \(Revelation\)](#)

**What did it mean to be “given over”?**

[21:16]

Someone who is “given over” or “delivered up” is betrayed. People help the leaders to arrest them so they can be punished.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “not a hair of your head will perish”?**

[21:18]

Jesus said, “not a hair of your head will perish.” Some scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to know that people could not harm the disciples without God giving them permission to do this. However, more scholars think Jesus was speaking about God protecting the disciples. They will live forever with God in heaven forever. God will not punish them, even if people punish them on earth.

See: [Eternal Life](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Heaven](#); [Eternal Life](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “In your endurance you will gain your lives”?**

[21:19]

Jesus said, “In your endurance you will gain your lives” or “souls”. Scholars think Jesus wanted people to keep trusting in God when they were persecuted.

See: [Soul](#); [Soul](#)

### **Why did Jesus say woe to those who are pregnant or nursing in those days?**

[21:23]

Jesus said, “woe”(ὠαί/g3759) to those who are pregnant or nursing in those days. The things Jesus spoke were going to happen suddenly. This will make it more difficult for a pregnant or nursing mother.

See: [Last Days](#); [Last Days](#)

### **What was “the times of the Gentiles”?**

[21:24]

The words “time of the Gentiles” refer to a certain period of time when the Gentiles will do something.” Some scholars think it is a certain period of time when God will allow the Gentiles to destroy Jerusalem. Other scholars believe it is a certain period of time when Gentiles will be saved (see: Romans 11:25).

See: [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#); [Save \(Salvation, Saved from Sins\)](#)

### **What were the signs in the sun, moon, and the stars?**

[21:25]

Jesus spoke about the signs in the sun, moon, and the stars. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about changes in the sun, moon, and stars (see: Matthew 24:29; Mark 13:24). These things looked different than they have always looked.

See: Isaiah 34:4; Joel 2:30-31

See: [Last Days](#); [Last Days](#)

### **What was a parable?**

[21:29]

See: [Parable](#)

### **What was a fig tree?**

[21:29]

See: Luke 13:6

### **What was meant by the words, “the kingdom of God is near”?**

[21:31]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God is near. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that the “kingdom of God” would begin soon. Other scholars think Jesus was saying the “kingdom of God” had already begun because God began ruling Christians in some way that he did not before.

See: [Kingdom of God](#)

### **What was “this generation”?**

[21:32]

Jesus spoke about this “generation.”

1. Some scholars think a future generation will see Jesus return.

2. Some scholars think the generation was the generation who saw Jesus and the temple in Jerusalem destroyed about forty years after Jesus died.
3. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about the Jewish people. There will still be Jews when Jesus returns.
4. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about evil people. There will always be evil people until Jesus returns (see: Luke 11:29-32, 50-51).

See: [Temple](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Temple](#)

### Why did Jesus command people to be alert and pray at all times?

[21:36]

Jesus wanted people to be alert and pray at all times. Scholars think that Jesus wanted Christians to be ready for him to return at any moment. That is, they must not become tired of waiting and then start to sin again.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

### Who is the "Son of Man"?

[21:36]

See: [Son of Man](#)

#### Luke 21:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins teaching his disciples, but it is uncertain whether this occurs on the same day that the Sadducees question Jesus

##### gifts

You may need to make explicit what the gifts are.  
Alternate translation: "gifts of money"

##### treasury

The "treasury" means the boxes in the temple courtyard where people put money as a gift to God.

#### Luke 21:2

##### a certain poor widow

This is a way of introducing a new character to the story.

##### two mites

"two small coins" or "two tiny copper coins." These were the least valuable of the coins people used then. Alternate translation: "two pennies" or "two small coins of little value"

#### Luke 21:3

##### Truly I say to you

This means that what Jesus was about to say was very important.

##### I say to you

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural.

##### this poor widow put in more than all of them

God considers her gift, a small amount of money, more significant than the large amounts of money the men gave. Alternate translation: "the small gift of this widow is more valuable than the larger gifts of the rich men"

#### Luke 21:4

##### gave gifts out of their abundance

"have a lot of money but only gave a small portion of it"

##### out of her poverty

"who has very little money"

#### Luke 21:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus switches from talking about the widow to teaching about the temple.

##### offerings

things people had given to God

#### Luke 21:6

##### these things that you see

This refers to the beautiful temple and its decorations.

**the days will come when**

"there will be a time when" or "someday"

**when not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down**

Jesus uses hyperbole here to emphasize the extent of the devastation that enemies will cause to the temple. The enemies will completely destroy the temple, which is built of stones. Alternate translation: "when all these things will be destroyed" or "when enemies will destroy all of these things"

**not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "every stone will be removed from its place and torn down"

**left on another which will not be torn down**

A new sentence can be started here, and it can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "left on another. They will all be torn down" or "left on another. Enemies will tear down every stone"

**Luke 21:7**

**they asked him**

"the disciples asked Jesus" or "Jesus's disciples asked him"

**these things**

This refers to what Jesus has just said about enemies destroying the temple.

**Luke 21:8**

**that you are not deceived**

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural. Alternate translation: "that you do not believe lies" or "that no one deceives you"

**in my name**

People coming in his name claim to represent him. Alternate translation: "claiming to be me" or "claiming to have my authority"

**I am he**

"I am the Christ" or "I am the Messiah"

**Do not go after them**

"Do not believe them" or "Do not become their disciples"

**Luke 21:9**

**wars and riots**

Here "wars" probably refers to fighting between countries, and "riots" probably refers to people fighting against their own leaders or against others in their country. Alternate translation: "wars and rebellions" or "wars and revolutions"

**do not be terrified**

"do not let these things terrify you" or "do not be afraid"

**the end**

Possible meanings are: (1) The end of the era in which the disciples to whom Jesus spoke were in at the time. Alternate translation: "the end of the age" or (2) The end of the heavens and earth as we know them. Alternate translation: "the end of the world"

**will not happen immediately**

Implied word can be supplied here. Alternate translation: "will not happen immediately after the wars and riots" or "will not happen immediately after those things happen"

**Luke 21:10**

**Then he said to them**

"Then Jesus said to his disciples." Since this is a continuation of Jesus speaking from the previous verse, some languages may prefer not to say "Then he said to them."

**Nation will rise against nation**

Here "nation" is a metonym for the people of the nation, and "rise against" is a metonym for attack. The word "nation" represents nations in general, not one particular nation. Alternate translation: "The people of one nation will attack the people of other nations" or "The people of some nations will attack the people of other nations"

**Nation**

This refers to ethnic groups of people rather than to countries.

**kingdom against kingdom**

The words "will rise" are understood from the previous phrase and mean attack. Alternate translation: "kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of some kingdoms will attack the people of other kingdoms"

**Luke 21:11**

**in various places famines and plagues**

The words "there will be" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "there will be famines and plagues in many places" or "there will be times of hunger and diseases in different places"

**terrifying events**

"events that terrify people" or "events that cause people to be very afraid"

**Luke 21:12**

**these things**

This refers to the terrible things that Jesus has said will happen.



**they will lay their hands on you**  
 "they will grab you." This expression refers to people exercising authority over the disciples.  
 Alternate translation: "they will arrest you"

**they will**  
 "people will" or "enemies will"

**you**  
 Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural.

**delivering you over to the synagogues**  
 The word "synagogues" is a metonym for the people in the synagogues, specifically the leaders.  
 Alternate translation: "giving you over to the leaders of the synagogues" or "taking you to the synagogues so that the people there can do to you whatever they want to do"

**and prisons**  
 "and delivering you over to the prisons" or "and putting you in prisons"

**because of my name**  
 The word "name" is here used to refer to Jesus himself. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### **Luke 21:13**

**for your testimony**  
 "for you to tell them your testimony about me"

#### **Luke 21:14**

**Therefore**  
 "Because of this," referring to everything Jesus has said, beginning in [Luke 21:10]

**resolve in your hearts**  
 Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds.  
 Alternate translation: "make up your mind" or "decide firmly"

**not to prepare your defense ahead of time**  
 "not to figure out ahead of time what you will say in order to defend yourself against their accusations"

#### **Luke 21:15**

**wisdom that all your adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict**  
 "wisdom that none of your adversaries will be able to resist or contradict"

**I will give you words and wisdom**  
 "I will tell you what wise things to say"

**words and wisdom**  
 These can be combined into one phrase. Alternate translation: "words of wisdom" or "wise words"

**contradict**  
 show to be false

#### **Luke 21:16**

**you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends**  
 This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "even your parents, brothers, relatives, and friends will give you over to the authorities"

**they will put some of you to death**  
 "they will kill some of you." Possible meanings are 1) "the authorities will kill some of you" or 2) "those who deliver you up will kill some of you." The first meaning is more likely.

#### **Luke 21:17**

**You will be hated by everyone**  
 This can be translated in active form. The word "everyone" emphasizes how many people will hate the disciples, either through 1) exaggeration  
 Alternate translation: "It will seem like you are hated by everyone" or "It will seem like everyone hates you" or 2) a generalization. Alternate translation: "You will be hated by most people" or "Most people will hate you"

**because of my name**  
 "my name" here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### **Luke 21:18**

**But not a hair from your head will perish**  
 Jesus speaks of one of the smallest parts of a person. He is emphasizing that the whole person will not perish. Jesus had already said that some of them would be put to death, so some understand this to mean that they would not be harmed spiritually. Alternate translation: "But these things cannot really harm you" or "Even every hair on your head will be safe"

#### **Luke 21:19**

**In your endurance**  
 "By holding firm." This can be stated in the opposite way. Alternate translation: "If you do not quit"

**you will gain your lives**  
 "you will save yourselves"

#### **Luke 21:20**

**Jerusalem surrounded by armies**  
 This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "armies surrounding Jerusalem"

**that its desolation is near**

The word "desolation," which describes a place that is empty, is a metonym for Jerusalem after it has been destroyed and the Jews can no longer live there. Alternate translation: "that it will soon be destroyed" or "that they will soon destroy it"

**Luke 21:21**

**flee**

run away from danger

**in the country**

This refers to the rural areas outside Jerusalem, and not to the nation. Alternate translation: "outside the city"

**enter the city**

"enter Jerusalem"

**Luke 21:22**

**these are days of vengeance**

"these are days of punishment" or "this will be the time when God will punish this city"

**all the things that are written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the things that the prophets wrote in the scriptures long ago"

**will be fulfilled**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will happen"

**Luke 21:23**

**to those who are nursing**

"to mothers who are nursing their babies"

**there will be great distress upon the land**

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the land will be distressed or 2) there will be physical disasters in the land.

**wrath to this people**

"there will be wrath to the people at that time." God will bring this wrath. Alternate translation: "this people will experience God's anger" or "God will be very angry and will punish this people"

**Luke 21:24**

**They will fall by the edge of the sword**

"They will be killed by the edge of the sword." Here "fall by the edge of the sword" represents being killed by enemy soldiers. Alternate translation: "Enemy soldiers will kill them"

**they will be led captive into all the nations**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their enemies will capture them and take them to other countries"

**into all the nations**

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that they will be led into many countries. Alternate translation: "into many other countries"

**Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles**

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles will conquer Jerusalem and occupy it or 2) the Gentiles will destroy the city of Jerusalem or 3) the Gentiles will destroy the people of Jerusalem.

**trampled by the Gentiles**

This metaphor speaks of Jerusalem as if the people of other nations was walking on it and crushing it down with their feet. This refers to domination. Alternate translation: "conquered by the Gentiles" or "destroyed by the other nations"

**the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the period of the Gentiles has come to an end"

**Luke 21:25**

**The nations will be in distress**

Here "the nations" refers to the people in them. Alternate translation: "The people of the nations will be distressed"

**distress, anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves**

"distress because they will be anxious about the roar of the sea and its waves" or "distress, and the loud noise of the sea and its rough movements will frighten them." This seems to refer to unusual storms or disasters involving the seas.

**Luke 21:26**

**the things which are coming upon the world**

"the things that will happen in the world" or "the things that will happen to the world"

**the powers of the heavens will be shaken**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "God will shake the sun, moon, and stars so they will not move in their normal ways" or 2) "God will trouble the powerful spirits in the heavens." The first is recommended.

**Luke 21:27**

**Son of Man coming**

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son Man, coming"

**coming in a cloud**  
"coming down in a cloud"

**with power and great glory**  
Here "power" probably refers to his authority to judge the world. Here "glory" may refer to a bright light. God sometimes shows his greatness with a very bright light. Alternate translation: "powerfully and gloriously" or "and he will be powerful and very glorious"

### Luke 21:28

**stand up**  
Sometimes when people are afraid, they crouch down in order to avoid being seen or hurt. When they are no longer afraid, they get up. Alternate translation: "stand up with confidence"

**lift up your heads**  
Lifting the head is a metonym for looking up. When they lift their heads up, they will be able to see their rescuer coming to them. Alternate translation: "look up"

**because your redemption is coming near**  
God, who redeems, is spoken of as if he were the redemption that he causes. The word "redemption" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "because God will soon redeem you"

**redemption**  
God rescuing his people from those who want to harm them is spoken of as if he were buying back people who had become slaves because they could not pay their debts. Alternate translation: "rescue" or "salvation"

### Luke 21:29

**Connecting Statement:**  
As Jesus continues teaching his disciples, he tells them a parable.

### Luke 21:30

**When they sprout buds**  
"When new leaves start to grow"

**summer is already near**  
"summer is about to start." Summer in Israel follows the sprouting of fig tree leaves and is the time when the figs ripen. Alternate translation: "harvest time is ready to start"

### Luke 21:31

**So also, when you see these things happening**  
The appearance of the signs that Jesus just described signal the arrival of the kingdom of God

just as appearance of the leaves of the fig tree signal the arrival of summer.

**the kingdom of God is near**  
"God will soon establish his kingdom." Alternate translation: "God will soon rule as king"

### Luke 21:32

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus continues teaching his disciples.

**Truly I say to you**  
This expression emphasizes the importance of what Jesus is about to say.

**this generation**  
Possible meanings are 1) the generation that will see the first of the signs Jesus speaks of or 2) the generation Jesus is speaking to. The first is more likely.

**will not pass away until**  
This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will still be alive when"

### Luke 21:33

**Heaven and earth will pass away**  
"Heaven and earth will cease to exist." The word "heaven" here refers to the sky and the universe beyond it.

**my words will never pass away**  
"my words will never cease to exist" or "my words will never fail." Jesus uses "words" here to refer to everything he says.

**will never pass away**  
This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will remain forever"

### Luke 21:34

**so that your hearts are not burdened**  
The "heart" here refers to the mind and thoughts of the person. Alternate translation: "so that you are not occupied"

**are not burdened**  
Jesus here speaks of the following sins as if they were a physical weight that a person had to carry.

**excessive drinking ... drunkenness**  
"drinking too much wine and becoming drunk." Excessive drinking is the action, and intoxication is the effect of that action.

**the worries of life**  
"the things you worry about as you live every day"

**that day does not close on you suddenly**  
The rest of this sentence, "like a trap," is in verse 35. Just as a trap closes on an animal when the

animal does not expect it, that day will happen when people do not expect it. Alternate translation: "that day does not happen when you are not expecting it, as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal" or "that day does not surprise you like a trap"

**that day**

This refers to the day when the Messiah returns. Alternate translation: "the day when the Son of Man comes"

**Luke 21:35**

**like a trap**

The first part of this statement, "that day does not close on you suddenly," is in verse 34. Just as a trap closes on an animal when the animal does not expect it, that day will happen when people do not expect it. Alternate translation: "that day does not happen when you are not expecting it, as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal" or "that day does not surprise you like a trap"

**it will come upon everyone**

"it will affect everyone" or "the events of that day will affect everyone"

**on the face of the whole earth**

The surface of the earth is spoken of as if it were the outward part of the face of a person. Alternate translation: "on the surface of the whole earth" or "on the entire earth"

**Luke 21:36**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples.

**be alert**

"be ready for my coming"

**strong enough to escape all these things**

Possible meanings are 1) "strong enough to endure these things" or 2) "able to avoid these things."

**these things that will take place**

"these things that will happen." Jesus has just told them about terrible things that will happen, such as persecution, war, and captivity.

**to stand before the Son of Man**

"to stand with confidence before the Son of Man." This probably refers to when the Son of Man judges everyone. A person who is not ready will be afraid of the Son of Man and will not stand with confidence.

**Luke 21:37**

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of the part of the story that begins in [Luke 20:1]

**during the days he was teaching**

"during the daytime he would teach" or "he would teach each day." The following verses tell about things that Jesus and the people did each day during the week before he died.

**in the temple**

Only priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: "at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

**at night he went out**

"at night he would go out of the city" or "he went out each night"

**Luke 21:38**

**All of the people**

The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that the crowd was very large. Alternate translation: "A very large number of people in the city" or "Almost everyone in the city"

**came early in the morning**

"would come early each morning"

**to hear him in the temple**

"to hear him teach in the temple courtyard"

## ULB Translation Questions

**Luke 21:4**

**Why did Jesus say that the poor widow put more into the treasury than all of the others?**

Because she gave out of her poverty and the others gave out of their abundance.

**Luke 21:6**

**What did Jesus say would happen to the temple in Jerusalem?**

He said that it would be torn down and not one stone would be left on another.

**Luke 21:7**

**What two questions did the people ask Jesus about the temple?**

They asked, "When will these things happen, and what will be the sign that they are about to happen?"

**Luke 21:8**

**Jesus warned that many deceivers will come. What will these deceivers say?**

They will say, "I am he," and "The time is near."

**Luke 21:10**

**What terrible events did Jesus say would happen before the end?**

There will be wars, earthquakes, famines, plagues, and great signs from heaven.

**Luke 21:11**

**What terrible events did Jesus say would happen before the end?**

There will be wars, earthquakes, famines, plagues, and great signs from heaven.

**Luke 21:13**

**What opportunity will the persecution of believers create?**

It will create an opportunity for their testimony.

**Luke 21:16**

**Who will hate Jesus' followers?**

Parents, brothers, relatives, friends, and "everyone" will hate them.

**Luke 21:17**

**Who will hate Jesus' followers?**

Parents, brothers, relatives, friends, and "everyone" will hate them.

**Luke 21:20**

**What event would indicate that Jerusalem's destruction is near?**

When Jerusalem is surrounded by armies, its destruction is near.

**Luke 21:21**

**What did Jesus tell people to do who saw that the destruction of Jerusalem was near?**

He told them to flee to the mountains, to leave the city, and to not enter the city.

**Luke 21:22**

**What did Jesus call the days of the destruction of Jerusalem?**

He called them the days of vengeance, fulfilling all the things written.

**Luke 21:24**

**How long will Jerusalem be trampled by the Gentiles?**

Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

**Luke 21:25**

**What signs did Jesus say would precede his coming with power and great glory?**

He said there would be signs in the sun, moon, and stars, and distress of the nations on the earth.

**Luke 21:30**

**What example did Jesus give of how his listeners knew when a season had come?**

He referred to the fig tree-when it sprouts buds they knew that summer was near.

**Luke 21:33**

**What did Jesus say will pass away?**

Heaven and earth will pass away.

**What will never pass away?**

Jesus' words will never pass away.

**Luke 21:34**

**What did Jesus warn his listeners not to do since that day will come suddenly?**

He warned them to not let their hearts become burdened with debauchery, drunkenness, and the worries of life.

**Luke 21:36**

**What did Jesus warn his listeners to do since that day will come suddenly?**

He warned them to be alert and to pray.

## Chapter 22

<sup>1</sup> Now the Festival of Unleavened Bread was approaching, which is called the Passover. <sup>2</sup> The chief priests and the scribes were seeking how they could put Jesus to death, for they were afraid of the people.

<sup>3</sup> Then Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot, who was one of the twelve. <sup>4</sup> Judas went to the chief priests and captains and discussed with them how he would betray Jesus to them. <sup>5</sup> They were glad and agreed to give him money. <sup>6</sup> He consented and looked for an opportunity to give him over to them away from the crowd.

<sup>7</sup> Then came the day of unleavened bread, on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed. <sup>8</sup> So Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare for us the Passover meal, so that we may eat it."

<sup>9</sup> They said to him, "Where do you want us to make preparations?"

<sup>10</sup> He answered them, "Look, when you have entered the city, a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him into the house that he goes into. <sup>11</sup> Then say to the master of the house, 'The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'" <sup>12</sup> He will show you a large furnished upper room. Make the preparations there." <sup>13</sup> So they went, and found everything as he had said to them. Then they prepared the Passover meal.

<sup>14</sup> When the hour came, he sat down with the apostles. <sup>15</sup> Then he said to them, "I have greatly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer. <sup>16</sup> For I say to you, I will not eat it again until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God." <sup>17</sup> Then Jesus took a cup, and when he had given thanks, he said, "Take this, and share it among yourselves. <sup>18</sup> For I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine again until the kingdom of God comes." <sup>19</sup> Then he took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and gave to them, saying, "This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me." <sup>20</sup> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. <sup>21</sup> But pay attention. The hand of the one who betrays me is with me at the table. <sup>22</sup> For the Son of Man indeed goes as it has been determined. But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed!" <sup>23</sup> They began to discuss among themselves which one of them it might be who would do this.

<sup>24</sup> Then there arose also a quarrel among them about which of them was considered to be greatest. <sup>25</sup> He said to them, "The kings of the Gentiles are lords over them, and the ones who have authority over them are called doers of good deeds. <sup>26</sup> But it must not be like this with you. Instead, let the greatest among you become like the youngest and the one who leads like the one who serves. <sup>27</sup> For who is greater, the one who sits at the table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who sits at the table? Yet I am among you as one who serves. <sup>28</sup> But you are the ones who have continued with me in my trials. <sup>29</sup> I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom, <sup>30</sup> that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and you will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

<sup>31</sup> "Simon, Simon, be aware, Satan asked to have you, that he might sift you as wheat. <sup>32</sup> But I have prayed for you, that your faith may not fail. After you have turned back again, strengthen your brothers."

<sup>33</sup> Peter said to him, "Lord, I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death."

<sup>34</sup> Jesus replied, "I tell you, Peter, the rooster will not crow this day, before you deny three times that you know me."

<sup>35</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "When I sent you out without a purse, a bag of provisions, or sandals, did you lack anything?"

They answered, "Nothing."

<sup>36</sup> Then he said to them, "But now, the one who has a purse, let him take it, and likewise a bag of provisions. The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak and buy one. <sup>37</sup> For I say to you, what is written about me must be fulfilled, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.' For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled."

**38** Then they said, "Lord, look! Here are two swords."

He said to them, "It is enough."

**39** Jesus went, as he often did, to the Mount of Olives, and the disciples followed him. **40** When they arrived, he said to them, "Pray that you do not enter into temptation." **41** He went away from them about a stone's throw, and he knelt down and prayed, **42** saying, "Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done." **43** Then an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him. **44** Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground. **45** When he rose up from his prayer, he came to the disciples and found them sleeping because of their sorrow **46** and asked them, "Why are you sleeping? Rise and pray, that you may not enter into temptation."

**47** While he was still speaking, behold, a crowd appeared, with Judas, one of the twelve, leading them. He came near to Jesus to kiss him, **48** but Jesus said to him, "Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?"

**49** When those who were around Jesus saw what was happening, they said, "Lord, should we strike with the sword?" **50** Then one of them struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear.

**51** Jesus said, "That is enough!" He touched his ear, and healed him. **52** Jesus said to the chief priests, to the captains of the temple, and to elders who came against him, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs? **53** When I was daily with you in the temple, you did not lay your hands on me. But this is your hour, and the authority of darkness."

**54** Seizing him, they led him away and brought him into the high priest's house. But Peter followed from a distance. **55** After they had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and had sat down together, Peter sat in the midst of them. **56** A certain female servant saw him as he sat in the light of the fire and looked straight at him and said, "This man also was with him."

**57** But Peter denied it, saying, "Woman, I do not know him."

**58** After a little while someone else saw him, and said, "You are also one of them."

But Peter said, "Man, I am not."

**59** After about an hour another man insisted and said, "Truly this man also was with him, for he is a Galilean."

**60** But Peter said, "Man, I do not know what you are saying." Immediately, while he was speaking, a rooster crowed. **61** Turning, the Lord looked at Peter, and Peter remembered the word of the Lord, when he said to him, "Before a rooster crows today you will deny me three times." **62** Peter went outside and wept bitterly.

**63** Then the men holding Jesus in custody mocked and beat him. **64** They put a cover over him and asked him, saying, "Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?" **65** They spoke many other things against Jesus, blaspheming him.

**66** As soon as it was day, the elders of the people gathered together, both chief priests and scribes. They led him into the Council **67** and said, "If you are the Christ, tell us."

But he said to them, "If I tell you, you will not believe, **68** and if I ask you, you will not answer. **69** But from now on, the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the power of God."

**70** They all said, "Then you are the Son of God?"

Jesus said to them, "You say that I am."

**71** They said, "Why do we still need a witness? For we ourselves have heard from his own mouth."

## Luke 22 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The eating of the body and blood

[Luke 22:19-20](#) describes Jesus's last meal with his followers. At that time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist," or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

#### The new covenant

Some people think that Jesus established the new covenant during the supper. Others think he established it after he went up to heaven. Others think it will not be established until Jesus comes again. Your translation should say no more about this than the ULB does. (See: covenant)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

---

## Luke 22

### 22:1-6

#### What was the "festival of Unleavened Bread"?

[22:1]

See: [Passover](#); [Passover](#)

#### Why did the chief priests and the scribes discuss "how" to put Jesus to death?

[22:2]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to kill Jesus. Scholars think the chief priests and the scribes were talking about how to kill Jesus. They wanted to kill him in a way that was not against the law. They wanted to find something Jesus did that would make the Roman government kill him.

See: [Scribe](#); [Scribe](#)

#### Why were the Jewish leaders afraid of the people?

[22:2]

The Jewish leaders were afraid of the people. Some scholars think the Jewish leaders were afraid of the people because the people might be angry if they arrested Jesus for the wrong reasons. Perhaps the people would riot and cause great trouble. A riot would make the Romans angry (see: Acts 19:40).

**Advice to translators:** A riot is when a large group of people get angry and they destroy things.

#### How did Satan enter into Judas Iscariot?

[22:3]

Satan entered into Judas. That is, Satan began to control Judas' thoughts and Judas began to obey Satan. Satan wanted Judas to betray Jesus (see: John 6:70-71; 13:2,27).

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)



## 22:7-13

### Why did the Jews have the Passover lamb?

[22:7]

The Jews had the Passover lamb because it reminded them of when they left Egypt. At this time, they killed a lamb and painted its blood onto the two side doorposts and the tops of the door frames of the houses (see: Exodus 12:5-7). God saw the blood on the door and he passed over the house with the blood on the door and did not kill the firstborn in the house (see: Exodus 12:12-13).

See: [Firstborn \(Birthright\)](#); [Lamb of God](#); [Blood](#); [Firstborn \(Birthright\)](#)

### Why did Jesus tell the disciples to look for a man bearing a pitcher of water?

[22:10]

In ancient Israel, only the women carried pitchers of water. Scholars think that when Jesus wanted his disciples to look for a man carrying a pitcher of water because there would only be one man carrying a pitcher of water. Then they would know who they must follow.

## 22:14-23

### How will the Passover be fulfilled in the kingdom of God?

[22:16]

The Passover will be fulfilled in the kingdom of God. At that time, people will not sin and things will not die. Scholars think there will be a great feast and Christians will celebrate and be with Jesus forever. This is sometimes called the wedding feast of the Lamb.

See: [Lamb of God](#); [Kingdom of God](#); [Fulfill \(Fulfillment\)](#); [Sin](#); [Lamb of God](#)

### What did Jesus mean when he said, "This is my body, which is given for you"?

[22:19]

Jesus said, "This is my body, which is given for you." He was speaking about dying so that people could be at peace with God.

See: [Lord's Supper](#)

### Why did Jesus say, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood"?

[22:20]

See: [Blood](#); [New Covenant](#); [Blood](#)

### How was the betrayal of Jesus "determined"?

[22{22]

God "determined" (ὁρίζω/g3724) that Judas would betray Jesus (see: Acts 2:23). That is, God knew that this would happen. However, Jesus said the person who betrayed him will answer to God. That is, even though God knew Jesus would be betrayed, God would punish Judas.

See: [Will of God](#); [Predestine \(Predestination\)](#); [Punish \(Punishment\)](#); [Elect \(Election\)](#); [Will of God](#)

## 22:24-30

### Why did Jesus say, "let the one who is the greatest among you become like the youngest"?

[22:26]

In ancient times, the younger people typically served those who were older. They thought the older people were greater in some way and people should honor them. Jesus did not want his disciples to live as if they were greater than other people, rather he wanted them to serve other people.

### **When will Jesus give the disciples a kingdom?**

[22:29]

Jesus will give his disciples a kingdom. That is, they will rule something. Some scholars say Jesus will give the disciples a kingdom after he returns to the earth. Fewer scholars think say Jesus gave them a kingdom when he said this. Jesus was a servant during his time on earth, so the disciples must also lead other people by serving them.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

### **How will the disciples judge the twelve tribes of Israel?**

[22:30]

The disciples will judge the twelve tribes of Israel. Some scholars say the disciples will judge the twelve tribes of Israel for accepting or rejecting the gospel. Other scholars say the disciples will rule the twelve tribes of Israel some day. Perhaps this will happen after Jesus returns to the earth.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](#); [Gospel](#); [Jesus' Return to Earth](#)

## **22:31-34**

### **Why did Jesus say “Simon, Simon”?**

[22:31]

Jesus said “Simon, Simon” because he wanted Simon to listen closely to what Jesus was going to tell him. Perhaps Jesus addressed Peter as “Simon” to remind him that he needed help because he was about to be tested.

See: [Test](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, “that he might sift you as wheat”?**

[22:31]

Jesus told Simon that Satan wanted to “sift” him as wheat is sifted. This was a metaphor. Sifting was the violent, shaking action taken to separate grain. It was separated into something people wanted and something people did not want. Jesus was telling Simon that Satan wanted him not to trust in Jesus.

See: [Faith \(Believe in\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Faith \(Believe in\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say “the rooster will not crow this day” before Simon denied him three times?**

[22:34]

In ancient Israel, the Jewish day started at sundown, that is, in the evening. The rooster generally crows just before sunrise. Jesus wanted Simon to know that he would deny him three times sometime during the night before the sunrise.

## **22:35-38**

### **Why did Jesus tell the disciples to buy swords?**

[22:36]

Jesus told his disciples to buy swords.

1. Some scholars think Jesus was warning his disciples that they may need to defend themselves. Traveling on the roads was often dangerous.
2. Some scholars think Jesus used a metaphor when he spoke about swords. That is, he was warning the disciples that they were going to be persecuted or people were going to try to hurt them.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Metaphor](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

## **22:39-46**

### **Where was the Mount of Olives?**

[22:39]

See Map: Mount of Olives

### **What did it mean to “enter into temptation”?**

[22:40]

When someone entered into temptation, they sinned when they were tempted. Jesus had already told the disciples that Satan will tempt them.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say to God the Father, “If you are willing, remove this cup from me”?**

[22:42]

Jesus asked God the Father to remove the cup from him if God the Father was willing to do this. The cup was a symbol. Jesus was speaking about the suffering he was about to endure. That is, Jesus was about to be tortured and then killed. Jesus was praying that God would rescue him from the suffering. However, he would do this if it was what God the Father wanted him to do.

See: [Symbol](#); [Will of God](#); [Symbol](#)

### **How did the angel from heaven strengthen Jesus?**

[22:43]

The angel from heaven strengthened Jesus. Scholars think the angel helped Jesus to endure the pain he was having.

See: [Heaven](#); [Heaven](#)

### **Why did Luke say that Jesus’ “sweat became like great drops of blood”?**

[22:44]

Luke said that Jesus’ “sweat became like great drops of blood”. Some scholars think Luke was saying that Jesus was sweating so much that sweat fell to the ground just as blood does when someone is bleeding. Other scholars think Luke was saying that Jesus’ sweat blood.

### **Why did Jesus say the disciples were “sleeping because of their sorrow”?**

[22:45]

Jesus said the disciples were sleeping because they were sad. Some scholars think the disciples were exhausted because of the great “sorrow”(λύπη/g3077) they experienced being with Jesus that day. Other scholars say it was because they saw their Jesus in much pain.

## 22:47-53

### Why did Jesus ask Judas if he was “betraying the Son of Man with a kiss”?

[22:48]

In ancient Israel, friends often greeted one another with a kiss of some kind. Some scholars think Jesus was sad that Judas was betraying him when he kissed Jesus. That is, Judas told people who Jesus was when he kissed Jesus. Judas was, in fact, handing Jesus over to his enemies, that is, to those who would crucify him.

See: [Son of Man](#)

### What was the “authority of darkness”?

[22:53]

In the Bible, the “authority of darkness” was a symbol of Satan and every evil thing that served him. Jesus wanted people to know that the people who came out at night to arrest him were following Satan.

See: [Satan \(The Devil\)](#); [Satan \(The Devil\)](#)

## 22:54-62

### Why did the crowd take Jesus to the high priest?

[22:54]

The crowd took Jesus to the high priest. They wanted Jesus to answer the Jewish leaders who accused him of doing and saying evil things. The high priest could decide if Jesus was guilty of anything against the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

### Why did Jesus appear before Pilate and Herod?

Jesus appeared before Pilate because Rome controlled Israel (see: Matthew 27: 11-26; John 18:28-40). The Jewish leaders were not able to kill Jesus without getting permission from the Roman government. However, Pilate did not find Jesus guilty of any crime worthy of death. Pilate sent Jesus to Herod because Jesus was from Galilee. Herod ruled over Galilee. The Romans gave him permission to do this.

See: [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#); [Rome \(Roman Empire, Caesar\)](#)

See Map: Galilee

## 22:63-65

### Why did the guards mock and beat Jesus?

[22:63]

The guards mocked and beat Jesus. They insulted him while they were striking him with their fists. The Romans often hit people they arrested. Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would sufferer in many ways (see: Isaiah 53).

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#) ; [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## 22:66-71

### Who were the elders?

[22:66]

See: [Elder](#)

## Why did the Jewish leaders ask Jesus if he was the “Christ”?

[22:67]

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus if he was the “Christ” because they did not believe he was the Messiah. They believed that if Jesus said that he was the Messiah, they could charge him with blasphemy. Then they would kill Jesus.

See: [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#); [Blaspheme \(Blasphemy\)](#)

## What was the “right hand of the power of God”?

[22:69]

In ancient times, when someone was seated at the “right hand” of the king, he was in the highest place of honor. Jesus wanted the Jewish leaders to know that he would soon be given the highest honor possible.

## Why did Jesus answer the religious leaders’ question by saying, “You say that I am”?

[22:70]

Jesus said, “You say that I am”. Scholars think Jesus was saying, “I am the Son of God just as your question is asking”.

See: [Yahweh \(I am\)](#); [Yahweh \(I am\)](#)

### Luke 22:1

#### General Information:

Judas agrees to betray Jesus. These verses give background information about this event.

#### Now

This word is used here to introduce a new event.

#### Festival of Unleavened Bread

The festival was called by this name because during the festival the Jews did not eat bread that was made with yeast. Alternate translation: "festival when they would eat unleavened bread"

#### was approaching

"was almost ready to begin"

### Luke 22:2

#### seeking how

"looking for an opportunity" or "thinking of ways in which"

#### they could put Jesus to death

The priests and scribes did not have the authority to kill Jesus themselves, but they hoped to get others to kill him. Alternate translation: "they could get someone to put Jesus to death" or "they could get someone to kill Jesus"

#### afraid of the people

Possible meanings are 1) "scared of what the people might do" or 2) "scared that the people would make Jesus king."

### Luke 22:3

#### General Information:

This is the beginning of the action in this part of the story.

#### Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot

What happened might have been similar to demon possession, but other demon-possessed people are obviously unable to control any of their own actions. Here Judas Iscariot seems to do everything he desires, but Satan was somehow at work in a special way. Whatever the intended meaning, Satan "entering" Judas Iscariot is a metaphor for Satan taking control of Judas Iscariot. Alternate translation: "Satan took control of Judas, the one called Iscariot"

### Luke 22:4

#### chief priests

"the leaders of the priests"

#### captains

officers of the temple guards

#### how he would betray Jesus to them

"how he would help them arrest Jesus"

### Luke 22:5

#### They were glad

"The chief priests and captains were glad"

#### to give him money

"to give Judas money"

## Luke 22:6

**He consented**  
"He agreed"

**looked for an opportunity to give him over to them away from the crowd**

This is an ongoing action that continues after this part of the story ends.

**away from the crowd**

"privately" or "when there was no crowd around him"

## Luke 22:7

**General Information:**

Jesus sends Peter and John to prepare for the Passover meal. This verse gives background information about the event.

**the day of unleavened bread**

"the day of bread without yeast." This was the day the Jews would take all bread made with yeast out of their homes. Then they would celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

**the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed**

Each family or group of people would kill a lamb and eat it together, so many lambs were killed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people had to kill a lamb for their Passover meal"

## Luke 22:8

**prepare**

This is a general word meaning "make ready." Jesus was not necessarily telling Peter and John to do all the cooking.

**so that we may eat it**

Jesus was including Peter and John when he said "we." Peter and John would be part of the group of the disciples that would eat the meal.

## Luke 22:9

**you want us to make preparations**

The word "us" does not include Jesus. Jesus would not be part of the group that would prepare the meal.

**make preparations**

"make preparations for the meal" or "prepare the meal"

## Luke 22:10

**He answered them**

"Jesus answered Peter and John"

**Look**

Jesus used this word to tell them to pay close attention and to do exactly what he tells them.

**a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you**

"you will see a man carrying a pitcher of water"

**bearing a pitcher of water**

"carrying a jar with water in it." He probably would be carrying the jar on his shoulder.

**Follow him into the house**

"Follow him, and go into the house"

## Luke 22:11

**The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I ... my disciples?"**

The quote beginning with "Where is the guest room" is a direct quote of what Jesus, the teacher, wants to say to the master of his house. It can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Our teacher asks where the guest room is in which he ... his disciples." or "Our teacher says to show us the guest room where he ... us and the rest of his disciples."

**The Teacher**

This refers to Jesus.

**eat the Passover**

"eat the Passover meal"

## Luke 22:12

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues giving instructions to Peter and John.

**He will show you**

"The owner of the house will show you"

**upper room**

"room upstairs." If your community does not have houses with rooms above other rooms, you may need to consider how to describe buildings in the city.

## Luke 22:13

**So they went**

"So Peter and John went"

## Luke 22:14

**Connecting Statement:**

This is the next event in the part of the story about the Passover. Jesus and his disciples are sitting to eat the Passover meal.

**When the hour came**

"When it was time to eat the meal"

**he sat down**  
"Jesus sat down"

### **Luke 22:15**

**I have greatly desired**  
"I have wanted very much"

**before I suffer**  
Jesus is referring ahead to his death. The word for "suffer" here means to go through an unusually difficult or painful experience.

### **Luke 22:16**

**For I say to you**  
Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

**until it is fulfilled**  
This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) until the purpose of the Passover Festival is accomplished. Alternate translation: "until God fulfills it" or "until God completes the purpose of the Passover Festival" or 2) "until we celebrate the final Passover Festival"

### **Luke 22:17**

**took a cup**  
"picked up a cup of wine"

**when he had given thanks**  
"when he had given thanks to God"

**he said**  
"he said to his apostles"

**share it among yourselves**  
They were to share the contents of the cup, and not the cup itself. Alternate translation: "share the wine in the cup among yourselves" or "each of you drink some of the wine from the cup"

### **Luke 22:18**

**For I say to you**  
This phrase is used to emphasize the importance of what Jesus will say next.

**fruit of the vine**  
This refers to the juice that is squeezed from the grapes that grow on grapevines. Wine is made from fermented grape juice.

**until the kingdom of God comes**  
"until God establishes his kingdom" or "until God rules in his kingdom"

### **Luke 22:19**

**bread**  
This bread did not have yeast in it, so it was flat.

**he broke it**  
"he ripped it" or "he tore it." He may have divided it into many pieces or he may have divided it into two pieces and given them to the apostles to divide among themselves. If possible, use an expression that would apply to either situation.

**This is my body**  
Possible meanings are 1) "This bread is my body" and 2) "This bread represents my body."

**my body, which is given for you**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "my body, which I will give for you" or "my body, which I will sacrifice for you"

**Do this**  
"Eat this bread"

**in remembrance of me**  
"in order to remember me"

### **Luke 22:20**

**This cup**  
The word "cup" refers to the wine in the cup. Alternate translation: "The wine in this cup" or "This cup of wine"

**the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you**  
Here "blood, which is poured out" represents death. Jesus's death will establish the new covenant that God will make with his people. Alternate translation: "the new covenant that God will put into effect because I have shed my blood for you"

### **Luke 22:21**

**Connecting Statement:**  
Jesus continues speaking to his apostles.

**The hand of the one who betrays me**  
The hand here is a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Jesus speaks of Judas betraying him as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: "The person who is about to betray me" or "The man who is ready to betray me"

### **Luke 22:22**

**For the Son of Man indeed goes**  
"For, indeed, the Son of Man will go" or "For the Son of Man will die"

**the Son of Man indeed goes**  
Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, indeed go"

**as it has been determined**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as God has determined" or "as God has planned"

**But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But woe to the man who betrays the Son of Man" or "But how terrible it will be for that man who betrays the Son of Man"

**Luke 22:23**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 22:24**

**Then there arose also a quarrel among them**

"Then the apostles began to argue among themselves"

**was considered to be greatest**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "was the most important" or "the people thought was most important"

**Luke 22:25**

**He said to them**

"Jesus said to the apostles"

**are lords over them**

"rule forcefully over the Gentiles"

**are called**

Their people probably did not think that those rulers did good to them. Alternate translation: "like to be called" or "call themselves"

**Luke 22:26**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues teaching his apostles.

**it must not be like this with you**

"you should not act like that"

**the youngest**

Older people were respected in that culture. The leaders were usually older people and were called "elders." The youngest person would be the least likely to lead, and the least important. Alternate translation: "the least important"

**and the one who leads like the one who serves**

Words from the phrase before this apply to this phrase. Alternate translation: "and let the one who leads become like the one who serves"

**the one who serves**

"a servant"

**Luke 22:27**

**For**

This connects Jesus's commands in verse 26 with this whole verse. It means that the most important person should serve because Jesus is a servant.

**For who is greater ... serves?**

"For who is more important ... serves?" Jesus uses this question to begin to explain to the apostles who is truly great. Alternate translation: "I want you to think about who is greater ... serves."

**the one who sits at the table**

"the one who is dining"

**Is it not the one who sits at the table?**

Jesus uses another question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "Of course the one who sits at the table is more important than the servant!"

**Yet I am among you as one who serves**

"But I am with you to be a servant" or "But I am with you to show you how a servant acts." The word "yet" is here because there is a contrast between what people would expect Jesus to be like and what he really was like.

**Luke 22:28**

**have continued with me in my trials**

"have stayed with me as I have struggled" or "have stayed with me while Satan has tempted me"

**Luke 22:29**

**I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom**

Some languages may need to change the order. Alternate translation: "Just as my father has given a kingdom to me, I give a kingdom to you"

**I set you over a kingdom**

"I make you rulers in God's kingdom" or "I give you authority to rule in the kingdom" or "I will make you kings"

**even as my Father has set me over a kingdom**

"just as my Father has given me authority to rule as king in his kingdom"

**Luke 22:30**

**you will sit on thrones**

Kings sit on thrones. Sitting on a throne is a symbol of ruling. Alternate translation: "you will work as kings" or "you will do the work of kings"

**Luke 22:31**

**General Information:**

Jesus speaks directly to Simon.



**Simon, Simon**

Jesus said his name twice to show that what he was about to say to him was very important.

**to have you, that he might sift you**

The word "you" refers to all of the apostles. Languages that have different forms of "you" should use the plural form.

**sift you as wheat**

This means that Satan wanted to test the disciples to find something wrong. Alternate translation: "test you like someone passes grain through a sieve"

**Luke 22:32**

**But I have prayed for you**

The word "you" here refers specifically to Simon. Languages that have different forms of "you" should use the singular form.

**that your faith may not fail**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "that you will continue to have faith" or "that you will continue to trust me"

**After you have turned back again**

Here "turned back again" is a metaphor for starting to believe in someone again. Alternate translation: "After you start believing in me again" or "After you start serving me again"

**strengthen your brothers**

"encourage your brothers to be strong in their faith" or "help your brothers believe in me"

**your brothers**

This refers to the other disciples. Alternate translation: "your fellow believers" or "the other disciples"

**Luke 22:33**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 22:34**

**the rooster will not crow this day, before you deny three times that you know me**

The order of the parts of the verse can be reversed. Alternate translation: "you will deny three times that you know me before the rooster crows this day"

**the rooster will not crow this day, before you deny**

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "the rooster will crow this day only after you deny" or "before the rooster crows today, you will deny"

**the rooster will not crow**

Here, the crowing of the rooster refers to a certain time of day. Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. Therefore, this refers to dawn.

**rooster**

a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

**this day**

The Jewish day begins at sunset. Jesus was speaking after the sun had set. The rooster would crow just before morning. The morning was part of "this day." Alternate translation: "tonight" or "in the morning"

**Luke 22:35**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus turns his attention back to speaking to all of his disciples.

**Jesus said to them, "When ... did you lack anything?"**

**They answered, "Nothing."**

Jesus uses a question to help the apostles remember how well the people provided for them as they traveled. Though this is a rhetorical question and Jesus is not asking for information, you should translate it as a question unless only a statement would cause the disciples to reply that they had lacked nothing.

**When I sent you out**

Jesus is talking to his apostles, so the word "you" is plural.

**purse**

A purse is a bag for holding money. Here it is used to refer to "money."

**a bag of provisions**

"travelers' bag" or "bag of food"

**Nothing**

It may be helpful to some audiences to include more about the conversation. Alternate translation: "We did not lack anything" or "We had everything we needed"

**Luke 22:36**

**and likewise a bag of provisions**

"and let him also take a bag of provisions" or "and also a bag of provisions"

**The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak**

Jesus was not referring to a specific person who did not have a sword. Alternate translation: "If anyone does not have a sword, he should sell his cloak"

**cloak**

"coat" or "outer garment"

## Luke 22:37

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking with his disciples.

### what is written about me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what a prophet wrote about me in the scriptures"

### must be fulfilled

The apostles would have understood that God would cause everything written in the scriptures to happen. Alternate translation: "God will fulfill" or "God will cause to happen"

### He was counted with the lawless ones

Here Jesus is quoting the scriptures. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People counted him as a member of the group of lawless men"

### the lawless ones

"those who break the law" or "the criminals"

### For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled

Possible meanings are 1) "For what the prophet predicted about me is about to happen" or 2) "For my life is coming to an end"

## Luke 22:38

### they said

This refers to at least two of Jesus's apostles.

### It is enough

Possible meanings are 1) they have enough swords. "We now have enough swords." or 2) Jesus wants them to stop talking about having swords. "No more of this talk about swords."

## Luke 22:39

### General Information:

Jesus goes to the Mount of Olives to pray.

## Luke 22:40

### that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted" or "that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

## Luke 22:41

### about a stone's throw

"about the distance that someone can throw a stone." Alternate translation: "a short distance" or with an estimated measurement like "about thirty meters"

## Luke 22:42

### Father, if you are willing

Jesus will bear the guilt of every person's sin on the cross. He prays to his Father, asking if there is another way.

### Father

This is an important title for God.

### remove this cup from me

Jesus refers to what he will soon experience as if it were a cup of bitter liquid that he would have to drink. Alternate translation: "allow me to not drink from this cup" or "allow me to not experience what is about to happen"

### Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "However, do what is according to your will rather than what is according to my will"

## Luke 22:43

### appeared to him

"appeared to Jesus"

### strengthening him

"encouraging him"

## Luke 22:44

### Being in agony, he prayed

"He was suffering greatly, and so he prayed"

### he prayed more earnestly

"he prayed more intensely"

### his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground

"his sweat was falling to the ground like large drops of blood"

## Luke 22:45

### When he rose up from his prayer, he

"When Jesus got up after praying, he" or "After praying, Jesus got up and he"

### found them sleeping because of their sorrow

"saw that they were sleeping because they were tired from their sadness"

## Luke 22:46

### Why are you sleeping?

Possible meanings are 1) "I am surprised that you are sleeping now." or 2) "You should not be sleeping now!"

**that you may not enter into temptation**  
 "so that you may not be tempted" or "so that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

#### Luke 22:47

**behold, a crowd appeared**  
 The word "behold" alerts us to a new group in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a crowd that appeared"

**leading them**  
 Judas was showing the people where Jesus was. He was not telling the crowd what to do. Alternate translation: "leading them to Jesus"

**to kiss him**  
 "to greet him with a kiss" or "to greet him by kissing him." When men greeted other men who were family or friends, they would kiss them on one cheek or both cheeks. If your readers would find it embarrassing to say that a man would kiss another man, you could translate it in a more general way: "to give him a friendly greeting."

#### Luke 22:48

**are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?**  
 Jesus uses a question to rebuke Judas for betraying him with a kiss. Normally a kiss is a sign of love. Alternate translation: "it is a kiss you are using to betray the Son of Man!"

**the Son of Man with**  
 Jesus is using this term to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son of Man, with"

#### Luke 22:49

**those who were around Jesus**  
 This refers to Jesus's disciples.

**what was happening**  
 This refers to the priests and soldiers coming to arrest Jesus.

**strike with the sword**  
 The question is about the type of fight they should engage in

#### Luke 22:50

**one of them**  
 "one of the disciples"

**struck the servant of the high priest**  
 "struck the servant of the high priest with a sword"

#### Luke 22:51

**That is enough**  
 "Do not do any more of that"

**touched his ear**  
 "touched the servant where his ear had been cut off"

#### Luke 22:52

**Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?**  
 "Do you come out with swords and clubs because you think I am a robber?" Jesus uses this question to scold the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "You know that I am not a robber, yet you come out to me bringing swords and clubs."

#### Luke 22:53

**I was daily with you**  
 "I was among you every day"

**in the temple**  
 Only priests entered the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courts" or "at the temple"

**lay your hands on me**  
 In this verse, to lay hands on someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "arrest me"

**this is your hour**  
 "this is the time for you to do whatever you want"

**the authority of darkness**  
 It may be helpful to repeat the reference to time. "Darkness" is a metonym for Satan. Alternate translation: "the time of the authority of darkness" or "the time when God is allowing Satan to do whatever he wants"

#### Luke 22:54

**led him away**  
 "led Jesus away from the garden where they had arrested him"

**into the high priest's house**  
 "into the courtyard of the high priest's house"

#### Luke 22:55

**they had kindled a fire**  
 "some people had made a fire." The fire was to keep the people warm during the cool night. Alternate translation: "some people started a fire to keep warm"

**the middle of the courtyard**

This was the courtyard at the high priest's house. It had walls around it, but no roof.

**in the midst of them**

"together with them"

**Luke 22:56**

**he sat in the light of the fire**

He sat near the fire and its line shone on him.

**and looked straight at him and said**

"and she looked straight at Peter and said to the other people in the courtyard"

**This man also was with him**

The woman was telling the people about Peter being with Jesus. She probably did not know Peter's name.

**Luke 22:57**

**But Peter denied it**

"But Peter said that it was not true"

**Woman, I do not know him**

Peter did not know the woman's name. He was not insulting her by calling her "woman." If people would think he was insulting her, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a woman he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

**Luke 22:58**

**You are also one of them**

"You are also one of those who were with Jesus"

**Man, I am not**

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

**Luke 22:59**

**insisted and said**

"said insistently" or "said loudly"

**Truly this man**

Here "this man" refers to Peter. The speaker probably did not know Peter's name.

**he is a Galilean**

The man could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he talked.

**Luke 22:60**

**Man**

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word. See how you translated this in Luke 22:58.

**I do not know what you are saying**

"I do not know what you are talking about." This expression means that Peter completely disagrees with the man. Alternate translation: "what you said is not true at all" or "what you said is completely false"

**while he was speaking**

"while Peter was speaking"

**a rooster crowed**

Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.

**Luke 22:61**

**Turning, the Lord looked at Peter**

"The Lord turned and looked at Peter"

**the word of the Lord**

"what Jesus had said" when Jesus had said that Peter would betray Jesus

**a rooster crows**

Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.

**today**

The Jewish day started at sundown and continued to the next evening. Jesus had spoken the previous evening about what would happen shortly before dawn or at dawn. Alternate translation: "tonight"

**deny me three times**

"deny three times that you know me"

**Luke 22:62**

**Peter went outside**

"Peter went out of the courtyard"

**Luke 22:63**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 22:64**

**They put a cover over him**

"They covered his eyes so that he could not see"

**Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?**

The guards did not believe that Jesus was a prophet. Rather, they believed that a real prophet would know who hit him even if he could not see. They called Jesus a prophet, but they were teasing him and showing him why they did not think that he was a prophet. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are a prophet. Tell us who hit you!" or "Hey prophet, who hit you?"

**Prophecy!**

"Speak words from God!" The implied information is that God would have to tell Jesus who struck him since Jesus was blindfolded and could not see.

**Luke 22:65**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 22:66**

**General Information:**

It is now the next day and Jesus is brought before the council.

**As soon as it was day**

"At dawn the next morning"

**They led him into the Council**

Possible meanings are 1) "The elders had Jesus brought into the Council" or 2) "The guards led Jesus into the council of the elders." Some languages may avoid saying who led him by using the pronoun "they" or by using a passive verb: "Jesus was led into the council"

**Luke 22:67**

**and said**

A new sentence can be started here if a period is put at the end of the previous verse. Alternate translation: "The elders said to Jesus"

**If you are the Christ, tell us**

"Tell us if you are the Christ"

**If I tell you, you will not believe**

This was a way for Jesus to respond without giving them a reason to say that he was guilty of blasphemy. Alternate translation: "If I tell you, you will not believe me"

**Luke 22:68**

**if I ask you, you will not answer**

This was a way for Jesus to rebuke them without giving them a reason to convict him. These words, along with "If I tell you, you will not believe" (verse 67), show that Jesus did not believe that the council really wanted to know the truth.

**Luke 22:69**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the council.

**from now on**

"from this day" or "starting from today"

**the Son of Man will**

Jesus uses this phrase to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

**seated at the right hand of the power of God**

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "seated in the place of honor beside the power of God"

**the power of God**

"the all-powerful God." Here "power" refers to his supreme authority.

**Luke 22:70**

**Then you are the Son of God?**

The council asked this question because they wanted Jesus to explicitly confirm their understanding that he was saying he was the Son of God. Alternate translation: "So when you said that, did you mean that you are the Son of God?"

**Son of God**

This is an important title for Jesus.

**You say that I am**

"Yes, it is just like you say"

**Luke 22:71**

**Why do we still need a witness?**

They use a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "We have no further need for witnesses!"

**heard from his own mouth**

The phrase "his own mouth" refers to his speech. Alternate translation: "heard him say himself that he was the Son of God"

## ULB Translation Questions

### Luke 22:1

**At this time, which Jewish feast was drawing near?**  
The feast of unleavened bread, called the Passover.

### Luke 22:6

**In what circumstances was Judas looking for an opportunity to deliver Jesus to the chief priests?**  
He was looking for an opportunity when Jesus was away from the crowd.

### Luke 22:10

**Where did Jesus and the disciples eat the Passover meal?**  
They ate it in a guest room in Jerusalem.

### Luke 22:11

**Where did Jesus and the disciples eat the Passover meal?**  
They ate it in a guest room in Jerusalem.

### Luke 22:16

**When did Jesus say he would eat the Passover meal again?**  
He would eat the Passover meal again when it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God.

### Luke 22:19

**What did Jesus say when he broke the bread and gave it to the disciples?**  
He said, "This is my body which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me."

### Luke 22:20

**What did Jesus say when he gave the cup to the disciples?**  
He said, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

### Luke 22:22

**Was it God's plan that Jesus be betrayed?**  
Yes.

### Luke 22:23

**Did the disciples know who was about to betray Jesus?**  
No.

### Luke 22:26

**Who did Jesus say was the greatest among his disciples?**  
The greatest is the one who serves.

### Luke 22:27

**How did Jesus live among his disciples?**  
He lived as one who serves.

### Luke 22:30

**Where did Jesus promise his disciples they would sit?**  
He said they would sit on thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

### Luke 22:34

**What did Jesus predict that Peter would do?**  
He said that Peter would deny that he knows Jesus three times before the rooster crowed.

### Luke 22:37

**What written prediction about Jesus was being fulfilled in these events?**  
The prediction in scripture says, "And he was considered as one of the lawless."

### Luke 22:40

**On the Mount of Olives, for what did Jesus tell his disciples to pray?**  
He wanted them to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

### Luke 22:42

**On the Mount of Olives, what did Jesus pray?**  
He prayed, "Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done."

### Luke 22:45

**What were the disciples doing when Jesus returned from praying?**  
They were sleeping.

### Luke 22:47

**How did Judas betray Jesus in front of the crowd?**  
He betrayed Jesus with a kiss.

### Luke 22:48

**How did Judas betray Jesus in front of the crowd?**  
He betrayed Jesus with a kiss.

### Luke 22:51

**What did Jesus do with the man whose ear was cut off?**  
He touched his ear, and healed him.

**Luke 22:53**

**Where did Jesus say he was daily with the chief priests?**  
He was in the temple.

**Luke 22:54**

**After seizing him, where did they take Jesus?**  
They took him to the high priest's house.

**Luke 22:57**

**What did Peter say when a certain maid said that Peter had been with Jesus?**  
He said, "Woman, I do not know him."

**Luke 22:60**

**What happened immediately after Peter denied knowing Jesus for the third time?**  
A rooster crowed.

**Luke 22:62**

**What did Peter do after Jesus looked at him?**  
He went outside and wept bitterly.

**Luke 22:63**

**What did the men guarding Jesus do to him?**  
They mocked and beat him, and blasphemed him.

**Luke 22:64**

**What did the men guarding Jesus do to him?**  
They mocked and beat him, and blasphemed him.

**Luke 22:65**

**What did the men guarding Jesus do to him?**  
They mocked and beat him, and blasphemed him.

**Luke 22:67**

**When the council demanded that Jesus tell them if he is the Christ, Jesus said that if he told them, they would not do what?**  
They would not believe.

**Luke 22:71**

**Why did the council say that they did not need witnesses to prove that Jesus claimed to be the Christ?**  
Because they had heard it from Jesus' own mouth.

## Chapter 23

<sup>1</sup> The whole company of them rose up and brought Jesus before Pilate. <sup>2</sup> They began to accuse him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation, forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, and saying that he himself is Christ, a king."

<sup>3</sup> Pilate asked him, saying, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

Jesus answered him and said, "You say so."

<sup>4</sup> Pilate said to the chief priests and the multitudes, "I find no guilt in this man."

<sup>5</sup> But they were insisting, saying, "He stirs up the people, teaching throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place." <sup>6</sup> So when Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean. <sup>7</sup> When he learned that he was under Herod's authority, he sent Jesus to Herod, who himself also was at Jerusalem in those days.

<sup>8</sup> When Herod saw Jesus, he was very glad, because he had wanted to see him for a long time. He had heard about him and he hoped to see some sign done by him. <sup>9</sup> Herod questioned Jesus in many words, but Jesus answered him nothing. <sup>10</sup> The chief priests and the scribes stood, vigorously accusing him. <sup>11</sup> Herod with his soldiers showed Jesus contempt and they mocked him. Then they dressed him in splendid clothes and sent him back to Pilate. <sup>12</sup> For Herod and Pilate had become friends with each other that very day, for before this they had been enemies with each other.

<sup>13</sup> Pilate then called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people <sup>14</sup> and said to them, "You brought to me this man like a man who is misleading the people, and see, I, having questioned him before you, find no guilt in this man concerning those things of which you accuse him. <sup>15</sup> No, nor does Herod, for he sent him back to us, and see, nothing worthy of death has been done by him. <sup>16</sup> I will therefore punish him and release him." <sup>17</sup><sup>[1]</sup><sup>18</sup> But they cried out all together, saying, "Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas!" <sup>19</sup> Barabbas was a man who had been put into prison for a certain rebellion in the city and for murder. <sup>20</sup> Pilate addressed them again, desiring to release Jesus. <sup>21</sup> But they shouted, saying, "Crucify him, crucify him." <sup>22</sup> He said to them a third time, "Why, what evil has this man done? I have found no guilt deserving death in him. Therefore after punishing him, I will release him." <sup>23</sup> But they were insistent with loud voices, demanding for him to be crucified. Their voices convinced Pilate. <sup>24</sup> So Pilate decided to grant their demand. <sup>25</sup> He released the one they asked for who had been put in prison for rebellion and murder. But he delivered up Jesus to their will.

<sup>26</sup> As they led him away, they seized one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country, and they laid the cross on him to carry, following Jesus.

<sup>27</sup> A great crowd of the people, and of women who grieved and mourned for him, were following him. <sup>28</sup> But turning to them, Jesus said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children. <sup>29</sup> For see, the days are coming in which they will say, 'Blessed are the barren and the wombs that did not bear, and the breasts that did not nurse.'

<sup>30</sup> Then they will begin to say to the mountains,

'Fall on us,' and to the hills, 'Cover us.' <sup>31</sup> For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?"

<sup>32</sup> Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death.

<sup>33</sup> When they came to the place that is called "The Skull," there they crucified him and the criminals—one on his right and one on his left. <sup>34</sup> Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." Then they cast lots, dividing up his garments.

<sup>35</sup> The people stood watching while the rulers also were mocking him, saying, "He saved others. Let him save himself, if he is the Christ of God, the chosen one."



<sup>36</sup> The soldiers also ridiculed him, approaching him, offering him vinegar, <sup>37</sup> and saying, "If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself." <sup>38</sup> There was also a sign over him, "This is the King of the Jews."

<sup>39</sup> One of the criminals who was hanging there insulted him by saying, "Are you not the Christ? Save yourself and us."

<sup>40</sup> But the other rebuked him, saying, "Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation? <sup>41</sup> We indeed are here justly, for we are receiving what we deserve for our deeds. But this man did nothing wrong." <sup>42</sup> Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom."

<sup>43</sup> Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise."

<sup>44</sup> It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour <sup>45</sup> as the sun turned dark. Then the curtain of the temple was split in two. <sup>46</sup> Crying with a loud voice, Jesus said, "Father, into your hands I commit my spirit." Having said this, he died.

<sup>47</sup> When the centurion saw what was done, he glorified God, saying, "Surely this was a righteous man." <sup>48</sup> When all the multitudes who came together to witness this sight saw the things that were done, they returned beating their breasts. <sup>49</sup> But all those who knew him, and the women who followed him from Galilee, stood at a distance, watching these things.

<sup>50</sup> Behold, there was a man named Joseph, who was a member of the Council. He was a good and righteous man. <sup>51</sup> This man had not agreed with their plan and action. He was from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, and he was looking for the kingdom of God. <sup>52</sup> This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus. <sup>53</sup> He took it down, wrapped it in fine linen, and placed it in a tomb that was cut in stone, where no one had ever been laid. <sup>54</sup> It was the Day of the Preparation, and the Sabbath was about to begin. <sup>55</sup> The women who had come with Jesus out of Galilee followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid. <sup>56</sup> They returned and prepared spices and ointments.

Then on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.

---

## Footnotes

---

23:17 <sup>[1]</sup> The best ancient copies do not have Luke 23:17,

---

## Luke 23 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB sets the last line of this chapter apart because it is more connected with chapter 24 than with chapter 23.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Accuse

The chief priests and scribes accused Jesus of doing evil because they wanted Pilate to kill Jesus. But they were accusing him falsely, because Jesus had never done what they accused him of doing.

#### "The curtain of the temple was split in two"

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus's people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Luke 23:53](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could

place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **"I find no fault in this man"**

Pilate was saying that he did not know of any reason why he should punish Jesus: Jesus had not broken any laws. Pilate was not saying that Jesus was perfect.

---

## **Luke 23**

### **23:1-7**

#### **Who was Pilate?**

[23:1]

Pilate was the Roman ruler of Judah. While he was in Jerusalem for the holiday, his home was at Caesarea.

See Map: Jerusalem; Caesarea

#### **Why did the religious leaders take Jesus to Pilate?**

[23:1]

The Jewish leaders took Jesus to Pilate. This was because they needed the Roman ruler's permission to kill someone.

#### **What did the leaders mean when they accused Jesus of perverting the nation?**

[23:2]

The leaders accused Jesus of perverting the nation. Some scholars think they believed Jesus caused people to fight against their Roman rulers. Other scholars think these leaders believed Jesus caused the Jewish people to riot and fight against the Jewish leaders.

#### **Who was Herod Antipas?**

[23:7]

See: [King Herod](#)

#### **Why was Jesus taken to Herod?**

[23:7]

Jesus was taken to Herod. Some scholars think Pilate sent Jesus to Herod so Herod would have something to report to Pilate about Jesus. Other scholars think Herod asked to meet Jesus so Pilate sent Jesus to Herod. Other scholars think Pilate sent Jesus to Herod so that Herod could determine whether the things said about Jesus were true.

See: [King Herod](#)

### **23:8-12**

#### **Why did Jesus not answer Herod's questions?**

[23:9]

Jesus did not answer Herod's questions. Some scholars think this was because he knew that he was going to die. He knew that he needed to die so that people could be at peace with God. Other scholars think Jesus did not answer Herod's questions because he knew Herod wanted to do something evil.

**Advice to Translators:** Jesus did not answer Herod's questions. This does not mean that Jesus was guilty.

See: [Atone \(Atonement\)](#); [Atone \(Atonement\)](#)

### **Why did the soldiers dress Jesus in elegant clothes?**

[23:11]

The soldiers dressed Jesus in the type of robe that only kings wore. They did this to mock Jesus. They did not think he was a king. They wanted other people to think this also.

See: [Irony](#)

### **23:13-24**

#### **Did Luke write the words in verse 17?**

[23:17]

Some ancient copies of Luke have the words in verse 17. More and older ancient copies of Luke do not have these words. Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words. However, Matthew and Mark wrote these words (see: Matthew 27:15; Mark 15:6).

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](#)

#### **Who was Barabbas?**

[23:18]

Barabbas was a criminal who was in prison. Luke said that Barabbas had been involved with a rebellion. Scholars think he was also a violent person who fought against the Roman empire. They think the Jewish people asked for Barabbas to be freed because Barabbas was a hero to some of them. He was a hero because he tried to free Israel from Roman rule.

See: [Rebel \(Rebellion\)](#)

### **23:26-31**

#### **Where was Cyrene?**

[23:26]

See Map: Cyrene

#### **How did soldiers make Simon carry Jesus' cross?**

[23:26]

The soldiers grabbed Simon from the crowd and forced him to carry Jesus' cross. Some scholars think the soldiers had Simon carry one piece of the cross while Jesus carried the other piece. Other scholars think Simon was made to carry one piece and the other piece was at the place where Jesus was going to be crucified. Other scholars think Simon carried one end of the cross while Jesus carried the other end.

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#); [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

#### **Who were the "daughters of Jerusalem"?**

[23:28]

The "daughters of Jerusalem" were the women living in Jerusalem.

### **Why did Jesus tell the women not to weep for him?**

[23:28]

Jesus told the women not to weep for him because God wanted Jesus to suffer and die. This was God's will. However, they needed to weep because the people of Jerusalem would soon experience great suffering. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about when the Romans destroyed Jerusalem and the temple. This happened about forty years after Jesus died.

See: [Temple](#); [Temple](#)

### **Why will people "say to the mountains, 'fall on us' and the hills, 'cover us'?"**

[23:30]

Luke wrote about people speaking to the mountains and hills. This was a metaphor. Scholars think that they were going to greatly suffer and because of this they would want to die quickly.

See: [Metaphor](#)

### **Why did Jesus talk about a green tree and a dry tree?**

[23:31]

Jesus talked about a green tree and a dry tree because he warned the Jewish people they will suffer. The green tree was a metaphor for Jesus. When Jesus talked about the green tree, he wanted people to know that he was going to greatly suffer, but he did not do anything wrong. When Jesus talked about the dry tree, he was speaking about people who did the wrong things. These people will suffer more than Jesus.

See: [Metaphor](#)

## **23:32-38**

### **Why was the place they took Jesus to called "The Skull"?**

[23:33]

Scholars think the place they took Jesus was called "the skull" because it was a hill that looked like a skull. Other scholars think the place was called the skull because the Romans had executed many people there. It was not because there were human skulls lying on the ground.

### **What was crucifixion?**

[23:33]

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **What did it mean to "cast lots"?**

[23:34]

See: [Cast Lots](#)

### **Why did the soldiers offer Jesus vinegar to drink?**

[23:36]

Scholars think different things about why the soldiers offered Jesus vinegar to drink.

1. Some scholars think this was to fulfill a prophecy in the Old Testament (see: Psalm 69:21). The soldiers did something evil.
2. Some scholars think that offering Jesus vinegar to drink was an act of compassion because the drink was thought to satisfy thirst better than water.

3. Some scholars think the soldiers offered Jesus vinegar to drink in order to mock him. That is, only the common people drank vinegar, or sour wine. A king would never be offered vinegar or sour wine to drink.

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Prophecy \(Prophecy\)](#) ; [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

### **Why did they put a sign over Jesus?**

[23:38]

Scholars think the soldiers put a sign over Jesus so people would know why he was crucified. Some scholars say Pilate wanted to mock Jesus with the sign. Other scholars think Pilate wanted to mock the Jewish leaders because they put their own king to death.

See: John 19:19-22

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **23:39-43**

### **Why did the criminal ask Jesus to remember him?**

[23:42]

The criminal asked Jesus to remember him because the criminal wanted to enter the kingdom of God. That is, he wanted Jesus to remember him when he returned to rule as the Messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### **What was “paradise”?**

[23:43]

“Paradise” is another name for “heaven.”

See: [Heaven](#)

### **23:44-49**

### **What was the sixth hour?**

[23:44]

The sixth hour was midday. The ancient Jews divided a day into twelve parts. The hours varied in length according to the time of the year so that midday was always the sixth hour. It was about noon.

### **What did it mean that the sun’s light failed?**

[23:44]

Luke wrote about the sun’s light fading. Some scholars think God used a strong wind that caused large amounts of dust to blow up and block the light of the sun. Other scholars think God used a miracle to blocked the light of the sun.

See: [Miracle](#)

### **What was the curtain of the temple?**

[23:45]

Scholars think the curtain of the temple was an inner curtain that separated the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. It was very thick. Nothing could tear this curtain except God.

See: [Most Holy Place \(Holy of Holies\)](#); [Holy Place](#); [Most Holy Place \(Holy of Holies\)](#)

### **Why was the curtain of the temple split in two?**

[23:45]

Scholars think different things about why the curtain of the temple split in two.

1. Some scholars think this happened so people would know that God who tore the curtain.
2. Some scholars think this was a metaphor. When Jesus died, people could now go to God without needing a priest.
3. Some scholars think this was a metaphor. God stopped living in the temple in some way.
4. Some scholars think this was a warning of the coming destruction of the temple.

See: [Metaphor](#); [Metaphor](#)

### **What did it mean that Jesus committed his spirit to God the Father?**

[23:46]

When Jesus said that he committed his spirit to God the Father, it meant that he completely trusted God.

See: Psalm 31:5

See: [God the Father](#); [God the Father](#)

### **Why did the people beat their breasts when they left?**

[23:48]

Scholars think different things about why the people beat their breasts when they left.

1. They were greatly saddened because of the way Jesus died.
2. They felt guilt because Jesus died and they beat their breasts as a sign of repentance because of their part in his death.
3. They knew something terrible happened because darkness came.

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#); [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

## **23:50-56**

### **Who was Joseph?**

[23:50]

This Joseph was a Jewish leader. Joseph was a popular name in ancient Israel.

### **Where was Arimathea?**

[23:51]

See Map: Arimathea

### **What did it mean that Joseph was looking for the kingdom of God?**

[23:51]

Joseph was looking for the kingdom of God. He was expecting the coming of the kingdom of God. Some scholars think Joseph may have believed that Jesus was the Messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

## What was the Day of Preparation?

[23:54]

The Day of Preparation was the time to prepare for the Sabbath. It began on Thursday evening and lasted until Friday evening. People cleaned houses, bought supplies, and cooked food so that they did no work on the Sabbath.

See: [Sabbath](#)

## Why did the women prepare spices and ointments?

[23:56]

The women prepared spices and ointments to put on the body of Jesus. The spices and ointments helped to hide the smell of a decaying body. It was also a sign of honor to anoint a body with spices and ointments, and was thought to preserve the body.

See: [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#); [Anoint \(Anointing\)](#)

### Luke 23:1

#### General Information:

Jesus is brought before Pilate.

#### The whole company of them

"All of the Jewish leaders" or "All the members of the Council"

#### rose up

This is an idiom that means that they began to act decisively.

#### before Pilate

To appear before someone means to enter into their authority. Alternate translation: "to be judged by Pilate"

### Luke 23:2

#### We found

"We" refers only the Council members, and not to Pilate of any other people nearby.

#### misleading our nation

"causing our people to do things that are not right" or "causing trouble by telling lies to our people"

#### forbidding to give tribute

"telling them not to pay taxes"

#### to Caesar

Caesar represents the Emperor of Rome. Alternate translation: "to the Emperor"

### Luke 23:3

#### Pilate asked him

"Pilate asked Jesus"

#### You say so

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so"

### Luke 23:4

#### multitudes

large groups of people

#### I find no guilt in this man

"I do not find this man guilty of anything"

### Luke 23:5

#### stirs up

"causes trouble among"

#### all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "all Judea. He began causing trouble in Galilee and now is causing trouble here"

### Luke 23:6

#### heard this

"heard that Jesus began to teach in Galilee"

#### he asked whether the man was a Galilean

Pilate wanted to know from which area Jesus came because he wanted to have a lower-ranking government official judge Jesus. If Jesus were from Galilee, Pilate could have Herod judge Jesus because Herod had authority over Galilee.

#### the man

This refers to Jesus.

## Luke 23:7

**he learned**  
"Pilate found out"

**he was under Herod's authority**  
The passage does not state the implied fact that Herod was the ruler of Galilee. Alternate translation: "Jesus was under the authority of Herod because Herod ruled over Galilee"

**he sent**  
"Pilate sent"

**who himself**  
This refers to Herod.

**in those days**  
"at that time"

## Luke 23:8

**he was very glad**  
"Herod was very glad"

**he had wanted to see him**  
"Herod had wanted to see Jesus"

**He had heard about him**  
"Herod had heard about Jesus"

**he hoped to see some sign done by him**  
Here the word "hope" means to expect that something one desires might happen. Alternate translation: "Herod expected that he might see some sign done by him"

**to see some sign done by him**  
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to see him do some kind of sign" or "that he might see Jesus do some sign"

**sign**  
a miracle that would show that Jesus was more than a mere man

## Luke 23:9

**Herod questioned Jesus in many words**  
"Herod asked Jesus a lot of questions"

**answered him nothing**  
"did not reply" or "did not give Herod an answer"

## Luke 23:10

**the scribes stood**  
"the scribes were standing there"

**vigorously accusing him**  
They were showing great anger and using strong words and accusing him of many things.

## Luke 23:11

**Herod with his soldiers**  
"Herod and his soldiers"

**dressed him in splendid clothes**  
"put beautiful clothes on him." The translation should not imply that this was done to honor or care for Jesus. They did it to mock Jesus and to make fun of him.

## Luke 23:12

**Herod and Pilate had become friends with each other that very day**  
The implied information is that they became friends because Herod appreciated Pilate allowing him to judge Jesus. Alternate translation: "Herod and Pilate became friends with each other that very day because Pilate had sent Jesus to Herod for judgment"

**before this they had been enemies with each other**  
This information is enclosed in parentheses to show that it is background information. Use a format that your audience would understand.

## Luke 23:13

**called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people**  
"called the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people to come meet together"

**the crowd of people**  
It is not likely that Pilate asked a crowd to come. The crowd was probably still there waiting to see what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "the crowd that was still there"

## Luke 23:14

**this man**  
This refers to Jesus.

**like a man who**  
"saying that he"

**misleading the people**  
"urging the people to act badly" or "trying to get the people to rebel against the government"

**I, having questioned him before you,**  
"I have questioned Jesus in your presence and." It is implied that they were witnesses to the proceedings. Alternate translation: "I have questioned Jesus with you here as witnesses, and I"

**find no guilt in this man**  
"do not think that he is guilty"



## Luke 23:15

### Connecting Statement:

Pilate continues speaking to the Jewish leaders and to the crowd.

### No, nor does Herod

We can understand what Herod did not do from what Pilate said about himself in verse 14. Alternate translation: "Nor does Herod find guilt in this man" or "Even Herod thinks he is innocent"

### nor does Herod, for

"nor does Herod, because" or "nor does Herod. We know this because"

### he sent him back to us

"Herod sent Jesus to return to us." The word "us" refers to Pilate, his soldiers, and the priests and scribes, but not those who were listening to Pilate.

### nothing worthy of death has been done by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he has not done anything to deserve a death sentence"

## Luke 23:16

### I will therefore punish him

Because Pilate had found no fault in Jesus he should have released him without punishment. It is not necessary to try to make this statement fit logically into the translation. Pilate punished Jesus, whom he knew to be innocent, only because he was afraid of the crowd.

## Luke 23:17

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 23:18

### General Information:

Verse 19 tells us background information about who Barabbas is.

### they cried out all together

"all the people in the crowd shouted"

### Away with this man, and release

"Take this man away! Release." They are asking him to have his soldiers kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "Take this man away and execute him! Release"

### release to us

"us" refers to the crowd only, and not to Pilate and his soldiers.

## Luke 23:19

### Barabbas was a man ... for murder

This is background information that Luke gives about who Barabbas was.

### who had been put into prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Romans had put in prison"

### a certain rebellion in the city

"trying to persuade the people of the city to rebel against the Roman government"

## Luke 23:20

### addressed them again

"spoke to them again" or "spoke again to the people in the crowd and to the religious rulers"

### desiring to release Jesus

"because he wanted to set Jesus free"

## Luke 23:21

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 23:22

### He said to them a third time

"Pilate said to the crowd again, for the third time"

### what evil has this man done?

Pilate uses this question to cause the crowd to understand that Jesus is innocent. Alternate translation: "this man has not done anything wrong!"

### I have found no guilt deserving death in him

"I have not learned of anything he has done for which I should put him to death"

### after punishing him, I will release him

As in Luke 23:16, Pilate should have released Jesus without punishment because he was innocent. However, he offered to punish Jesus to appease the crowd.

### I will release him

"I will set him free"

## Luke 23:23

### they were insistent

"the crowd insisted"

### with loud voices

"with shouting"

**for him to be crucified**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Pilate to have his soldiers crucify Jesus"

**Their voices convinced Pilate**

"The crowd kept shouting until they convinced Pilate"

**Luke 23:24**

**to grant their demand**

"to do what the crowd requested"

**Luke 23:25**

**He released the one they asked for**

Pilate released Barrabas from prison. Alternate translation: "Pilate freed Barabbas, whom the crowd had asked be released"

**who had been put in prison ... murder**

This is background information about where Barrabas was at that time. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Romans had put in prison ... murder"

**he delivered up Jesus to their will**

"Pilate commanded the soldiers to bring Jesus to them to do whatever the crowd wanted to do"

**Luke 23:26**

**As they led him away**

"While the soldiers led Jesus away from where Pilate was"

**seized**

The Roman soldiers had the authority to compel people to carry their loads. Do not translate this in a way that indicates that Simon was arrested or had done anything wrong.

**one Simon of Cyrene**

"a man named Simon, from the city of Cyrene"

**coming from the country**

"who was coming into Jerusalem from the countryside"

**laid the cross on him**

"put the cross on his shoulders"

**following Jesus**

"and he followed behind Jesus"

**Luke 23:27**

**A great crowd**

"A large crowd"

**great crowd of the people, and of women**

The women were part of the large crowd, and not a separate crowd.

**mourned for him**

"mourned for Jesus"

**were following him**

This does not mean that they were Jesus's disciples. It simply means they were walking along behind him.

**Luke 23:28**

**turning to them**

This indicates that Jesus turned to face the women and address them directly.

**Daughters of Jerusalem**

The "daughter" of a city means the women of the city. This was not rude. It was a normal form of address to a group of women from one location. Alternate translation: "You women who are from Jerusalem"

**do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children**

The person is a metonym for what happens to the person. Alternate translation: "do not weep about the bad things that will happen to me. Instead, weep because worse things will happen to you and to your children" or "you are weeping because bad things are happening to me, but you will weep even more when worse things happen to you and your children"

**Luke 23:29**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

**For see**

This introduces the reason why the women of Jerusalem should weep for themselves.

**the days are coming**

"there will soon be a time"

**in which they will say**

"when people will say"

**the barren**

"women who have not given birth to children"

**the wombs that did not bear ... the breasts that did not nurse**

These clauses are used to more fully describe "the barren." Those women neither gave birth nor nursed children. It may be helpful to combine these together with "the barren." Alternate translation: "the women who have never given birth to children or nursed babies"

**they**

This can refer to either the Romans or the Jewish leaders, or to people in general.

### Luke 23:30

**Then**

at that time

**to the hills**

Words are left out to keep the phrase short.

Alternate translation: "they will say to the hills"

### Luke 23:31

**For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?**

Jesus uses a question to help the crowd understand that people are doing bad things now in good times, so certainly they will do worse things in the bad times in the future. Alternate translation: "You can see that they are doing these bad things while the tree is green, so you can be sure that they will do worse things when the tree is dry."

**the tree is green**

The green tree is a metaphor for something that is good. If your language has a similar metaphor, you should use it here.

**it is dry**

The dry wood is a metaphor for something that will be useful only to burn.

### Luke 23:32

**Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The soldiers led away with Jesus two criminals to execute them also"

**Other men, two criminals**

"Two other men who were criminals" or "Two criminals." Luke avoids saying "other criminals" because Jesus was innocent, even though he was treated as a criminal. Luke calls the other two men criminals, but not Jesus.

### Luke 23:33

**When they came**

The word "they" includes the soldiers, the criminals, and Jesus.

**they crucified him**

"the Roman soldiers crucified Jesus"

**one on his right and one on his left**

"they crucified one criminal on Jesus's right side and the other criminal on Jesus's left side"

### Luke 23:34

**Father, forgive them**

The word "them" refers to those who were crucifying Jesus. Jesus speaks to his Father with compassion toward the men crucifying him.

**Father**

This is an important title for God.

**for they do not know what they are doing**

"because they do not understand what they are doing." The Roman soldiers did not understand that they were crucifying the Son of God. Alternate translation: "for they do not really know whom they are crucifying"

**they cast lots**

The soldiers participated in a type of gambling. Alternate translation: "they gambled"

**cast lots, dividing up his garments**

"cast lots to decide who among the soldiers would take home each piece of Jesus's clothing"

### Luke 23:35

**The people stood**

"The people were standing there"

**him**

This refers to Jesus.

**He saved others. Let him save himself**

Luke records the ironic words of the rulers. The only way Jesus could save others was by dying instead of saving himself.

**Let him save himself**

"Jesus should be able to save himself." They said this to mock Jesus. They did not believe he could save himself. Alternate translation: "We would like to see him prove who he is by saving himself from the cross"

**the chosen one**

"the one that God has chosen"

### Luke 23:36

**him**

Jesus

**approaching him**

"coming close to Jesus"

**offering him vinegar**

"offering Jesus vinegar to drink." Vinegar is a cheap drink that common people drink. The soldiers were mocking Jesus by giving a cheap drink to someone who claims to be a king.

### Luke 23:37

**If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself**  
The soldiers were mocking Jesus. Alternate translation: "We do not believe you are the King of the Jews, but if you are, prove us wrong by saving yourself"

### Luke 23:38

**a sign over him**  
"a placard at the top of Jesus's cross that stated"

**This is the King of the Jews**  
The people who put this sign above Jesus were mocking him. They did not really think he was a king.

### Luke 23:39

**insulted him**  
"reviled Jesus"

**Are you not the Christ? Save yourself**  
The criminal uses a question to mock Jesus. Alternate translation: "You claim to be the Christ. Save yourself" or "If you really were the Christ, you would save yourself"

**Save yourself and us**  
The criminal did not really think that Jesus could rescue them from the cross.

### Luke 23:40

**the other rebuked him**  
"the other criminal rebuked him"

**Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?**  
The criminal uses a question to scold the other criminal. Alternate translation: "You should fear God, because you are under the same sentence of condemnation."

**you are under the same sentence of condemnation**  
"the government has condemned you to be punished in the same way"

### Luke 23:41

**We indeed ... for we ... we deserve**  
These usages of "we" refer only to the two criminals, and not to Jesus or the other people.

**We indeed are here justly**  
"Truly we deserve this punishment"

**this man**  
This refers to Jesus.

### Luke 23:42

**Then he said**  
"The criminal also said"

**remember me**  
"think about me and treat me well"

**come into your kingdom**  
To "come into" a kingdom means to begin to rule. Alternate translation: "begin to rule as king"

### Luke 23:43

**Truly I say to you, today**  
"Truly" adds emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "I want you to know that today"

**paradise**  
This is the place that righteous people go to when they die. Jesus was assuring the man that he would be with God and God would accept him. Alternate translation: "the place where the righteous people live" or "the place where people live well"

### Luke 23:44

**about the sixth hour**  
"about noon." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

**darkness came over the whole land**  
"the entire land became dark"

**until the ninth hour**  
"until 3 p.m." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

### Luke 23:45

**as the sun turned dark**  
This does not refer to sundown. Rather, the light of the sun turned dark during the middle of the day. Use a term to describe the sun becoming dark rather than the sun going down.

**the curtain of the temple**  
"the curtain inside the temple." This was the curtain that separated the most holy place from the rest of the temple.

**the curtain of the temple was split in two**  
"the curtain of the temple was torn into two pieces." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God tore the temple curtain into two pieces"

## Luke 23:46

### **Crying with a loud voice**

"Shouting loudly." It may be helpful to show how this is related to the events of the previous verses. Alternate translation: "When that happened, Jesus shouted loudly"

### **Father**

This is an important title for God.

### **into your hands I commit my spirit**

"The phrase "into your hands" refers to God's care. Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care" or "I give my spirit to you, knowing you will care for it"

### **Having said this**

"After Jesus said this"

### **he died**

"Jesus died"

## Luke 23:47

### **the centurion**

This was the title for the Roman officer who was in charge of the other Roman soldiers. He supervised the crucifixion.

### **what was done**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the things that had happened"

### **this was a righteous man**

"this man did nothing wrong" or "this man did not do anything wrong"

## Luke 23:48

### **multitudes**

large groups of people

### **who came together**

"who gathered together"

### **witness this sight**

"see this event" or "observe what was happening"

### **the things that were done**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what had happened"

### **returned beating**

"returned to their homes beating"

### **beating their breasts**

This was a symbol of sorrow and regret. Alternate translation: "hitting their own chests to show that they were sorrowful"

## Luke 23:49

### **followed him**

"traveled with Jesus"

### **at a distance**

"some distance away from Jesus"

### **these things**

"what happened"

## Luke 23:50

### **General Information:**

The author begins to give background information about the man who buried Jesus's body.

### **Behold, there was a man**

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There was a man who was"

### **the Council**

"the Jewish Council"

## Luke 23:51

### **General Information:**

The author finishes giving background information about the man who buried Jesus's body. It may be helpful to reorder some of the information in this verse and the previous verse with a verse bridge, as the UDB does.

### **with their plan and action**

What the decision was can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "with either the Council's decision to kill Jesus or with their action in killing him"

### **a city of the Jews**

"a city in which most people were Jews"

## Luke 23:52

### **This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus**

"This man went to Pilate and requested the body of Jesus, to bury it."

## Luke 23:53

### **He took it down**

"Joseph took Jesus's body from the cross." He probably had help, so this may be a synecdoche. Alternate translation: "Joseph and some helpers took it down"

### **wrapped it in fine linen**

"wrapped the body in a fine linen cloth." This was the normal burial custom at that time.

**that was cut in stone**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which someone had cut in a rock cliff"

**where no one had ever been laid**

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "No one had ever before put a body in that tomb"

**Luke 23:54**

**the Day of the Preparation**

"the day when people got ready for the Jewish day of rest called the Sabbath"

**the Sabbath was about to begin**

For the Jews, the day began at sunset. Alternate translation: "it was soon going to be sunset, the start of the Sabbath"

**Luke 23:55**

**who had come with Jesus out of Galilee**

"who had traveled with Jesus from the region of Galilee"

**followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "walked along behind Joseph and the men who were with him; the women saw the tomb and how the men laid Jesus's body inside the tomb"

**Luke 23:56**

**They returned**

"The women went to the houses where the women were staying"

**prepared spices and ointments**

Because they had had no time to honor Jesus by putting fragrant spices and ointments on his body on the day he died, they were going to do it on the morning of the first day of the week. Alternate translation: "prepared spices and ointments to put on Jesus's body"

**they rested**

"the women did no work"

**according to the commandment**

"according to the Jewish law" or "as the Jewish law required." According to the law, they were not allowed to prepare his body on the Sabbath.

---

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 23:2**

**What accusations against Jesus did the Jewish leaders make to Pilate?**

They said that Jesus was perverting the nation, forbidding tribute to Caesar, and saying that he was the Christ, a king.

**Luke 23:4**

**After questioning Jesus, what did Pilate say about him?**

He said, "I find no fault in this man."

**Luke 23:8**

**Why did Herod want to see Jesus?**

Herod wanted to see Jesus do a miracle.

**Luke 23:9**

**How did Jesus answer Herod's questions?**

He answered him nothing.

**Luke 23:14**

**When Jesus was returned to Pilate, what did Pilate say about Jesus to the crowd?**

He said, "I find no fault in this man."

**Luke 23:18**

**Who did the crowd want released from prison for the Passover feast?**

They wanted Barabbas, a criminal.

**Luke 23:21**

**What did the crowd shout should be done to Jesus?**

They shouted, "Crucify him, crucify him."

**Luke 23:22**

**For the third time, what did Pilate tell the crowd about Jesus?**

Pilate said, "I have found nothing deserving the death penalty in him."

**Luke 23:24**

**Why did Pilate finally grant the crowd's demand to crucify Jesus?**

Because they were insistent with loud voices.

**Luke 23:26**

**Who carried Jesus' cross, and followed behind Jesus?**

Simon of Cyrene carried Jesus' cross.

**Luke 23:28**

**Who did Jesus say the women of Jerusalem should weep for instead of him?**  
They should weep for themselves and their children.

**Luke 23:32**

**Who was crucified with Jesus?**  
Two criminals were crucified with Jesus.

**Luke 23:34**

**From the cross, what did Jesus pray for those crucifying him?**  
He prayed, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing."

**Luke 23:35**

**The people, the soldiers, and one of the criminals all challenged Jesus to do what, since Jesus claimed to be the Christ?**  
They challenged him to save himself.

**Luke 23:37**

**The people, the soldiers, and one of the criminals all challenged Jesus to do what, since Jesus claimed to be the Christ?**  
They challenged him to save himself.

**Luke 23:38**

**What was written on a sign over Jesus?**  
It said, "THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS."

**Luke 23:39**

**The people, the soldiers, and one of the criminals all challenged Jesus to do what, since Jesus claimed to be the Christ?**  
They challenged him to save himself.

**Luke 23:42**

**What request did the second criminal make to Jesus?**  
He said, "Remember me when you come into your kingdom."

**Luke 23:43**

**What promise did Jesus make to the second criminal?**  
He said, "Today you will be with me in paradise."

**Luke 23:44**

**What miraculous events occurred immediately before Jesus' death?**  
Darkness came over the land and the curtain of the temple was split down the middle.

**Luke 23:45**

**What miraculous events occurred immediately before Jesus' death?**  
Darkness came over the land and the curtain of the temple was split down the middle.

**Luke 23:47**

**What did the centurion say about Jesus after Jesus' death?**  
He said, "Surely this was a righteous man."

**Luke 23:52**

**What did Joseph of Arimathea do after Jesus' death?**  
He asked Pilate for the body and laid it in a tomb.

**Luke 23:53**

**What did Joseph of Arimathea do after Jesus' death?**  
He asked Pilate for the body and laid it in a tomb.

**Luke 23:54**

**What day was about to begin when Jesus was buried?**  
The Sabbath Day was about to begin.

**Luke 23:56**

**What did the women who had been with Jesus do on the Sabbath?**  
They rested, according to God's commandment.

## Chapter 24

<sup>1</sup> Very early on the first day of the week, they came to the tomb, bringing the spices which they had prepared. <sup>2</sup> They found the stone rolled away from the tomb. <sup>3</sup> They entered in, but did not find the body of the Lord Jesus. <sup>4</sup> It happened that, while they were confused about this, suddenly, two men stood by them in bright shining garments. <sup>5</sup> As the women were terrified and bowed down their faces to the earth, they said to the women, "Why do you seek the living among the dead? <sup>6</sup> He is not here, but has been raised! Remember how he spoke to you when he was still in Galilee, <sup>7</sup> saying that the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified, and on the third day rise again." <sup>8</sup> The women remembered his words <sup>9</sup> and returned from the tomb and told all these things to the eleven and all the rest. <sup>10</sup> Now Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them reported these things to the apostles. <sup>11</sup> But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles, and they did not believe the women. <sup>12</sup> Yet Peter rose up and ran to the tomb, and, stooping and looking in, he saw the linen cloths by themselves. Peter then departed to his home, wondering what had happened.

<sup>13</sup> Behold, two of them were going that very day to a village named Emmaus, which was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. <sup>14</sup> They discussed with each other about all the things that had happened. <sup>15</sup> It happened that, while they discussed and questioned together, Jesus himself approached and went with them. <sup>16</sup> But their eyes were prevented from recognizing him. <sup>17</sup> Jesus said to them, "What are these matters you two are discussing as you walk?" They stood there looking sad.

<sup>18</sup> One of them, named Cleopas, answered him, "Are you the only person in Jerusalem who does not know the things which have happened there these days?"

<sup>19</sup> Jesus said to them, "What things?"

They answered him, "The things concerning Jesus the Nazarene, who was a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people, <sup>20</sup> and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him up to be condemned to death and crucified him. <sup>21</sup> But we hoped that he was the one who was going to redeem Israel. Yes, and what is more, it is now the third day since all these things happened. <sup>22</sup> But also, some women of our company amazed us, having been at the tomb early in the morning. <sup>23</sup> When they did not find his body, they came, saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said that he was alive. <sup>24</sup> Some men who were with us went to the tomb, and found it just as the women had said. But they did not see him."

<sup>25</sup> Jesus said to them, "O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken! <sup>26</sup> Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things, and to enter into his glory?" <sup>27</sup> Then beginning from Moses and through all the prophets, Jesus interpreted to them the things concerning himself in all the scriptures.

<sup>28</sup> As they approached the village to which they were going, Jesus acted as though he were going further. <sup>29</sup> But they compelled him, saying, "Stay with us, for it is toward evening and the day is almost over." So Jesus went in to stay with them. <sup>30</sup> It happened that, when he had sat down with them to eat, he took the bread, blessed it, and breaking it, he gave it to them. <sup>31</sup> Then their eyes were opened, and they knew him, and he vanished out of their sight. <sup>32</sup> They said one to another, "Was not our heart burning within us, while he spoke to us on the way, while he opened to us the scriptures?" <sup>33</sup> They rose up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem. They found the eleven gathered together and those who were with them, <sup>34</sup> saying, "The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon." <sup>35</sup> So they told the things that happened on the way, and how Jesus was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread.

<sup>36</sup> As they spoke these things, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and said to them, "Peace be to you." <sup>37</sup> But they were terrified and filled with fear and thought that they were seeing a spirit. <sup>38</sup> Jesus said to them, "Why are you troubled? Why do questions arise in your heart? <sup>39</sup> See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having." <sup>40</sup> When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his feet. <sup>41</sup> They still could not believe it because of joy, and they were amazed. Jesus said to them, "Do you have anything to eat?" <sup>42</sup> They gave him a piece of a broiled fish, <sup>43</sup> and he took it and ate it before them.



<sup>44</sup> He said to them, "These are my words that I spoke to you when I was with you, that all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled." <sup>45</sup> Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures. <sup>46</sup> He said to them, "Thus it is written, that the Christ should suffer and rise again from the dead on the third day. <sup>47</sup> Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem. <sup>48</sup> You are witnesses of these things. <sup>49</sup> See, I am sending you what my Father promised. But remain in the city until you are clothed with power from on high."

<sup>50</sup> Then Jesus led them out until they were near Bethany. He lifted up his hands and blessed them. <sup>51</sup> It happened that, while he was blessing them, he left them and was carried up into heaven. <sup>52</sup> So they worshiped him and returned to Jerusalem with great joy. <sup>53</sup> They were continually in the temple, blessing God.

---

## Luke 24 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Luke 24:1](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

#### The faith of the women

Most of Luke's original readers would have thought of women as less important than men, but Luke carefully shows that some women loved Jesus very much and had more faith than the twelve disciples had.

#### Resurrection

Luke wants his readers to understand that Jesus came alive again in a physical body ([Luke 24:38-43](#)).

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### "On the third day"

Jesus told his followers that he would become alive again "on the third day" ([Luke 18:33](#)). He died on a Friday afternoon (before sunset) and became alive again on a Sunday, so he became alive again "on the third day" because the Jews said that the day began and ended at sunset, and they counted any part of the day as a day. Friday was the first day, Saturday was the second day, and Sunday was the third day.

#### Two men in bright shining robes

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

---

## Luke 24

### 24:1-12

#### When was the first day of the week?

[24:1]

The first day of the week was after the sabbath. The sabbath was Saturday for Jews and some Christians. The first day of the week was Sunday. The women went to the tomb likely brought the spices at sunrise on the first day of the week.

**Why was there a stone?**

[24:2]

The stone covered the entry point of the tomb. The stone kept grave robbers out of the tomb and it also kept animals from entering the tomb. The stone was too large for women to move.

**Who were the two men?**

[24:4]

Scholars think that the two men who suddenly stood by the women were angels.

See: [Angel](#)

**Why did the angels asking the women, “Why do you seek the living among the dead”?**

[24:5]

When the angels asked the women a question, they knew that Jesus was alive. Therefore, the women were not going to find Jesus in the tomb.

**Who were the “sinful men” into whose hands Jesus was delivered?**

[24:7]

Scholars think the “sinful men” spoke about Judas and the crowd of men he brought to arrest Jesus. Jesus himself said he was to be delivered into the hands of Gentiles (see: Luke 18:32). Gentiles were considered to be sinful people.

See: [Sin](#); [Sin](#)

**How many days was Jesus dead and in the tomb?**

[24:7]

Jesus was dead and in the tomb three days. The first day was Friday, the second day was Saturday, and the third day was Sunday. The Jewish day began and ended when the sun went down.

**What was “idle talk”?**

[24:11]

Scholars think that “idle talk” was talk that was impossible to believe. That is, people who heard it did not understand it.

**Why did Peter run to the tomb?**

[24:12]

Some scholars think Peter ran to the tomb to see if the women were telling the truth about Jesus.

See: John 20:1-10

**24:13-35**

**Where was Emmaus?**

[24:13]

See Map: Emmaus

**What was a “stadia”?**

[24:13]

A stadia was about 190 meters.

**What did it mean that two followers of Jesus were prevented from recognizing Jesus?**

[24:16]

Scholars give several reasons why the two followers of Jesus were prevented from recognizing him.

1. They were not expecting to see Jesus alive again.
2. God did something so that the two men did not know it was Jesus.
3. The Holy Spirit waited until the right time for them to know that it was Jesus. This was when they sat close to Jesus to eat a meal.

**Who was Cleopas?**

[24:18]

Scholars do not know who Cleopas was. Some scholars say Cleopas as an uncle of Jesus. He was Joseph's brother.

**What was a Nazarene?**

[24:19]

A Nazarene was a person who came from or lived in a town called Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

**What were the scriptures to which Jesus referred?**

[24:27]

The scriptures to which Jesus referred were the places in the Old Testament that told about the messiah before the messiah came.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

**What did it mean that Jesus “acted as though he were going further”?**

[24:28]

Jesus “acted as though he were going further”. That is, it seemed that he was going to travel beyond the village. Scholars think Jesus would have continued on past the village if the two people had not asked him to stay with them.

**How were the eyes of the two followers of Jesus opened?**

[24:31]

Luke wrote that the eyes of the two people were opened. This was a metaphor. These people were able to recognize Jesus. Scholars think this happened when Jesus broke the bread and handed it to them.

See: [Metaphor](#)

**What was meant by the words, “our heart burning within us”?**

[24:32]

The words “our heart burning within us” was a metaphor. It meant that their hearts and minds were filled with joy, a sense of awe, hope, and excitement. It described how they felt when Jesus explained the Old Testament to them.

See: [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#)

## **24:36-49**

### **Why did Jesus give the greeting “peace be to you”?**

[24:36]

In ancient times, people often greeted one another by saying, “peace be to you.” This was a way people asked for blessings for someone else.

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say to the disciples, “See my hands and my feet”?**

[24:39]

Jesus said to the disciples, “See my hands and my feet”. Scholars think Jesus wanted them to look at his hands and feet because they showed the scars of his crucifixion (see: John 20:25-27).

See: [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#); [Crucify \(Crucifixion\)](#)

### **Why did Jesus say, “a spirit does not have flesh and bones”?**

[24:39]

Some scholars think that when Jesus said a “spirit”(πνεῦμα/g4151) does not have flesh and bones, he was telling the disciples he was not a ghost. That is, a ghost does not have a real physical body.

See: [Disciple](#); [Disciple](#)

### **What did Luke mean when he wrote, “They still could not believe it because of joy”?**

[24:41]

Luke wrote, “They still could not believe.” Scholars think the disciples thought it was too good to be true, that Jesus was really alive again. This was because they were overcome with amazement.

### **What was meant by the words, “he opened their minds”?**

[24:45]

When Jesus “opened their minds,” he caused his disciples to be able to understand all that was written in the Old Testament about the Messiah.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Old Testament \(Law and Prophets\)](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#).

### **What was “repentance”?**

[24:47]

See: [Repent \(Repentance\)](#)

### **What did it mean to preach “in his name”?**

[24:47]

Some scholars think that to preach in the name of Jesus happened when Jesus gave someone permission to preach. Other scholars think that someone preached in Jesus’ name when they preached about the gospel.

See: [Gospel](#); [Gospel](#)

**What were “these things” of which the disciples were witnesses?**

[24:48]

When Jesus spoke about “these things” he was referring to his suffering, death, and resurrection, all of which the disciples were witnesses.

See: [Resurrect \(Resurrection\)](#)

**Why did Jesus say, “I am sending you what my Father promised”?**

[24:49]

Jesus said, “I am sending you what my Father promised.” This is the promise of the Holy Spirit.

**Advice to Translators:** It may be more clear to state that Jesus said “I am going to send you what my Father promised”.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

**What did it mean to be “clothed with power from on high”?**

[24:49]

To be “clothed with power from on high” was a metaphor. God gave power to the disciples. Scholars think God did this soon after Jesus returned to heaven (see: Acts 1:8; 2:1-4).

See: [Heaven](#); [Disciple](#); [Heaven](#)

**24:50-53**

**What did it mean that Jesus “blessed” his disciples?**

[24:50]

See: [Bless \(Blessing\)](#)

**Why was Jesus carried up into heaven?**

[24:51]

Jesus had completed his work and returned to heaven. Jesus said this was necessary so that the Holy Spirit could come to people in a new way (see: John 16:7-11).

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Holy Spirit](#); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](#)

**How did the followers of Jesus “worship” Jesus?**

[24:52]

Some scholars think people worshipped Jesus by bow down before him, or to lay face-down on the ground before him.

See: [Worship](#)

**Why did the followers of Jesus have “great joy” after Jesus went to heaven?**

[24:52]

Scholars give several reasons the followers of Jesus had “great joy”(χαρά/g5479) after Jesus went to heaven.

1. Jesus is Lord in heaven and he reigns over everything.
2. They were no longer afraid of dying because they would also go to heaven.
3. They had no more doubts. They knew Jesus was the Messiah.
4. They believed they will complete the things Jesus wanted them to do.

See: [Messiah \(Christ\)](#); [Heaven](#); [Messiah \(Christ\)](#)

### What did it mean that the disciples were “continually in the temple”?

[24:53]

Scholars think Luke meant that the disciples were in the temple very often, likely every day. When in the temple, they were continually worshipping God and giving him thanks.

#### Luke 24:1

##### General Information:

The women (Luke 23:55) return to the tomb with spices to put on Jesus's body.

##### Very early on the first day of the week

"Before dawn on Sunday"

##### they came to the tomb

"the women arrived at the tomb." These were the women spoken of in Luke 23:55.

##### the tomb

This tomb was cut in the rock of a cliff.

##### bringing the spices

These were the same spices they prepared in Luke 23:56.

#### Luke 24:2

##### They found the stone

"They saw that the stone was"

##### the stone rolled away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that someone had rolled the stone"

##### the stone

This was a large, cut, round stone big enough to completely block the doorway to the tomb. It required several men to roll it.

#### Luke 24:3

##### did not find the body of the Lord Jesus

You can state explicitly that they did not find it because it was not there. Alternate translation: "the body of the Lord Jesus was not there"

#### Luke 24:4

##### General Information:

Two angels appear and begin speaking to the women.

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### Luke 24:5

##### were terrified

"became very afraid"

##### bowed down their faces to the earth

"bowed low to the ground." This action expresses their humility and submission to the men.

##### Why do you seek the living among the dead?

The men use a question to mildly criticize the women for looking in a tomb for a living person. Alternate translation: "You are looking for a living person among dead people!" or "You should not be looking for someone who is alive in a place where they bury dead people!"

##### Why do you seek

Here "you" is plural, referring to the women who came.

#### Luke 24:6

##### but has been raised

"but he has been made alive again." "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God has made him alive again"

##### Remember how

"Remember what"

**to you**

The word "you" is plural. It refers to the women and possibly the other disciples in addition.

#### Luke 24:7

**Connecting Statement:**

The angels finish speaking to the women.

**that the Son of Man**

This is the beginning of an indirect quote. It can also be translated with a direct quote, as in the UDB.

**the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified**

The phrase "must be" means this is something that would certainly happen because God had already decided that it would happen. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "it was necessary that they hand the Son of Man over to sinful men who would crucify him"

**into the hands**

Here "hands" refers to power or control.

**third day**

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 24:8

**remembered his words**

Here "words" refers to the statement that Jesus made. Alternate translation: "remembered what Jesus said"

#### Luke 24:9

**Connecting Statement:**

The women go to tell the apostles about what they found at the tomb.

**the eleven and all the rest**

"the eleven apostles and all the rest of the disciples who were with them"

**the eleven**

This is Luke's first reference to the "eleven" because there had always been twelve before. But Judas left the twelve and betrayed Jesus.

#### Luke 24:10

**Now**

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke gives the names of some of the women who came from the tomb and told the apostles what had happened there.

#### Luke 24:11

**But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles**

"But the apostles thought that what the women said was foolish talk"

#### Luke 24:12

**Yet Peter**

This phrase contrasts Peter to the other apostles. He did not dismiss what the women said, but ran to the tomb to see for himself.

**rose up**

This is an idiom that means "began to act." Whether Peter was sitting or standing when he decided to act is not important. Alternate translation: "started out"

**stooping**

Peter had to bend over in order to see inside the tomb because tombs cut in solid rock were very low. Alternate translation: "bending himself at the waist"

**the linen cloths by themselves**

"only the linen cloths." This refers to the cloths that had been wrapped around Jesus's body when he was buried in [Luke 23:53]

**departed to his home**

"went away to his home"

#### Luke 24:13

**General Information:**

Two of the disciples are on their way to Emmaus.

**Behold**

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

**two of them**

"two of the disciples"

**that very day**

"that same day." This refers to the day when the women found the tomb to be empty.

**Emmaus**

This is the name of a town.

**sixty stadia**

"eleven kilometers." A "stadium" was 185 meters.

#### Luke 24:14

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Luke 24:15

### It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. It starts with Jesus approaching them. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Jesus himself

The word "himself" emphasizes the fact that the very Jesus they were talking about actually appeared to them. So far the women had seen the angels, but no one had seen Jesus.

## Luke 24:16

### their eyes were prevented from recognizing him

"their eyes were kept from recognizing Jesus." The men's ability to recognize Jesus is spoken of as their eyes' ability to recognize him. This can be stated in active form. It is most likely that it was God who prevented them from recognizing Jesus. Alternate translation: "something happened to them so they could not recognize him" or "God prevented them from recognizing him"

## Luke 24:17

### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the two men"

## Luke 24:18

### Cleopas

This is the name of a man.

### Are you the only person ... days?

Cleopas uses this question to show his surprise that this man appears not to know about the things that have happened in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "You must be the only person ... days."

### Are you

Here "you" is singular.

## Luke 24:19

### What things

"What things have happened" or "What things have taken place"

### a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people

This means that God caused Jesus to be mighty and that the people saw that he was mighty. Alternate translation: "a prophet to whom God gave power to do and teach great things that were amazing to all the people"

## Luke 24:20

### delivered him up

"gave him over"

### to be condemned to death and crucified him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in order for the governor to put Jesus to death by crucifying him"

## Luke 24:21

### Connecting Statement:

The two men continue responding to Jesus.

### But we hoped that he was the one

Here the word "hope" means "expect" or "think" that something might be true. By saying "we hoped" the two men show that they no longer think that Jesus is the one who will redeem Israel. Alternate translation: "But we thought that he might be the one"

### who was going to redeem Israel

The Romans ruled over the Jews. Alternate translation: "who would free the Israelites from our Roman enemies"

### Yes, and what is more,

This introduces another reason why they believed Jesus would not free Israel. Alternate translation: "Now that does not seem possible because"

### the third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in [Luke 24:7]

### since all these things happened

"since all the many actions that led up to the death of Jesus have taken place"

## Luke 24:22

### But also

This introduces another reason why it the men did not understand what was happening concerning Jesus.

### of our company

"in our group"

### having been at the tomb

The women were the ones who were at the tomb.

## Luke 24:23

### a vision of angels

"angels in a vision"



## Luke 24:24

### Connecting Statement:

The two men finish responding to Jesus.

### they did not see him

"they did not see Jesus"

## Luke 24:25

### Jesus said to them

Jesus is speaking to the two disciples.

### slow of heart to believe

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind. Alternate translation: "your minds are slow to believe" or "you are slow to believe"

## Luke 24:26

### Was it not necessary ... glory?

Jesus uses a question to remind the disciples about what the prophets said. Alternate translation: "It was necessary ... glory."

### to enter into his glory

This refers to Jesus beginning to rule and to receive honor and glory.

## Luke 24:27

### beginning from Moses

Moses wrote the first books of the Bible. Alternate translation: "beginning with the writings of Moses"

### Jesus interpreted to them

"Jesus explained to them"

## Luke 24:28

### Jesus acted as though he were going further

The two men understood from his actions that he was going on to another destination. Perhaps he kept walking on the road when they turned off to enter the gate into the village. There is no indication that Jesus deceived them with words.

## Luke 24:29

### they compelled him

You may need to make explicit what they compelled him to do. This is probably an exaggeration to show that they needed to speak with him for a long time before they could change his mind. The word "compel" means to use physical force, but it seems that they persuaded him using only words. Alternate translation: "they were able to persuade him to stay"

**it is toward evening and the day is almost over**  
The Jewish day ended at sundown.

### Jesus went in

"Jesus entered the house"

### stay with them

"stay with the two disciples"

## Luke 24:30

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### the bread

This refers to bread made without yeast. It does not refer to food in general.

### blessed it

"gave thanks for it" or "thanked God for it"

## Luke 24:31

### Then their eyes were opened

Their "eyes" represent their understanding. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then they understood" or "Then they realized"

### they knew him

"they recognized him." These disciples had known him before his death.

### he vanished out of their sight

This means that suddenly he was no longer there. It does not mean that he became invisible.

## Luke 24:32

### Was not our heart burning ... scriptures?

They use a question to emphasize how amazed they were about their encounter with Jesus. The intense feelings they had while talking to Jesus are spoken of as if they were a fire burning inside them. Alternate translation: "Our hearts were burning ... scriptures."

### within us

The two men were speaking to each other. The word "us" is dual inclusive for languages that make these distinctions.

### while he opened to us the scriptures

Jesus did not open a book or scroll. "opened" refers to their understanding. Alternate translation: "while he explained the scriptures to us" or "while he enabled us to understand the scriptures"

## Luke 24:33

### Connecting Statement:

The two men go to Jerusalem to the eleven disciples to tell them about Jesus.

**They rose up**

"They" refers to the two men.

**rose up**

"got up" or "stood up"

**the eleven**

This refers to Jesus's apostles. Judas was no longer included with them.

**Luke 24:34**

**saying**

"and those people told the two men"

**Luke 24:35**

**So they told**

"So the two men told them"

**the things that happened on the way**

This refers to Jesus appearing to them while they were on their way to the village of Emmaus.

**how Jesus was recognized by them**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "how they recognized Jesus"

**in the breaking of the bread**

"when Jesus broke the bread" or "when Jesus tore the bread"

**Luke 24:36**

**General Information:**

Jesus appears to the disciples. When the two men previously arrived at the house where the Eleven were, Jesus was not with them.

**Jesus himself**

The word "himself" focuses on Jesus and the surprise of Jesus actually appearing to them. Most of them had not seen him after his resurrection.

**in the midst of them**

"among them"

**Peace be to you**

"May you have peace" or "May God give you peace!" The word "you" is plural.

**Luke 24:37**

**But they were terrified**

"But" indicates a strong contrast. Jesus told them to be at peace, but they were very afraid instead.

**terrified and filled with fear**

"startled and afraid." These two phrases mean about the same thing, and are used together to emphasize their fear.

**a spirit**

Here it refers to the spirit of a dead person.

**Luke 24:38**

**Why are you troubled?**

Jesus uses a question to comfort them. Alternate translation: "Do not be frightened."

**Why do questions arise in your heart?**

Jesus uses a question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. The word "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind. Alternate translation: "Do not doubt in your minds!" or "Stop doubting!"

**Luke 24:39**

**Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having**

Jesus asks them to confirm by touch that he is not a ghost. It may be helpful to combine and reorder these two sentences. Alternate translation: "Touch me and feel that I have flesh and bones that a ghost would not have"

**flesh and bones**

This is a way of referring to the physical body.

**Luke 24:40**

**his hands and his feet**

It is understood that his hands and feet contained the nail marks from his crucifixion that would prove it was really Jesus. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the wounds in his hands and his feet"

**Luke 24:41**

**They still could not believe it because of joy**

"They were so full of joy that they still could not believe it was really true"

**Luke 24:42**

**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

**Luke 24:43**

**ate it before them**

Jesus does this to prove that he has a physical body. Spirits would not be able to eat food.

**before them**

"in front of them" or "while they were watching"

**Luke 24:44**

**when I was with you**

"when I was with you before"

**all that was written ... Psalms must be fulfilled**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God would fulfill all that was written ... Psalms" or "God would cause all that was written ... Psalms to happen"

**all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms**

The words "law of Moses," "the Prophets," and "the Psalms" are proper names for parts of the Hebrew Bible. This can be stated in active form and using common nouns. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law, all that the prophets wrote, and all that the writers of the Psalms wrote about me"

**Luke 24:45**

**Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures**

To "open the mind" is an idiom that means to enable someone to understand. Alternate translation: "Then he enabled them to understand the scriptures"

**Luke 24:46**

**Thus it is written**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is what people long ago wrote"

**rise again from the dead**

In this verse the words "rise again" mean "come alive again." The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld.

**the third day**

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the "third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in [Luke 24:7]

**Luke 24:47**

**Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Followers of the Christ should preach to people in all the nations that they need to repent and that they need God to forgive their sins through Jesus"

**in his name**

His "name" here refers to his authority. Alternate translation: "by the Christ's authority"

**all the nations**

"all the ethnic communities" or "all the people groups"

**beginning from Jerusalem**

"starting in Jerusalem"

**Luke 24:48**

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the disciples.

**You are witnesses**

"You are to tell others that what you saw about me is true." The disciples had observed Jesus's life, death, and resurrection and could describe to other people what he did.

**Luke 24:49**

**I am sending you what my Father promised**

"I will give you what my Father promised to give you." God had promised to give the Holy Spirit. The UDB makes this explicit.

**Father**

This is an important title for God.

**you are clothed with power**

God's power will cover them in the same way that clothes cover a person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you receive power"

**from on high**

"from above" or "from God"

**Luke 24:50**

**Jesus led them out**

"Jesus led the disciples outside the city"

**He lifted up his hands**

This was the action that priests performed when they blessed the people.

**Luke 24:51**

**It happened**

"It came about." This introduces a new event in the story.

**while he was blessing them**

"while Jesus was asking God to do good to them"

**was carried**

Since Luke does not specify who carried Jesus up, we do not know if it was God himself or one or more angels. If your language would have to specify who did the carrying, it would be better to use "went" instead, as the UDB does.

**Luke 24:52**

**General Information:**

These verses tell us about the ongoing actions of the disciples as the story ends.

**they worshiped him**

"the disciples worshiped Jesus"

**and returned**  
"and then returned"

**Luke 24:53**

**continually in the temple**  
This is an exaggeration to express that they went into the temple courtyard every day.

**in the temple**  
Only priests were allowed into the temple building.  
Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"

**blessing God**  
"praising God"

**ULB Translation Questions**

**Luke 24:1**

**When did the women come to the tomb of Jesus?**  
They came very early on the first day of the week.

**Luke 24:2**

**What did the women find at the tomb?**  
They found that the stone had been rolled away and that the body of Jesus was not there.

**Luke 24:3**

**What did the women find at the tomb?**  
They found that the stone had been rolled away and that the body of Jesus was not there.

**Luke 24:6**

**What did the two men in dazzling apparel (angels) say had happened to Jesus?**  
They said that Jesus had risen.

**Luke 24:11**

**What was the apostles' reaction when the women told of their experience at the tomb?**  
They dismissed the report as idle talk.

**Luke 24:12**

**What did Peter see when he looked in the tomb?**  
He saw the linen cloths by themselves.

**Luke 24:16**

**Why did the two disciples going to Emmaus not recognize Jesus when Jesus joined them?**  
Their eyes were restrained from recognizing him.

**Luke 24:21**

**While Jesus was alive, what were the disciples hoping he would do?**  
They were hoping that he would free Israel from their enemies.

**Luke 24:27**

**What did Jesus explain to the two men from the scriptures?**  
He explained what the scriptures said concerning him.

**Luke 24:30**

**When did the two men finally recognize Jesus?**  
They recognized him when he blessed the bread, broke it, and gave it to them.

**Luke 24:31**

**When did the two men finally recognize Jesus?**  
They recognized him when he blessed the bread, broke it, and gave it to them.

**What did Jesus do when they recognized him?**  
He vanished out of their sight.

**Luke 24:35**

**When did the two men finally recognize Jesus?**  
They recognized him when he blessed the bread, broke it, and gave it to them.

**Luke 24:36**

**What did Jesus say first when he appeared to the disciples in Jerusalem?**  
He said, "Peace be with you."

**Luke 24:39**

**How did Jesus prove that he was not just a spirit?**  
He invited the disciples to touch him, and he showed them his hands and feet.

**Luke 24:40**

**How did Jesus prove that he was not just a spirit?**  
He invited the disciples to touch him, and he showed them his hands and feet.

**Luke 24:45**

**How were the disciples then able to understand the scriptures?**

Jesus opened their minds that they might understand.

**Luke 24:47**

**What did Jesus say should be preached to all the nations?**

Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached to all the nations.

**Luke 24:49**

**For what did Jesus tell the disciples to wait?**

He told them to wait until they are clothed with power from on high.

**Luke 24:51**

**What happened to Jesus as he blessed the disciples near Bethany?**

He was carried up into heaven.

**Luke 24:53**

**Where did the disciples then spend their time, and what did they do?**

They were continually in the temple, blessing God.

---

# ULB Translation Words

## Aaron

### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

## Abel

### Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(See also: [Cain](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G6

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abel, Abel's

## Abiathar

### Facts:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 02:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H54, G8

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abiathar, Abiathar's

## Abijah

### Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:03
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:02
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 01:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abijah, Abijah's

## Abraham

### Related Words:

Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldeans](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

## Abraham

### Related Words:

Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldeans](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08



- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

**Adam**

**Facts:**

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), [life](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 02:14
- Genesis 03:17
- Genesis 05:01
- Genesis 11:05
- Luke 03:38
- Romans 05:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, G76

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Adam, Adam's, the man, mankind

**Amos**

**Facts:**

Amos was an Israelite prophet who lived during the time of King Uzziah of Judah.

- Before being called as a prophet, Amos was originally a shepherd and fig farmer living in the kingdom of Judah.
- Amos prophesied against the prosperous northern kingdom of Israel regarding their unjust treatment of people.

(See also: [fig](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [shepherd](#), [Uzziah](#))

**Bible References:**

- Amos 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5986

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Amos, Amos'

**Andrew**

**Facts:**

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G406

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Andrew, Andrew's

**Andrew**

**Facts:**

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G406

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Andrew, Andrew's

**Annas**

**Facts:**

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office, so Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(See also: [high priest](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 03:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G452

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Annas, Annas'

**Asher**

**Facts:**

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called "Asher."

- Asher's mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means "happy" or "blessed."
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:13
- Luke 02:36-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H836

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Asher, Asher's

**Barabbas**

**Facts:**

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(See also: [Pilate](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:07
- Matthew 27:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G912

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Barabbas, Barabbas'

**Barabbas**

**Facts:**

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(See also: [Pilate](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:07
- Matthew 27:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G912

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Barabbas, Barabbas'

## Bartholomew

### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), [Pentecost](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

## Bartholomew

### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), [Pentecost](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

## Beelzebul

### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

- This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(See also: [demon](#), [Ekron](#), [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G954

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beelzebul, Beelzebul's

## Beelzebul

### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

- This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(See also: [demon](#), [Ekron](#), [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G954

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beelzebul, Beelzebul's

## Bethany

### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Lazarus](#), [Martha](#), [Mary \(sister of Martha\)](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethany

## Bethany

### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Lazarus](#), [Martha](#), [Mary \(sister of Martha\)](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethany

## Bethlehem

### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H672, H1035, G965

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethlehem

## Boaz

### Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz "redeemed" Naomi's widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
- He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(See also: [Moab](#), [redeem](#), [Ruth](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 2 Chronicles 03:17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1162

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Boaz, Boaz's



## Caesar

### Related Words:

the emperor

### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
- When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
- An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541, G4575

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

## Caesar

### Related Words:

the emperor

### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.

- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
- When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
- An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2541, G4575

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

**Caesarea**

**Related Words:**

Caesarea Philippi

**Facts:**

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), [the sea](#), [Carmel](#), [Hermon](#), [Rome](#), [Tarsus](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:01
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 08:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2542, G5376

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

## Caiaphas

### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(See also: [Annas](#), [high priest](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 03:02
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2533

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caiaphas, Caiaphas'

## Cain

### Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(See also: [Adam](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Genesis 04:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 01:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7014, G2535

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Cain, Cain's

**Capernaum**

**Facts:**

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21
- Mark 02:02
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2584

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Capernaum

**Capernaum**

**Facts:**

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21
- Mark 02:02
- Matthew 04:12-13

- Matthew 17:24-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2584

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Capernaum

**Christ**

**Related Ideas:**

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Facts:**

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Christ**

**Related Ideas:**

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Facts:**

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

**Cyrene****Related Ideas:**

Cyrenian

**Facts:**

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Cyrene, Cyrenians

**Cyrene****Related Ideas:**

Cyrenian

**Facts:**

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrene, Cyrenians

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08



- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

David, David's

**Eliakim**

**Facts:**

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(See also: [Hezekiah](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), [Pharaoh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H471, G1662

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Eliakim, Eliakim's

**Elijah**

**Facts:**

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshipping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18

- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H452, G2243

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Elijah, Elijah's

**Elijah**

**Facts:**

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H452, G2243

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Elijah, Elijah's

**Elisha**

**Facts:**

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Naaman](#), [prophet](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 03:15
- 2 Kings 05:08
- Luke 04:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H477

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Elisha, Elisha's

**Elizabeth****Facts:**

Elizabeth was the mother of John the Baptist. Her husband's name was Zechariah.

- Zechariah and Elizabeth had never been able to have children, but in their old age, God promised Zechariah that Elizabeth would bear him a son.
- God kept his promise, and soon Zechariah and Elizabeth were able to conceive, and she gave birth to a son. They named the baby John.
- Elizabeth was also a relative of Mary, Jesus' mother.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 01:05
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 01:41

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1665

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Elizabeth, Elizabeth's

**Enoch****Facts:**

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(See also: [Cain](#), [Seth](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:03
- Genesis 05:18-20
- Genesis 05:24
- Jude 01:14

- Luke 03:36-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2585, G1802

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Enoch, Enoch's

**Eve**

**Facts:**

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Eve, Eve's

**Eve**

**Facts:**

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Eve, Eve's

**Gabriel****Facts:**

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

- God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
- Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
- In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
- Six months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(See also: [angel](#), [Daniel](#), [Elizabeth](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Mary](#), [prophet](#), [Son of God](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 08:15-17
- Daniel 09:21
- Luke 01:19
- Luke 01:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1403, G1043

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Gabriel, Gabriel's

**Galilee****Related Words:**

Galilean

**Facts:**

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31

- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

**Galilee**

**Related Words:**

Galilean

**Facts:**

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

**Gentile**

**Facts:**

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.

- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Gentile, Gentiles

**Gentile**

**Facts:**

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

## Gethsemane

### Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

- The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
- It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Kidron Valley](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 14:32
- Matthew 26:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1068

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gethsemane

## God

### Related Ideas:

the living God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.



- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God, God's, the living God

### **God**

#### **Related Ideas:**

the living God

#### **Facts:**

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."

- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God, God's, the living God

## **Golgotha**

### **Facts:**

"Golgotha" was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means "Skull" or "Place of the Skull."

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as "Calvary," which comes from the Latin word for "skull."
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to "Golgotha," since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(See also: [Aram](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### **Bible References:**

- John 19:17
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1115

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Golgotha

**Greek****Related Words:**

Grecian

**Facts:**

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

**Greek****Related Words:**

Grecian

**Facts:**

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.

- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### **Hades**

#### **Related Ideas:**

Sheol

#### **Definition:**

The terms "Hades" and "Sheol" are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term "Sheol" is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going "down" to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going "up" to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term "Hades" is coupled with the term "death" in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- The Old Testament term "Sheol" could be translated as "place of the dead" or "place for dead souls." Some translations translate this as "the pit" or "death," depending on the context.
- The New Testament term "Hades" could also be translated as "place for unbelieving dead souls" or "place of torment for the dead" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
- Some translations keep the words "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation.
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 02:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 02:02
- Luke 10:15

- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 01:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7585, G86

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Hades, Sheol

**Herodias**

**Facts:**

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 03:19
- Mark 06:17
- Mark 06:22
- Matthew 14:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Herodias, Herodias'

**Herodias**

**Facts:**

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 03:19
- Mark 06:17
- Mark 06:22
- Matthew 14:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Herodias, Herodias'

**Holy One****Related Ideas:**

holy one

**Definition:**

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
- The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
- This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
- The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 02:27
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 04:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Holy One, holy ones

**Holy One****Related Ideas:**

holy one

**Definition:**

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."

- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
- The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
- This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
- The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 02:27
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 04:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Holy One, holy ones

**Holy Spirit**

**Related Ideas:**

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

**Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:10

- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

**Holy Spirit**

**Related Ideas:**

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

**Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151



**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

**Isaac****Facts:**

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Isaac, Isaac's

**Isaac****Facts:**

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Isaac, Isaac's

**Isaiah**

**Facts:**

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Isaiah, Isaiah's

## Isaiah

### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaiah, Isaiah's

## Israel

### Related Ideas:

Israelite

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36

- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

**Israel**

**Related Ideas:**

Israelite

**Facts:**

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

## Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

## Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3

- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jacob, Jacob's

**James son of Alphaeus**

**Facts:**

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2385

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

James son of Alphaeus

**James son of Alphaeus**

**Facts:**

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2385

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

James son of Alphaeus

**James son of Zebedee**

**Facts:**

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2385

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

James son of Zebedee, James

**Jericho**

**Facts:**

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48

- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jericho, Jericho's

**Jericho**

**Facts:**

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jericho, Jericho's

**Jerusalem**

**Facts:**

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))



**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

**Jerusalem**

**Facts:**

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

## Jesse

### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), [fruit](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesse, Jesse's

## Jesus

### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
- Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10

- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2424

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

**Jesus**

**Related Ideas:**

the Lord Jesus

**Facts:**

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
- Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05

- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2424

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

**Jew**

**Related Ideas:**

Jewish, person of Judah

**Facts:**

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish authorities](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

**Jew**

**Related Ideas:**

Jewish, person of Judah

**Facts:**

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish authorities](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

**John the Baptist**

**Facts:**

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(See also: [baptize](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G910 G2491

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

John the Baptist, Baptist, John the Baptist, John's

## John the Baptist

### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(See also: [baptize](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John the Baptist, Baptist, John the Baptist, John's

## Jonah

### Facts:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- He told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did the storm stopped.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and they turned from their sins.

(See also: [disobey](#), [Nineveh](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 01:03
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3124, G2495

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jonah, Jonah's

**Jordan River****Facts:**

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jordan River, Jordan

**Jordan River****Facts:**

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Jordan River, Jordan

**Joshua**

**Facts:**

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Joshua, Joshua's



## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3061, H3063

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, Judah's

## Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:08
- Hosea 05:14
- Jeremiah 07:33
- Judges 01:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4438, H3063, G2455

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judah, kingdom of Judah, language of Judah

**Judas Iscariot****Related Words**

Judas son of Simon Iscariot

**Facts:**

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Ischriot" may mean "from Kerieth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Judas son of James](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judas ... Iscariot

**Judas Iscariot****Related Words**

Judas son of Simon Iscariot

**Facts:**

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Ischriot" may mean "from Kerieth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Judas son of James](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judas ... Iscariot

**Judas son of James**

**Facts:**

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
- The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [son](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2455

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judas son of James

**Judea**

**Facts:**

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Edom](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judea

**Judea**

**Facts:**

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Edom](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Judea

**King of the Jews**

**Definition:**

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
- Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [wise men](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G935, G2453

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

**King of the Jews**

**Definition:**

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
- Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [wise men](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G935, G2453

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

## Lamech

### Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(See also: [Cain](#), [Noah](#), [Seth](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 04:18-19
- Genesis 04:24
- Genesis 05:25
- Genesis 05:29
- Genesis 05:31
- Luke 03:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G2984

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamech, Lamech's

## Lazarus

### Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

- Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.

- The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
- Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was named "Lazarus."

(See also: [beg](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Martha](#), [Mary](#), [raise](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 11:11
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 16:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2976

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Lazarus, Lazarus'

**Levi**

**Facts:**

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

## Levi

### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

## Lot

### Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that they could escape.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Ammon](#), [Haran](#), [Moab](#), [Sodom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G3091



### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lot, Lot's

## Luke

### Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

- In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
- It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
- Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
- In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Paul](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Philemon 01:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3065

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Luke, Luke's

## Martha

### Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
- One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
- When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(See also: [Lazarus](#), [Mary \(sister of Martha\)](#))

### Bible References:

- John 11:02
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3136

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Martha, Martha's

## Mary

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](#), [Egypt](#), [Herod the Great](#), [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary, the mother of Jesus

## Mary

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](#), [Egypt](#), [Herod the Great](#), [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3137

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mary, the mother of Jesus

**Mary Magdalene**

**Facts:**

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mary ... Magdalene

**Mary Magdalene**

**Facts:**

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mary ... Magdalene

**Matthew**

**Facts:**

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levi](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Matthew, Levi

**Matthew**

**Facts:**

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levi](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16

- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Matthew, Levi

**Moses**

**Facts:**

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Moses, Moses'

**Moses**

**Facts:**

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.

## Most High

- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

## Most High

### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
- The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
- If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

## Most High

### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
- The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
- If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

## Mount of Olives

### Facts:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:03
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2132, G3735, G1636

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mount of Olives, mountain that is called Olives

**Mount of Olives****Facts:**

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:03
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2132, G3735, G1636

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mount of Olives, mountain that is called Olives

**Naaman****Facts:**

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(See also: [Aram](#), [Jordan River](#), [leper](#), [prophet](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
- 2 Kings 05:01
- Luke 04:27



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5283, G3497

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Naaman, Naaman's

**Nahor**

**Facts:**

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Rebekah](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:02
- Luke 03:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5152, G3493

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Nahor, Nahor's

**Nahum**

**Facts:**

Nahum was a prophet who preached during the time when the evil King Manasseh was ruling over Judah.

- Nahum was from the town of Elkosh, which was about 20 miles from Jerusalem.
- The Old Testament book of Nahum records his prophecies about the destruction of the Assyrian city of Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Manasseh](#), [prophet](#), [Nineveh](#))

**Bible References:**

- Nahum 01:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5151, G3486

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Nahum, Nahum's

## Nathan

### Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 051:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G3481

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nathan, Nathan's

## Nazareth

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth's synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

## Nazareth

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth's synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

## Nineveh

### Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people repented and God did not destroy them.
- The Assyrians later stopped serving God. They conquered the kingdom of Israel and carried the people away to Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Jonah](#), [repent](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 01:03
- Jonah 03:03
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Nineveh, Ninevite, Ninevites

**Noah****Facts:**

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ark](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:08
- Genesis 08:01
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Noah, Noah's

**Passover****Facts:**

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:07

- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Passover

**Passover**

**Facts:**

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Passover

## Peter

### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

## Peter

### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8

- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

**Pharisee**

**Facts:**

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [law of Moses](#), [Sadducee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5330

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Pharisee, Pharisees

**Pharisee**

**Facts:**

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.

## Philip

- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [law of Moses](#), [Sadducee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharisee, Pharisees

## Philip

### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

- God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
- Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
- Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 08:06
- Acts 08:13
- Acts 08:31
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 08:40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist



## Philip

### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

- God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
- Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
- Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 08:06
- Acts 08:13
- Acts 08:31
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 08:40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist

## Philip

### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

## Philip

### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

## Philippi

### Related Words

Philippians

### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. The people of Philippi were called "Philippians."

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](#), [Christian](#), [church](#), [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- Acts 16:11
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5374, G5375

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Philippi, Philippians

**Pilate**

**Facts:**

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

**Pilate**

**Facts:**

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

**Rabbi****Related Ideas:**

Rabboni

**Definition:**

The term "Rabbi" literally means "my master" or "my teacher."

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God's laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called "Rabbi" by their disciples.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate this term could include "My Master" or "My Teacher" or "Honorable Teacher" or "Religious Teacher." Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how "Rabbi" is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

See:

(See also: [teacher](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 01:49-51
- John 06:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4461

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Rabbi, Rabboni

**Sabbath****Definition:**

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.

- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sabbath, Sabbaths

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sabbath, Sabbaths

**Sadducee****Definition:**

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4523

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sadducee, Sadducees

**Sadducee****Definition:**

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.

- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4523

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sadducee, Sadducees

**Samaria**

**Facts:**

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The Plain of Sharon is west of this region, and the Jordan River is east of this region. The people of Samaria were called Samaritans.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Galilee was north of Samaria, and the region of Judea was south of Samaria.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Samaria, Samaria's, Samaritan, Samaritans

## Satan

### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

## Satan

### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.



- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

### **Savior**

#### **Definitions:**

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
- Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [save](#), [save](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Savior, savior

**Sea of Galilee****Facts:**

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. It was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret." In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(See also: [Capernaum](#), [Galilee](#), [Jordan River](#), [Salt Sea](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:01
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias, Kinnereth

**Seth****Facts:**

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(See also: [Abel](#), [Cain](#), [call](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:01
- Luke 03:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8352, G4589

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Seth, Seth's

**Shem**

**Facts:**

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Arabia](#), [ark](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 03:36-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8035, G4590

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Shem, Shem's

**Sidon**

**Facts:**

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [Tyre](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19

- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sidon, Sidonians

**Sidon**

**Facts:**

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [Tyre](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sidon, Sidonians

**Simeon**

**Facts:**

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel. They were the Simeonites.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Christ](#), [dedicate](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Simeon, Simeon's, Simeonites

**Simon the Zealot**

**Facts:**

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Simon the Zealot, Simon ... Zealot

**Sodom**

**Facts:**

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Gomorrah](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Sodom

**Solomon**

**Facts:**

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Solomon, Solomon's, King Solomon, King Solomon's

**Son of God**

**Related Ideas:**

the Son

**Facts:**

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
- The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](#), [father](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Son of God, the Son

**Son of God**

**Related Ideas:**

the Son

**Facts:**

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
- The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](#), [father](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Son of God, the Son

**Son of Man**

**Related Ideas:**

mankind, son of man

**Definition:**

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

- In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
- Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13



- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

**Son of Man**

**Related Ideas:**

mankind, son of man

**Definition:**

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

- In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
- Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

**Syria**

**Facts:**

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(See also: [Aram](#), [commander](#), [Damascus](#), [descendant](#), [Elisha](#), [leper](#), [Naaman](#), [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:03
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H758, G4947, G4948

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Syria, Syrian

**Terah**

**Facts:**

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [Haran](#), [Lot](#), [Mesopotamia](#), [Nahor](#), [Sarah](#), [Shem](#), [Ur](#))

**Bible References:**

Genesis 11:31-32

- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
- Luke 03:33-35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8646, G2291

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Terah, Terah's

## Thomas

### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

## Thomas

### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

## Tyre

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [the sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tyre, Tyrians

## Tyre

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [the sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Tyre, Tyrians

**Zacchaeus****Facts:**

Zacchaeus was a tax collector from Jericho who climbed a tree in order to be able to see Jesus who was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

- Zacchaeus was completely changed when he believed in Jesus.
- He repented of his sin of cheating people and promised to give half his possessions to the poor.
- He also promised that he would pay people back four times the amount that he had overcharged them for their taxes.

(See also: [believe](#), [promise](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [tax](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 19:02
- Luke 19:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2195

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Zacchaeus, Zacchaeus'

**Zebedee****Facts:**

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(See also: [disciple](#), [fishermen](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the apostle\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2199

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebedee, Zebedee's

## Zebedee

### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(See also: [disciple](#), [fishermen](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the apostle\)](#))

### Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2199

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebedee, Zebedee's

## Zerubbabel

### Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [captive](#), [Cyrus](#), [Ezra](#), [high priest](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Joshua](#), [Judah](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Persia](#), [Zedekiah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zerubbabel, Zerubbabel's

## abomination

### Related Ideas:

abominable, abominably, disgusting, foul

### Definition:

The term "abomination" is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an "abomination." This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn't want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls "an abomination to Yahweh" include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an "abomination of desolation" that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "abomination" could also be translated by "something God hates" or "something disgusting" or "disgusting practice" or "very evil action."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase "is an abomination to" could include "is greatly hated by" or "is disgusting to" or "is totally unacceptable to" or "causes deep disgust."
- The phrase "abomination of desolation" could be translated as "defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed" or "disgusting thing that causes great sorrow."

(See also: [adultery](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [god](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

abominable, abomination, abominations, committed ... abominably, disgusting practices, disgusting thing, disgusting things, foul, foul thing

## abyss

### Related Ideas:

bottomless pit

### Definition:

The term "abyss" refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

- In the Bible, "the abyss" is a place of punishment.

- For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
- The word "abyss" could also be translated as "bottomless pit" or "deep chasm."
- This term should be translated differently from "hades," "sheol," or "hell."

(See Also: [Hades](#), [hell](#), [punish](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Luke 08:30-31
- Romans 10:07

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G12, G5421

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

abyss, bottomless pit

#### **accuse**

#### **Related Ideas:**

accusation, accuser

#### **Definition:**

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

#### **accuse**

#### **Related Ideas:**

accusation, accuser



**Definition:**

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

**adultery****Related Ideas:**

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

**Definition:**

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
- When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [faithful](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 20:14

- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

**adultery**

**Related Ideas:**

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

**Definition:**

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
- When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [faithful](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

**adversary****Related Ideas:**

enemy, hostile, hostility, opponent, oppose, opposition

**Definition:**

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.
- Someone who is "hostile" wants to fight other people. Such a person has "hostile intent" or acts with "hostility."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H340, H341, H6146, H6862, H6887, H6965, H7379, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G485, G498, G2189, G2190, G5227

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

adversaries, adversary, enemies, enemies', enemy, enemy's, hostile, hostilities, hostility, opponent, opponents, oppose, opposed, opposes, opposition

**afflict****Related Ideas:**

affliction, difficulty

**Definition:**

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

**afflict****Related Ideas:**

affliction, difficulty

**Definition:**

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."

- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

**age**

**Related Ideas:**

aged, from ancient times, old age

**Definition:**

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

**age****Related Ideas:**

aged, from ancient times, old age

**Definition:**

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

**alarm****Related Ideas:**

sound an alarm

**Definitions:**

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

**Translation Suggestions**

- To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
- To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."

- The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](#), [Moab](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2648, H7321, H8643

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

alarm, alarms, sound ... alarm

### **alms**

#### **Related Ideas:**

merciful deeds for the poor

#### **Definition:**

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 03:1-3
- Matthew 06:01
- Matthew 06:03

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1654

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

alms, merciful deeds ... for the poor

### **altar**

#### **Definition:**

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

altar, altars

**amazed**

**Related Ideas:**

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

**Definition:**

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

- The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
- The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
- The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
- People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
- "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The words "amazing", "astonishing," "marvelous," "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified. \* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it. \* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

## amazed

## Related Ideas:

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

## Definition:

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

- The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
- The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
- The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
- People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
- "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The words "amazing", "astonishing", "marvelous", "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified. \* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it. \* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

## angel

### Related Ideas:

archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

angel, angels, archangel

**angel****Related Ideas:**

archangel

**Definition:**

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

angel, angels, archangel

**anger**

**Related Ideas:**

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

**Definition:**

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
- A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
- To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ephesians 04:26
- Exodus 32:11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:14
- Matthew 26:08
- Psalms 018:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

**anger**

**Related Ideas:**

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

**Definition:**

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
- A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.

- To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ephesians 04:26
- Exodus 32:11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:14
- Matthew 26:08
- Psalms 018:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

**anguish**

**Related Ideas:**

anxious, pain

**Definition:**

The term "anguish" refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term "anguish" could also be translated as "emotional distress" or "deep sorrow" or "severe pain."

**Bible References:**

- Jeremiah 06:24
- Jeremiah 19:09
- Job 15:24
- Luke 16:24
- Psalms 116:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3510, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G928, G3600, G4928

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

anguish, inflicts pain, pain, severe pain

## anoint

### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

## anoint

### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

**Definition:**

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

**apostle****Related Ideas:**

apostleship

**Definition:**

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.

- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

#### Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

#### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

#### Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570



### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
- To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.

- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
- To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

#### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36

- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ark, chest

**ark****Related Ideas:**

chest

**Definition:**

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ark, chest

**armor****Related Ideas:**

armory, body armor, weapon

**Definition:**

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, H8302, G3696, G3833

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

armor, armory, body armor, weapon, weapons

**ash****Related Ideas:**

powder

**Definitions:**

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
- When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ash, ashes, powder

**ash****Related Ideas:**

powder

**Definitions:**

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
- When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ash, ashes, powder

**asleep****Related Ideas:**

sleep, sleeper

**Definition:**

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
- The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To "sleep with one's fathers" means to die, as one's ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.

- To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
- The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

#### **asleep**

#### **Related Ideas:**

sleep, sleeper

#### **Definition:**

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
- The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To "sleep with one's fathers" means to die, as one's ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
- To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
- The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.

- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

#### **astray**

#### **Related Ideas:**

draw away, make a mistake, mislead, mistaken, wander

#### **Definition:**

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."
- To "draw away" someone or "mislead" someone is to lead him astray.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
- To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: [disobey](#), [shepherd](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5074, H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G1294, G4105, G5351

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

astray, drawn away, go astray, goes astray, gone astray, lead ... astray, leads ... astray, led ... astray, made ... mistake, mislead, misleading, misleads, misled, mistaken, stray, strayed, straying, strays, wander, went astray

**authority****Related Ideas:**

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

**Definition:**

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247



### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

### authority

### Related Ideas:

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

### Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

**ax****Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
- Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:05
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10
- Psalm 035:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ax, axes

**ax****Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
- Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:05
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10
- Psalm 035:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ax, axes

## banquet

### Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

### Bible References:

- Daniel 05:10
- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Jeremiah 16:08
- Luke 05:29-32
- Song of Solomon 02:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banquet

## baptize

### Related Ideas:

baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
- The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
- When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48

- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G907

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

**baptize**

**Related Ideas:**

baptism

**Definition:**

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
- The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
- When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G907

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

## barren

### Related Ideas:

dried, faded, salt land, withered

### Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
- "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 03:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

## basket

### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
- A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [Noah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33

- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

**basket**

**Related Ideas:**

basketful, cage

**Definition:**

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
- A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [Noah](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

**bear**

**Related Ideas:**

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

**Definitions:**

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- Lamentations 03:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

**bear****Related Ideas:**

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

**Definitions:**

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- Lamentations 03:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

**bear****Definition:**

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

**Bible References:****Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1677, G715

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bears

**bear****Definition:**

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

**Bible References:****Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1677, G715

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bear, bears



**beg****Related Ideas:**

ask, beggar, needy

**Definition:**

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

**beg****Related Ideas:**

ask, beggar, needy

**Definition:**

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

**believe****Related Ideas:**

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

**Definition:**

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

- believe
  - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
  - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
  - To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
- believe in
  - To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
  - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
  - The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
  - To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

**Translation Suggestions:**

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

\* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." \* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

\* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." \* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." \* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." \* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": \* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." \* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

**believe****Related Ideas:**

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

**Definition:**

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

- believe
  - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
  - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
  - To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
- believe in
  - To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
  - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
  - The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
  - To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

## Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

\* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." \* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

\* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." \* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." \* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." \* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": \* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." \* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

## beloved

### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."

- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
- Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

**beloved**

**Related Ideas:**

dear, lovely, treasured

**Definition:**

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
- Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

**betray****Related Ideas:**

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

**Definition:**

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
- "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
- The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [apostle](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

**betray****Related Ideas:**

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

**Definition:**

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
- "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
- The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [apostle](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

**blameless****Related Ideas:**

blamelessly, faultless, without blame

**Definition:**

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1368, H2135, H2136, H8535, H8549, G273, G274, G298, G299, G410, G423, G677

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

blameless, blamelessly, faultless, without blame

### **blasphemy**

### **Related Ideas:**

blaspheme, blasphemer, blasphemous, insult, revile, taunt

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" or "insult" or "revile" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
- Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [slander](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1421, H1442, H2778, H3639, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989, G3059, G3680, G5196



## Forms Found in the English ULB:

blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemer, blasphemers, blasphemes, blasphemies, blaspheming, blasphemous, blasphemy, insult, insulted, insulting, insults, revile, reviled, reviling

## bless

### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

## bless

### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

## blood

### Related Ideas:

bleeding

**Definition:**

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bleeding, blood

**blood****Related Ideas:**

bleeding

**Definition:**

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bleeding, blood

**body****Related Ideas:**

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

**Definition:**

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.

- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

**body**

**Related Ideas:**

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

**Definition:**

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

**bold**

**Related Ideas:**

boldly, boldness, emboldened

**Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
- The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: [confidence](#), [good news](#), [redeem](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened

**bow**

**Related Ideas:**

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

**Note**

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](#).

**Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

**bow****Related Ideas:**

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

**Note**

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](#).

**Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

**bread****Related Ideas:**

food, loaf of bread

**Definition:**

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.



- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

#### **bread**

#### **Related Ideas:**

food, loaf of bread

#### **Definition:**

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

**bride**

**Related Ideas:**

bridal

**Definition:**

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bridal, bride, brides

**bride**

**Related Ideas:**

bridal

**Definition:**

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bridal, bride, brides

**bridegroom**

**Definition:**

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bridegroom, bridegrooms

**bridegroom**

**Definition:**

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bridegroom, bridegrooms

## **brother**

### **Related Ideas:**

brotherhood

### **Definition:**

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26

- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

#### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

#### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

**burden****Related Ideas:**

burdensome, heavy, load

**Definition:**

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God," usually an important or unpleasant one, that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H4931, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, H6231, G4, G916, G922, G1912, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burden, burdened, burdens, burdensome, heavy, load, loaded, loaded up, loads

**burnt offering****Related Ideas:**

offering by fire

**Definition:**

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.

- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [cow](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, G3646

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire, offering made by fire

**bury**

**Related Ideas:**

burial

**Definition:**

The term "bury" usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term "burial" is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
- Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burial, buried, buries, bury, burying

**call****Related Ideas:**

appeal to, invite, summon

**Definition:**

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
- To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
- To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

**call****Related Ideas:**

appeal to, invite, summon

**Definition:**

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
- To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
- To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

**camel**

**Definition:**

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

**camel**

**Definition:**

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.

- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

#### **captive**

#### **Related Ideas:**

captivate, captivity, captor, capture, catch

#### **Definition:**

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.
- A "captor" is a person who captures another person or takes him captive.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), [prison](#), [seize](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 10:05

- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H270, H631, H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H3920, H3947, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221, G4084

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

captivate, captivated, captive, captives, captivity, captor, captors, capture, captured, captures, carried away captive, catch, caught, held captive, taken ... captive

**cast out**

**Related Ideas:**

banish, cast off, compel to go, drive out, force out, outcast, put outside, throw out

**Definition:**

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.
- To "banish" someone is to force them to stay far away.
- An "outcast" is someone whom other people have rejected and forced him to go live somewhere else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H5080, H7843, H7971, H7993, G1544

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

banish, banished, cast ... off, cast ... out, casting out, compelled ... to go, drive, drive ... away, drive ... out, driven, driven ... away, driven ... out, drives ... away, drives ... out, driving ... out, drove ... out, force ... out, forced ... out, forcing ... out, outcast, outcasts, put ... outside, threw ... out, throw ... out, throwing out, thrown, thrown out

**cast out****Related Ideas:**

banish, cast off, compel to go, drive out, force out, outcast, put outside, throw out

**Definition:**

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.
- To "banish" someone is to force them to stay far away.
- An "outcast" is someone whom other people have rejected and forced him to go live somewhere else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H5080, H7843, H7971, H7993, G1544

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

banish, banished, cast ... off, cast ... out, casting out, compelled ... to go, drive, drive ... away, drive ... out, driven, driven ... away, driven ... out, drives ... away, drives ... out, driving ... out, drove ... out, force ... out, forced ... out, forcing ... out, outcast, outcasts, put ... outside, threw ... out, throw ... out, throwing out, thrown, thrown out

**census****Related Ideas:**

register

**Definition:**

The term "census" refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.

- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

### Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "name counting" or "list of names" or "enrollment."
- The phrase "take a census" could be translated as "register people's names" or "enroll people" or "write down people's names."

(See also: [nation](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:37
- Exodus 30:12
- Exodus 38:26
- Luke 02:03
- Numbers 04:1-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H3789, H4662, H5674, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

census, register, registered

## centurion

### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1543, G2760

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

## centurion

### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1543, G2760

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

## chaff

### Related Ideas:

straw

### Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food, so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called "winnowing."
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.
- "Straw" is the stalk of the grain left after the the seed has been taken away.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 02:35
- Job 21:18
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chaff, straw

**chief****Related Ideas:**

finest, first of all, important, prominent

**Definition:**

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

**chief****Related Ideas:**

finest, first of all, important, prominent

**Definition:**

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16



- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

**chief priests**

**Definition:**

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](#), [high priest](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 22:30
- Acts 26:12-14
- Luke 20:01
- Mark 08:31
- Matthew 16:21
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:59
- Matthew 27:41-42

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, G749

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chief priests

**chief priests**

**Definition:**

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.

- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](#), [high priest](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [priest](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 22:30
- Acts 26:12-14
- Luke 20:01
- Mark 08:31
- Matthew 16:21
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:59
- Matthew 27:41-42

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, G749

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chief priests

### **children**

#### **Related Ideas:**

child, childhood, childless

#### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. \* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. \* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. \* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."

- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

child, childhood, childless, children

### **children**

#### **Related Ideas:**

child, childhood, childless

#### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. \* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. \* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. \* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."

- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

child, childhood, childless, children

#### **circumcise**

#### **Related Ideas:**

circumcision, uncircumcision

#### **Definition:**

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](#), [covenant](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### **citizen**

### **Related Ideas:**

citizenship

**Definition:**

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

( See: [kingdom](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 03:03
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

citizen, citizens, citizenship

**city of David****Facts:**

The term "city of David" can refer to the city of Jerusalem, part of Jerusalem, or Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(See also: [David](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Jerusalem](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 2 Samuel 05:6-7
- Isaiah 22:8-9
- Luke 02:04
- Nehemiah 03:14-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

city of David

**clean****Related Ideas:**

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

**Definition:**

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

Translating "clean": \* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty). \* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God." \* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify." \* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean": \* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled." \* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled." \* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

**clean****Related Ideas:**

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

**Definition:**

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

Translating "clean": \* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty). \* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God." \* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify." \* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean": \* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled." \* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled." \* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))



### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### **clothed**

### **Related Ideas:**

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

### **Definition:**

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
- All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

### **Bible References:**

- Luke 24:49

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

**clothed****Related Ideas:**

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

**Definition:**

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
- All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

**Bible References:**

- Luke 24:49

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

**comfort****Related Ideas:**

comforter, console, consolation

**Definition:**

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.
- To "appease" someone is to do something that causes that person to no longer be angry about the wrong that someone else has done to him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: [courage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

comfort, comforted, comforter, comforters, comforting, comforts, consolation, consolations, consoling, un comforted

**command****Related Ideas:**

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

**Definition:**

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

- To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### command

### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
- To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

**commander****Related Ideas:**

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

**Definition:**

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), [centurion](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

**commit****Related Ideas:**

commitment

**Definition:**

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
- To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

**commit****Related Ideas:**

commitment

**Definition:**

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
- To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.

- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

#### **compassion**

#### **Related Ideas:**

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

#### **Definition:**

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
- To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

#### **Bible References:**

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

**compassion**

**Related Ideas:**

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

**Definition:**

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
- To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

**conceive**

**Related Ideas:**

conception



**Definition:**

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

**condemn****Related Ideas:**

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

**Definition:**

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as, "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29

- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

**condemn**

**Related Ideas:**

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

**Definition:**

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as, "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

**confess****Related Ideas:**

confession, profess

**Definition:**

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

**confess****Related Ideas:**

confession, profess

**Definition:**

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

**confirm****Related Ideas:**

carry out, cause someone to believe firmly, confirmation, guarantee

**Definition:**

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.

- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.
- To "carry out" a promise is to do what one has promised to do.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4741, G4972

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

carry out, cause ... to believe firmly, confirm, confirmation, confirmed, confirms, guaranteed

**contempt**

**Related Ideas:**

contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to

**Definitions:**

The term "contempt" refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called "contemptible."

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called "contemptible" and could be translated as "greatly disrespectful" or "completely dishonorable" or "deserving scorn."
- To "hold in contempt" means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: "have contempt for" or "show contempt for" or "be in contempt of" or "treat with contempt." These all mean to "strongly disrespect" or "strongly dishonor" something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had "shown contempt for" God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 031:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H2195, H2781, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

contempt, contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to, showed ... contempt

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cornerstone, cornerstones

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."

- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cornerstone, cornerstones

### **council**

#### **Definition:**

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
- To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "advice."

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law of Moses](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

council, councils

**courage****Related Ideas:**

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

**Definitions:**

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111



### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### **courage**

#### **Related Ideas:**

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### **Definitions:**

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and "encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

**court****Related Ideas:**

courtyard

**Definition:**

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

**court****Related Ideas:**

courtyard

**Definition:**

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

**covenant****Related Ideas:**

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

**Definition:**

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

**covenant****Related Ideas:**

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

**Definition:**

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

**create****Related Ideas:**

creation, creator, workmanship

**Definition:**

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.
- "Workmanship" is anything that a person makes.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1254, H3335, H4639, H6213, H7069, G2041, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2938, G2939, G5480

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

create, created, created thing, creates, creation, creator, thing that has been created, workmanship

#### **CROSS**

#### **Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cross

**CROSS****Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cross

**CROWN****Related Ideas:**

crest, garland, wreath

**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown is a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- If a person is "crowned," this means that a crown was put on his head.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.



- A "crest" is a crown or a piece of metal or expensive wood with a design on it or something else that people recognize as a symbol of the king or another official. A person whom the official wants to honor will wear the "crest" or put it on the animal that he rides or that pulls his chariot.
- A "garland" and "a wreath" are a crown or necklace made of flowers or leaves.

Sometimes "crown" is used figuratively. \* The figurative use of to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King. \* Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

crest, crown, crowned, crowns, garland, wreath

### **crucify**

#### **Related Ideas:**

nail him to a cross

#### **Definition:**

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

crucified, crucify, nailing ... to a cross

**crucify**

**Related Ideas:**

nail him to a cross

**Definition:**

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

crucified, crucify, nailing ... to a cross

**cry****Related Ideas:**

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

**Definition:**

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

**Bible References:**

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

**cry****Related Ideas:**

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

**Definition:**

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

**Bible References:**

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6

- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

### curse

### Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

**curse****Related Ideas:**

accursed, speak evil

**Definition:**

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

**curtain****Related Ideas:**

covering, screen

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.
- The "screens" were curtains hung at the entrance to the courtyard of the tabernacle, at the entrance to the tabernacle, and in front of the ark of the covenant.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: [holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

covering, curtain, curtains, screen, screening

**curtain****Related Ideas:**

covering, screen

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

- The "screens" were curtains hung at the entrance to the courtyard of the tabernacle, at the entrance to the tabernacle, and in front of the ark of the covenant.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: [holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

covering, curtain, curtains, screen, screening

### **cut off**

### **Related Ideas:**

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

### **Definition:**

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

### **Picture of Cut Off From People:**

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."

- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

**cut off**

**Related Ideas:**

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

**Definition:**

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

**Picture of Cut Off From People:**

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

**darkness****Related Ideas:**

dark, darken, gloom

**Definition:**

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
- The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

**darkness****Related Ideas:**

dark, darken, gloom

**Definition:**

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
- The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

**day****Related Ideas:**

daily, daytime, morning, today

**Definition:**

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#), [last day](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

**day****Related Ideas:**

daily, daytime, morning, today

**Definition:**

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#), [last day](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

**death**

**Related Ideas:**

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

**Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

**1. Physical death**

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
- The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
- Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

**2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate the words "die," "death," and "dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when "death" refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:21

- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10
- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

#### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
- The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
- Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate the words "die," "death," and "dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when "death" refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."

- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10
- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

#### **deceive**

#### **Related Ideas:**

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### **Definition:**

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

- The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
- A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- The words "deceitful" and "deceptive" can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
- To "entice" someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
- To "defraud" someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
- To "flatter" someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
- To "lie" to someone or to tell a "lie" is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "deceive" could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."

- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

## **deceive**

### **Related Ideas:**

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

### **Definition:**

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

- The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
- A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- The words "deceitful" and "deceptive" can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
- To "entice" someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
- To "defraud" someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
- To "flatter" someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
- To "lie" to someone or to tell a "lie" is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "deceive" could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### **declare**

### **Related Ideas:**

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

### **Definition:**

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 16:24



- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

**declare**

**Related Ideas:**

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

**Definition:**

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### decree

### Related Ideas:

prohibition

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something, or to "issue a decree," means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."
- A "prohibition" is a decree that tells people that they cannot do something they would otherwise do.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), [law](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3983, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6600, H6680, H7010, H7761, H8421, G1378, G3724

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

decree, decreed, decrees, prohibition

### defile

### Related Ideas:

pollute, pollution, stain

**Definition:**

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- A "stain" is a dirty mark that is hard to clean.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4695

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

are defiled, be defiled, defile, defiled, defiles, defiling, polluted, pollutes, pollution, stain, stained, was defiled, were defiled

**deliver**

**Related Ideas:**

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

**Definition:**

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.

- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

#### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

#### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."

- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

#### **demon**

#### **Related Ideas:**

demonic

#### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [god](#), [god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22

- Matthew 04:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

demon, demonic, demons

**demon**

**Related Ideas:**

demonic

**Definition:**

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [god](#), [god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

demon, demonic, demons

**demon-possessed**

**Related Ideas:**

possessed by a demon

**Definition:**

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](#))

**Bible References:**

- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1139

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

demon-possessed, possessed by a demon, possessed by demons

**descendant**

**Related Ideas:**

descend, posterity

**Definition:**

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
- A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [father](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

**desert**

**Related Ideas:**

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

**Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

**desert**

**Related Ideas:**

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

**Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."



**Bible References:**

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

**desolate**

**Related Ideas:**

alone, deserted, desolation, desolations, isolated, left alone, left without, lonely

**Definition:**

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- A widow is desolate because she has no man to provide for her and therefore often lacks food, shelter, and clothing.
- The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
- A person who is "lonely" is alone. He has no friends or family or other people with whom he can enjoy being.
- The term "deserted" describes a place that everyone has left.

(See also: [desert](#), [devastated](#), [ruin](#), [waste](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5221, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7604, H7673, H7701, H7722, H7909, H7921, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2047, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alone, deserted, deserted place, deserted places, desolate, desolation, desolations, isolated, left ... alone, left ... without, lonely, made ... desolate, making ... desolate, uninhabited

### destroy

### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
- The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

## destroy

### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
- The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

## detest

### Related Ideas:

abhor, abhorrent, abhorrence, be disgusted with, detestable, disgusting, hate

**Definitions:**

The term "detestable" describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To "detest" something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word "detestable" to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to "detest" the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts "detestable."
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all "detestable" to God.
- The term "detest" could be translated as "strongly reject" or "hate" or "regard as very evil."
- The term "detestable" could also be translated as "horribly evil" or "disgusting" or "deserving rejection."
- When applied to the righteous being "detestable to" the wicked, this could be translated as "considered very undesirable to" or "distasteful to" or "rejected by."
- God told the Israelites to "detest" certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be "unclean" and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as "strongly dislike" or "reject" or "regard as unacceptable."
- To "abhor" is to strongly detest, and the adjective for something that people should abhor is "abhorrent."

(See also: [divination](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 43:32
- Jeremiah 07:30
- Leviticus 11:10
- Luke 16:15
- Revelation 17:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1602, H1860, H3988, H6675, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

abhor, abhorred, abhorrence, abhorrent, abhorrently, abhors, be disgusted with, detest, detestable, detestable idol, detestable idols, detestable thing, detestable things, detested, disgusted, disgusting, hate, hated, hates

**devour****Definition:**

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15

- Psalms 021:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

**devour**

**Definition:**

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

**disciple**

**Definition:**

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
- Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

disciple, disciples

**disciple****Definition:**

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
- Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22

- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

disciple, disciples

**divorce**

**Definition:**

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:04
- Matthew 05:32
- Matthew 19:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

divorce, divorces

**divorce**

**Definition:**

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:04
- Matthew 05:32
- Matthew 19:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

divorce, divorces

**doctrine****Related Ideas:**

beliefs, learning

**Definition:**

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: [teach](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3948, G1319, G2085

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

beliefs, doctrine, doctrines, learning

**donkey****Related Ideas:**

mule

**Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.



**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

donkey, donkey's, donkeys, mule, mules, wild donkey

**dove**

**Related Ideas:**

pigeon

**Definition:**

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dove, dove's, doves, pigeon, pigeons

**dove**

**Related Ideas:**

pigeon

**Definition:**

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dove, dove's, doves, pigeon, pigeons

**drunk**

**Related Ideas:**

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

**Definitions:**

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

### earth

### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
- The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

## earth

### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
- The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

## elder

### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.

- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

elder, elders

**elder**

**Definition:**

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

elder, elders

**elect****Related Ideas:**

Chosen One, choice, choose, election

**Definition:**

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones)" or "the elect."
- The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
- The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
- "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
- In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H3045, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4899, G5500

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Chosen One, choice, choose, chooses, chose, chosen, chosen one, chosen ones, chosen people, elect, election

**endure****Related Ideas:**

endurance, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

**Definition:**

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be translated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: [persevere](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, H6965, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

endurance, endure, endured, endures, enduring, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

**envy****Related Ideas:**

covet, covetousness, envious, greed

**Definition:**

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.

- To "covet" means to have a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse. Often a person who covets something is willing to sin to get it.
- "Greed" is a strong, selfish desire to have something. Often a person who is greedy wants more of what he already has.

(See also: [jealous](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H183, H2530, H7065, H7068, H7342, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

covet, coveted, coveting, covetousness, envied, envious, envy, envying, greed, greedy

#### **evil**

#### **Related Ideas:**

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### **Definition:**

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23



- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### evil

### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

**exalt****Related Ideas:**

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

**Definition:**

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

**exhort****Related Ideas:**

exhortation, urge

**Definition:**

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5927, H6484, G3867, G3870, G3874

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

exhort, exhortation, exhortations, exhorted, exhorting, urge, urged

**face****Related Ideas:**

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

**Definition:**

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.

- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

## face

### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.

- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."

- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

faith

#### **faith**

#### **Definition:**

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

faith

**faithful****Related Ideas:**

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

**Definition:**

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness" \* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable." \* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God." \* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness" \* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal." \* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God." \* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying." \* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

**false prophet**

**Definition:**

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5578

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

false prophet, false prophets

**false prophet**

**Definition:**

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26



- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5578

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

false prophet, false prophets

**family**

**Related Ideas:**

family line, genealogical record

**Definition:**

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
- A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](#), [father](#), [house](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

**family**

**Related Ideas:**

family line, genealogical record

**Definition:**

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
- A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](#), [father](#), [house](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

**famine****Related Ideas:**

famished, hunger

**Definition:**

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry. \* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects. \* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops. \* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him. \* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

famine, famines, famished, hunger

**famine****Related Ideas:**

famished, hunger

**Definition:**

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry. \* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects. \* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops. \* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him. \* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

famine, famines, famished, hunger

**fast****Definition:**

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish authorities](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:8-10

- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

**fast****Definition:**

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish authorities](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

**father****Related Ideas:**

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

**Definition:**

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. \* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. \* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as

his grandfather's grandfather. \* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. \* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. \* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. \* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

- The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
- The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

## father

### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. \* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. \* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. \* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. \* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. \* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. \* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

- The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
- The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

**Definition:**

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
- "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
- To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
- "Dread" is great fear.
- Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
- Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [amazed](#), [awe](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

**fear****Related Ideas:**

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid



**Definition:**

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
- "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
- To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
- "Dread" is great fear.
- Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
- Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [amazed](#), [awe](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

**feast****Related Ideas:**

dinner

**Definition:**

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

**feast****Related Ideas:**

dinner

**Definition:**

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."

- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

**festival**

**Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.
- A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

festival, festivals

**festival**

**Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.
- A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

festival, festivals

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fig, figs

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### filled with the Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

full of the Holy Spirit

#### Definition:

The term "filled with the Holy Spirit" is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

- The expression "filled with" is an expression that often means "controlled by."
- People are "filled with the Holy Spirit" when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "empowered by the Holy Spirit" or "controlled by the Holy Spirit." But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as "he was filled with the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "he was living fully by the Spirit's power" or "he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely."
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression "live by the Spirit," but "filled with the Holy Spirit" emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#))

#### Bible References:

- Acts 04:31
- Acts 05:17
- Acts 06:8-9
- Luke 01:15
- Luke 01:39-41
- Luke 04:1-2

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4390, H4392, H7646, H8003, G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

filled ... with the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Spirit

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fir, firs

**fir****Definition:**

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fir, firs

**fire****Related Ideas:**

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
- A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
- To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
- To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
- To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.

- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. \* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. \* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." \* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

#### **fire**

#### **Related Ideas:**

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### **Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
- A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
- To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
- To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
- To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. \* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. \* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." \* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16



- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

**firstborn**

**Related Ideas:**

first issue

**Definition:**

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.
- The phrase "first issue of the womb" is another way of saying "firstborn."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When "firstborn" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, H6363, G4416, G5207

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

first ... issue, firstborn

**fishermen****Related Ideas:**

fish, fisher

**Definition:**

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."
- The word "fish" can also be a verb that means "to catch fish."

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:08
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 13:47

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1728, H1770, H1771, H2271, G231

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fish, fishermen, fishers

**fishermen****Related Ideas:**

fish, fisher

**Definition:**

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."
- The word "fish" can also be a verb that means "to catch fish."

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:08
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 13:47

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1728, H1770, H1771, H2271, G231

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fish, fishermen, fishers

**flesh****Related Ideas:**

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

**flesh****Related Ideas:**

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

## flock

### Related Ideas:

herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#), )

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

## flute

### Related Ideas:

pipe, wind instrument

### Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:07
- 1 Kings 01:38-40

- Daniel 03:3-5
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 09:23
- Matthew 11:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes, wind instruments

**fool****Related Ideas:**

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

**Definition:**

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
- A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
- Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

## footstool

### Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

footstool

## foreigner

### Related Ideas:

alien, barbarian, foreign, sojourn, sojourner, stranger, tenant

### Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

- A "sojourner" is a person who is living in one country that is not his but waiting for the chance to move to his own country.
- A "barbarian" is a person from another country who does not speak the local language or obey the local customs and so the natives do not like or respect him.
- A "strangers" are persons who do not know each other.
- To be "alienated" is to no longer be living in loving relationship with another. For example, a husband and wife who are no longer living together but are not divorced are "alienated" or "estranged."
- A "tenant" is a person who rents his dwelling place.

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H312, H628, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G246, G526, G915, G3581, G3927, G3941

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

alien, alienated, alienates, barbarian, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, live as a foreigner, living as foreigners, sojourn, sojourned, sojourner, sojourners, sojourning, stranger, strangers, tenant, tenants

### **forgive**

#### **Related Ideas:**

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

#### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."



(See also: [guilt](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

**forgive**

**Related Ideas:**

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

**Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

### **found**

### **Related Ideas:**

establish, foundation, founder

### **Definition:**

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
- To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29

- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

**found**

**Related Ideas:**

establish, foundation, founder

**Definition:**

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
- To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

**free****Related Ideas:**

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

**Definition:**

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
- To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

**free****Related Ideas:**

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

**Definition:**

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
- To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

**fruit****Related Ideas:**

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

**Definition:**

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. \* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. \* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. \* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for food. \* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. \* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. \* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. \* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions

reveal what his character is like. \* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. \* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a woman gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

## fruit

### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. \* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. \* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. \* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for food. \* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. \* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. \* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. \* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like. \* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. \* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a woman gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

**Definition:**

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

**fulfill****Related Ideas:**

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

**Definition:**

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))



**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

**gate****Related Ideas:**

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

**Definition:**

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

- A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
- A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

## gate

### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

- A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
- A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

## generation

### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
- "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."

- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
- "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [father](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

generation, generations

### **generation**

#### **Definition:**

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
- "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
- "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [father](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12

- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

generation, generations

**gift**

**Related Ideas:**

give, gracious gift

**Definition:**

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

## **gird**

### **Definition:**

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to wrapping a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The phrase "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The phrase "gird the sword" means to tuck the sword into one's belt in order to carry it.

### **Picture of Girding a sword:**

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: [loins](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H5401, H8151, G328, G1241, G2224, G4024

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

gird, girded, girding, girds

## **glory**

### **Related Ideas:**

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

### **Definition:**

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.

- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

#### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

#### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

**Definition:**

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16

- Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

#### goat

#### Related Ideas:

goatskins, kid, scapegoat, young goat

#### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their flocks, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herds.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

#### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

goat, goats, goats', goatskins, kid, kids, scapegoat, young goat



**good****Related Ideas:**

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

**Definition:**

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
- Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
- "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
- To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

**good****Related Ideas:**

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

**Definition:**

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
- Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
- "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
- To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

## **good news**

### **Related Ideas:**

gospel

### **Definition:**

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."
- The writers of the New Testament use a verb based on this noun to talk about telling or proclaiming good news or preaching the gospel.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news about" or "good message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, G2097, G2098, G4283

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

announce good news, announced the good news, announcing ... the good news, being told good news, bring ... good news, brings ... good news, brought ... good news, good news, gospel, gospel's, had ... good news proclaimed, preach the gospel, preached the gospel beforehand, preaching ... the gospel, proclaim ... gospel, proclaimed the good news, proclaimed the gospel, proclaiming ... good news, proclaiming the gospel, telling ... good news, were told the good news

## **governor**

### **Related Ideas:**

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

**Definition:**

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
- Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
- The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

**governor****Related Ideas:**

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

**Definition:**

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
- Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
- The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

## grace

### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08

- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

**grain**

**Related Ideas:**

grainfields, standing grain

**Definition:**

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

**grain**

**Related Ideas:**

grainfields, standing grain

**Definition:**

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

**grape**

**Related Ideas:**

raisin

**Definition:**

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times, and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- "Raisins" are dried grapes. People often dried grapes in order to keep them from rotting.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grape, grapes, raisin, raisins

**guilt**

**Related Ideas:**

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

**Definition:**

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

**guilt**

**Related Ideas:**

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

**Definition:**

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))



## Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

## hand

## Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

## Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
  - To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
  - To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."

- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### **hand**

#### **Related Ideas:**

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

## hang

### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

**hang****Definition:**

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

**hard****Related Ideas:**

hardly, hardness, hardship

**Definition:**

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
- Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
- When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
- A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
- A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively \* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. \* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."

- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [stiff-necked](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

## **hard**

### **Related Ideas:**

hardly, hardness, hardship

### **Definition:**

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
- Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
- When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
- A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
- A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively \* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. \* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."

- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [stiff-necked](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

## **harp**

#### **Related Ideas:**

harpist, lyre

#### **Definition:**

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Players of harps and lyres would hold them in the hands and play them by strumming or plucking while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.
- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

#### **Picture of a Harp:**

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24

- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

harp, harpist, harpists, harps, lyre, lyres

**harvest**

**Related Ideas:**

harvester

**Definition:**

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#), [festival](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

## harvest

### Related Ideas:

harvester

### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#), [festival](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.



- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

## heal

## Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

## Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
- A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
- Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:16

- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

### heal

#### Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

#### Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
- A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
- Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](#))

#### Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

**heart****Related Ideas:**

kidneys

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
- The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heart, hearts, kidneys

## heart

### Related Ideas:

kidneys

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
- The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

## heaven

### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

## heaven

### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

**Definition:**

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

**heir****Definition:**

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."

- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heir, heirs

**heir**

**Definition:**

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heir, heirs



## hell

### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
- "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

### Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

## hell

### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.

- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
- "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### **high priest**

#### **Related Ideas:**

high priesthood

#### **Definition:**

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

**high priest**

**Related Ideas:**

high priesthood

**Definition:**

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

### **holy**

### **Related Ideas:**

holiness, sacred, unholy

### **Definition:**

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
- Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
- When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
- The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15
- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

## **holy**

### **Related Ideas:**

holiness, sacred, unholy

### **Definition:**

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
- Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
- When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
- The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15
- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

## honey

### Related Ideas:

honeycomb

### Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey."
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

honey, honeycomb

## honor

### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
- To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

**honor****Related Ideas:**

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

**Definition:**

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
- To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:8



- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### hope

#### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated as, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H1891, H2976, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G1679, G1680, G2070, G4276

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hope, hoped, hopes, look to ... in hope, uselessly hope

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), [power royal](#), [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:39
- 2 Samuel 22:03
- Jeremiah 17:01
- Psalms 022:21

#### Word Data:

- Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), [power royal](#), [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:39
- 2 Samuel 22:03
- Jeremiah 17:01
- Psalms 022:21

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### **hour**

#### **Definition:**

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

- When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
- When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
- The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
- The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour \(biblical time\)](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Mark 14:35
- 1 Corinthians 15:30

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G5610

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

## hour

### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

- When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
- When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
- The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
- The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour \(biblical time\)](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 14:35
- 1 Corinthians 15:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5610

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

## house

### Related Ideas:

home, residence

### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."

- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### **house**

#### **Related Ideas:**

home, residence

#### **Definition:**

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

**house of God****Related Ideas:**

house of Yahweh

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

## house of God

### Related Ideas:

house of Yahweh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

## household

### Related Ideas:

household members

### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

household, household members, households, members of household

**humble****Related Ideas:**

humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

**Definition:**

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: [proud](#))

**Bible References:**

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

humble, humbled, humbles, humbling, humbly, humility, lowliness of mind



## hypocrite

### Related Ideas:

hypocrisy

### Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
- The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

### Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G505, G5272, G5273

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hypocrisy, hypocrite, hypocrites

## hypocrite

### Related Ideas:

hypocrisy

### Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.

- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
- The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G505, G5272, G5273

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hypocrisy, hypocrite, hypocrites

**image**

**Related Ideas:**

carved figure, cast metal figure, statue

**Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.

(See also: [god](#), [God](#), [god](#), [image of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21

- Romans 01:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H1823, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

carved figure, carved figures, carved image, carved images, cast metal figure, cast metal figures, cast metal images, castings, figure, figures, image, images, statue

**incense**

**Related Ideas:**

censer, sweet aroma

**Definition:**

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."
- A "censer" is a pan or small pot that holds burning incense.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [frankincense](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:04
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3828, H4196, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

censers, incense, incenses, sweet aroma

**inherit**

**Related Ideas:**

heritage, inheritance, legacy

**Definition:**

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

**inherit****Related Ideas:**

heritage, inheritance, legacy

**Definition:**

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07

- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

**instruct**

**Related Ideas:**

instruction, instructor

**Definitions:**

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
- The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [teach](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

**instruct**

**Related Ideas:**

instruction, instructor

**Definitions:**

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
- The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [teach](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

**interpret****Related Ideas:**

interpretation, interpreter, translate

**Definitions:**

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
- The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

### **interpret**

### **Related Ideas:**

interpretation, interpreter, translate

### **Definitions:**

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
- The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated



## is written

### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law of Moses](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

## is written

### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law of Moses](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

**joy****Related Ideas:**

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

**Definition:**

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
- To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
- "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

**Bible References:**

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
- To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
- "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02

- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
- The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."

- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### **judge**

#### **Definition:**

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law of Moses](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

## justice

### Related Ideas:

honest, injustice, just, justification, justify, maintain someone's rights, vindicate, vindication

### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."
- To "vindicate" someone whom others have accused of wrongdoing is to show that he has actually done what is right.

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly."
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."

- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3476, H3477, H4941, H5766, H5767, H6415, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8199, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G95, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1556, G1557, G1738, G2118, G2920

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

desire for justice, dishonest, honest, injustice, injustices, just, justice, justification, justified, justifies, justify, justly, maintain ... rights, unjust, unjustly, vindicate, vindicated, vindication

## **kin**

### **Related Ideas:**

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

### **Definition:**

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

**Bible References:**

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

**kin****Related Ideas:**

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

**Definition:**

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

**Bible References:**

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

**kind****Definition:**

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.



### **Picture showing Kinds:**

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kind, kinds

## **kind**

### **Definition:**

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

### **Picture showing Kinds:**

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kind, kinds

**king****Related Ideas:**

kingly, kingship

**Definition:**

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

**king****Related Ideas:**

kingly, kingship

**Definition:**

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.

- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### **kingdom**

#### **Related Ideas:**

power to rule

#### **Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

**kingdom**

**Related Ideas:**

power to rule

**Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14

- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

**kingdom of God**

**Related Ideas:**

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

**Definition:**

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

**kingdom of God**

**Related Ideas:**

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

**Definition:**

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

**kiss****Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

**kiss****Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45

- Matthew 26:48

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

#### **know**

#### **Related Ideas:**

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### **Definition:**

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- To "train for" an activity is to learn how to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

## know

## Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

## Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

**labor****Related Ideas:**

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

**Definition:**

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
- "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
- An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
- Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

**lamb****Related Ideas:**

Lamb of God

**Definition:**

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
- "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

**lamb****Related Ideas:**

Lamb of God

**Definition:**

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
- "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

**lamp****Related Ideas:**

torch

**Definition:**

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
- A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22

- Matthew 25:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

**lamp**

**Related Ideas:**

torch

**Definition:**

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
- A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

**lampstand**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

## Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

lampstand, lampstands

## lampstand

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

## Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lampstand, lampstands

**law****Related Ideas:**

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

**Definition:**

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
- A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

**law****Related Ideas:**

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

**Definition:**

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
- A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.

- A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

**law of Moses**

**Related Ideas:**

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of God, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law

**Definition:**

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
- all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

**Translation Suggestions:**

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."
- There were people in the Bible who were experts in the Law of Moses, they were called "lawyers."

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))



**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G976, G2316, G3544, G3551, G3565

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law, the law of God, your law

**lawful****Related Ideas:**

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

**Definition:**

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

**Bible References:**

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

**lawful****Related Ideas:**

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

**Definition:**

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

## leper

### Related Ideas:

leprosy, leprous

**Definition:**

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
- Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Naaman](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 05:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 01:40
- Mark 14:03
- Matthew 08:03
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

**leper****Related Ideas:**

leprosy, leprous

**Definition:**

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
- Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Naaman](#), [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- Luke 05:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 01:40
- Mark 14:03
- Matthew 08:03
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

**letter****Related Ideas:**

epistle

**Definition:**

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: [courage](#), [exhort](#), [teach](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:27
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

epistle, letter, letters

## life

### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
- To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
- A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
- The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
- Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
- The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18

- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### life

### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
- To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
- A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
- The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
- Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
- The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."

## light

- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

## light

### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))



**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

**light**

**Related Ideas:**

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

**Definition:**

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05

- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
- The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
- The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

#### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03

- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

#### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
- The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
- The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

#### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02

- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

**lion****Related Ideas:**

lioness

**Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
- A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

**lion****Related Ideas:**

lioness

**Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
- A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

**locust****Related Ideas:**

grasshopper, locust swarms

**Definitions:**

The term "locust" refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many others of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:06
- Proverbs 30:27-28

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grasshoppers, locust, locust swarms, locusts

**loins****Related Ideass:**

side, thigh, waist

**Definition:**

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants.
- The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as, "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you."
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), [gird](#), [offspring](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

loins, hips, side, thigh, thighs, waist

**lord****Related Ideas:**

landowner, Lord, master, master of the house, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir

**Definition:**

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "lord": \* \* The term "lord" can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for. \* When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master." \* If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.

Translating "Lord": \* When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English. \* In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God. \* When "Lord" refers to Jesus Christ (the Son of God), it should be translated with the same word that is used for "Lord" when it refers to God the Father. Or if it is translated with different words, both words should express the same degree of honor. \* Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule. \* For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H1404, H4756, H5633, H7218, H7980, H8323, G1203, G2634, G2961, G2962, G3617

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Lord, Lord's, landowner, lord, lord's, lords, master, master of the house, master's, masters, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir, sirs

**lots****Related Ideas:**

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

**Definition:**

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
- If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
- To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
- To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth, priest](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

**lots****Related Ideas:**

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot



**Definition:**

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
- If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
- To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
- To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth, priest](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

**love****Related Ideas:**

brotherly love

**Definition:**

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

## love

### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23

- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lover

#### Definition:

The term "lover" literally means "person who loves."

- Usually "lover" refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, the term "lover" is used in a positive way.
- In other parts of the Bible, it often refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to.
- This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel's disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term "lovers" is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by "immoral partners" or "partners in adultery" or "idols."

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#), [god](#), [love](#))

#### Bible References:

- Hosea 02:05
- Jeremiah 03:02
- Lamentations 01:02
- Luke 16:14

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H868, H5689, H7453, H8566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lover, lovers

### lute

#### Definition:

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

- A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.

- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5035, H5443

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lute, lutes

**lute**

**Definition:**

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

- A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5035, H5443

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

lute, lutes

**magistrate**

**Definition:**

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "ruling judge" or "legal officer" or "city leader."

(See also: [judge](#), [law of Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 16:20
- Acts 16:35
- Daniel 03:1-2
- Luke 12:58

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

magistrate, magistrates

**manager**

**Related Ideas:**

engage, manage, management, steward, stewardship

**Definition:**

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.
- The terms "management" and "stewardship" refer to the work that a manager or steward does.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."

(See also: [servant](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4453, H6485, G2012, G3616, G3621, G3622, G3623, G4291

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

engage, manage, management, manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship

## mediator

### Related Ideas:

intermediary, mediate

### Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.
- An "intermediary" is a person who represents one person in a discussion or conflict with another person. This is different from a "mediator," who listens to both persons and tries to be neutral.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](#), [reconcile](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:05
- Galatians 03:20
- Hebrews 08:06
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, H6419, G3312, G3316

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

intermediary, mediated, mediator

## member

### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15

- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

member, members

**member**

**Definition:**

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

member, members

**mercy**

**Related Ideas:**

kindness, merciful, spare

**Definition:**

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
- An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.



- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

### mercy

### Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

### Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
- An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

**messenger**

**Related Ideas:**

courier, herald

**Definitions:**

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
- A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### messenger

### Related Ideas:

courier, herald

### Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
- A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### mighty

### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
- The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

**mighty****Related Ideas:**

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

**Definition:**

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
- The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."

- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

## **mind**

### **Related Ideas:**

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

### **Definition:**

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
- To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
- To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
- To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
- To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
- A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking too much wine.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### **mind**

### **Related Ideas:**

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

### **Definition:**

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
- To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
- To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
- To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
- To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
- A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking too much wine.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Luke 10:27

- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

**miracle**

**Related Ideas:**

miraculous

**Definition:**

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22

- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4159, H6381, H6382, G1411, G1605, G4592, G5059

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

miracle, miracles, miraculous

**mock**

**Related Ideas:**

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

**Definition:**

The terms "mock," "ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
- A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts



**mock****Related Ideas:**

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

**Definition:**

The terms "mock," "ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
- A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

**month****Related Ideas:**

monthly

**Definition:**

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.

- The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

month, monthly, months

#### **mourn**

#### **Related Ideas:**

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

#### **Definitions:**

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
- A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

**mourn****Related Ideas:**

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

**Definitions:**

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
- A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

**myrrh****Definition:**

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 02:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

myrrh

**mystery**

**Related Ideas:**

hidden meaning, hidden truth, secrets

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "mystery" refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as "secret" or "hidden things" or "something unknown."

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hidden meaning, hidden truth, hidden truths, mysteries, mystery, secrets

**name**

**Related Ideas:**

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
- People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
- A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

**name****Related Ideas:**

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.

- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
- People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
- A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshipping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.

- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

nation, nations

### **neighbor**

#### **Related Ideas:**

neighborhood, neighboring

#### **Definition:**

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
- A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
- "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43



- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

**neighbor**

**Related Ideas:**

neighborhood, neighboring

**Definition:**

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
- A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
- "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

**noble**

**Related Ideas:**

nobility, nobleman

**Definition:**

The term "noble" describes someone or something that is excellent or of high quality.

- A "nobleman" or a "noble" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The "nobility" refers to the people who belong to a high political or social class.
- A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

**Translation Suggestion**

- The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H193, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

nobility, noble, nobleman, noblemen, nobles

**oak****Related Ideas:**

terebinth

**Definition:**

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like...," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See:

(See also: [holy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oak, oaks, terebinths

**oak****Related Ideas:**

terebinth

**Definition:**

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like...," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See:

(See also: [holy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oak, oaks, terebinths

**oath****Related Ideas:**

swear, swear by

**Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

**oath****Related Ideas:**

swear, swear by

**Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

**obey****Related Ideas:**

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

**Definition:**

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
- To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
- Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

**obey****Related Ideas:**

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

**Definition:**

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.

- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
- To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
- Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

**official**

**Related Ideas:**

officer

**Definition:**

The terms "official" and "officer" refer to people who hold positions within a government or organization. Leaders within the government or organization give the official or officer certain authority and duties to perform as long as he remains in the position.

- A king often had many officials to serve him.
- When someone makes an "official visit," it means a person with authority is visiting a person or place as part of his job.
- An officer is a person who carries out the orders of an official or a judge and issues orders only to officers of lesser rank and to people subject to the government.

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 39:1
- Ester 01:03
- Jeremiah 01:18

- Matthew 09:18
- Acts 25:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5461, H5631, H6496, H7860, H8269, G758, G3175, G4173, G5257

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

officer, officers, official, officials

**offspring**

**Definition:**

The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1121, H2233, H4138, H5209, H6363, H6529, H6631, G1081, G1085, G4690

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

offspring

**oil**

**Related Ideas:**

ointment

**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 01:21



- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

**oil****Related Ideas:**

ointment

**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

**olive****Definition:**

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.

- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

olive, olives

**on high**

**Related Ideas:**

in the highest

**Definition:**

The terms "on high" and "in the highest" are expressions that usually mean "in heaven."

- Another meaning for the expression "in the highest" could be "the most honored."
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression "in the highest tree, " which means "in the tallest tree."
- The expression "on high" could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird's nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as "high in the sky" or "at the top of a tall tree."
- The word "high" could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression "from on high" could be translated as "from heaven."

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1361, H4791, H7682, G5308, G5310, G5311

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

in the highest, on high

**oppress**

**Related Ideas:**

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

**Definition:**

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
- The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

**palace****Definition:**

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8

- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

palace, palaces

**parable**

**Related Ideas:**

hard question, lesson, riddle

**Definition:**

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth. It can also refer to a saying that is difficult to understand and about which the hearer will have to think carefully before he can understand what the speaker is teaching.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- Jesus used parables to reveal truth to his disciples and to hide the truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in him.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.
- A "riddle" is a type of "hard question." The one who asks a hard question does not know the correct answer, but he hopes the hearer can answer correctly. The one who asks a riddle does not want the hearer to be able to answer the question correctly.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The word "parable" can be translated as "illustration".

(See also: [Samaria](#))

**Bible References:**

- Proverbs 01:06
- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1819, H2420, H4426, H4912, G3850, G3942

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

hard questions, lesson, parable, parables, riddle, riddles

## parable

### Related Ideas:

hard question, lesson, riddle

### Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth. It can also refer to a saying that is difficult to understand and about which the hearer will have to think carefully before he can understand what the speaker is teaching.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- Jesus used parables to reveal truth to his disciples and to hide the truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in him.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.
- A "riddle" is a type of "hard question." The one who asks a hard question does not know the correct answer, but he hopes the hearer can answer correctly. The one who asks a riddle does not want the hearer to be able to answer the question correctly.

### Translation Suggestions

- The word "parable" can be translated as "illustration".

(See also: [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

- Proverbs 01:06
- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H2420, H4426, H4912, G3850, G3942

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard questions, lesson, parable, parables, riddle, riddles

## partial

### Related Ideas:

partiality

### Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.

- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
- God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

**partial**

**Related Ideas:**

partiality

**Definition:**

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
- God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

## patient

### Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

### Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
- The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), [persevere](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

## peace

### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

- A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
- To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

**peace**

**Related Ideas:**

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

**Definition:**

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
- A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
- To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51



- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

**perish**

**Related Ideas:**

imperishable, perishable

**Definition:**

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

- The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
- Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
- When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

**persecute**

**Related Ideas:**

persecution, persecutor

**Definition:**

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

**perverse**

**Related Ideas:**

crooked, perversion, perversity, pervert, twisted

**Definition:**

The terms "perverse," "crooked," and "twisted" are used to describe a person or action that is morally bad. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good. "Perversity" is perverse thoughts, words, and actions.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
- "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
- "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
- The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
- The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:02
- Psalms 101:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1942, H2015, H2555, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294, G1612, G3344, G4646

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crooked, crooked ways, perverse, perverse words, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, perversity, pervert, perverted, perverting, perverts, twisted

### pierce

### Related Ideas:

gore, thrust through

### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something or to make a hole with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.
- To "thrust someone through" or "thrust a sword through someone" is to push a sword all the way through him so the sword comes out the other side.
- To "gore" is for an animal to thrust a horn into another animal or a person.

(See also: [cross](#), [Jesus](#), [servant](#), [Simeon](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 022:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1856, H1920, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H5055, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

gore, gored, holes, pierce, pierced, pierces, piercing, thrust ... through

**pig****Related Ideas:**

boar, pork, swine

**Definition:**

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."
- A "boar" is a wild pig. Wild pigs are usually fierce and dangerous.

(See also: [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:22
- Mark 05:13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

boar, boars, pig, pigs, pork, swine, swine's

**pig****Related Ideas:**

boar, pork, swine

**Definition:**

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."

- A "boar" is a wild pig. Wild pigs are usually fierce and dangerous.

(See also: [clean](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:22
- Mark 05:13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

boar, boars, pig, pigs, pork, swine, swine's

**pit**

**Related Ideas:**

pitfall, quarry

**Definition:**

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [prison](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 06:39
- Proverbs 01:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

**pit**

**Related Ideas:**

pitfall, quarry

### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [prison](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 06:39
- Proverbs 01:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

## p plague

### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

### Picture of a Plague of skin:

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 09:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G3061, G4127

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

plague, plagues

**plead****Related Ideas:**

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

**Definitions:**

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
- The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
- To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
- A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
- An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
- The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31
- Luke 04:39
- Proverbs 18:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

**plow****Related Ideas:**

farmer, plowman, plowshare, unplowed

**Definition:**

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs or blades that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- A "plowshare" is the main cutting blade on a plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.

- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.
- A "plowman" or a "plower" is a person who uses a plow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The terms "plowman" and "plower" can also be translated more generally as "farmer."

(See also: [bronze](#), [cow](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:04
- Luke 09:62
- Luke 17:07
- Psalm 141:5-7

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

farmers, plow, plowed, plowers, plowing, plowman, plowmen, plows, plowshares, unplowed

#### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
- The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."



(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### **possess**

### **Related Ideas:**

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

### **Definitions:**

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
- The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### **power**

### **Related Ideas:**

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

### **Definition:**

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

**power****Related Ideas:**

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

**Definition:**

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

**praise****Related Ideas:**

praiseworthy

**Definition:**

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person. Something that is praiseworthy is good and deserves to be praised.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1288, H1289, H1319, H1984, H2142, H2167, H7121, H8416, G1392, G1843, G2127, G2128, G2129, G2980, G3170, G3853, G5485, G5567

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

praise, praised, praises, praiseworthy, praising, sing praise, sing praises

**pray****Related Ideas:**

prayer

**Definition:**

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

**pray**

**Related Ideas:**

prayer

**Definition:**

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

**preach**

**Related Ideas:**

preacher

**Definition:**

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

**preach**

**Related Ideas:**

preacher

**Definition:**

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

**priest**

**Related Ideas:**

priesthood, priestly office

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest



## priest

### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

## prince

### Related Ideas:

princess

### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5461, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

prince, princes, princess, princesses

## prison

### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
- To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
- A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### prison

### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

- To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
- A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

## profit

### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

### Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

## profit

### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](#))

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### **Bible References:**

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### **promise**

#### **Related Ideas:**

binding promise

#### **Definition:**

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09

- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

**promise**

**Related Ideas:**

binding promise

**Definition:**

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

**prophet**

**Related Ideas:**

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law of Moses](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### prophet

### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer



### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law of Moses](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### prostitute

### Related Ideas:

prostitution

**Definition:**

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshipping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this.

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#), [sexual immorality](#), [god](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act like a prostitute, acted like a prostitute, acted like prostitutes, prostitute, prostitute's, prostituted, prostitutes, prostitution

**proud****Related Ideas:**

pride, prideful

**Definition:**

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."

- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

**proverb**

**Definition:**

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [wise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 02:22
- Luke 04:24
- Proverbs 01:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

proverb, proverbs, speak ... proverb

**punish**

**Related Ideas:**

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
- The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
- To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
- Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
- Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [justice](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

## pure

### Related Ideas:

impure, purge, purification, purify, purity, refine

### Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.

## purple

- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.
- Something that is "impure" is not pure.
- To "refine" is to purify metal. This is done by heating the metal over a fire until it melts and removing what should not be there.
- Someone who has pure motives is someone who only wants to do what is good.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."
- Other ways to translate "pure motives" or "purity of motives" is "sincere" or "sincerity."

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H571, H1249, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H2896, H3800, H5079, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, G48, G49, G53, G54, G169, G185, G505, G1103, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impure, impure thing, impurities, impurity, pure, purer, purge, purification, purified, purifies, purify, purity, refine, refined, refiner, refiner's, refining

## purple

### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

purple

**purple**

**Definitions:**

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

purple

**quench**

**Related Ideas:**

put out, unquenchable

**Definition:**

The term "quench" means to stop something that is demanding to be satisfied. The expression "put out" can also mean the same.

- The term "quench" is usually used in the context of quenching thirst, and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- The expressions "quench" and "put out" can also be used to refer to stopping a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- A fire that is "unquenchable" cannot be stopped. It continues to burn.
- Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

put out, quench, quenched, unquenchable

**rage****Related Ideas:**

enrage

**Definitions:**

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
- When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
- "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
- To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
- To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
- When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively. \* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [anger](#), [self-control](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28

- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

**rage**

**Related Ideas:**

enrage

**Definitions:**

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
- When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
- "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
- To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
- To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
- When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively. \* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [anger](#), [self-control](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

**raise**

**Related Ideas:**

arise, rise, risen



**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
- A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

**raise****Related Ideas:**

arise, rise, risen

**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
- A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22

- Matthew 20:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### ransom

### Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
- The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
- The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: [atonement](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:06
- Isaiah 43:03
- Job 06:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 049:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6304, G487, G3083

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ransom, ransomed

**reap****Related Ideas:**

reaper

**Definition:**

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants."
- Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: [good news](#), [harvest](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G2325, G2327

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reap, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping, reaps

**rebel****Related Ideas:**

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

**Definition:**

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

### **rebel**

### **Related Ideas:**

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### **Definition:**

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

**rebuke****Related Ideas:**

correct, correction

**Definition:**

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#))

**Bible References:**

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

**rebuke****Related Ideas:**

correct, correction

**Definition:**

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."

- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

#### **receive**

#### **Related Ideas:**

abstain, receiver

#### **Definition:**

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
- The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

## receive

## Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

## Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
- The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562



### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reconcile

#### Related Ideas:

reconciliation

#### Definition:

The term "reconcile" refers to "making peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
- The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

#### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: G525, G604, G1259, G2643, G2644

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reconcile, reconciled, reconciles, reconciliation, reconciling

### redeem

#### Related Ideas:

redeemer, redemption

#### Definition:

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.

- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: [free](#), [ransom](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6306, H6304, H7069, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

redeem, redeemed, redeemer, redeems, redemption

## reed

### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reed, reeds

**reed****Definitions:**

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reed, reeds

**reign****Definition:**

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

**reject****Related Ideas:**

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

**Definition:**

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

- To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
- To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
- To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
- An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

**reject****Related Ideas:**

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

**Definition:**

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

- To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
- To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
- To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
- An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

**repent****Related Ideas:**

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

**Definition:**

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
- A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
- A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### repent

### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
- A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
- A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### **report**

### **Related Ideas:**

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

### **Definition:**

The term "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
- A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

## report

### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
- A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

## rest

### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
- To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
- To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
- "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
- If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.



**Translation Suggestions:**

- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

**rest****Related Ideas:**

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

**Definition:**

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
- To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
- To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
- "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
- If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."

- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

#### **restore**

#### **Related Ideas:**

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### **Definition:**

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
- A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
- A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22

- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

**restore**

**Related Ideas:**

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

**Definition:**

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
- A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
- A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

resurrection

**return**

**Definition:**

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
- When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
- To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

**return**

**Definition:**

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
- When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
- To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

## **Bible References:**

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

## **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

## **reveal**

## **Related Ideas:**

revelation

## **Definition:**

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

## **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](#), [vision](#))

## **Bible References:**

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

## **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

**reward****Related Ideas:**

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

**Definition:**

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
- "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
- A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
- A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
- "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
- "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

**reward****Related Ideas:**

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

**Definition:**

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
- "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
- A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
- A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
- "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
- "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](#))

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

**right hand****Related Ideas:**

righthand side

**Definition:**

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.



- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

right hand, right hands, righthand side

#### **right hand**

#### **Related Ideas:**

righthand side

#### **Definition:**

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).

- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

## righteous

### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
- "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good"
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [sin](#), [lawful](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
- "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."

- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good"
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [sin](#), [lawful](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

## robe

### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- Robes can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
- The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
- A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
- A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

## robe

### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- Robes can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
- The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
- A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
- A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

**rod****Related Ideas:**

measuring rod

**Definition:**

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 04:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

measuring rod, rod, rods

## rod

### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

## ruin

### Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

### Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
- The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8



- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:16
- Isaiah 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

#### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
- To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

#### Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

## ruler

### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
- To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

## run

### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

**Definition:**

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
- To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshipping other gods.
- "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
- The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
- Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
- The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

**run****Related Ideas:**

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

**Definition:**

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
- To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshipping other gods.
- "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
- The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
- Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
- The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

## **sackcloth**

### **Definition:**

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sackcloth

**sacrifice****Related Ideas:**

offering

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin.
- Only animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12

- Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

#### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

#### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

**sandal****Definition:**

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sandal, sandals

**sandal****Definition:**

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15

- Mark 06:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sandal, sandals

### save

### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12



- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### save

### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

**scribe****Related Ideas:**

clerk, scholar

**Definition:**

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [Pharisee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

**scribe****Related Ideas:**

clerk, scholar

**Definition:**

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [Pharisee](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

**scroll****Related Ideas:**

book, certificate, document, literature

**Definition:**

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.

- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.
- The word "book" in the Bible refers to scrolls or paper that had writing on them.
- A "document" is an official written record.
- A "certificate of divorce" is an official document that a man could give to his wife to end their marriage.
- "Literature" is written things that educated people considered to be great.

(See also: [seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Jeremiah 29:03
- Luke 04:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:02

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

book, books, certificate, document, documents, literature, scroll, scrolls

#### **seed**

#### **Related Words:**

semen

#### **Definition:**

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

seed, seeds, semen

**seed****Related Words:**

semen

**Definition:**

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

seed, seeds, semen

**seek****Related Ideas:**

go to find, look out for, search, try

**Definition:**

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
- To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
- To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#), [true](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

**seek****Related Ideas:**

go to find, look out for, search, try

**Definition:**

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."

- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
- To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
- To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#), [true](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

#### **seize**

#### **Related Ideas:**

seizure

#### **Definition:**

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
- In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
- This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
- The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
- The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### seize

### Related Ideas:

seizure

### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
- In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
- This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
- The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
- The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### selah

### Definition:

The term "selah" is a Hebrew word that occurs mostly in the book of Psalms. It has several possible meanings.

- It could mean "pause and praise," which would invite the audience to think carefully about what was just said.



- Since many of the Psalms were written as songs, it is thought that "selah" may have been a musical term to instruct the singer to pause in his singing to allow for the musical instruments to play alone or to encourage listeners to think about the words of the song.

(See also: [psalm](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Psalm 003:3-4
- Psalm 024:5-6
- Psalms 046:6-7

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5542

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

selah

### **send**

#### **Definition:**

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

## send

### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

## serpent

### Related Ideas:

adder, asp, snake, viper

### Definitions:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake. The terms "viper," "adder," and "asp" refer to types of snakes that have venom which they use to poison their prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.

- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [Eden](#), [evil](#), [offspring](#), [prey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [tempt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 03:03
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 23:33

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

adder, adders, asp, asps, serpent, serpent's, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, viper's, vipers

### **servant**

### **Related Ideas:**

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

### **Definition:**

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is,

because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#))

### **Bible References**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### **servant**

### **Related Ideas:**

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

### **Definition:**

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.

- In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#))

### **Bible References**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

## set apart

### Related Ideas:

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

### Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
- One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
- To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

## sexual immorality

### Related Ideas:

fornicate, fornication, immoral

### Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fornicate, fornicates, fornication, fornications, immoral, immorality, sexual immorality

### shadow

### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

- The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
- The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

- The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
- It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

**shadow**

**Related Ideas:**

overshadow, shade

**Definition:**

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

- The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
- The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

- The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
- It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows



## shame

### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
- A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
- A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
- A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

## shame

### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.

## sheep

- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
- A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
- A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
- A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

## sheep

### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
- A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
- A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36

- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

**sheep**

**Related Ideas:**

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

**Definition:**

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
- A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
- A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

## shepherd

### Definition:

- A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.
- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.
- David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsman, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

## shepherd

### Definition:

- A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.
- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.
- David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsman, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

**shrewd****Related Ideas:**

crafty

**Definition:**

The term "shrewd" describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term "shrewd" has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "cunning" or "crafty" or "smart" or "clever," depending on the context.
- A "crafty" person knows how to deceive others so they will do what he wants them to do.

**Bible References:****Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2450, H6175, H6191, G5429

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

crafty, shrewd, shrewdly

**sign****Related Ideas:**

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

**Definition:**

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
- The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
- God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
- An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
- Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
- The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
- The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.
- A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.
- An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

## sign

### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
- The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
- God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
- An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
- Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
- The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

- The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.
- A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.
- An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

## silver

### Related Ideas:

money

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))



**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

money, silver

**sin****Related Ideas:**

sinful, sinner

**Definition:**

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
- Romans 08:04

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

#### **sin**

#### **Related Ideas:**

sinful, sinner

#### **Definition:**

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."

- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
- Romans 08:04

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### **sister**

#### **Definition:**

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22

- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H269, G27, G79

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

**sister**

**Definition:**

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H269, G27, G79

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

**slander**

**Related Ideas:**

slanderer, slanderous, speak evil about

**Definition:**

Slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
- The word "slanderer" could also be translated as "tale-bearer."

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 04:13
- 1 Timothy 03:11
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2635, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

slander, slandered, slanderer, slanderers, slandering, slanderous, slanders, speak evil about, spoken of as evil

**son****Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.

- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

son, son's, sons

#### **son**

#### **Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.

- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

son, son's, sons

#### **sons of God**

#### **Related Ideas:**

children of God

#### **Definition:**

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
- Also see the link for "son."

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 06:02
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:06
- Romans 08:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

children of God, sons of ... God

**soul****Related Ideas:**

person

**Definition:**

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

- The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means, "I am tired."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5315, G5590



**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

person, persons, soul, souls

**soul****Related Ideas:**

person

**Definition:**

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

- The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5315, G5590

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

person, persons, soul, souls

**sow****Related Ideas:**

plant, plantation, transplanted

**Definition:**

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

- Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
- When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
- A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
- To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

**Translations Suggestions**

- The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
- The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [reap](#))

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

**SOW****Related Ideas:**

plant, plantation, transplanted

**Definition:**

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

- Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
- When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.

- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
- A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
- To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
- The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [reap](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

## spirit

### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#), [divination](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### spirit

### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.

- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#), [divination](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

#### **staff**

#### **Related Ideas:**

club, walking stick

#### **Definition:**

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
- A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

**staff**

**Related Ideas:**

club, walking stick

**Definition:**

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
- A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and "command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law of Moses](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

statute, statutes

## stone

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

**stone****Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

**storehouse****Related Ideas:**

barn, storage, store cities, storerooms, treasure, treasury

**Definition:**

A "storehouse" is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a "storehouse" was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- The term "storehouse" can also be used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- Other ways to translate "storehouse" could include "a building for storing grain" or "place for keeping food" or "room for keeping valuable things safe."
- A "treasure" is a very valuable object.



- A "treasury" is can be a place where treasures are stored, but it is more often a place where officials store money.

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Psalms 033:07

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H1004, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

barn, barns, storage, store cities, storehouse, storehouses, storerooms, treasure, treasures, treasuries, treasury

### **strength**

#### **Related Ideas:**

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### **Definitions:**

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.
- "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
- "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
- "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
- "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
- "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
- "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
- "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
- "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
- "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."

- "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
- "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### **strength**

#### **Related Ideas:**

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### **Definitions:**

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.
- "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
- "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
- "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
- "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
- "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
- "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"

- "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
- "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
- "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
- "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
- "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### **strong drink**

#### **Definition:**

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. Distilled alcoholic drinks had not been invented yet. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: [grape](#), [Nazirite](#), [vow](#), [wine](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:09
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:03

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5435, H7941, H8248, G4608

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

strong drink, strong drinks

## stumble

### Related Ideas:

reel

### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
- "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
- The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

### Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

## stumble

### Related Ideas:

reel

### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
- "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
- The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

## Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

## stumbling block

## Related Ideas:

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling

## Definition:

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

## Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:23
- Galatians 05:11
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 09:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4383, H6697, G3037, G4349, G4625

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling, stumbling block, stumbling blocks

**submit****Related Ideas:**

submission

**Definition:**

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
- The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
- The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
- The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also: [subject](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5292, G5293

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

in submission, submission, submit, submits, submitted, submitting

**suffer****Related Ideas:**

misery

**Definition:**

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.

- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

#### **suffer**

#### **Related Ideas:**

misery

#### **Definition:**

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."

- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

**sulfur**

**Definition:**

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: [Gomorrah](#), [judge](#), [Lot](#), [rebel](#), [Sodom](#), [godly](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 19:24
- Isaiah 34:09
- Luke 17:29
- Revelation 20:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1614, G2303

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sulfur



## sweep

### Definitions:

To "sweep" usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. "Swept" is the past tense of "sweep." These words are also used figuratively.

- The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would "sweep through" the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term "sweep" can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are "sweeping over" him.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:03
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 090:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H5674, H7857, G4216, G4563, G4951

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sweep, sweep ... away, sweeping, sweeps, swept, swept up

## sword

### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
- A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."

- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

#### **sword**

#### **Related Ideas:**

dagger, swordsmen

#### **Definition:**

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
- A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### **Translation Suggestions**

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

**synagogue**

**Definition:**

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

synagogue, synagogues

**synagogue**

**Definition:**

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.

- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

synagogue, synagogues

### **tax**

### **Related Ideas:**

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

### **Definition:**

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government."
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

- A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people buy or sell.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References**

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

### **tax**

### **Related Ideas:**

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

### **Definition:**

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government."
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.

- The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.
- A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people buy or sell.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References**

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

## **teach**

### **Related Ideas:**

educated, teaching, untaught

### **Definition:**

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
- A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
- A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
- A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31

- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

**teach**

**Related Ideas:**

educated, teaching, untaught

**Definition:**

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
- A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
- A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
- A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

## teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

## teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))



### **Bible References:**

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

teacher, teachers

### **temple**

### **Related Ideas:**

shrine

### **Definitions:**

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
- A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [court](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

### temple

### Related Ideas:

shrine

### Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
- A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [court](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

**tempt****Related Ideas:**

temptation, tempter

**Definition:**

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

**tempt****Related Ideas:**

temptation, tempter

**Definition:**

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.

- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

#### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
- To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
- To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18

- Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

#### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
- To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
- To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

#### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

**Definition:**

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

**test****Related Ideas:**

put to the test

**Definition:**

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.

- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

## testimony

### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony": \* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened." \* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said." \* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true." \* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong." \* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness": \* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)." \* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true." \* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach." \* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened." \* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses



## testimony

### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony": \* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened." \* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said." \* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true." \* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong." \* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness": \* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)." \* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true." \* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach." \* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened." \* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12

- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### tetrarch

#### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
- "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
- The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

#### Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 09:07
- Matthew 14:1-2

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5075, G5076

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tetrarch

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.

- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), [prosper](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

**the sea**

**Facts:**

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), [prosper](#))

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

**the twelve**

**Related Ideas:**

the eleven

### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
- "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1427, G1733

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

### the twelve

### Related Ideas:

the eleven

### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
- "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1427, G1733

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

the eleven, the twelve

### **thief**

### **Related Ideas:**

bandit, booty, loot, marauding band, plunder, raider, revolutionary, rob, robber, robbery, steal

### **Definitions:**

The term "thief" refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of "thief" is "thieves." The term "robber" often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.
- "Marauding bands" and "raiding parties" are large groups people who go from place to place to steal things and cause others harm.
- "Bandits" are thieves who work together.
- "Plunder" and "loot" are words that mean the same thing as "steal." They are used to speak of stealing many things at one time.
- "Raiders" are people who attack others, stealing and destroying property, and often killing and harming the people whose property they are stealing.
- The words "booty," "loot," and "plunder" also refer to the things that are stolen.

(See also: [bless](#), [crime](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroy](#), [power](#), [Samaria](#), [Satan](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 06:30
- Revelation 03:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H957, H962, H1214, H1416, H1497, H1589, H1590, H1980, H4455, H6530, H7703, H7997, G727, G941, G2417, G2812, G3027

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

bandits, booty, loot, marauding band, marauding bands, plunder, plundered, plundered things, raiders, raiding parties, raiding party, revolutionary, rob, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing, robs, steal, stealing, steals, stolen, thief, thieves

**thorn**

**Related Ideas:**

thistle, thornbush

**Definitions:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

**thorn**

**Related Ideas:**

thistle, thornbush

**Definitions:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.

- A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

### **thresh**

#### **Related Ideas:**

beat out

#### **Definition:**

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.
- To "beat out" is to separate the grain from the straw either by spreading the stalks on the ground and hitting them with a stick or board or by holding the base of a bundle of stalks and hitting the heads on a hard surface.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, H2742, G248

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

beat ... out, beaten ... out, floors for threshing, thresh, threshed, threshes, threshing, threshing floor, threshing sledges

**throne****Related Ideas:**

enthroned, seat of authority

**Definition:**

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."
- "Seat of authority" is another way to refer to a throne.
- "Enthroned" means "sitting on a throne." In the Bible, this talks about Yahweh ruling from heaven or his presence being between the cherubim on the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

enthroned, seat of authority, throne, thrones

**time****Definitions:**

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.



- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

time, times

#### **time**

#### **Definitions:**

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750,

H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### tomb

### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

**Definition:**

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

**tongue****Related Ideas:**

language

**Definition:**

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
- In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
- The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."

- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [joy](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

language, languages, tongue, tongues

**tongue**

**Related Ideas:**

language

**Definition:**

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
- In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
- The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [joy](#), [spirit](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

language, languages, tongue, tongues

**torment****Related Ideas:**

tormentors, torture, torturer

**Definitions:**

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
- A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

**torment****Related Ideas:**

tormentors, torture, torturer

**Definitions:**

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.

- The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
- A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

**tradition**

**Definition:**

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
- Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#), [father](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [law of Moses](#), [Moses](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:08
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:02
- Matthew 15:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3862

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tradition, traditions

**trample****Related Ideas:**

tread, trod, trodden

**Definition:**

To "tread" on something is to step on it. To "trample" something is to step on it and smash it with the feet.

- An example of "trampling" is the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by treading on grapes, or trampling grapes, to remove the juice from them.
- The term "trample" is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean "destroy" or "defeat" or "humiliate."
- Other ways that "trample" could be translated include "crush with the feet" or "smash down with the feet" or "stomp on and crush" or "smash into the ground."

(See also: [grape](#), [humiliate](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#), [thresh](#), [wine](#))

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 007:5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H947, H1758, H1792, H1869, H3381, H4001, H4823, H5674, H1790, H7429, H7512, H7533, G2662, G3961

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

trample, trample over, trampled, tramples, trampling, trampling place, tread, treader, treading down, trod, trodden

**tremble****Related Ideas:**

shake

**Definition:**

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [lord](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

**trespass****Definition:**

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H819, H4604, H6588, G264, G3900

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

trespass, trespassed, trespasses

**trial****Related Ideas:**

case, on trial, plead a case

**Definition:**

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

- A "trial" can be a judicial hearing in a court in which evidence is given to prove whether the person "on trial" is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.



- A "case" is a person's problem or complaint and the reasons he thinks he is right. A judge listens to the case during a trial and decides what should be done.
- To "plead" someone's case is to represent his case in court, telling why the person is right about what happened and about what should be done.

The term "trial" is also used figuratively.

- The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "testing." "Temptation" is a particular kind of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#), [test](#), [innocent](#), [guilt](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3198, H4531, H4941, H7378, H7379, G178, G350, G1383, G2919, G3986, G4822

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

case, on trial, plead ... case, trial, trials

### **tribe**

#### **Related Ideas:**

tribal

#### **Definition:**

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tribal, tribe, tribes

## tribulation

### Related Ideas:

distress

### Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4689, H4691, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7185, H7451, G1453, G1568, G2347, G3076, G4912, G4928

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

distress, distressed, distresses, tribulation, tribulations

## tribute

### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24

- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tribute

**tribute**

**Definition:**

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tribute

**trouble**

**Related Ideas:**

troublesome

**Definition:**

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### trouble

### Related Ideas:

troublesome

### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

## Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

## true

## Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

## Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
- The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."

- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

### **trust**

### **Related Ideas:**

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### **Definition:**

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
- For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

## tunic

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

## tunic

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

## turn

### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
- To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
- "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
- An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
- The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."



- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

## **turn**

### **Related Ideas:**

apostasy, apostate

### **Definition:**

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
- To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."

- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
- "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
- An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
- The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

## twelve tribes of Israel

### Related Ideas:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

### Definition:

The term "twelve tribes of Israel" refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham's grandson. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:07
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

## understand

### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
- "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
- "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
- An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
- To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17

- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

**understand**

**Related Ideas:**

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

**Definition:**

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
- "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
- "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
- An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
- To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

**Bible References:**

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
- In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4682, G106

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
- In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4682, G106

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

unleavened bread

**vain****Related Ideas:**

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

**Definition:**

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

- The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
- To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
- The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
- The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [god](#), [worthy](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22

- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

**vine**

**Related Ideas:**

grapevine

**Definition:**

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grapevine, vine, vines

**vine**

**Related Ideas:**

grapevine

**Definition:**

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

grapevine, vine, vines

**vineyard****Related Ideas:**

vine grower

**Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
- A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290



**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

**vineyard****Related Ideas:**

vine grower

**Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
- A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

**virgin****Related Ideas:**

virginity

**Definition:**

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin.
- If a person has their "virginity", it means they have never had sexual relations.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

virgin, virginity, virgins

**vision**

**Definitions:**

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

**Translation Suggestion**

- The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
- Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

vision, visions

**voice**

**Related Ideas:**

rumbling, sound

**Definition:**

The term "voice" refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.

- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...."
- To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
- Sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](#), [preach](#), [splendor](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

#### **voice**

#### **Related Ideas:**

rumbling, sound

#### **Definition:**

The term "voice" refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...."
- To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
- Sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](#), [preach](#), [splendor](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

**walk****Definition:**

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

**walk****Definition:**

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.

- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### waste

### Related Ideas:

lay waste, wasteland

### Definition:

To "waste" something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely.

- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- A "wasteland" is a land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore. It may also be called a "waste."
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.
- To "waste away" means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2470, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4923, H5307, H6313, H7334, H7503, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

laid waste, lays waste, waste, waste away, wasted, wasteland, wastelands, wastes, wastes away, wasting

**waste****Related Ideas:**

lay waste, wasteland

**Definition:**

To "waste" something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely.

- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- A "wasteland" is a land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore. It may also be called a "waste."
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.
- To "waste away" means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2470, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4923, H5307, H6313, H7334, H7503, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

laid waste, lays waste, waste, waste away, wasted, wasteland, wastelands, wastes, wastes away, wasting

**watch****Related Ideas:**

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

**Definition:**

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

- To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
- A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

**watch****Related Ideas:**

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

**Definition:**

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

- To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
- A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### watchtower

### Related Ideas:

tower

### Definition:

The term "watchtower" refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term "watchtower" is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies.

(See also: [adversary](#), [watch](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:02



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6438, H6836, G4444

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

tower, towers, watchtower, watchtowers

**water****Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
- The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

water, watered, watering, waters

## water

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
- The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

### Translation Suggestions:

- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

## week

### Related Ideas:

sevens

### Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."

- The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:09
- Leviticus 23:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7620, G4521

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sevens, week, weeks

**week**

**Related Ideas:**

sevens

**Definition:**

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."
- The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:09
- Leviticus 23:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7620, G4521

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sevens, week, weeks

**well**

**Related Ideas:**

cistern

### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), [strife](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### well

### Related Ideas:

cistern

### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.

- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), [strife](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

wheat

**will of God****Related Ideas:**

God's will, desire of God, he wishes, his will, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord

**Definition:**

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God's will, desires of God, he desires, he wishes, his will, will of God, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord, will of your Father, you are willing, your will

**wine****Related Ideas:**

new wine, wineskin

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.

- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### wine

### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

**winepress****Definition:**

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people.

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 63:02
- Mark 12:01
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1660, H6333, G3025, G5276

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

winepress, winepresses



**winnow****Related Ideas:**

sift

**Definition:**

The terms "winnow" and "sift" mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To "winnow" means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word "sift" refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, "winnow" and "sift" are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term "sift" in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be "shaking" or "fanning." If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 03:12
- Proverbs 20:08
- Ruth 03:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2219, H5130, G4425, G4617

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sift, sifting, winnow, winnowed, winnowing, winnows

**wise****Related Ideas:**

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

**Definition:**

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
- "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
- In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

**wise****Related Ideas:**

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

**Definition:**

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
- "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
- In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

**woe****Definition:**

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
- Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
- The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
- The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

woe

## woe

### Definition:

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
- Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
- The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
- The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

woe

## womb

### Related Ideas:

pregnant

### Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
- A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
- Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
- A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

### Picture showing location of a Womb:

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

pregnant, womb, wombs

**word****Definition:**

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

- An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:02
- Acts 08:04
- Colossians 04:03
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 27:04
- John 01:03
- John 01:14
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 02:08
- Matthew 07:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

word, words, message, messages

### **word**

#### **Definition:**

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

- An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:02
- Acts 08:04
- Colossians 04:03
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 27:04
- John 01:03
- John 01:14
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 02:08
- Matthew 07:27

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

word, words, message, messages

### **word of God**

#### **Related Ideas:**

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### **word of God**

#### **Related Ideas:**

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02



- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

**work**

**Related Ideas:**

act, deed, fellow worker

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28

- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

**work**

**Related Ideas:**

act, deed, fellow worker

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

**world**

**Related Ideas:**

universe, worldly

**Definition:**

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

universe, world, world's, worldly

**world****Related Ideas:**

universe, worldly

**Definition:**

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

universe, world, world's, worldly

## worship

### Related Ideas:

worshiper

### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Often people bow down when they worship someone.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

## worship

### Related Ideas:

worshiper

### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Often people bow down when they worship someone.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

**worthy****Related Ideas:**

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

**Definition:**

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

- Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
- To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
- To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
- To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
- The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as "be valuable" or to "be important."
- The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

**worthy****Related Ideas:**

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

**Definition:**

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

- Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
- To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
- To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
- To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
- The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
- The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

### wrath

#### Related Ideas:

furious, fury

#### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

#### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2194, H2195, H2197, H2534, H2740, H3707, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7267, G2205, G2372, G3709

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

furious, fury, wrath

### wrong

#### Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
- The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."



- The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

#### **Forms Found in the English ULB:**

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

#### **year**

#### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

year, years

**year****Definition:**

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#))

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

**Forms Found in the English ULB:**

year, years

**yeast****Related Ideas:**

leaven, unleavened

**Definition:**

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

- The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.
- They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

### Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:08
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast

### yeast

### Related Ideas:

leaven, unleavened

### Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

- The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.

- They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

### Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:08
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast

---